



PRACTICAL  
ORGANIC CHEMISTRY





MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
LONDON • BOMBAY • CALCUTTA • MADRAS  
MILBOURN

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY  
NEW YORK • BOSTON • CHICAGO  
DALLAS • ATLANTA • SAN FRANCISCO

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY  
OF CANADA, LIMITED  
TORONTO

# PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

BY

JULIUS B. COHEN, PH.D., B.Sc., F.R.S.

PROFESSOR OF ORGANIC CHEMISTRY THE UNIVERSITY, LEEDS  
AND ASSOCIATE OF THE OWENS COLLEGE

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON

1930

COPYRIGHT

*First Edition, Globe 8vo, 1900, Reprinted, 1904, 1907*

*Second Edition, Globe 8vo, 1908, Reprinted, 1910, 1913,  
1915, 1916, 1918, 1919, 1920 (twice).*

*Third Edition, Crown 8vo, 1924, Reprinted, 1926, 1928,  
1930.*

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

THE present volume is an enlarged edition of that published in 1887, and has been completely rewritten. The preparations have all been carefully revised, some of the former ones omitted and many new ones introduced. The chief additions are the introductory chapters on organic analysis and molecular weight determinations, and an extension of the appendix.

The book does not aim at being a complete laboratory guide, but is intended to provide a systematic course of practical instruction, illustrating a great variety of reactions and processes with a very moderate outlay in materials and apparatus.

The objection may be raised that the detailed description of processes makes no demand upon a student's resourcefulness or ingenuity. It must be remembered, however, that the manipulative part of organic chemistry is so unfamiliar to the elementary student that he requires minute directions in order to avoid waste of time and material. Until he has acquired considerable practical skill he cannot accomplish the experimental work requisite for research, and repeated failures will be apt to destroy his confidence in himself.

To satisfy, to a legitimate extent, the prejudices of certain examining bodies, who still adhere to the old system of testing a student's knowledge of practical organic chemistry by means of the qualitative analysis of certain meaningless mixtures, the special tests for some of the more common organic substances have been inserted. At the same time, an attempt has been made at the end of the appendix to systematise the analysis of organic substances on a broader and therefore more rational basis.

The present occasion seems opportune to direct attention to the fact that one of the most familiar, most readily procurable and most cheaply produced of all organic materials is placed

beyond the reach of many students by the heavy duty levied upon it. May I, in the name of teachers of organic chemistry, appeal to the Board of Inland Revenue, on behalf of scientific and technical education, to provide institutions for higher education in science with a limited quantity of pure alcohol free of duty, thereby placing schools of chemistry in this country in the same position as those on the Continent?

In conclusion I desire to thank Dr. J. McCrae, who has written the section on Ethyl Tartrate and the use of the Polarimeter, Dr. T. S. Patterson, who has been kind enough to look over the proofs, and Mr. H. D. Dakin, who has given me substantial assistance in the practical work of revision.

J. B. COHEN.

THE YORKSHIRE COLLEGE,  
*October, 1900.*

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

IN the former edition attention was drawn to certain drawbacks which accompanied the study of practical organic chemistry, among which the heavy duty on alcohol and the unsatisfactory nature of the practical tests demanded by public examining bodies were specially emphasised.

Teachers and students alike must welcome the changes which have since taken place. An excise duty on alcohol used in the laboratory is no longer exacted from students of science, and substantial reforms have been introduced into practical examinations.

One important feature in some of the new examination regulations is the recognition of the candidate's signed record of laboratory work. We are, in fact, beginning to discover an inherent defect in practical chemistry as an examination subject, namely, its resistance to compression into a compact and convenient examination form.

The old and drastic method by which chemistry was made to fit into a syllabus consisted in cutting out the core of the subject, or in other words, in removing all the processes which demanded time, skill, and some intelligence, and in reducing the examination to a set of exercises in a kind of legerdemain. This process has been to a large extent abandoned, but a residuum of it still remains. It is to be hoped that the kind of practical examination in organic chemistry which consists in allotting a few hours to the identification of a substance selected from a particular list will in time be superseded or accompanied by a scheme encouraging candidates to show, in addition to their note-books, evidence of skill and originality, as, for example, in submitting specimens of new or rare preparations, or in presenting an account of some small investigation.

The present edition is much enlarged and contains new preparations, reactions and quantitative methods, all of which have been carefully revised. My object has been not to follow any particular

syllabus, but to present a variety of processes from which a selection may be made to suit the special needs of different students.

My thanks are due to Mr. Joseph Marshall, B.Sc., and several of my senior students, for their assistance in the work of revision.

J. B. COHEN.

THE UNIVERSITY, LEEDS.

*July, 1908.*

## PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

THE development of organic chemistry, especially in the direction of new reactions and reagents and in the simplification of older methods, makes it necessary to extend the scope of the former edition. The new edition is therefore enlarged by the inclusion of a variety of new preparations, all of which, as in former editions, have been carefully rehearsed.

A special section has been introduced for the benefit of those who, in increasing numbers, are taking up the study of biochemistry, and a number of rather more difficult preparations are added for the senior student preparing for research.

I desire to acknowledge my indebtedness to my colleagues, Mr. P. K. Dutt and Mr. W. A. Wightman, for their help in the work of revision and to those of my students who undertook at my request the preparation of some of the compounds described in the present edition.

J. B. COHEN.

THE UNIVERSITY, LEEDS,

1924.

# CONTENTS

SECTION I. ANALYSIS AND MOLECULAR WEIGHTS—	PAGE
Qualitative examination . . . . .	3
Carbon and Hydrogen . . . . .	3
Nitrogen . . . . .	4
The Halogens . . . . .	4
Sulphur . . . . .	5
Phosphorus . . . . .	5
Quantitative estimation . . . . .	5
Carbon and Hydrogen . . . . .	5
Nitrogen . . . . .	15
The Halogens . . . . .	24
Sulphur . . . . .	29
Determination of molecular weight . . . . .	30
Vapour density method . . . . .	30
Cryoscopic or Freezing-point method . . . . .	34
Ebullioscopic or Boiling-point method . . . . .	38
Molecular weight of acids . . . . .	44
Molecular weight of bases . . . . .	47
SECTION II. PREPARATIONS—	
<i>Ethyl Alcohol</i> . . . . .	54
1. Ethyl potassium sulphate . . . . .	55
2. Ethyl bromide (methods I and II) . . . . .	59
3. Ethyl iodide . . . . .	64
4. Ether . . . . .	65
5. Ethylene bromide (methods I and II). . . . .	68
6. Acetaldehyde . . . . .	71
<i>Methyl Alcohol</i> . . . . .	74
7. Methyl iodide . . . . .	75
<i>n-Butyl Alcohol</i> . . . . .	76
8. <i>n</i> -Butyl bromide . . . . .	76
9. <i>n</i> -Butyl cyanide . . . . .	77



## PREPARATIONS—

PAGE

10. <i>n</i> -Valeric acid . . . . .	77
11. <i>n</i> -Ethyl valerate . . . . .	78
<i>Amyl Alcohol</i> . . . . .	79
12. Amyl nitrite . . . . .	79
<i>Acetone</i> . . . . .	80
13. Chloroform . . . . .	80
14. Acetoxime . . . . .	82
15. Mesityl oxide, Phorone . . . . .	84
16. Diacetoneamine . . . . .	85
<i>Acetic Acid</i> . . . . .	86
17. Acetyl chloride . . . . .	87
18. Acetic anhydride . . . . .	88
19. Acetamide . . . . .	89
20. Acetonitrile . . . . .	91
21. Methyl acetyl urea . . . . .	92
22. Methylamine hydrochloride (methods I and II) . . . . .	93
23. Dimethylamine hydrochloride . . . . .	95
24. Dimethylnitrosamine . . . . .	96
25. Ethyl acetate . . . . .	96
26. Ethyl acetoacetate . . . . .	98
27. Ethyl acetoacetic ester, Methyl propyl ketone . . . . .	103
28. Acetylacetone . . . . .	104
29. Monochloracetic acid . . . . .	106
30. Ethyl chloracetate . . . . .	107
31. Cyanacetic acid and ester . . . . .	108
32. Nitromethane . . . . .	109
33. Monobromacetic acid . . . . .	110
34. Glycine . . . . .	112
35. Glycine ester hydrochloride . . . . .	113
36. Diazoacetic ester . . . . .	114
37. Diethyl malonate . . . . .	116
38. Ethyl malonic acid . . . . .	117
39. Methylene dimalonic ester, Glutaric acid . . . . .	119
<i>Chloral hydrate</i> . . . . .	120
40. Dichloroacetic acid . . . . .	121
41. Trichloroacetic acid . . . . .	122
42. Oxalic acid . . . . .	123
43. Methyl oxalate . . . . .	124
44. Ethyl oxalate . . . . .	125
45. Oxaloacetic ester . . . . .	126
46. Glyoxalic acid, Glycollic acid . . . . .	127

## PREPARATIONS—

PAGE

<i>Glycerol</i> . . . . .	129
47. Formic acid . . . . .	130
48. Allyl alcohol (methods I and II). . . . .	132
49. Isopropyl iodide . . . . .	134
50. Dichlorhydrin, Epichlorhydrin . . . . .	135
<i>Malic Acid</i> . . . . .	137
51. Succinic acid . . . . .	137
<i>Tartaric acid</i> . . . . .	138
52. Ethyl tartrate . . . . .	139
53. Racemic acid, Mesotartaric acid. . . . .	145
54. Pyruvic acid . . . . .	147
<i>Citric acid</i> . . . . .	148
55. Citraconic acid, Mesoconic acid . . . . .	148
56. Acetone dicarboxylic acid and ester . . . . .	150
<i>Benzene</i> . . . . .	151
57. Chlorobenzene . . . . .	154
58. Bromobenzene . . . . .	155
59. Ethyl benzene . . . . .	156
60. Nitrobenzene . . . . .	157
61. Azoxybenzene . . . . .	159
62. Azobenzene . . . . .	160
63. Hydrazobenzene, Benzidine . . . . .	162
64. Phenylhydroxylamine, Nitrosobenzene . . . . .	164
65. Aniline (methods I and II) . . . . .	165
66. Acetanilide, Acetylchloranilide, Chloroacetanilide . . . . .	169
67. <i>p</i> -Bromoacetanilide . . . . .	171
68. <i>o</i> -Nitraniline . . . . .	171
69. <i>p</i> -Nitraniline . . . . .	173
70. <i>m</i> -Dinitrobenzene . . . . .	174
71. <i>m</i> -Nitraniline, <i>m</i> -Phenylenediamine . . . . .	175
72. Dimethylaniline . . . . .	176
73. <i>p</i> -Nitrosodimethylaniline . . . . .	177
74. Diphenylamine . . . . .	179
75. Thiocarbonyl, Phenyl thiocarbimide, Triphenyl-guanidine . . . . .	180
76. Diazobenzene sulphate . . . . .	182
77. Toluene (from <i>p</i> -Toluidine) . . . . .	184
78. <i>p</i> -Cresol . . . . .	186
79. <i>p</i> -Chlorotoluene, <i>p</i> -Chlorobenzoic acid . . . . .	187
80. <i>p</i> -Bromotoluene . . . . .	189
81. <i>p</i> -Iodotoluene, Tolyliodochloride, Iodosotoluene . . . . .	190

## PREPARATIONS—

## PAGE

82.	<i>p</i> -Tolylcyanide, Tolyliminoether, <i>p</i> -Toluic acid, <i>p</i> -Terephthalic acid	191
83.	Diazoaminobenzene	194
84.	Aminoazobenzene	195
85.	Phenylhydrazine, Phenylmethylpyrazolone	196
86.	<i>p</i> -Nitrophenylhydrazine	198
87.	Sulphanilic acid	199
88.	Methyl orange	200
89.	Naphthol orange, $\alpha$ -Amino- $\beta$ -naphthol	202
90.	Sodium benzenesulphonate	203
91.	Benzenesulphonic chloride (methods I and II)	204
92.	Phenol	205
93.	Anisole (methods I and II)	207
94.	Hexahydrophenol	209
95.	<i>o</i> - and <i>p</i> -Nitrophenol	211
96.	Phenacetin	212
97.	Picric acid (method I)	214
98.	2 : 4-Dinitrochlorobenzene	215
99.	2 : 4-Dinitrophenol	216
100.	Picric acid (method II)	216
101.	Phenolphthalein	217
102.	Fluorescein, Eosin	218
103.	Salicylaldehyde, <i>p</i> -Hydroxybenzaldehyde	219
104.	Coumarin	221
105.	<i>cis</i> - and <i>trans</i> - <i>o</i> -Methoxycinnamic ester	222
106.	Salicylic acid	223
107.	Acetylsalicylic acid	225
108.	Quinone, Quinol	226
109.	Benzyl chloride	228
110.	Benzyl alcohol (method I)	229
111.	Benzyl cyanide	230
112.	Phenyl acetic ester	231
113.	Benzaldehyde (methods I, II, and III)	231
114.	<i>p</i> -Tolylaldehyde	234
115.	Benzyl alcohol (method II), Benzoic acid	236
116.	Phenylamino-acetic acid	237
117.	Phenylamino-acetic ester	238
118.	$\alpha$ - and $\beta$ -Benzaldoximes	239
119.	Benzalacetone	240
120.	Benzoic acid	241
121.	<i>p</i> -Nitrobenzoic acid, <i>p</i> -Nitrobenzoyl chloride	242
122.	<i>m</i> -Nitro-, Amino- and Hydroxy-benzoic acids	244

## PREPARATIONS—

	PAGE
123. <i>m</i> -Bromobenzoic acid . . . . .	245
124. Benzoin, Benzil . . . . .	246
125. Benzilic acid . . . . .	247
126. Benzalmalonic acid . . . . .	248
127. Cinnamic acid . . . . .	248
128. Hydrocinnamic acid . . . . .	249
129. $\beta$ -Phenylpropionyl chloride . . . . .	250
130. $\alpha$ -Hydrindone . . . . .	250
131. Mandelic acid . . . . .	251
132. Phenyl methyl carbinol . . . . .	252
133. Benzoyl chloride (methods I and II) . . . . .	254
134. Ethyl benzoate . . . . .	255
135. Acetophenone, Benzoylacetone . . . . .	257
136. $\alpha$ -Phenylethylamine . . . . .	259
137. Phenylmethyl- $\beta$ -hydroxypropionic ester . . . . .	261
138. Diphenylmethane . . . . .	261
139. Triphenylmethane . . . . .	262
140. Triphenylmethyl chloride . . . . .	264
141. Triphenylcarbinol . . . . .	265
142. Benzaldehyde green . . . . .	266
143. Tetramethyldiaminodiphenyl methane . . . . .	267
144. Tetramethyldiaminobenzhydrol . . . . .	268
145. Crystal violet . . . . .	268
<i>Naphthalene</i> . . . . .	270
146. Phthalic acid . . . . .	270
147. Phthalimide (methods I and II) . . . . .	271
148. Anthranilic acid . . . . .	272
149. Phenylglycine <i>o</i> -carboxylic acid . . . . .	274
150. Indigo . . . . .	274
151. Isatin from Indigo . . . . .	275
152. <i>o</i> -Chlorobenzoic acid . . . . .	276
153. Phenylanthranilic acid . . . . .	277
154. Acridone, Acridine . . . . .	278
155. Sodium $\beta$ -naphthalenesulphonate, Naphthalene . . . . .	279
156. $\beta$ -Naphthol . . . . .	280
157. Naphthol yellow . . . . .	286
<i>Anthracene</i> . . . . .	287
158. Anthraquinone . . . . .	287
159. Anthraquinone $\beta$ -monosulphonate of sodium . . . . .	288
160. Alizarin . . . . .	289
161. Bornyl chloride . . . . .	291

## PREPARATIONS—

	PAGE
162. Camphene . . . . .	292
163. Isobornyl acetate . . . . .	293
164. Isoborneol . . . . .	293
165. Camphor . . . . .	294
166. Camphor sulphonic acid . . . . .	295
167. Camphoroxime . . . . .	296
168. Bornylamine . . . . .	297
169. Quinoline . . . . .	298
170. Tetrahydroquinoline . . . . .	299
171. <i>p</i> -Nitroquinoline . . . . .	300
172. <i>p</i> -Aminoquinoline . . . . .	301
173. <i>p</i> -Toluquinaldine . . . . .	302
174. Benzoyl piperidine . . . . .	303
175. Pentamethylene dibromide . . . . .	304
176. Phenyl acridine . . . . .	305
177. Benzoflavine . . . . .	306
178. Diazobenzolimide, Phenylmethyltriazole carboxylic acid . . . . .	307
179. Quinine sulphate from cinchona bark . . . . .	308

## SECTION III. BIOCHEMICAL PREPARATIONS—

180. Palmitic acid, analysis of fats and oils . . . . .	313
181. Cholesterol . . . . .	318
182. <i>d</i> -Glucose, estimation of glucose . . . . .	319
183. Saccharic acid from glucose . . . . .	323
184. $\alpha$ -Methyl glucoside . . . . .	323
185. Glucosamine . . . . .	324
186. Lactic acid (methods I and II) . . . . .	325
187. Casein, Lactose from milk . . . . .	326
188. Mannose from ivory nut . . . . .	327
189. Dicyanodiamide . . . . .	328
190. Guanidine thiocyanate . . . . .	329
191. Methylguanidine hydrochloride . . . . .	330
192. Urea . . . . .	330
193. Thiocarbamide . . . . .	332
<i>Uric acid</i> . . . . .	332
194. Alloxantin . . . . .	334
195. Alloxan . . . . .	335
196. Allantoin . . . . .	335
197. Caffeine from tea . . . . .	337
198. Creatine from meat . . . . .	338
199. Tyrosine, Leucine from horn . . . . .	339

# CONTENTS

xv

## PREPARATIONS—

	PAGE
200. Glycine ester hydrochloride from gelatine . . . . .	341
201. Glycine from potassium phthalimide, &c . . . . .	343
202. Hippuric acid from goat's urine . . . . .	344
203. Phenylalanine (methods I and II) . . . . .	345
204. Leucine from isoamyl alcohol . . . . .	349
205. Glutamic acid from gluten . . . . .	350
206. Cystine from hair . . . . .	351
207. Tryptophane from casein . . . . .	353
208. Tyramine . . . . .	355

SECTION IV. PREPARATION OF REAGENTS . . . . .	359
---	-----

## SECTION V. APPENDIX—

<i>Notes on the Preparations</i> . . . . .	369
<i>Hints on the Identification of Organic substances</i> . . . . .	473
TABLES . . . . .	500
INDEX . . . . .	515



**SECTION I**  
**ANALYSIS AND MOLECULAR WEIGHTS**





# ORGANIC ANALYSIS

## Qualitative Examination.

**Carbon and Hydrogen.**—Carbon compounds are frequently inflammable, and when heated on platinum foil take fire or char and burn away. A safer test is to heat the substance with some easily reducible metallic oxide, the oxygen of which forms carbon dioxide with the carbon present. Take a small hard glass test-tube

about 5 cm. (2 in.) long and attach to it a cork and bent-delivery tube of narrow glass tubing as shown in Fig. 1. Heat a gram or two of fine copper oxide in a porcelain crucible for a few minutes to drive off the moisture, and let it cool in a desiccator.

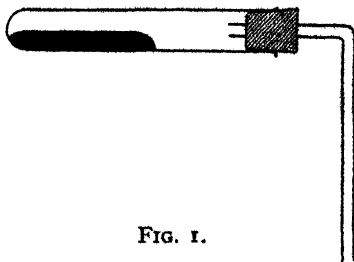


FIG. 1.

Mix it with about one-tenth of its bulk of powdered sugar in a mortar. Pour the mixture into the tube, the open end of which is now closed with the cork and delivery tube. Now tap the tube horizontally at the edge of the bench, so as to form a free channel above the mixture. Suspend it by a copper wire to the ring of a retort stand, and let the open end dip into lime or baryta water. Heat the mixture gently with a small flame. The gas which bubbles through the lime water turns it milky. Moisture will also appear on the sides of the tube, which, provided that the copper oxide has been thoroughly dried beforehand, indicates the presence of hydrogen in the compound. Gases, or volatile substances like ether and alcohol, cannot, of course, be examined in this way; but an apparatus must be arranged so that the gas or vapour is made to pass over a layer of red-hot copper oxide and then through the lime water.

**Nitrogen.**—Many organic nitrogen compounds when strongly heated with soda-lime give off their nitrogen in the form of ammonia. Grind up a fragment of cheese or a few crystals of urea with 5 to 6 times its weight of soda-lime, pour the mixture into a small test-tube (preferably of hard glass) and cover it with an equally thick layer of soda-lime. Heat strongly, beginning at the top layer. Ammonia is evolved and can be detected by the smell, or by holding a piece of moistened red litmus paper at the mouth of the tube. When nitrogen is present in direct combination with oxygen, as in the nitro- and azoxy-compounds, ammonia is not evolved. The following general method is applicable to all compounds and is therefore more reliable. The compound is heated with metallic potassium or sodium when potassium or sodium cyanide is formed. The subsequent test is the same as for cyanides. Pour about 10 c.c. of distilled water into a small beaker. Place a fragment of the substance in a small test-tube along with a piece of metallic potassium or sodium the size of a coffee bean, and heat them at first gently until the reaction subsides, and then strongly until the glass is nearly red hot. Then place the hot end of the tube in the small beaker of water. The glass crumbles away, and any residual sodium is decomposed with a bright flash, all the cyanide rapidly goes into solution, whilst a quantity of carbon remains suspended in the liquid. Filter through a small filter into a test-tube. Add to the clear solution a few drops of ferrous sulphate solution, and a drop of ferric chloride, boil up for a minute, cool under the tap, and acidify with dilute hydrochloric acid. A precipitate of Prussian blue indicates the presence of nitrogen. If the liquid has a blue colour, let it stand for an hour and examine it again for a precipitate. If no precipitate appears and the solution remains of a clear yellowish-green colour, no nitrogen is present.

If sulphur is present, an excess of alkali metal must be used to prevent the formation of sulphocyanide.

**The Halogens.**—Many halogen compounds impart a green fringe to the outer zone of the non-luminous flame. A more delicate test is to heat the substance with copper oxide (Beilstein). Heat a fragment of copper oxide, held in the loop of a platinum wire, in the outer mantle of the non-luminous flame until it ceases to colour the flame green. Let it cool down a little and then dust on some

halogen compound (bromacetanilide will serve this purpose, see Prep. 67, p. 171). Now heat again. A bright green flame, accompanied by a blue zone immediately round the oxide, indicates the presence of a halogen. The halogen in the majority of organic compounds is not directly precipitated by silver nitrate. Only those compounds which, like the hydracids and their metallic salts, dissociate in solution into free ions give this reaction. If, however, the organic compound is first destroyed, and the halogen converted into a soluble metallic salt, the test may be applied. Heat the substance with a fragment of metallic sodium or potassium as in the test for nitrogen, p. 4. The test-tube whilst hot is placed in cold water, the alkaline solution filtered, acidified with dilute nitric acid and silver nitrate solution added. A curdy, white or yellow precipitate (provided no cyanide is present) indicates a halogen. If a cyanide is present, boil with nitric acid until the hydrogen cyanide is expelled and add silver nitrate.

**Sulphur.**—The presence of sulphur in organic compounds may be detected by heating the substance with a little metallic sodium or potassium. The alkaline sulphide, when dissolved in water, gives a violet coloration with a solution of sodium nitroprusside. Heat a fragment of gelatine with a small piece of sodium in a test-tube until the bottom of the tube is red hot, and place it in a small beaker of water as described in the test for nitrogen (p. 4). Filter the liquid and add a few drops of sodium nitroprusside solution.

The presence of halogen and sulphur may therefore be ascertained in one experiment.

**Phosphorus.**—The presence of phosphorus is determined by heating the substance strongly with magnesium powder and moistening the cold product with water. Magnesium phosphide is formed and is decomposed by the water, giving phosphine, which is readily detected by its smell.

### Quantitative Estimation.

**Carbon and Hydrogen.**—The principle of the method is that described under *qualitative examination*, but the substance and the products of combustion, viz., carbon dioxide and water, are weighed. The following apparatus is required.

1. *An Erlenmeyer or other form of Combustion Furnace.*—The usual length is 80–90 cm. (31–35 in.), and it is provided with 30 to 35 burners. Flat flame burners are undesirable.

2. *A Drying Apparatus.*—A form of drying apparatus which is easily fitted together is shown in Fig. 2. It consists of four

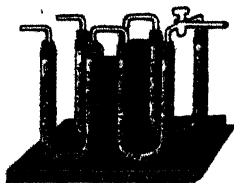


FIG. 2.

large U-tubes arranged side by side in pairs. The U-tubes are mounted upon a wooden stand with two uprights, to which the two pairs of tubes are wired. The first of each pair is filled with soda-lime, and the second with pumice soaked in concentrated sulphuric acid. Each soda-lime tube is connected with a sulphuric acid tube by well-fitting rubber corks and a bent glass tube. The two other limbs of the sulphuric acid U-tubes are joined by a three-way-tap forming a T-piece. The free end of the T-piece is attached to a small tube, Fig. 3, containing a little concentrated sulphuric acid to mark the rate at which the bubbles are passing through the drying apparatus. This tube is connected with the combustion tube by a short piece of rubber tubing and a short glass tube, which passes through a rubber cork fixed in the end of the combustion tube. The rubber tubing carries a screw-clip. The open ends of the soda-lime U-tubes are closed with rubber corks, through which pass bent glass tubes. One of these glass tubes is connected by rubber tubing to an oxygen gas-holder or to a cylinder of compressed oxygen, which must be furnished with an automatic regulating valve, and the other glass tube is attached to a gas-holder containing air. By turning the three-way tap, either oxygen or air may be supplied to the combustion tube.

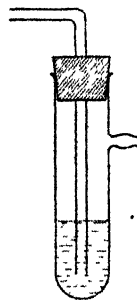


FIG. 3.

3. *A Combustion Tube of Hard Glass.*—It should be about 13 mm. inside diameter, and the walls not more than 1.5 mm. thick. Its length should be such that it projects at least 5 cm. (2 in.) beyond the furnace at either end. After cutting the required length, the ends of the tube are carefully heated in the flame until the sharp

edges are just rounded. The tube is filled as follows. Push in a loose asbestos plug about 5 cm. (2 in.) from one end. This end, to which the calcium chloride tube and potash apparatus are subsequently attached, may be called the *front end*. Pour in coarse copper oxide at the opposite end and shake it down to the plug until there is a layer about two-thirds the length of the tube. Keep the oxide in position by another plug of asbestos; see that the plugs



FIG. 4.

are not rammed too tight. Make a roll of copper gauze about 13 cm. (5 in.) long to slide easily into the back end of the combustion tube. This is done by rolling the gauze tightly round a stout copper wire until the requisite thickness is obtained. The projecting ends of the wire are then bent over into hooks as shown in Fig. 4. This roll, or spiral, as it is usually called, is subsequently oxidised. It is pushed into the tube or withdrawn as occasion requires by a piece

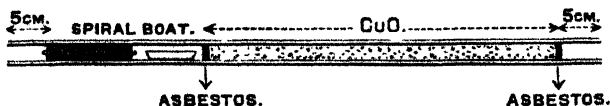


FIG. 5.

of hooked wire. The combustion tube is placed on a layer of asbestos in the iron trough of the furnace. The arrangement of the tube with boat and spiral is shown in Fig. 5.

4. *A Straight Calcium Chloride Tube.*—It is inserted through a rubber cork and fixed in the front end of the combustion tube when the latter is not in use, as copper oxide is very hygroscopic, and it is necessary to protect it from the moisture in the air.

5. *A Potash Apparatus.*—Several forms of potash apparatus are made; those of Geissler (Fig. 6) and Classen (Fig. 7) being perhaps most commonly employed. The latter has the advantage of being very light. The removable side-tube is filled with granulated

calcium chloride or soda-lime, with a plug of cotton wool at each end. The bulbs of the apparatus are filled with a strong solution of caustic potash containing 25 grams of potash to 50 c.c. of water. This is done as follows: remove the soda-lime tube and attach in its place a piece of rubber tubing; this serves as a mouthpiece. Pour the potash solution into a basin and dip the other end of the

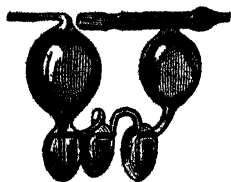


FIG. 6.



FIG. 7.

potash apparatus under the liquid. Suck at the rubber tube until the quantity appears sufficient to fill the bulbs. Remove the potash solution and continue to suck until the solution is transferred to the bulbs. The bulbs should be nearly filled. In the case of Classen's apparatus, the liquid should stand half an inch deep in the bottom of the apparatus outside the lowest bulb. Wipe the potash solution from the outside and inside of the inlet tube of the apparatus with

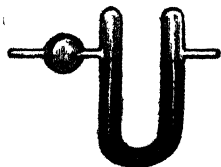


FIG. 8.

filter paper. Smear a thin film of vaseline on the ground end of the soda-lime tube before replacing it, and fit to the open ends of the apparatus stoppers of rubber and glass rod, which are not removed except when the apparatus is in use. As the potash apparatus has to be refilled after every two combustions, it is advisable to

keep a little stock of solution in a bottle fitted with an ordinary cork.

6. *A Calcium Chloride U-Tube.*—The form of calcium chloride tube is shown in Fig. 8. It is fitted with granulated and sieved calcium chloride (to remove the finer particles and dust) to within  $2\frac{1}{2}$  cm. (1 in.) of the side pieces, and then with coarser pieces to within  $\frac{1}{2}$  cm. ( $\frac{1}{4}$  in.). Place a small plug of cotton wool in both limbs above the chloride to keep it in position. Two well-fitting corks,

cut off level with the glass and coated with sealing-wax, produce an effective air-tight stopper to the open limbs, but it is preferable to seal them in the blow-pipe flame. The sealing requires a little skill. Carefully wipe off any chloride dust which may have adhered to the open ends of the two limbs. Cork up one limb and stopper one of the side-tubes. Attach a short piece of rubber tubing to the other side-tube to serve as a mouthpiece. Now soften the end of the open limb in a small blow-pipe flame, and at the same time heat the end of a short piece of glass rod. With the hot end of the rod gather up the edges of the open limb, and whilst rotating the limb backwards and forwards in the flame, draw it out and seal it up. If successful, the appearance of the tube is that shown in Fig. 9. The blob of glass is heated in a small flame, and, by gently blowing and re-heating and blowing again, the blob can be removed, and, finally, by using a rather larger flame, heating and blowing alternately, the end is neatly rounded.

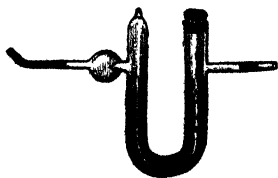


FIG. 9.

7. *A Porcelain or, preferably, a Platinum Boat.*—See that it slips easily into the combustion tube. The boat is kept in a desiccator on a flat cork or support made of glass rod when not in use.

**Preparation of the Tube.**—Before starting the combustion it is necessary to clean and dry the combustion tube. This is effected by heating the whole length of the tube containing the copper oxide and spiral gradually to a dull red heat, and passing through it a slow stream of dry oxygen from the gas-holder or cylinder. As soon as a glowing chip is ignited at the front end and the moisture, which at first collects there, has disappeared, the gas jets are turned down and finally extinguished. The oxygen is then stopped, and the straight calcium chloride tube inserted into the open end of the tube.

**Preliminary Operations.**—Grind up a little pure oxalic acid, and carefully weigh out 0.15 to 0.2 gram (not more) in the boat. Weigh also the calcium chloride tube and potash apparatus without stoppers or other accessories. The side-tube of the calcium chloride tube, which carries the bulb, is attached directly to the combustion



tube with a rubber cork. This cork should be carefully selected, and should exactly fit the combustion tube. The bore hole should be small and smooth, and it is advisable to dust it with graphite or coat it with a film of vaseline to prevent the rubber from clinging to the glass, a matter of frequent occurrence unless this precaution is taken. The cork should be kept exclusively for the combustion. Push the side-tube of the calcium chloride tube through the hole until it is flush with the opposite surface, and squeeze the cork tightly into the combustion tube. Attach the potash apparatus to the other limb of the calcium chloride tube by a well-fitting piece of rubber tubing about 3 cm. ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  in.) long, and bring the ends of the glass as closely as possible together. It should be unnecessary

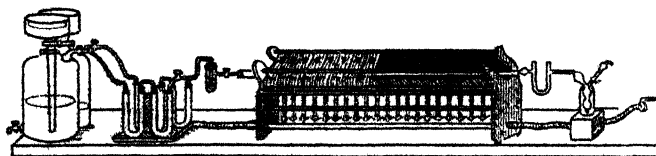


FIG 10.

to wind wire round the joint if the rubber is of the right diameter. A little vaseline may be used here with advantage, but only in the thinnest film. The potash apparatus will require to be supported upon a block or stand. Remove the copper spiral from the back of the tube. Introduce the boat and push it into position against the asbestos plug by means of the spiral which is placed behind it. Replace the rubber cork connected with the drying apparatus. The apparatus will present the appearance shown in Fig. 10.

It must now be tested to see that it is air-tight. For this purpose, close the open end of the potash apparatus with a tight stopper and turn on the full pressure from either gas-holder. After the first few bubbles of air have passed through the bulbs of the potash apparatus no further movement of bubbles should appear in *any part* of the apparatus. If it withstands this test, the combustion may proceed. Release the pressure by closing the tap of the gas-holder, screwing up the clip at the back of the combustion tube, and cautiously removing the stopper from the potash

apparatus. Then raise the three-way tap from its socket for a moment.

**The Combustion.**—Turn on the oxygen and adjust the rate of flow through the apparatus by means of the screw-clip so that 2 or 3 bubbles a second pass through the potash bulbs. Throw back the tiles if closed, and light the burners under the front layer of copper oxide to within 10 cm. (4 in.) of the boat and also 2 or 3 burners under the spiral behind the boat, but not within 5 cm. (2 in.) of the boat. Turn up the gas slowly to avoid cracking the tube, and in a minute or two, when the tube is thoroughly warmed, close the tiles over the lighted burners and heat to a dull red heat. A vivid red heat during the combustion is not only unnecessary, but undesirable, as the glass is apt to soften and be distorted and even to blow out and become perforated. A combustion tube carefully handled should last indefinitely. When the copper oxide is red hot, turn on the burners very gradually from the spiral towards the boat, but do not close the two pairs of tiles over the boat until the combustion is nearly terminated and the burners are all lighted. The first indication of the substance burning is the appearance of a film of moisture at the front end of the combustion tube and an increase in the speed of the bubbles passing through the potash apparatus. The front end of the tube, which should project 4 to 5 cm. ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 in.) from the furnace, must be kept sufficiently hot to prevent moisture permanently condensing there; but it must never be allowed to become so hot that there is any risk of the cork being burnt, and it should always be possible to place the finger and thumb round the part of the tube where the cork is inserted. A screen made from a square piece of asbestos board with a slit in it, slipped over the tube at the end of the furnace, may be used with advantage.

The speed of the bubbles is the best indication of the progress of the combustion. If the rate increases so that the bubbles passing through the last bulb cannot easily be counted, a burner or burners must be lowered or extinguished until the speed slackens. After a time, when the air has been displaced and carbon dioxide largely fills the tube, the gas is nearly all absorbed in the first potash bulb. When this occurs, the current ~~may~~ <sup>may</sup> be increased until the bubbles appear ~~simultaneously~~ <sup>simultaneously</sup> in the bulbs, when the current

is again checked. If some copper oxide has been reduced in the first stages of the process, the bubbles in the potash apparatus may entirely cease for a time, but will reappear when the copper has been reoxidised. Here again an increased current of oxygen will hasten the process. The combustion is complete when a glowing chip held at the end of the potash apparatus is rekindled. All the moisture must by now have been driven over into the calcium chloride tube. If this is not the case, warm the end of the tube cautiously with a small flame, or by means of a hot tile held near the tube. The time required to complete the combustion is about one-half to three-quarters of an hour from the time the front of the tube is red hot, but more volatile substances, which must be heated more cautiously, will naturally take longer.

The combustion being complete, gradually turn down, and in a few minutes extinguish, the burners. Whilst the furnace cools the oxygen is replaced by a slow current of air. To do this the oxygen supply is stopped and the three-way tap is turned through  $180^\circ$ , so as to connect the tube with the air reservoir, the tap of which is then opened and the stream of air regulated by the screw clip.

Let the air pass through for 20 minutes whilst the furnace is cooling down. Then remove and stopper the potash apparatus and the calcium chloride tube, and after allowing them to stand by the balance case for half-an-hour, weigh.

The results are calculated in percentages of carbon and hydrogen as follows :

$w$  is the weight of substance taken.

$a$  is the increase in weight of the potash apparatus.

$b$  is the increase in weight of the calcium chloride tube.

$$\frac{12}{44} \times \frac{a}{w} \times 100 = \text{per cent. of carbon.}$$

$$\frac{2}{18} \times \frac{b}{w} \times 100 = \text{per cent. of hydrogen.}$$

*Example.*—0.1510 gram of oxalic acid gave 0.1055 gram of  $\text{CO}_2$  and 0.068 gram of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

$$\frac{12 \times 0.1055 \times 100}{44 \times 0.1510} = 19.05 \text{ per cent. of carbon.}$$

$$\frac{2 \times 0.068 \times 100}{18 \times 0.1510} = 5.00 \text{ per cent. of hydrogen.}$$

Calculated for  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}_8$ : C = 19.04 per cent.; H = 4.76 per cent.

As a rule, the carbon is a little too low through loss of moisture from the potash apparatus, whilst the hydrogen is too high, probably through incomplete drying of the air and oxygen from the gas-holders. The discrepancy should not exceed 0.2 per cent. of the theoretical amount. If the substance burns with difficulty it should be mixed with fine copper oxide in the manner described under quantitative estimation of nitrogen (p. 18).

**The Combustion of Volatile and Hygroscopic Substances.**—If the substance is a non-volatile liquid it may be weighed in a boat like a solid; if it is hygroscopic the boat must be enclosed and weighed in a stoppered tube. If it is a volatile liquid a glass bulb or tube, drawn out into a neck as shown in Fig. 11, must be used. The bulb is first weighed, and the liquid is introduced by warming the bulb gently to expand the air and then inverting the open neck under the liquid. The operation may require repeating. The tube is then sealed and weighed again. Before introducing the bulb into the tube the neck is nicked with a file and broken off. It is then placed in the boat and pushed into the combustion tube. In the combustion of a substance like naphthalene, which is moderately volatile, the greater part is vaporised by the heat of the copper oxide spiral in contact with the boat. The burners are therefore not lighted under the boat until towards the close of the combustion. In the case of a highly volatile compound like ether, a combustion tube is used which projects at least 15 cm. (6 in.) beyond the back of the furnace. The bulb containing the substance is then placed just outside the furnace, and then the spiral in contact with it. A small Bunsen flame is placed under the end of the spiral away from the substance, the heat from which is sufficient to completely volatilise the substance at a convenient speed.



FIG. 11

**The Combustion of Organic Substances containing Nitrogen.**—The following modification must be introduced in cases where the

organic substances contain nitrogen. As the nitrogen may be liberated in the form of one or other of its oxides, which are liable to be absorbed in the potash apparatus, a source of error is introduced, which may be eliminated in the following way. A spiral of metallic copper is brought into the front end of the combustion tube, which, when red hot, reduces the oxides of nitrogen. The free nitrogen then passes through unabsorbed. About 13 to 15 cm. (5 to 6 in.) of coarse copper oxide is removed from the front end of the tube, and after inserting an asbestos plug, the space left by the oxide is filled with a roll of copper gauze 13 to 15 cm. (5 to 6 in.) long. The copper spiral must have a clean metallic surface, which is easily produced in the following way. Take a large test-tube or boiling tube, an inch or so longer than the spiral, and push down to the bottom a small pad of asbestos. Pour in about 5 c.c. of pure methyl alcohol.

Have a cork at hand which fits loosely into the mouth of the test-tube. Wrap the tube round with a duster. Hold the copper spiral with the crucible tongs in a large blow-pipe flame until it is red hot throughout and slide it quickly into the test-tube. The methyl alcohol reduces the film of oxide on the copper and is at the same time oxidised to formaldehyde, the vapours of which attack the eyes if the tube is brought too near the face. The alcohol takes fire at the mouth of the test-tube. When the flame dies down insert the loose cork and let the tube cool. The spiral, which has now a bright surface, is withdrawn, and the excess of alcohol removed by shaking it. It must now be thoroughly dried. Place the spiral in a hard glass tube a few inches longer than the spiral and fitted at each end with a cork, into which short, narrow glass tubes are inserted. Attach one end of the tube to an apparatus for evolving carbon dioxide, which is thoroughly dried by passing it through concentrated sulphuric acid. When the air is expelled from the tube, heat it gently until the alcohol is removed. Then let the tube cool while the gas is passing through. The spiral is then removed and placed in the front of the combustion tube. The combustion is carried out in the manner already described, but a current of air is substituted for oxygen until all the hydrogen has been expelled, *i.e.*, until water ceases to condense in the front of the tube. The burners under the metallic copper are then

gradually extinguished, and the spiral is allowed to cool whilst the current of air is replaced by oxygen. By the time the oxygen reaches the spiral, the latter should have so far cooled that it remains unoxidised. The current of oxygen is continued until a glowing chip is kindled at the end of the potash apparatus and the operation is completed by turning on the air as previously described.

A convenient substance to use for analysis is acetanilide, see Preparation 66, p. 169.

**Combustion of Organic Compounds containing Halogens and Sulphur.**—When the halogens or sulphur are present in an organic compound, they are liable to be absorbed either in the free state or in combination with oxygen in the potash apparatus. In this case, fused lead chromate broken up into small pieces must replace the coarse copper oxide in the combustion tube. The halogens and sulphur are retained by the lead, the former as the halide salt, and the latter as lead sulphate. Special care must be taken in using lead chromate that the temperature of the furnace is not too high, as otherwise the chromate fuses to the glass, and the combustion tube then cracks on cooling.

**Nitrogen (Dumas).**—According to this method, a weighed quantity of the substance is heated with copper oxide in a tube filled with carbon dioxide. The carbon and hydrogen form respectively carbon dioxide and water, and the nitrogen which is liberated in the form of gas is collected over caustic potash (which absorbs the carbon dioxide) and measured.

The following apparatus is required :—

1. *A combustion furnace* of the ordinary form.
2. *A short furnace* of simple construction, such as used in Turner's method for estimating carbon in steel (Fig. 12). It should carry an iron trough about 30 cm. (12 in.) long, fixed at such a height that it can be heated by an ordinary Bunsen burner.
3. *A combustion tube*, which may be rather longer than that used in the estimation of carbon and hydrogen.

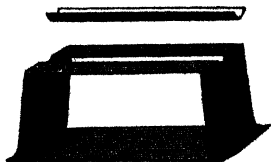


FIG. 12.

4. *A short hard glass tube*, 25—28 cm. (10—11 in.) long, and closed at one end.

5. *A bent tube with a bulb*, blown in the centre, as shown at *a*, Fig. 13. This is attached by rubber corks to the ends of the long and short combustion tubes.

6. *A graduated Schiff's Azotometer*, Fig. 13.—A small quantity of mercury is first poured into the bottom of the tube so as to fill

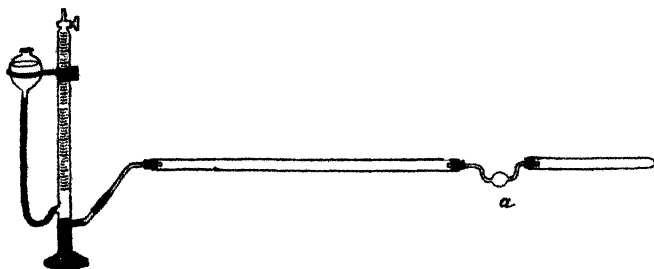


FIG. 13.

it 4—5 mm. above the lower side limb. A solution of potash ( $\text{KOH} : 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) is then poured into the glass reservoir, which is attached to the upper straight side limb by a rubber tube. By raising the reservoir and opening the tap the tube is filled, and remains so on closing the tap and lowering the reservoir. When the tube is filled with potash solution there should be sufficient mercury at the bottom to seal off the potash solution from the bent limb, which connects with the combustion tube.



FIG. 14.

7. *Two flasks, 200 c.c. and 300 c.c.*—The necks are slightly constricted in the blow-pipe flame, so that the end of the combustion tube slips in as far as the constriction (Fig. 14). The flasks are fitted with good corks.

8. *A spiral of copper gauze*, 15 cm. (6 in.) long, which is reduced in methyl alcohol as described on p. 14. The spiral should be reduced just before use when the tube is filled and ready. It is unnecessary to remove all the alcohol from the spiral by heating it in a current of carbon dioxide. It is sufficient to whisk it sharply through the air and shake off the excess of liquid.

9. *A sufficient quantity of coarse copper oxide to fill the combustion tube two-thirds full and a further quantity of fine copper oxide to occupy 10—13 cm. (4—5 in.) of the tube.*

10. *Two shallow tin dishes, 10—13 cm. (4—5 in.) in diameter for roasting copper oxide. These dishes can be obtained from the ironmonger in different sizes and are useful in the laboratory for a variety of purposes, such as for oil, metal or sand-baths.*

11. *A square of copper gauze of moderate mesh of the area of the tin dish. It is turned up at the edges and is used for sifting the coarse from the fine copper oxide after each combustion.*

12. *Pure sodium bicarbonate,  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , in powder free from ammonia. In place of a separate tube of bicarbonate, a carbon dioxide Kipp containing marble and hydrochloric acid or other apparatus for evolving carbon dioxide may be used.<sup>1</sup> If a Kipp is used the gas should be washed through a wash-bottle containing water and permanently attached to the apparatus. When the air in the Kipp and wash-bottle has once been displaced, the apparatus should be used exclusively for nitrogen estimations and the outlet tube carefully closed after each operation.*

**Filling the Combustion Tube.**—A plug of asbestos is first pushed in from one end far enough to leave room for the copper spiral, which should lie well within the furnace. This end of the tube is subsequently attached to the azotometer and may be called the *front* end. The coarse copper oxide is heated over a Bunsen burner in one of the shallow tin dishes and the fine oxide in another. After about a quarter to half an hour the burners are extinguished and the oxides whilst still warm are introduced into their respective

<sup>1</sup> The following apparatus of Young and Caldwell (Fig. 15) will also be found convenient. It consists of a Woulff bottle containing a mixture of equal volumes of sulphuric acid and water into which a concentrated solution of potassium carbonate is admitted from the tap-funnel (the limb of which dips into mercury which acts as a trap) and thence through the small hole below the cork into the acid. The bottle is furnished with a safety-valve at the side, consisting of a bulb tube containing a little mercury, and the mouth plugged with cotton wool. The flow of gas is regulated by the tap-funnel and outlet tap, an excess of gas escaping through the safety valve.



flasks with drawn-out necks; the flasks are closed with corks and allowed to cool. The back end of the combustion tube is now pushed horizontally into the neck of the coarse oxide flask and the oxide poured on to the plug by tilting the flask and tube. The tube is filled with oxide about two-thirds of its length. Into the flask containing the fine oxide about 0.2 gram of powdered substance (acetanilide may be conveniently used, see Prep. 66, p. 169) is weighed out by difference from a sample tube, which should contain the approximate quantity. The substance is then well mixed with the oxide by shaking the flask. The contents of the flask are carefully poured into the tube above the coarse oxide in the manner described and the flask is rinsed out with coarse oxide, which is

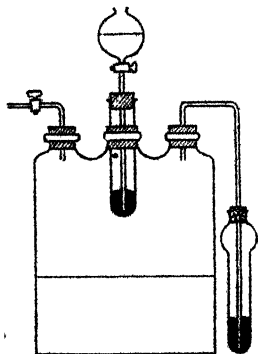


FIG. 15.

likewise poured into the tube until it is filled to the full length of the furnace. A loose plug of asbestos is pushed in to keep the materials in position and the tube is tapped horizontally on the bench in order to form a channel above the layer of fine copper oxide. The tube is now laid in the furnace, which is tilted a little forwards in order to collect the moisture at the front end of the tube. The short closed tube is well packed with powdered sodium bicarbonate and tapped horizontally so as to form a good channel above the whole length of the substance. It is laid in the small furnace, which is also tilted forwards to drain off the water which is formed. The bicarbonate and the combustion tubes are connected by the bulb tube already described. The copper spiral is now reduced and pushed into the front of the tube up to the plug and finally the azotometer is attached by its bent tube. The arrangement of the tubes and their contents are shown in Figs. 13 and 16.

**The Combustion.**—The tap of the azotometer is opened and the reservoir lowered so as to empty as far as possible the graduated tube. The joints of the apparatus being well secured, begin by cautiously heating the bicarbonate near the closed end of the tube

with a good burner, and concentrate the heat by tiles placed on each side. A rapid stream of carbon dioxide is at once evolved. When it begins to slacken, push the burner on  $\frac{1}{2}$  cm. or so in order to maintain a continuous and rapid stream. The quicker the stream of gas the sooner is the air expelled, for the gas then pushes the column of air before it like a piston, before the latter has time to diffuse. In about ten minutes, the row of burners beneath the spiral and the coarse oxide to within 10 cm. (4 in.) of the fine oxide may be lighted. In another fifteen minutes, the gas which is passing through the tube may be tested. The current is allowed to slow down a little, and the graduated tube of the azotometer is then filled with potash solution by raising the reservoir and closing the tap. On gradually lowering the reservoir, a few bubbles will pass up the graduated tube.

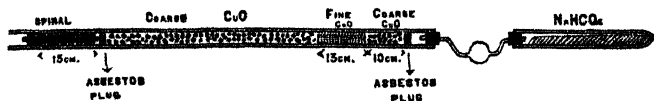


FIG. 16.

By the time they reach the top of the tube, the size of the bubbles should have become so minute that when collected at the top they occupy no appreciable volume, but appear as a fine froth. If this is not the case, open the tap, run out the solution and continue as before to drive carbon dioxide through the tube. Repeat the test in another five minutes. Not more than half the bicarbonate should have been utilised in expelling the air. The air being removed, the combustion of the substance is commenced. The azotometer is filled with the potash solution, the tap closed, and the reservoir lowered as far as possible. The current of carbon dioxide is allowed to slacken, but it must not be completely stopped. The front portion of the combustion tube will by this time have reached a dull red heat. A few more burners are now lighted on both sides of the fine oxide. Finally, the layer of fine oxide is gradually heated and the process conducted in much the same manner as that described under the estimation of carbon and hydrogen. The combustion is regulated by the speed of the bubbles passing up the azotometer tube, which should enable them to be readily

counted. The burners being all lighted and the tube red hot throughout, the tiles above the substance are closed. The current of gas will shortly slacken. The residual nitrogen is then expelled from the tube by moving on the flame beneath the bicarbonate and causing a fresh stream of carbon dioxide to sweep through the tube. Care must be taken that the stream of gas is not too rapid as otherwise the potash solution may become saturated and driven completely into the reservoir. The burners may now be extinguished and a reading of the level in the azotometer taken every few minutes until it remains constant and the bubbles are completely absorbed. Remove the azotometer by slipping out the cork from the front of the combustion tube, and hang a thermometer beside it. Do not, however, stop the flow of carbon dioxide until the tube is nearly cold. In this way, the copper spiral remains quite bright and may be used for a second determination without being reduced.

When the azotometer has stood for an hour in a cool place, adjust the level by raising the reservoir so that the liquid in the tube and reservoir stands at the same height. Read off the volume and at the same time note the temperature and the barometric pressure.

The percentage of nitrogen may be calculated as follows :—

$v$  is the observed volume of nitrogen.

$B$  is the height of the barometer in mm.

$t$  is the temperature.

$f$  is the vapour tension of the potash solution, which may be taken to be equal to that of water without serious error.

The volume corrected to  $0^\circ$  and 760 mm. will be given by the following expression :—

$$\frac{v \times 273 \times (B - f)}{(273 + t) 760}$$

As the weight of 1 c.c. of nitrogen at  $0^\circ$  and 760 mm. is 0.00126 gram, the percentage weight of nitrogen will be given by the expression

$$\frac{v \times 273 \times (B - f)}{(273 + t) 760} \times \frac{0.00126 \times 100}{w}$$

where  $w$  is the weight of substance taken.

*Example.*—0.206 gram of acetanilide gave 18.8 c.c. of moist N at 17° and 756 mm. [*f* at 17° = 14.5 mm.]

$$\frac{18.8 \times 273 \times (756 - 14.5) \times 0.126}{(273 + 17) \times 760 \times 0.206} = 10.56 \text{ per cent.}$$

Calculated for  $C_8H_9ON$ ; N = 10.37 per cent.

Instead of collecting the gas over dilute potash solution, it is often customary to use a very strong solution consisting of equal weights of potash and water. The vapour tension is practically *nil*. Or, again, the nitrogen may be transferred to a graduated tube standing over water, which gives a result free from any error arising from incorrect

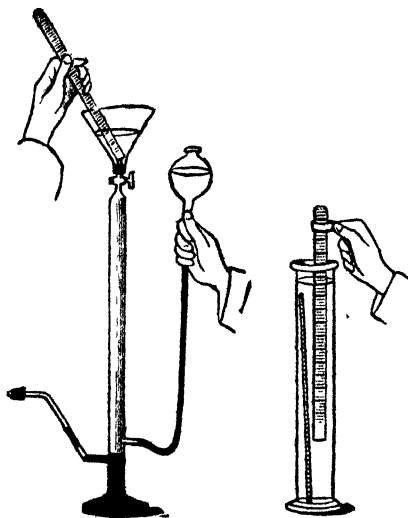


FIG. 17.

vapour tension. The manner of transferring the gas is shown in Fig. 17. The stem of a wide funnel is cut off and attached by rubber to the top of the azotometer. This is then filled with water and the projecting end of the azotometer is also filled with water. A graduated tube is now brought over the end, and by opening the tap and raising the reservoir the gas passes into the tube. The end is now closed with the thumb and transferred to a cylinder of water.

The tube is held by a collar of paper, whilst the level is adjusted and the volume and temperature are noted.

Before commencing a second determination, the contents of the combustion tube are emptied on to the wire-gauze sieve,

placed over one of the tin dishes, and the fine and coarse oxide separated. Both oxides are roasted in order to reoxidise any reduced copper, and transferred as before to their respective flasks. The sodium bicarbonate tube is emptied into a special bottle and then replenished with fresh material. Fresh caustic potash solution is also introduced into the azotometer, unless the stronger solution is used.

*Estimation of Nitrogen, Second Method.*—Another method which dispenses with the small furnace and bicarbonate tube may also be used. The long combustion tube is closed at one end and magnesite in small lumps is introduced into the tube and shaken down to the closed end until there is a layer of about 13—15 cm. (5—6 in.). This is kept in place by a plug of asbestos and the tube is filled successively with 5 cm. (2 in.) of coarse copper

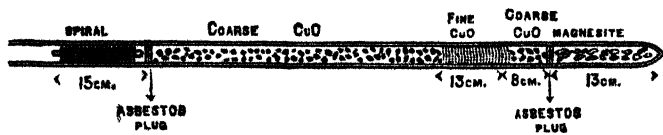


FIG. 18.

oxide, then fine copper oxide mixed with the substance, a further layer of coarse copper oxide, and finally the copper spiral. The contents of the tube are arranged as shown in Fig. 18.

The magnesite ( $\text{MgCO}_3$ ), which evolves carbon dioxide on heating, takes the place of the sodium bicarbonate in the previous method. The air is displaced at the beginning by heating the magnesite near the closed end of the tube. The magnesite is again heated towards the end of the combustion to sweep out the last traces of nitrogen. The disadvantages of the method are that the magnesite requires to be heated much more strongly than the sodium bicarbonate before it evolves carbon dioxide, and the length of the layer of copper oxide is curtailed.

**Kjeldahl's Method.**—The organic compound is heated strongly with sulphuric acid, which oxidises the organic matter and converts the nitrogen into ammonium sulphate. The ammonia is then estimated volumetrically by distilling with caustic soda and collecting the gas in standard acid. About 0.5 gram of substance is accurately weighed and introduced into a round Jena flask

(500 c.c.), together with 15 c.c. of pure concentrated sulphuric acid and about 10 grams of anhydrous potassium sulphate. The object of the latter is to promote oxidation by raising the boiling-point of the liquid. The flask is clamped over wire-gauze and the contents boiled briskly until the liquid, which first darkens in colour, becomes clear and colourless or faintly yellow. When the decomposition is complete ( $\frac{1}{2}$ —1 hour), the flask is left to cool and the contents are then diluted with 2—3 volumes of water. The flask is now attached to the distilling apparatus shown in Fig. 19. It is furnished with a rubber cork, through which a bulb adapter is inserted (to retain any alkali which may spurt upwards), the latter being connected with an upright condenser. The end of the condenser just dips below the surface of 25 c.c. of a half-normal solution of hydrochloric or sulphuric acid, contained in a flask or beaker. Thirty grams of caustic soda in 60 c.c. of water are carefully poured down

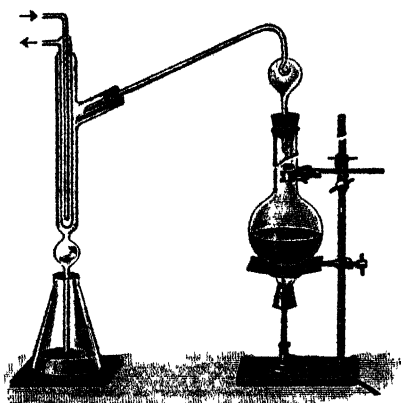


FIG. 19.

the side of the flask so as to mix the contents as little as possible, and after introducing a few pieces of porous earthenware or granulated zinc to prevent bumping, the cork is quickly inserted. The flask is now shaken to mix the contents and the liquid boiled briskly until no more ammonia is evolved ( $\frac{1}{2}$ — $\frac{3}{4}$  hour). This should be ascertained by testing a drop of the distillate with red litmus paper. If the operation is complete, the liquid is titrated with half-normal sodium carbonate solution, using methyl orange as indicator.

*Example.*—0.5151 gram acetanilide required 17.3 c.c.  $N/2$  sodium carbonate :—

$$25 - 17.3 = 7.7. \quad \frac{7.7 \times 0.007 \times 100}{0.5151} = 10.46 \text{ per cent.}$$

**The Halogens (Carius).—**The method of Carius, which is usually employed, consists in oxidising the substance with fuming nitric acid under pressure in presence of silver nitrate. The silver halide which is formed is then separated by filtration and weighed.

The following apparatus is required :—

1. *A piece of thick-walled soft tubing* about 45—48 cm. (18—19 in.) long, and 12—13 mm. inside diameter, the walls being at least 2·5—3 mm. thick. Tubes of hard potash glass are also used, in which case the thickness of the walls may be rather less. The tube is carefully sealed at one end so that there is no thickening of the glass at any point into a blob. If a blob is formed, it may be removed by heating it and blowing gently into the tube and repeating the operation if necessary. Tubes of soft or hard glass may be bought ready sealed at one end. The tube is washed out and dried before use.

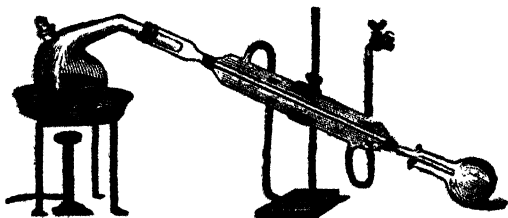


FIG. 20.

2. *A narrow weighing-tube*, 8—10 cm. (3—4 in.) long and sealed at one end, which will slip easily into the thick-walled tube.

3. *Pure fuming nitric acid of sp. gr. 1·5.*—This is prepared by distilling equal volumes of concentrated nitric acid (150 c.c.), and concentrated sulphuric acid (150 c.c.) from a litre retort, the neck of which has been bent in the blow-pipe flame as in Fig. 20. The object of this bend is to prevent acid from spurting into the neck and being carried over mechanically into the receiver during distillation. The retort is placed on a sand-bath, and attached to a condenser. The acids are poured in through a funnel, and a few small bits of broken unglazed pot are dropped in to prevent bumping. The acid is distilled with a moderate flame until about 70 c.c. have collected in the receiver, when the operation is stopped. The distillate is then tested for halogens by diluting a sample largely with distilled water, and adding silver nitrate solution.

The liquid should remain perfectly clear. It should also be tested for the presence of sulphuric acid, in case it is required for sulphur estimations, by adding a few drops of barium chloride to a fresh portion of acid diluted as above. If pure, it is kept in a stoppered

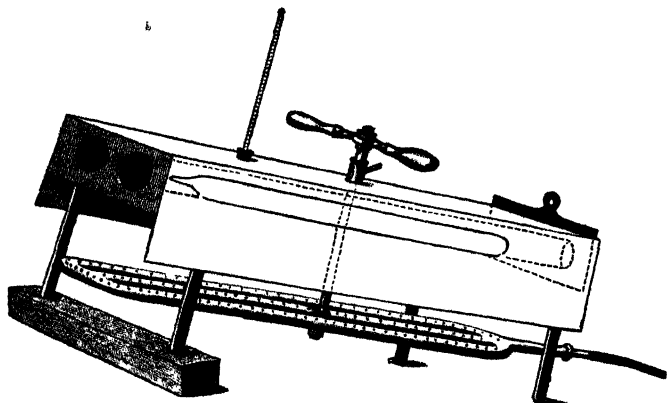


FIG. 21.

bottle. If it contains chlorine, it must be redistilled over a few crystals of silver nitrate. Fuming nitric acid has a sp. gr. about 1.5 at 15°, boils at about 90°, and contains about 90 per cent. of  $\text{HNO}_3$ . Acid of this strength can be purchased.

4. *A Tube Furnace.*—Various forms of furnace are used. Those which are heated on the principle of the Lothar Meyer hot-air furnace by a number of pin-hole gas jets are easily regulated, and can be raised to a high temperature. The Gattermann furnace, shown in the diagram (Fig. 21), is a very convenient form.

**Filling and Sealing the Tube.**—By means of a thistle funnel with a long stem, about 5 c.c. of fuming nitric acid are first introduced, and the funnel is carefully withdrawn so as not to wet the side of the tube. About 0.5 gram silver nitrate in crystals is dropped in, and finally the narrow weighing-tube containing 0.2–0.3 gram of substance is slipped to the bottom of the tube (see Fig. 22). Bromacetanilide (see Prep. 67, p. 171) may be used for this estimation. The open end of the tube is now



FIG. 22.



sealed in the blow-pipe. This operation requires some care and a little skill. About two inches of the tube at the open end is very gradually heated by revolving it for several minutes in the smoky flame of the blowpipe. The tube is now grasped about the middle with the left hand, and inclined at an angle of about  $45^\circ$ . The blast is turned on slowly, and the end of the tube heated and revolved until the glass begins to soften. The end of a glass rod, about 13 cm. (5 in.) long, held in the right hand, is heated at the same time. The glass rod is then used to press the edges of the glass tube together, as shown in Fig. 24. The subsequent operation depends upon whether soft or hard

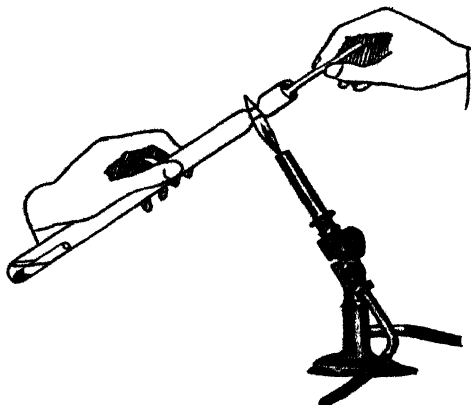


FIG. 23.

glass is to be manipulated. If soft glass is used, the blow-pipe flame is made as hot as possible, but reduced in length to about 8 to 10 cm. (3 to 4 in.). It is directed at a point about 2 to 3 cm. (1 in.) below the open end to which the glass rod is attached, the glass rod now serving as a support whilst the tube is slowly rotated. The glass, if evenly heated and not drawn out, begins to thicken where the flame plays upon it, and the inside diameter of the tube contracts. When the apparent inside diameter of the tube is reduced to about 3 mm. ( $\frac{1}{8}$  in.), the tube is quickly removed from the flame, and a capillary end formed by very slowly drawing out the thickened part of the tube (Fig. 25). When the capillary has so far cooled as to become rigid, it is sealed off. The tube will

now have the appearance shown in Fig. 26. The tube is kept in a vertical position until cold. If the tube is of hard glass, a somewhat different method of sealing is employed. As soon as the glass is sufficiently soft, it is not thickened, but drawn out at once into a wide capillary, about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cm. long. By directing the flame below this constriction, and continuing to draw out, the capillary is further lengthened. When it has a length of 2 to 3 cm. (1 in.) it is thickened by revolving it in the flame and then sealed off. Hard glass is much more easily manipulated in the oxy-coal gas flame. When cold, the tube is transferred to the metal cylinder of the tube furnace. The furnace, conveniently isolated in case of explosions, should stand on the floor, with the open end raised and

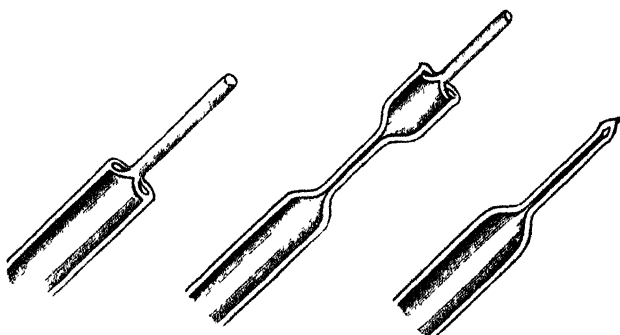


FIG. 24.

FIG. 25.

FIG. 26.

facing a wall. The capillary point should project a little beyond the open end of the metal cylinder in which the sealed tube is enclosed. The temperature, indicated by a thermometer fixed in the top of the furnace, is carefully regulated. It is advisable to commence the operation in the morning. The temperature is gradually raised from  $150^{\circ}$  to  $200^{\circ}$  during four hours, and then to  $250^{\circ}$  for a further four hours. The gas is then extinguished, and the tube allowed to cool until the following morning.

**Opening the Sealed Tube.**—The tube is drawn a little way out of the iron casing, so that the capillary end projects 3 or 4 cm. The tip is then warmed cautiously in the Bunsen flame to expel the liquid which as a rule condenses there. The point is then heated until the glass softens, when the pressure inside perforates the glass

and nitrous fumes are evolved. *On no account must the tube be removed from the furnace before this operation is concluded.* The tube is now taken away and opened. A deep file scratch is made in the wide part of the tube, about 3 cm. below the capillary. The end of a glass rod, heated to redness, is then held against the file mark. A crack is produced, which may be prolonged round the tube by touching the tube in front of the crack with the hot end of the glass rod. The top of the tube is now easily removed;

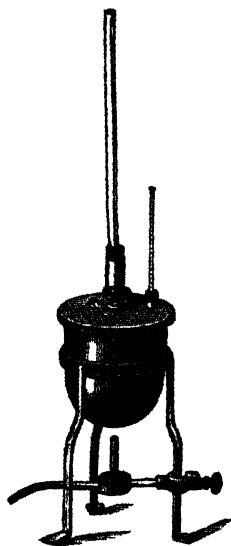


FIG. 27.

but in order to prevent fragments of glass from the broken edge from dropping into the acid, the tube should be held horizontally and the end carefully broken off. Any bits of glass which become detached adhere to the side of the tube, near the open end, and can be easily wiped off. The contents of the tube containing the silver halide are now carefully diluted by adding water a few c.c. at a time, and then washed into a beaker. The mixture is heated to boiling until clear, the silver compound transferred to a filter, and washed with hot water until free from silver nitrate. The filter paper is then dried in a steam oven and the silver salt weighed. A simpler and more accurate method for filtering and weighing the silver halide is to use a perforated or Gooch crucible. A disc of filter paper is cut with a cork cutter of suitable dimensions to fit the bottom of the crucible, which is dried with the crucible in a Victor Meyer air-bath (Fig. 27) heated to 140—150° until constant. The air-bath consists of a jacketed copper vessel fixed upon a tripod. A liquid of constant boiling-point is poured into the outer jacket and the vapours are condensed by an upright condenser or tube which is attached to the outlet tube. The crucible is placed within and covered with a metal lid. There is a small aperture to admit air from below into the inner vessel and a corresponding outlet in the lid. Aniline, b.p. 182°, may be used in the outer jacket in the present case. The Gooch crucible

is weighed and fitted to a filter flask and the silver halide filtered and washed at the pump. The crucible is then heated in the air-bath until the weight is constant ( $\frac{1}{2}$  hour) and weighed. The result is calculated in percentage of halogen.

*Example.*—Bromacetanilide gave the following result :—

0.151 gram gave 0.134 gram AgBr.

$$\frac{0.134 \times 80 \times 100}{188 \times 0.151} = 37.51 \text{ per cent.}$$

Calculated for  $C_8H_8BrNO$ ; Br = 37.38 per cent.

**Another Method (Piria and Schiff).**—There are some substances which are incompletely decomposed with fuming nitric acid under the conditions described above, and the results are consequently too low. In such cases the following method may be employed. The substance is weighed into a very small platinum crucible, which is then filled up with a mixture of anhydrous sodium carbonate (1 part) and pure powdered quick-lime (4 to 5 parts), both free from chlorine. The crucible is then inverted in a larger crucible, the space between the two being filled with the same mixture of sodium carbonate and lime. The large crucible is now heated, first with a small blow-pipe flame, and then more strongly until the mass is red hot. The contents are then allowed to cool, and dissolved in a large excess of dilute nitric acid. The substance must be added slowly and the acid kept cool. The halogen is then precipitated with silver nitrate and estimated in the usual way.

**Sulphur (Carius).**—The process is essentially the same as that described under the estimation of halogens (p. 24). The compound is oxidised in a sealed tube with fuming nitric acid, but without the addition of silver nitrate. The resulting sulphuric acid is then precipitated and weighed as barium sulphate. The same quantities of acid and substance (diphenylthiourea may be used; see Prep. 75, p. 180) are taken, and the process of sealing up and heating, etc., is carried out in precisely the same way as for the halogens. The contents of the tube, after heating, are cautiously diluted with water and then washed out into a beaker, and filtered, if necessary, from fragments of glass. The filter paper is then well washed with hot water and the filtrate diluted to at least 250 c.c. with water. A few c.c. of dilute hydrochloric acid are added and the liquid is heated to boiling. A few c.c. of barium chloride solution are added

until no further precipitate appears to be formed. On continued heating over a small flame the liquid clears and the precipitate subsides. The addition of another drop of barium chloride will determine if the precipitation is complete. The liquid is then filtered through an ordinary funnel, the precipitate of barium sulphate washed with hot water, dried, and weighed in the usual way.

*Example.*—Diphenylthiourea gave the following result :—

0.2518 gram gave 0.2638 gram  $\text{BaSO}_4$ .

$$\frac{0.2638 \times 32 \times 100}{233 \times 0.2518} = 14.39 \text{ per cent.}$$

Calculated for  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{12}\text{N}_2\text{S}$ ; S = 14.05.

A modification of the above method is to add to the tube before sealing a few crystals of barium nitrate along with the nitric acid. The resulting barium sulphate is then washed on to the filter and weighed.

### Determination of Molecular Weight

According to Avogadro's law, equal volumes of all gases under similar conditions contain the same number of molecules. Consequently the weights of equal volumes or the densities of gases will represent the ratio of their molecular weights. If the densities are compared with hydrogen as the unit, the ratio

$$\Delta = \frac{W_s}{W_h}$$

in which  $W_s$  and  $W_h$  are the weights of equal volumes of substance and hydrogen respectively, will give the molecular weight of the substance compared with the molecule or two atoms of hydrogen or half the molecular weight compared with one atom of hydrogen. Consequently the observed density must be multiplied by two in order to obtain the molecular weight compared with one atom of hydrogen.

**Vapour Density Method (Victor Meyer).**—This method, which is generally employed for substances which volatilise without decomposition, is known as the *air displacement* method of Victor Meyer. It consists in rapidly vaporising a known weight of a substance at a constant temperature at least  $40$ — $50^\circ$  above its boiling-point in a special form of apparatus, which admits of the displaced air

being collected and measured. The volume occupied by a given weight of the substance under known conditions is thus ascertained and from these data the density is calculated. The following apparatus is required :—

1. *A Victor Meyer Apparatus* as shown in Fig. 28. It consists of an elongated glass bulb with a narrow stem and a capillary side-tube. It is provided with a well-fitting rubber cork, which can be pressed easily and tightly into the open end of the stem. The apparatus is clamped within an outer jacket of tin plate or copper, which holds the boiling liquid required to produce a constant temperature. It is represented as transparent in the figure.

2. *Hofmann Bottles*.—The substance, if liquid, is introduced into a small stoppered glass bottle known as a Hofmann bottle (see Fig. 29). The dry bottle with the stopper is carefully weighed and then filled with liquid through a tube drawn out into a wide capillary.

The stopper is inserted and the bottle reweighed. It should hold about 0.1 gram of substance.

3. *A narrow graduated tube* holding 50 c.c. and divided into tenths of a c.c.

4. *A large crystallising dish* which serves as a gas trough.

5. *A long and wide cylinder* in which the graduated tube can be submerged in water.

6. *A Bunsen burner with chimney*.

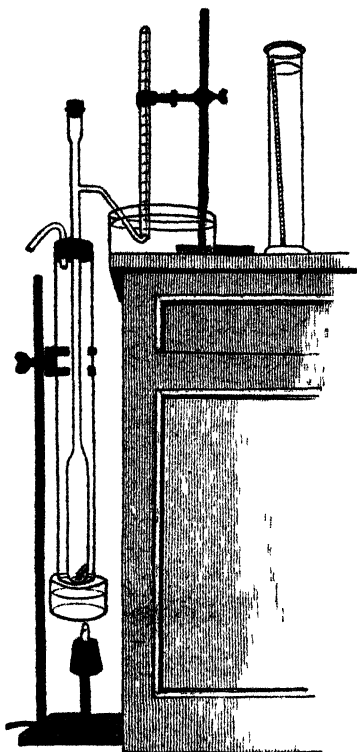


FIG. 28.



FIG. 29.

The apparatus is set up as shown in Fig. 28. The Victor Meyer apparatus is thoroughly dried by blowing air through by means of a long glass tube, which reaches to the bottom of the bulb. A small quantity of clean dry sand previously heated in a crucible or a pad of asbestos is placed at the bottom of the bulb to break the fall of the Hofmann bottle when it is dropped in. The bulb of the outer jacket is filled two-thirds full of water and the displacement apparatus is clamped within it so that it nearly touches the liquid. The apparatus and jacket must be adjusted at such a height that the capillary side limb dips under the water contained in the crystallising dish placed on the bench. The graduated tube is filled with water and inverted under the water in the crystallising dish and clamped there until required. The burner protected from draughts by the chimney is lighted under the outer jacket and the displacement apparatus left open at the top. To avoid inconvenience arising from the steam, a split cork, into which a bent glass tube is inserted, is pushed loosely into the open end of the jacket.

Whilst the water is boiling steadily and not too violently, the substance is weighed. Chloroform, b.p.  $61^{\circ}$ , or pure and dry ether, b.p.  $34.5^{\circ}$  (see Prep. 4, p. 65), may be used for the experiment, as their boiling-points lie well below that of water. Before introducing the bottle and liquid, the apparatus must be tested to ascertain if the temperature is constant. As a rule  $\frac{1}{4}$  hour's boiling suffices. Push in the rubber cork and note if within the next minute or two any bubbles escape. If not, slip the graduated tube over the end of the side-tube, and carefully remove the rubber cork so that no water enters the stem through the capillary. Remove the stopper of the Hofmann bottle before dropping it in, and at once push in the cork. Very shortly a stream of air bubbles will ascend the graduated tube. When, in the course of a minute or two, the bubbles cease, remove the cork from the apparatus and extinguish the burner. The graduated tube is transferred to the large cylinder of water by closing the open end with the thumb. Leave the tube in the water with a thermometer beside it for  $\frac{1}{4}$  hour. Lift the graduated tube, and whilst holding it by a collar of paper adjust the levels inside and out. Read off the volume and note the temperature and barometric pressure.

The density is calculated as follows :—

If  $v$  is the volume,  $t$  the temperature,  $B$  the barometric pressure, and  $f$  the vapour tension of water at  $t^\circ$ , then the corrected volume is given by the formula

$$\frac{v \times (B - f) \times 273}{760 \times (273 + t)}$$

This multiplied by 0.00009, the weight of 1 c.c. of hydrogen, gives the weight of hydrogen occupying the same volume as the vaporised substance, from which the density  $\Delta = \frac{W_s}{W_h}$  is obtained.

*Example.*—The following result was obtained with ether: 0.1146 gram of ether gave 36.3 c.c at  $11^\circ$  and 752 mm.  $f = 10$  mm. at  $11^\circ$ .

$$\frac{36.3 \times (752 - 10) \times 273 \times 0.00009}{760 \times 284} = 0.00306.$$

$$\frac{0.1146}{0.00306} = 37.4.$$

Calculated for  $C_4H_{10}O$ ;  $\Delta = 37$ .

If substances of higher boiling-point have to be vaporised, the water in the outer jacket is replaced by other liquids of correspondingly higher boiling-point, such as xylene, b.p.  $140^\circ$ , aniline, b.p.  $182^\circ$ , ethyl benzoate, b.p.  $211^\circ$ , amyl benzoate, b.p.  $260^\circ$ , diphenylamine, b.p.  $310^\circ$ , etc. A Lothar Meyer air-bath (Fig. 30) is, however, much more convenient for obtaining constant temperatures up to  $600^\circ$ . It consists of three concentric metal cylinders, the outer one being coated with non-conducting material. They are so arranged that the heated air from a movable ring burner passes between the two outer cylinders (shown in section in the figure), and descends to the bottom of the central cylinder, into which it has access through a ring of circular holes. The hot air is thoroughly

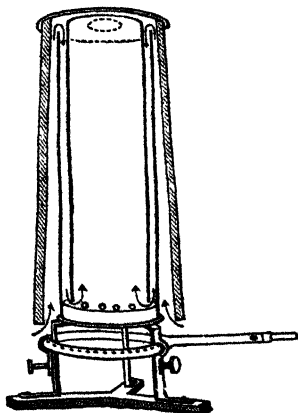


FIG. 30.



mixed by this zigzag flow, and the temperature is equalised. The bulb of the displacement apparatus is clamped in the interior cylinder, and a thermometer is fixed beside it.

The vapour density of freshly distilled aniline, b.p.  $182^{\circ}$ , may be determined, the temperature of the air-bath being adjusted to about  $240^{\circ}$ . The adjustment is made by raising or lowering the flame, or by altering the position of the movable ring burner.

*Example.*— $0.1229$  of aniline gave  $31$  c.c. at  $7.5^{\circ}$  and  $750$  mm.

$$\Delta = 45.87.$$

$$\text{Calculated for } C_6H_7N; \Delta = 46.5.$$

**The Cryoscopic or Freezing-point Method (Raoult).**—This method depends upon the fact, first demonstrated by Raoult, and afterwards confirmed on theoretical grounds by van't Hoff, that the original freezing-point of a given quantity of liquid is lowered the same number of degrees by dissolving in it different substances whose weights are proportional to their molecular weights. This rule does not, however, apply to salts, acids, etc., which appear to dissociate in certain solvents, nor to substances which form molecular aggregates or *associate* in solution. Supposing the freezing-point of  $100$  grams of a solvent to be lowered  $1^{\circ}$  by dissolving  $1, 2, 3$  and  $4$  grams, respectively, of four different substances, the molecular weights of these substances will be in the ratio of  $1:2:3:4$ . In order to convert these ratios into true molecular weights, the numbers must be multiplied by a coefficient which depends upon the nature of the particular solvent selected, and may be determined empirically by means of substances of known molecular weight or by calculation from thermodynamical data.<sup>1</sup>

If  $w$  is the weight of substance and  $W$  the weight of solvent,  $d$  the depression of the freezing-point, and  $k$  the coefficient for the solvent determined for the standard conditions, *i.e.*, for the weight of substance, which produces  $1^{\circ}$  depression in  $100$  grams of solvent, the molecular weight  $M$  is given by the following expression:—

$$M = \frac{100 kw}{dW}.$$

*Vide* van't Hoff, *Ztschr. phys. Chem.*, i. p. 481; Ostwald, *Outlines of General Chemistry*, chap. vi. p. 139; J. Walker, *Introduction to Physical Chemistry*, chap. xviii. p. 176.

The values of  $k$  for some of the common solvents with their melting-points are given in the following table :—

		m.p.	$k$ .
Water	...	0°	18·5
Nitrobenzene	...	5·3	70·0
Benzene	...	5·4	50·0
Acetic acid	...	17	39·0
Phenol	...	40	72·0
<i>p</i> -Toluidine	...	42·5	51·0

It should be remembered that nitrobenzene, phenol, and acetic acid are hygroscopic.

The following apparatus is required :—

*A Beckmann Freezing-point Apparatus.*—The form of apparatus is shown in the accompanying Fig. 31. It consists of a glass jar standing on a metal tray and furnished with a stirrer. The cover of the jar has a wide slit to admit the stirrer, and a circular aperture with clips to hold a wide test-tube.

Within the wide test-tube is a narrower one, which is held in position by a cork. The narrow test-tube is sometimes furnished with a side-tube, for introducing the substance, but it is not necessary. It is provided with a stirrer. A Beckmann thermometer completes the apparatus. This is fixed through a cork so that the bulb nearly touches the bottom of the tube, a wide slit being cut in the side of the cork for moving the stirrer. The Beckmann thermometer is of special construction and requires explanation. As the method

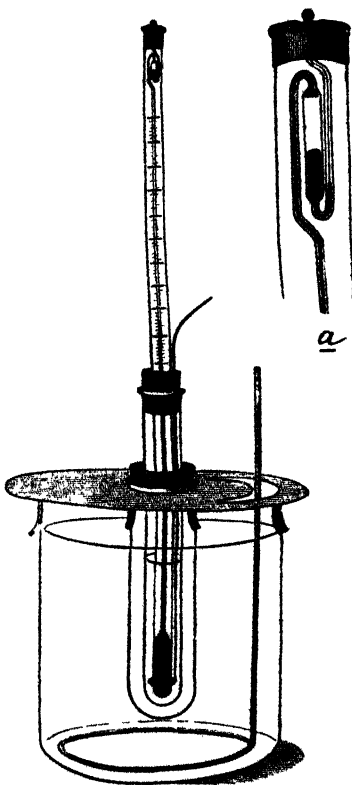


FIG. 31.

involves merely an accurate determination of small differences of temperature, it is not requisite to know the exact position on the thermometer scale. The Beckmann thermometer registers 6 degrees, which are divided into hundredths. The little glass reservoir at the top (*a*, Fig. 31) serves the purpose of adjusting the mercury column to different parts of the thermometer scale by adding or removing mercury from the bulb.

**Freezing-point Determination.**—In the example to be described, pure benzene (see p. 151) is used as the solvent. Carefully dry the inner tube. Fit it with a cork and weigh it together with the cork suspended by a wire to the arm of the balance. Introduce sufficient benzene to cover the bulb of the Beckmann thermometer when it is pushed nearly to the bottom of the tube. About 10 c.c. will be found to be sufficient. Insert the cork and weigh the tube and benzene. Fill up the outer jar with water and small lumps of ice and stir from time to time. Whilst the benzene is cooling in the apparatus the Beckmann thermometer may be adjusted.

**Adjustment of the Beckmann Thermometer.**—Determine first the value of the mercury thread in degrees between the top of the scale and the orifice of the reservoir. This may be done by warming the bulb in a water-bath along with an ordinary thermometer. As soon as sufficient mercury has collected at the orifice, the burner is removed, the water well stirred, and the little bead of mercury detached by gently tapping the head of the thermometer without removing the bulb from the water. The temperature on the ordinary thermometer is noted and is again read off when the mercury in the Beckmann thermometer has subsided to the top of the scale. Supposing, then, the value of the thread above the scale to have been determined and equivalent to  $2^{\circ}$ , and the freezing-point of benzene to be about  $4^{\circ}$ , the thermometer degrees may in this case be made to coincide with the Beckmann degrees, which will bring the thread of mercury well up the scale. The bulb of the thermometer will therefore require to be at a temperature of  $6 + 2 = 8^{\circ}$  before removing the excess of mercury. It will, however, be necessary to introduce more mercury into the bulb. This is done by inverting the thermometer and tapping it gently on the palm of the hand, so as to detach a bead of mercury, which slips down to the orifice of the capillary. By warming the bulb the mercury is driven to the top and coalesces with that in the

reservoir, so that on cooling the additional mercury runs into the bulb. When sufficient mercury has been added the thermometer is cooled to  $8^{\circ}$ , and the excess detached as described above. The zero should now coincide approximately with that of ice-cold water. If the thermometer is to be adjusted to any other temperature it is placed in water and warmed to that temperature + the number of degrees on the scale above that point + the value of the thread above the scale. The excess of mercury is then detached. The thermometer being adjusted, insert it through the cork so that the bulb is well covered by the benzene, and let the benzene cool well below its freezing-point before stirring. Tap the head of the thermometer occasionally with a pencil. Now stir briskly for a moment. As soon as crystals of the solvent begin to separate the mercury thread will shoot up. Stir occasionally and tap the thermometer, and note the maximum temperature reached by means of a lens. This gives a rough indication of the freezing-point of the benzene. Take out the inner tube and melt the crystals by warming the tube in the hand, and replace it in the apparatus. Repeat the experiment, cooling the solvent not more than  $0.2^{\circ}$  below its freezing-point before stirring. Make two or three determinations in this way. The results should not differ by more than  $0.01^{\circ}$ . Fuse some naphthalene in a basin and break it up into small lumps or mould into pellets (p. 41). Weigh a piece of about 0.1 to 0.2 gram on a watch-glass. Raise the cork of the inner tube and drop the naphthalene in. Let it dissolve and then determine the freezing-point of the benzene as before. Repeat the process by dropping one or two fresh pieces of naphthalene into the same solvent. At the end of the operation remove the thermometer and stirrer, and weigh the benzene in the inner tube with the cork. After deducting the weight of naphthalene, the weight of the benzene will be approximately the mean of the first and final weighings.

*Example.*—Using the same solvent and adding successively three lots of substance (naphthalene), the following results were obtained :—

	<i>w.</i>	<i>W.</i>	<i>a.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>Mean.</i>
1	0.0985	9.7	0.403	126	} 125.3
2	0.0729	„	0.305	123.2	
3	0.1193	„	0.480	120.8	

Calculated for  $C_{10}H_8$ ;  $M = 128$ .

In determining the molecular weight of liquids the apparatus shown in Fig. 82 (p. 256) is convenient for weighing and transferring the liquid to the tube.

**The Eykman Depressimeter.**—For rapid but less accurate determinations the apparatus of Eykman may be used, which is shown in Fig. 32. It consists of a small vessel, into the neck of which a thermometer is ground. The thermometer is of the Beckmann type but divided into twentieths of degrees. Phenol, m. p.  $42.5^{\circ}$ , is usually employed as the solvent. The vessel and thermometer are dried and weighed. Phenol melted on the water-bath



FIG. 32.

is poured in to within about 5 c.c. of the neck, the thermometer inserted, and the apparatus weighed again. The melting-point of the phenol must now be ascertained. Warm the metal over a small flame on a sand-bath so as to melt the phenol, leaving, however, a few crystals floating in the liquid, and place the vessel in the cylinder, at the bottom of which is a wire spring or pad of cotton wool. A perforated cork at the top keeps the stem of the thermometer in position. Let the phenol cool down well below its freezing-point, and then shake the cylinder until solidification commences. This will give a first approximation to the freezing-point. The phenol is now warmed gently as before until only a few crystals remain unmelted. The vessel is replaced in the cylinder and the liquid cooled  $0.5^{\circ}$  to  $1^{\circ}$  below the point previously ascertained. It is now shaken until crystallisation sets in, and then occasionally until the maximum point is reached. The operation is repeated as often as requisite. The substance is now introduced, a sufficient quantity being taken to produce a depression of at least  $0.5^{\circ}$ . In order to effect this the phenol is melted and the neck warmed with a small flame until the thermometer is loosened and can be withdrawn. As much phenol as possible is allowed to drain off the neck and off the thermometer, and the weighed quantity of substance introduced. The thermometer is replaced, and any phenol which may have run out is wiped off from the outside of the vessel, which is then re-weighed. The freezing-point is determined as before.

**The Ebullioscopic or Boiling-point Method (Raoult).**—The boiling-

point of a liquid is found to be affected by the presence of a dissolved substance in a similar manner to the freezing-point, that is, the boiling-point of a given quantity of a liquid is *raised* the same number of degrees by dissolving in it the same number of molecules of different substances, or, in other words, such weights of these substances as represent the ratio of their molecular weights. These facts were first clearly demonstrated by Raoult.

**Statical Method.**—The most convenient form of apparatus for determining molecular weight by this method is Beckmann's boiling-point apparatus shown in Fig. 33.

It consists of a boiling-tube, through the bottom of which a stout platinum wire is sealed, which is intended to conduct external heat to the liquid and form bubbles at one point. Above the wire is a layer, about an inch deep, of glass beads. The object of the beads is to break up the bubbles and so prevent superheating and irregular boiling. To the side limb a reflux condenser is attached

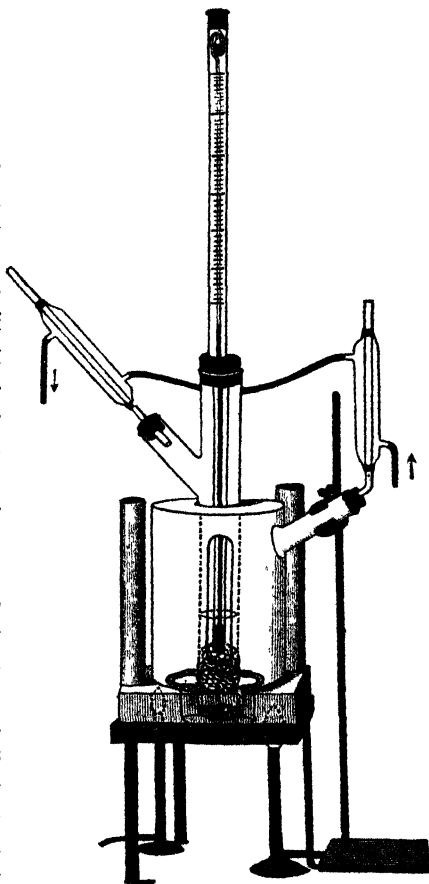


FIG. 33.

to condense the vapours given off during the boiling. A Beckmann thermometer is inserted through the mouth of the tube. This thermometer is similar in construction to that used for freezing-

point determinations, but it has a smaller bulb. The boiling-tube is placed in the central cavity of a hollow glass or porcelain jacket, which contains the same liquid as the boiling-tube and is also provided with a condenser. This jacket prevents radiation from the boiling-tube. It is provided with two windows of mica. The jacket is clamped on a gauze ring supported on a square tray of asbestos placed upon a tripod. In the figure the lower part of the porcelain jacket and the asbestos tray are made transparent to show the position of the burners and the concentric rings of asbestos below the tray. The asbestos has a circular hole in the centre, which admits the lower end of the boiling-tube. Two asbestos chimneys are fixed upright at the diagonal corners of the tray to carry off heated air and two burners are placed below the other two corners. The boiling-point of the solvent is first ascertained. For this purpose benzene may be used. The Beckmann thermometer must be adjusted so that, when in the boiling liquid, the thread occupies the lower half of the scale. In order to adjust it, the bulb must be placed in water warmed gradually  $6-7^{\circ}$  above the boiling-point of benzene, and the bead then detached as already explained in the description of the freezing-point method.

The boiling-tube is carefully dried and weighed with the beads. Sufficient benzene is poured in to cover the bulb of the thermometer, which is pushed down a little way into the beads. The condenser is attached to the side limb. A layer of 1—2 cm. of benzene is poured into the outer jacket, and the condenser fixed in position. The same water supply may be made to traverse both condensers. The two burners under the tray are lighted and the temperature is regulated so that the benzene in the outer jacket boils briskly, whilst at the same time sufficient heat finds its way to the boiling-tube, through the gauze ring outside the concentric screens of asbestos below the tray, to keep the benzene in the state of steady ebullition. In about  $\frac{1}{4}$  hour from the time the benzene boils in the inner tube the first reading may be made, and a fresh reading made every five minutes until the temperature is constant, *i.e.*, does not vary more than  $0.01^{\circ}$ . As the atmospheric pressure may produce considerable variations in the reading, it is important to observe the barometer occasionally during the experiment, and to make a correction, which is about  $0.043^{\circ}$  for every 1 mm. below 760.

The temperature being constant, a pellet (0.1—0.2 gram) of fused naphthalene is carefully weighed and dropped into the boiling-tube through the condenser without interrupting the boiling. These pellets are conveniently made in a small bullet-mould.

The boiling-point will rise and after a few minutes will remain stationary. The temperature is noted. A second and third determination may be made by introducing fresh pellets of naphthalene.

When the observations are complete, the apparatus is allowed to cool and the weight of benzene ascertained by weighing the boiling-tube and benzene.

As in the freezing-point method, the molecular weight is calculated from the weight of substance required to raise the boiling-point of 100 grams of solvent 1°, and the result multiplied by a coefficient which depends upon the nature of the solvent. The following is a list of solvents commonly employed and their coefficients and boiling-points:—

	b.p.	k.		b.p.	k.
Ether ... ..	35°	21.1	Ethyl alcohol ...	78°	11.5
Acetone ... ..	56°	17.1	Benzene ... ..	79°	26.1
Chloroform ...	61°	36.6	Water ... ..	100°	5.2
Methyl alcohol ...	66°	8.8	Acetic acid ...	118°	25.3
Ethyl acetate ...	77°	26.8	Aniline ... ..	184°	32.2

The molecular weight is determined from the formula

$$M = \frac{100 kw}{d\pi},$$

in which  $w$  is the weight of substance,  $W$  that of the solvent,  $d$  the rise of boiling-point, and  $k$  the coefficient.

*Example.*—Using the same solvent and adding successively four pellets of naphthalene, the following results were obtained:—

	$w$ .	$W$ .	$d$ .	$M$ .	<i>Mean.</i>
1	0.1866	21.313	0.185	126.6	128.3
2	0.1893	21.313	0.185	128.3	
3	0.1860	21.313	0.185	126.0	
4	0.1901	21.313	0.180	132.4	

Calculated for  $C_{10}H_8$ ;  $M = 128$ .



A simpler and more convenient form of Beckmann apparatus, requiring much less solvent and giving equally accurate results, is shown in Fig. 34. It consists of a boiling-tube furnished with two side pieces, one of which is stoppered and serves to introduce the substance and the other acts as a condenser. The boiling-tube stands on an asbestos pad and is surrounded by two short concentric glass cylinders surmounted by a mica plate. The other parts of the apparatus are similar to those in the older form and the process is conducted in the same way.

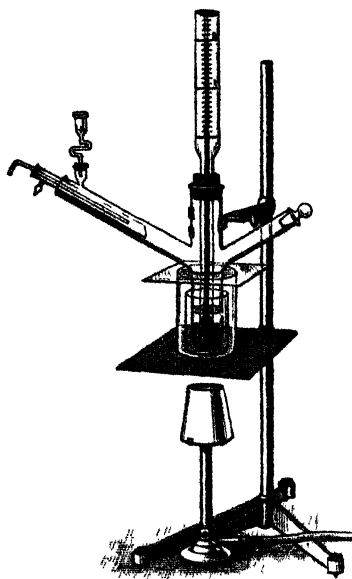


FIG. 34.

*Example.*—Ten c.c. of benzene were used and two pellets of naphthalene were added.

	<i>w.</i>	<i>W.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>Mean.</i>
1	0.2072	8.74	0.483	131.1	} 129.3
2	0.2072	8.74	0.485	127.6	

**Dynamical Method.**—A third, somewhat different and less accurate, method for determining the boiling-point is one devised by Sakurai and modified by Landsberger and later by Walker and Lumsden. The apparatus of Walker and Lumsden is shown in Fig. 35, and consists of three vessels, a boiling flask, A, a tube, B, graduated in c.c., and an outer jacket of glass, C. The boiling flask is provided with a safety tube, D, and a bent tube, E, which is connected with another bent tube, F, passing through a cork to the bottom of the graduated tube, B. A thermometer graduated in tenths is inserted through a second hole in the same cork. There is a small hole at G in the graduated tube below the cork through which the vapour of the boiling liquid escapes into the outside

jacket, and is condensed by a condenser not shown in the diagram. The outer jacket, *c*, is attached by a cork surrounding *B*. A small quantity of solvent (5—10 c.c.) is introduced into the tube *B* and a larger quantity of the same solvent into the boiling flask, *A*. The vapour from *A* passes into *B* and raises it to the boiling-point, which is read off. The excess of liquid which has condensed is poured out. The weighed substance is introduced and the boiling continued. When a steady temperature is reached, the new boiling-point is determined; the tube is immediately disconnected from the flask, the flame removed, and the volume of the solvent is read off as accurately as possible. By repeating the process, several determinations may be carried out with the same solvent and the same material. The

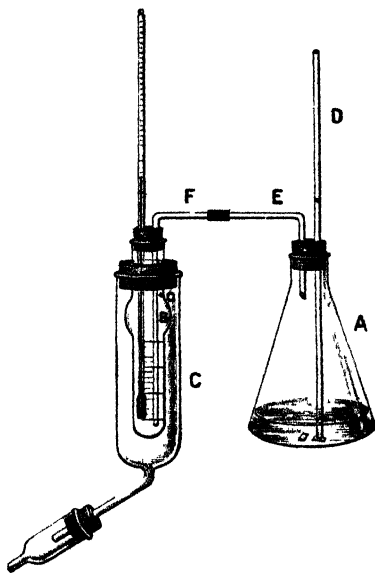


FIG. 35.

weighing of fresh solvent for each estimation of new portions of substance is also avoided. The main precautions to be taken are (1) to ensure steady boiling in the flask, *A*, by introducing fragments of porous pot, and (2) to conduct the boiling at such a rate that the drops fall slowly and regularly from the condenser. The inaccuracies of the method arise from constant change of concentration throughout the operation and from impurity in the solvent, the boiling-point of which will have a tendency to rise as the distillation proceeds. *Examples.*—

	<i>w.</i>	Volume of Solvent. <sup>1</sup>	<i>d.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>Mean.</i>
1	0.8109 gram (urea)	17.5 c.c. (alcohol)	1.04°	69	67
2	0.8190     "      "	33.1     "      "	0.52°	65	
Calculated for CON <sub>2</sub> H <sub>4</sub> ; M = 60.					

<sup>1</sup> The constants for liquids at the boiling-point (= constant divided

Although the boiling-point method is able to dispose of a greater number of convenient solvents than are suitable for freezing-point determinations, it is never so accurate, mainly on account of the difficulty of avoiding fluctuations in the boiling-point, due to radiation, to the dripping of cold liquid from the condenser, to impure solvent, and to barometric fluctuations.

### Molecular Weight of Organic Acids

**Determination by means of the Silver Salt.**—The basicity of an organic acid being known, the molecular weight can be determined by estimating the amount of metal in one of its normal salts. The ratio of metal to salt will be that of the atomic weight of the metal to the molecular weight of the salt. The silver salts are usually selected for these determinations, since they are, as a rule, normal, *i.e.*, neither acid nor basic; they are only slightly soluble in water, and are consequently readily obtained by precipitation, and finally they rarely contain water of crystallisation. On the other hand, they are very unstable, being quickly discoloured when exposed to light, and often decomposing with slight explosion when heated. Silver benzoate may be prepared by way of illustration. Weigh out roughly 2—3 grams of benzoic acid into a flask, and add about 20 c.c. of water and an excess of dilute ammonia. Boil the solution until the escaping steam has nearly lost the smell of ammonia, and then test the liquid from time to time until it is neutral to litmus. Cool the flask under the tap, and add an excess of silver nitrate solution (3—4 grams  $\text{AgNO}_3$ ). Filter with the filter-pump.

**Filtration under Reduced Pressure.**—A filter-pump is an essential part of a laboratory fitting. It consists of a good water-jet aspirator (see Fig. 36), which is fixed to the water-tap by a stout piece of rubber tubing well wired at both ends. The joint is wrapped round with cloth or leather wired on to the rubber. The side-tube of the aspirator is connected by *pump tubing* to an empty filter

by the specific gravity of the solvent at the boiling-point) are as follows :—

Alcohol	...	...	15.60	Acetone	...	...	22.20
Ether	...	...	30.30	Chloroform	...	...	26.00
Water	...	...	5.40	Benzene	...	...	32.80

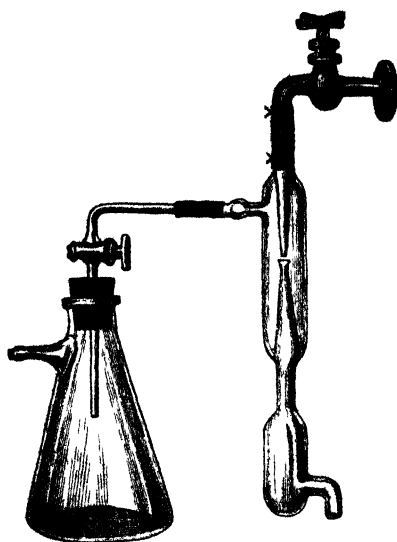


FIG. 36.

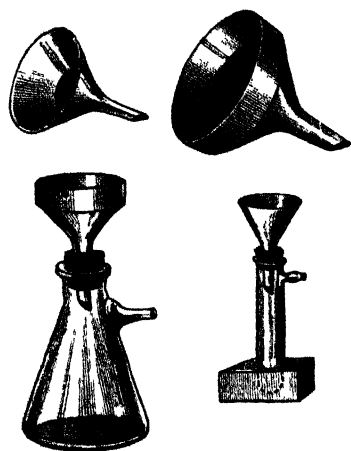


FIG. 37

flask or bottle by means of a glass tap. A second glass tube or side piece is put in connection with the filter flask by means of rubber tubing. The object of inserting a vessel between the pump and the filter flask is to prevent water running back when the aspirator is stopped. Before stopping the pump, close the glass tap. Turn off the water, and then lift the tap out of its socket for a moment to equalise the pressure.

Use a porcelain funnel and filter flask, different sizes of which are shown in Fig. 37. The bottom of the funnel is covered with a disc of filter paper. After filtering, wash three or four times

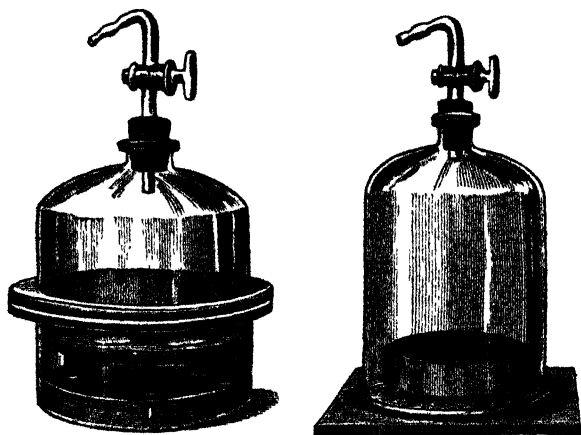


FIG. 38.

with a little cold water, press the precipitate well down and let it drain. Remove the precipitate and spread it on a piece of porous plate, and place it in a vacuum-desiccator over sulphuric acid. There are several useful forms of vacuum-desiccator, two of which are represented in Fig. 38.

The ground rims are greased with vaseline or a mixture of bees-wax and vaseline, and the air is exhausted by attaching the tube of the water-pump to the glass tap of the desiccator.

If the substance is left overnight in the desiccator it will be dry by the next day. The silver salt should be protected as far as possible from the light. When the precipitate is thoroughly dry, weigh about 0.3 gram into a weighed porcelain crucible

Cover with the lid and heat, at first gently, over a small flame. When the first reaction is over, heat the crucible for a few minutes to a dull red heat, and then allow it to cool in a desiccator. The silver salt will be completely decomposed and leave a dull white residue of silver. The crucible is now weighed and the weight of silver determined.

If  $W$  is the weight of salt,  $w$  the weight of silver, and  $n$  the basicity of the acid, the molecular weight of the silver salt is determined from the following formula :—

$$\frac{W \times 108 n}{w}$$

The molecular weight of the acid is then obtained by deducting  $n$  atoms of silver and adding  $n$  atoms of hydrogen.

*Example.*—0.3652 gram silver benzoate gave 0.1720 gram silver.

$$\frac{108 \times 0.3652}{0.1720} - 108 + 1 = 122.2.$$

Calculated for  $C_7H_6O_2$ ;  $M = 122$

### Molecular Weight of Organic Bases

**Determination by means of the Platinum Salt.**—The organic bases form, like ammonia, crystalline chloroplatinates with platonic chloride of the general formula  $B_2H_2PtCl_6$ . By estimating the amount of platinum present in the salt, it is possible to calculate the molecular weight of the platinum compound, and consequently that of the base.

Dissolve about 1 gram of an organic base (brucine, strychnine, quinine, &c.) in 10 c.c. of a mixture of equal volumes of concentrated hydrochloric acid and water. To the clear hot solution add excess of platonic chloride and let it cool. Yellow microscopic crystals of the chloroplatinate of the base separate. (If the chloroplatinate of the base is very soluble in water, such as aniline, it must be washed with strong hydrochloric acid, pressed on a porous plate and dried in a vacuum-desiccator over solid caustic potash.)

Filter on the porcelain funnel with the pump and wash three or four times with small quantities of cold water. Press the precipitate down and dry on a porous plate in the vacuum-desiccator. When thoroughly dry, weigh out about 0.5 to 1 gram of

the compound into a porcelain or platinum crucible, and heat gently with the lid on, and then more strongly until the organic matter is completely burnt away. Cool the crucible in the desiccator and weigh.

The molecular weight of the salt is calculated from the weight  $w$  of the platinum, and  $W$  of the salt, according to the formula (the atomic weight of platinum being 195):—

$$\frac{W \times 195}{w}$$

To determine from this the weight of the base, it is necessary to deduct from the molecular weight of the salt that of  $H_2PtCl_6$ , and as two molecules of the base are contained in the salt, the result is halved.

*Example.*—0.7010 gram of aniline chloroplatinate,  
 $(C_6H_5NH_2)_2H_2PtCl_6$   
 gave 0.2303 gram platinum.

$$\frac{0.7010 \times 195}{0.2303} = 594.2. \quad \text{M. W. of the salt.}$$

$$\frac{594.2 - 409.9}{2} = 92.15.$$

Calculated for  $C_6H_7N$ ;  $M = 93$ .

## SECTION II

### PREPARATIONS





## PREPARATIONS

**General Remarks.**—Carefully read through the method. References to the process are given under each heading. Be clear as to the objects of the various steps described and the nature of the materials employed. It cannot be too strongly urged that in all cases where any doubt exists as to the nature of an operation, a preliminary trial should be made in a test-tube with a small quantity of the substance. This is especially necessary in crystallisation where the quantity and character of the solvent are unknown. A vast amount of time and material is thereby saved. A small stock of clean and dry test-tubes ( $5 \times \frac{1}{2}$  and smaller sizes) should always be at hand for this purpose; also watch-glasses or glass slips for microscopic examination of solid substances.

Filtration should always be done with the water-pump, using a porcelain (Buchner) funnel (see p. 45), unless the precipitate in certain special cases is of such a character (amorphous or slimy) that a folded filter, a cloth, or a centrifuge is found to be preferable.

The yield of either the crude or purified product should always be ascertained, and the purity of the product determined either by the boiling-point or melting-point. A small rough balance with celluloid pans, for use on the bench, is indispensable.

Select vessels of a size appropriate to the quantities dealt with. Never use beakers for boiling or evaporating liquids, but flasks and basins. Use ordinary, carefully selected corks rather than rubber stoppers (which are attacked by many organic liquids), and soften them well before use in a cork squeezer. The *reactions* described at the end of each preparation are to be done in test-tubes, and should not be neglected.

Volatile and inflammable solvents such as carbon bisulphide, petroleum ether, ordinary ether, benzene and alcohol should invariably be distilled from a water-bath, and not over a sand-bath or wire-gauze.

Above all, work with suitable, compact and clean apparatus on a *clean bench*. The best results are usually obtained when the preparation is carried out with something of the care and accuracy of a quantitative analysis.

Where the *asterisk* occurs, it signifies that the operation must be conducted in the fume cupboard.

Whilst the preparation is in progress, utilise the spare minutes in reading the notes in the *Appendix*, p. 369.

To facilitate reference to general manipulative processes, which are described as they occur in conjunction with different preparations, the following table is added :—

<i>Solids.</i>	Page.
Filtration ... ..	57
Filtration under reduced pressure ...	44
Crystallisation ... ..	56
Fractional crystallisation ... ..	146
Sublimation ... ..	288
Determination of melting-point ...	83
 <i>Liquids.</i>	
Dehydration ... ..	60
Determination of boiling-point ...	63
Distillation under reduced pressure ...	100
Distillation in steam ... ..	130
Distillation with superheated steam ...	279
Fractional distillation ... ..	151
Determination of specific gravity ...	61
 <i>Liquids and Solids.</i>	
Heating under pressure ... ..	90
Determination of rotatory power...	139
Mechanical stirring ... ..	112

### Purification of Methylated Spirit and Spirits of Wine

Methylated spirit, or spirits of wine 60—70 “over-proof,” may generally replace the more costly absolute alcohol as a solvent after undergoing a process of purification. The methylated spirit must be of the old kind, consisting of a mixture of 9 parts spirit of wine and 1 part purified wood-spirit, without the addition of paraffin, *i.e.*, it should give a clear solution with water. It is, however, preferable to use rectified spirits 60—70 over-proof, which

can be bought free of duty by teaching institutions on application to the Inland Revenue Board.

Methylated spirit contains, in addition to ethyl and methyl alcohols, water, fusel-oil, acetaldehyde, and acetone. It may be freed from aldehyde by boiling with 2—3 per cent. solid caustic potash on the water-bath with an upright condenser for one hour, or if larger quantities are employed, a tin bottle is preferable, which is heated directly over a small flame (see Fig. 39). It is then distilled with the apparatus shown in Fig. 40. The bottle is here surmounted with a T-piece holding a thermometer. The distillation is stopped when most of the spirit has distilled and the thermometer indicates  $80^{\circ}$ . A further purification may be effected by adding a little powdered permanganate of potash and by a second distillation, but this is rarely necessary. The same method of purification may be applied to over-proof spirit, which will henceforth be called *spirit* as distinguished from the pure product or *absolute alcohol*.

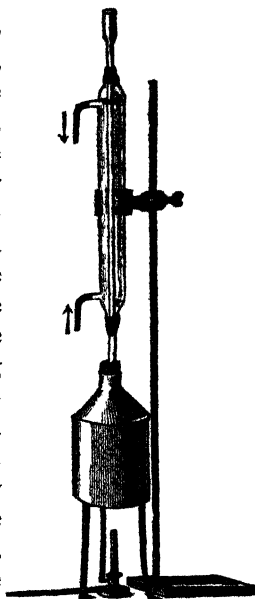


FIG. 39.

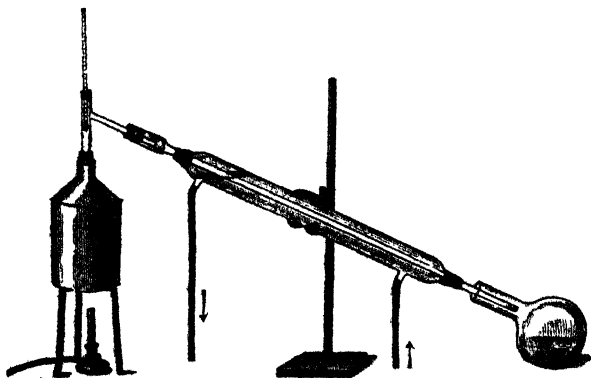


FIG. 40.

**Ethyl Alcohol,  $C_2H_5.OH$** 

Commercial absolute alcohol may be used for the preparations which follow. It is obtained by distilling crude spirits of wine over quicklime, and usually contains about 0.5 per cent. of water. To remove the last traces of water, the alcohol is boiled in a round flask or tin bottle attached to a reflux condenser as shown in Fig. 41, with the addition of about 5 grams of metallic calcium to the litre of alcohol.

*Properties.*—Pure ethyl alcohol boils at  $78.3^\circ$ , and has a sp. gr. of 0.793 at  $15^\circ$ . It mixes with water in all proportions.

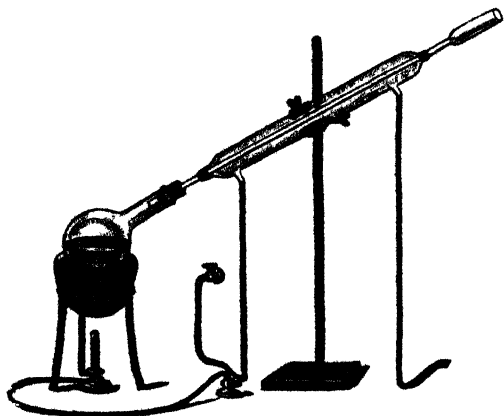
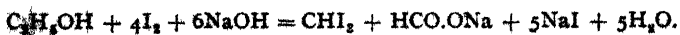


FIG 41.

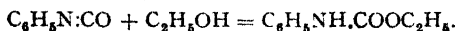
*Reactions.*—1. A delicate test for ethyl alcohol is the *iodoform reaction*. Pour a few drops of alcohol into a test-tube and add about 5 c.c. of a solution of iodine in potassium iodide, and then dilute caustic soda solution until the iodine colour vanishes. Shake up and warm very gently to about  $60^\circ$ . If no turbidity or precipitate appears at once, set the test-tube aside for a time. Yellow crystals of iodoform will ultimately deposit, which have a peculiar odour, and a characteristic star shape when viewed under the microscope. The same reaction is given with other substances, such as acetone, aldehyde, &c., but not with methyl alcohol.



2. Add 2 c.c. of ethyl alcohol to 0.5 gram of *p*-nitrobenzoyl chloride (see p. 243) and warm gently. There is a vigorous effervescence. Pour into water, make alkaline with sodium carbonate, filter, wash with a little water and crystallise from alcohol. Colourless, foliated crystals of the ester separate which melt at 57°.



3. Mix together 0.5 gram of ethyl alcohol and 1.3 grams of phenylisocyanate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{CO}$ , and heat them for a few minutes on the water-bath. On cooling and standing the ethyl ester of phenyl urethane crystallises, m.p. 51—52°.



#### PREPARATION I.

##### Potassium Ethyl Sulphate, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}\cdot\text{SO}_2\cdot\text{OK}$

Dabit, *Ann. Chim. Phys.* 1800 (1), 34, 300; Claesson, *J. prakt. Chem.* 1879 (2), 19, 246.

70 grams (87 c.c.) absolute alcohol <sup>1</sup>  
50    ,   (27 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid.

The alcohol is poured into a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) and the sulphuric acid is slowly added and well mixed by shaking. A considerable amount of heat is developed in the process. The flask is now fitted with a reflux condenser (see Fig. 41), placed upon the water-bath and heated for 2—3 hours. The product now contains, in addition to ethyl hydrogen sulphate, free sulphuric acid and unchanged alcohol. The liquid on cooling is poured into  $\frac{1}{2}$  litre of cold water in a large basin and well stirred. It is neutralised by adding chalk ground into a thin paste with water. This precipitates the free sulphuric acid as calcium sulphate and converts the ethyl hydrogen sulphate into the soluble calcium salt. The mixture is heated and filtered through a large porcelain funnel (see Fig. 37) at the filter-pump, and the precipitate pressed well down. The clear filtrate is heated on the water-bath and a solution of potassium carbonate (about 50 grams) is added in small quantities until the

<sup>1</sup> For the preparation of methyl potassium sulphate the same quantity of methyl alcohol is used; in other respects the two processes are identical. The yield is 45—50 grams.

liquid is slightly alkaline. To ensure complete precipitation a little of the clear liquid should be removed and tested with a solution of potassium carbonate before proceeding.

The calcium salt is thereby converted into the soluble potassium salt and calcium carbonate is precipitated. The latter is removed by filtration, as before, and the filtrate evaporated on the water-bath nearly to dryness. The potassium ethyl sulphate which crystallises on cooling is drained on a porcelain funnel and washed with a little spirit or methylated spirit.<sup>1</sup>

**Crystallisation.**—The substance should now be recrystallised. The success of many operations in practical organic chemistry depends upon skill in crystallisation. The first essential is to select a suitable solvent, that is, one which dissolves much more of the substance at a high than at a low temperature. To discover a suitable solvent a small quantity of the substance (0.1 gram is sufficient) is placed in a test-tube and a few drops of the solvent are poured in. The common solvents are water, methyl and ethyl alcohol, ethyl acetate, acetic acid, acetone, benzene (also toluene and xylene), petroleum spirit and ligroin, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, nitrobenzene and pyridine. If the substance dissolves on shaking without warming or does not visibly diminish on boiling, it may be discarded as unsuitable. If it dissolves on heating or boiling and crystallises on cooling in considerable quantity it may be employed. Sometimes solutions can be supercooled. In such cases, rubbing the sides of the test-tube with a glass rod or adding a trace of the solid will often cause the substance to deposit. A convenient method of crystallisation may be occasionally employed by using two miscible solvents in one of which the substance is soluble and in the other insoluble. The substance is then dissolved in a small quantity of the first solvent and the second added gradually until a turbidity appears. Alcohol and water, acetic acid and water, and benzene and petroleum spirit are often used in conjunction in this way. If a substance of low melting-point is to be crystallised, care should be taken that sufficient solvent is present to prevent the substance separating at a temperature at which it is still liquid. The interval of temperature may be increased after the solution

<sup>1</sup> If methylated spirit is used it must be purified according to the method described on p. 52.

has reached the ordinary temperature, by cooling it in a freezing mixture, when more of the solid will be deposited.

In the present instance spirit or methylated spirit (purified) will be found an efficient solvent for potassium ethyl sulphate. The

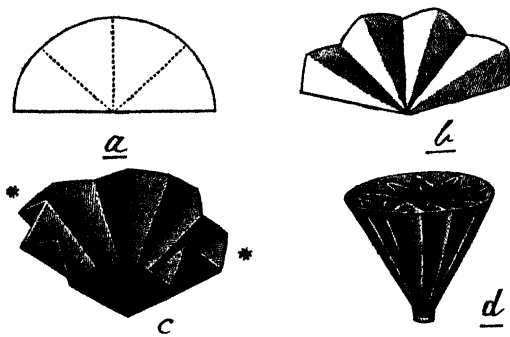


FIG. 42.

following is the mode of procedure when a volatile or inflammable solvent is used: the substance is placed in a round flask attached to an upright condenser and heated on the water-bath. The form of apparatus is that already described (see Fig. 41). Small quantities of spirit are added and kept boiling until most of the solid passes into solution. A small quantity of impurity may remain undissolved. The hot solution is at once decanted or filtered rapidly through a porcelain funnel and filter flask attached to the pump (see p. 45). Otherwise a *fluted filter* (Fig. 42) or hot-water funnel (Fig. 43), though less satisfactory, may be used, the object in all cases being to prevent crystallisation taking place in the funnel.

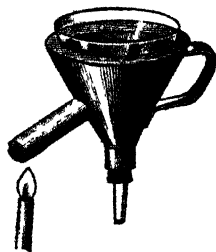


FIG. 43.

A *fluted filter* is made by first folding a large circular filter paper in the ordinary way. It is then half opened out and the two quadrants folded towards the middle line (see a, Fig. 42). This makes three creases with the hollows on the same side. The filter is now turned over and each section folded down the centre so that the hollows of the four new creases



alternate with the ridges of the three others, as shown at *b*. The paper when opened now appears like *c*. The two rectangular flutings indicated by an asterisk have still to be divided by a crease down the middle. The filter is now pushed well into the funnel, the stem of which is cut off short, as shown at *d*. The object of the short stem is to prevent crystallisation and blocking of the orifice.

A *hot-water funnel* is shown in Fig. 43. It consists of a jacketed metal funnel, with a projecting metal tube. The vessel is partly filled with water which is boiled by placing a small burner under the end of the tube. The glass funnel is placed within the metal-jacket. By keeping the liquid hot, crystallisation in the filter is thus prevented.

Before filtering an inflammable liquid such as alcohol the flame must be removed.<sup>1</sup> After standing, the liquid deposits crystals of potassium ethyl sulphate, which are filtered at the pump and pressed well down. They are then dried on a plate of unglazed earthenware or on a thin pad consisting of three or four sheets of filter paper, with another sheet over the crystals to keep out the dust. On concentrating the mother liquors on the water-bath, a further quantity of crystals may be obtained. Yield 35–40 grams. The following equations express the chemical reactions which occur :

1. 
$$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 = \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4\text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Ethyl hydrogen sulphate.
2. 
$$2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4\text{H} + \text{CaCO}_3 = (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4)_2\text{Ca} + \text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{CO}_2$$

Calcium ethyl sulphate.
3. 
$$(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4)_2\text{Ca} + \text{K}_2\text{CO}_3 = 2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4\text{K} + \text{CaCO}_3$$

Potassium ethyl sulphate.

**Properties.**—Colourless, foliated crystals; easily soluble in water and dilute alcohol, less soluble in absolute alcohol.

**Reactions.**—1. Dissolve a little of the recrystallised salt in water, and add barium chloride solution. There is no precipitate, as the barium salt of ethyl hydrogen sulphate is soluble in water. 2. Boil a little of the solution of the salt with a few drops of dilute hydrochloric acid for a minute and add barium chloride. A precipitate of barium sulphate is formed, as, on boiling ethyl hydrogen sulphate in aqueous solution, it is decomposed into sulphuric acid and alcohol (see *Appendix*, p. 369).

<sup>1</sup> A convenient and safer form of hot-water funnel is one provided with a small resistance introduced into the side limb, which can be connected to an electricity supply.

## PREPARATION 2.

**Ethyl Bromide** (Monobromethane),  $C_2H_5Br$ .

## (METHOD I.)

(De Vrij, *Jahresber*, 1857, 441.)

100 grams potassium bromide  
100 „ (54 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid  
60 „ (75 c.c.) absolute alcohol.

Fit up the apparatus as shown in Fig. 44. The distilling flask should have a capacity of not less than 1 litre, and is attached to a long condenser. An adapter is fixed to the end of the condenser,

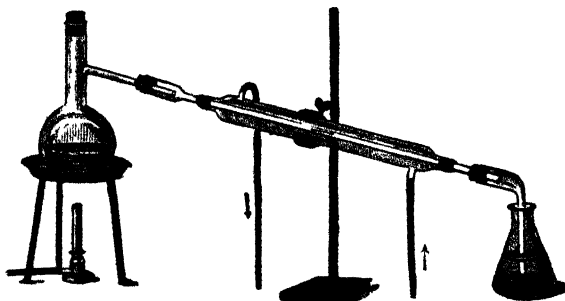


FIG 44

dipping into a conical flask (250 c.c.), which serves as receiver. The alcohol and sulphuric acid are mixed in the distilling flask and cooled to the ordinary temperature under the tap. The potassium bromide, coarsely powdered, is then added. The flask, which is closed with a cork, is fixed to the condenser and heated on the sand-bath. A sufficient quantity of water is poured into the receiver to close the end of the adapter. After a short time the liquid in the flask begins to boil and froth up, and the ethyl bromide, in the form of heavy drops of colourless liquid, distils and collects at the bottom of the receiver. If the liquid threatens to froth over, the flask must be raised from the sand-bath for a moment. The distillation is continued until no further drops of oil appear at the end of the condenser. As the ethyl bromide has a low boiling-point ( $38-39^\circ$ ), it is desirable to surround the receiver with ice

during this operation. The distillate is now removed and poured into a separating funnel (Fig. 45), and the *lower layer* of ethyl bromide separated. The water is thrown away and the ethyl bromide poured back, together with about an equal bulk of dilute sodium carbonate solution, and shaken up. The ethyl bromide is withdrawn, as before, and again shaken up with water. Finally, it is carefully separated from the water and run into a dry distilling flask. The small quantity of water which remains, and renders the liquid turbid, is removed by adding a dehydrating agent.

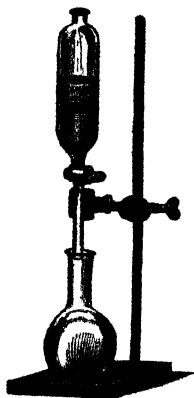
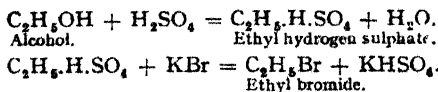


FIG. 45.

**Dehydration.**—Moisture can be readily removed from liquids by adding a solid hygroscopic substance which does not act chemically upon the liquid. The common dehydrating agents are calcium chloride, potassium carbonate, sodium sulphate (anhydrous), quicklime, &c. Alkalis cannot, of course, be used for dehydrating organic acids, nor can calcium chloride be employed in conjunction with alcohols or organic bases, with which it combines. In the present

instance it can be used. A few small pieces of the granulated or fused calcium chloride are added to the liquid. The flask is corked and left to stand for some hours until the liquid becomes clear. It is then decanted or filtered and distilled. A thermometer is inserted into the neck of the flask with the bulb just below the side-tube. The flask is attached to a condenser and heated gently on the water-bath, so that the liquid distils at a moderate speed (2—3 drops a second). The temperature is noted and the portion boiling at 35—43° collected a separate flask. This consists of in ethyl bromide which may contain a little ether. Yield 75—80 grams.

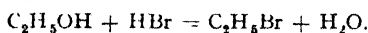


## (METHOD II.)

Norris, *Amer. Chem. J.*, 1907, **38**, 639; *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1916, **38**, 1075; Kamm, Marvel, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1920, **42**, 299.

208 grams (140 c.c.) hydrobromic acid, 47 per cent. sp. gr. 1.49.<sup>1</sup>  
60 „ (33 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid.  
50 „ (63 c.c.) purified spirit.

The hydrobromic acid is placed in a distilling flask (1 litre) and the sulphuric acid slowly added, the flask being shaken and cooled in water. The flask is attached to a condenser and 50 grams of spirit are slowly introduced from a tap-funnel (see Fig. 48, p. 65). When this has been added, a further 120 c.c. of conc. sulphuric acid are run in. The flask is heated on wire-gauze over a small flame. The ethyl bromide is collected and purified as previously described. The yield is about 90 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p. 38.8°; sp. gr. 1.47 at 15 (see *Appendix*, p. 369).

**Determination of Specific Gravity.**—A simple method for determining the specific gravity of liquids is as follows: A pycnometer, or small glass bottle, of about 20 to 30 c.c. capacity is used, with narrow neck, upon which a mark is etched and which is closed by a ground glass stopper (Fig. 46).

The bottle is thoroughly cleaned and dried by warming and aspirating air through it, after which it is allowed to cool and weighed. It is then filled with the liquid, which is poured in through a funnel, the stem of which is drawn out so as to pass through the narrow neck. The bottle is placed in a mixture of snow or pounded ice and left for a quarter to half an hour, until the contents have a temperature of 0°.

The meniscus is now adjusted until it coincides with the mark on the neck of the bottle. If more liquid has to be added, this may be done from a small pipette with capillary delivery tube; if some of the liquid has to be removed, a thin roll of filter paper may be

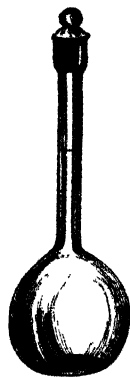


FIG. 46.

<sup>1</sup> For the preparation of hydrobromic acid, see p. 362.

inserted which will absorb it. The bottle is then stoppered, dried on the outside, left in the balance case for a quarter of an hour, and weighed. It is then emptied, cleaned and dried, and filled with distilled water previously boiled. The water is cooled to  $0^{\circ}$ , the meniscus adjusted and the bottle weighed, the process just described being repeated. The following expression will give the specific gravity of the liquid at  $0^{\circ}$  compared with water at  $0^{\circ}$  :—

$$\Delta = \frac{w_3 - w_1}{w_2 - w_1}$$

Where  $w_1$  = weight of empty bottle,

$w_2$  = „ bottle and water at  $0^{\circ}$ ,

$w_3$  = „ bottle and liquid at  $0^{\circ}$ ;

or, if compared with water at  $4^{\circ}$ , the above number must be multiplied by the density at  $0^{\circ} = 0.999873$ .

A very delicate and useful piece of apparatus, which is readily made with the blow-pipe, is Perkin's modification of Sprengel's

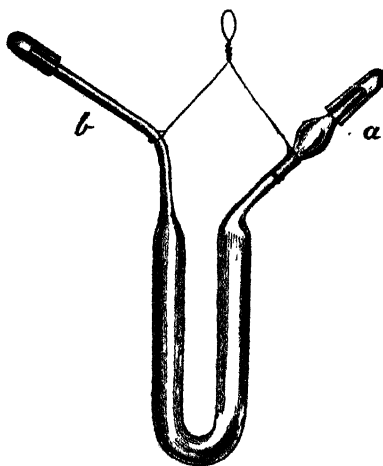


FIG. 47.

pyknometer.<sup>1</sup> It is specially adapted for small quantities of liquid and for the more volatile ones. The apparatus (Fig. 47)

<sup>1</sup> *Trans. Chem. Soc.* 1884, 45, 421.

consists of a U-tube to hold from 2 to 10 c.c., drawn out at each end into a fine capillary. The one capillary limb, *a*, is bent outwards and is furnished with a small bulb; the other, *b*, is bent at a right angle with the first. On the limb, *a*, between the bulb and the top of the U-tube a mark is etched. The tube is dried and weighed, and the liquid drawn in through the limb *b*, until it half fills the small bulb on the limb *a*. The apparatus is cooled in ice and water, and the meniscus adjusted to the mark on *a* by tilting the tube until the limb *b* has a horizontal position. To the end of this limb a piece of filter paper is applied, until the liquid sinks to the desired position in the limb *a*. The U-tube is then brought to the vertical position, loose glass caps are placed over the ends of the two limbs, the apparatus is carefully dried, and allowed to stand and weighed. The operation is then repeated with distilled water.

*Example.*—An experiment with ethyl bromide gave the following result :—

Weight of tube empty . . . . .	6.242	grams
+ ethyl bromide at 0° . . . . .	9.472	„
+ water at 0°. . . . .	8.417	„
$\Delta \frac{0^\circ}{4} = 0.999873 > \frac{3.230}{2.175}$	1.485.	

**Determination of the Boiling-point.**—A correct determination of the boiling-point of a liquid is made with a standard thermometer, *i.e.*, one that has been calibrated, and the 0° and 100° points have been carefully determined. An ordinary thermometer corrected by a standard thermometer at Kew will serve equally well. Correction must also be made for barometric pressure. This is approximately 0.043° for every 1 mm. below 760 (Landolt). A further correction is required for the thread of mercury, which may project above the vessel. For this correction the following formula may be used :—

$$N(T - t)0.000154.$$

Where *T* = apparent temperature in degrees.

*t* = temperature of a second thermometer, the bulb of which is placed at half the length *N* above the vessel.

*N* = length of the mercury column in degrees from above the vessel to *T*.

0.000154 = apparent expansion of mercury in glass.

This correction may be avoided by using short (Anschütz) thermometers, in which the mercury thread is entirely immersed in the vapour. A rough correction for points above  $100^{\circ}$  may be made by determining the boiling-points of pure organic substances, such as naphthalene,  $216.6^{\circ}$ , &c.

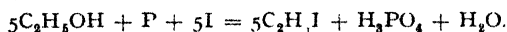
### PREPARATION 3.

#### Ethyl iodide (Iodoethane), $C_2H_5I$ .

Beilstein, *Annalen*, 1863, **128**, 250; Hunt, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1920, **117**, 1592.

100 grams iodine  
 50 „ (63 c.c.) purified spirit  
 10 „ red phosphorus.

The iodine and alcohol are introduced into a distilling flask (250 c.c.) connected to a reflux condenser and the side-tube is closed with a stopper of rubber and a glass rod. The phosphorus is then gradually added by detaching the flask, which is kept cool in a bath of cold water. A bent tube dipping into a stout and narrow glass cylinder containing mercury is tightly attached to the upper end of the condenser and the flask digested for 2—3 hours on the water-bath. It is advisable to stand the mercury vessel in a basin in the event of the mercury being splashed over. The ethyl iodide is then distilled in the ordinary way from a brine bath (a saturated solution of salt). The distillate, which is a heavy liquid resembling ethyl bromide, is purified by shaking with a solution of sodium carbonate, then with a solution of sodium thiosulphate to remove free iodine and finally with water. The liquid separated as far as possible from the water is dehydrated over calcium chloride and distilled. It boils at  $72^{\circ}$ . The yield is about 50—55 grams.



**Properties.**—Colourless when pure, but rapidly becomes discoloured on exposure to air and light from the separation of iodine. It is highly refractive, b.p.  $72^{\circ}$ , sp. gr. 1.944 at  $15^{\circ}$ .

**Reaction.**—Shake a few drops of ethyl iodide with an alcoholic solution of silver nitrate. A white precipitate of a compound of silver iodide and nitrate is deposited, which is decomposed and gives yellow silver iodide on adding water. See *Appendix*, p. 369.

## PREPARATION 4.

**Ether** (Diethyl Ether, Diethyl Oxide),  $(C_2H_5)_2O$ 

V. Cordus (1544); *Journ. Pharm.*, 1815, 1, 97; Williamson, *Phil. Mag.* 1850, (3) 37, 350.

150 grams (80 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid.

85 „ (110 c.c.) absolute alcohol.

A distilling flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) is fitted with a double-bored cork. Through one hole a thermometer is inserted, the bulb of which must be covered by the liquid in the flask, and through the other a tap-funnel passes. The side-tube of the distilling flask is fixed by a cork into the upper end of a long condenser. An adapter is fitted to the lower end and passes through the neck of a flask, which is surrounded by ice. The apparatus is shown in Fig. 48. The

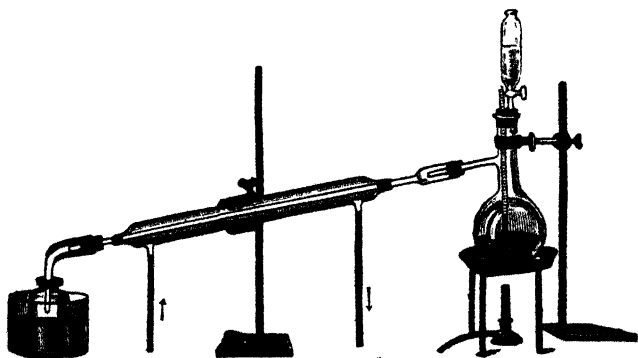


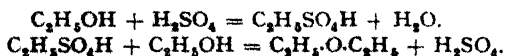
FIG. 48.

sulphuric acid and alcohol are cautiously mixed together in the distilling flask, which is then placed upon a sand-bath and attached to the condenser. The mixture is heated to  $140^\circ$  and alcohol is run in from the tap-funnel at the same speed as the liquid distils (about three drops a second). The temperature must be kept constant at  $140$ — $145^\circ$ . When about twice the quantity of alcohol contained in the original mixture has been added and converted into ether, the distillation is stopped. The receiver now contains, in addition to ether, alcohol, water and sulphurous acid. The liquid



is poured into a large separating funnel and a small quantity (30—40 c.c.) of dilute caustic soda added and the mixture well shaken. After settling, the caustic soda solution is drawn off below, and about the same quantity of a strong solution of common salt added, and the process of shaking and drawing off repeated. The ether, which is now free from sulphurous acid and from most of the alcohol, still contains water. It is therefore poured into a large dry distilling flask and some pieces of solid calcium chloride are added. It is allowed to stand loosely corked overnight. The distilling flask is now attached to a long condenser and heated on the water-bath. The ether, which distils, still contains traces of alcohol and water, which it obstinately retains and from which it can only be freed by a further treatment with metallic sodium. A few very thin slices of sodium are dropped into the receiver and the vessel is closed with a cork, through which an open calcium chloride tube is inserted to allow any hydrogen to escape and to prevent the entrance of moisture.

When the sodium produces no further action, the ether is decanted from the sodium residues into a distilling flask and distilled on the water-bath. A thermometer is placed in the neck of the flask to indicate the boiling-point, which should be constant at 35°.



*Properties.*—Colourless, mobile liquid; b.p. 35°; sp. gr. 0.720 at 15°; burns with a luminous flame; not miscible with water; 9 parts of water dissolve 1 part of ether, and 35 parts of ether dissolve 1 part of water at the ordinary temperature. See *Appendix*, p. 371.

**Commercial Ether** is made from methylated spirit and contains alcohol, water, and other impurities, and for many reactions requires to be purified. The following method of purification may be employed. The ether is distilled over a little coarsely powdered caustic potash, then placed in contact with solid calcium chloride for a day or two, and finally decanted and treated with metallic sodium. It is convenient to use a sodium knife (Fig. 49) or press (Fig. 50) for preparing the sodium. In the former the metal can be cut into very thin slices, and in the latter it is pressed into fine wire through a circular steel die. For ordinary purposes such as

extraction of liquids and solids mixed with water, distillation over caustic potash is usually a sufficient purification.

It must be remembered that ether is highly inflammable, and also exceedingly volatile, and great care should be taken that no flame is in the neighbourhood of the liquid. It must on no

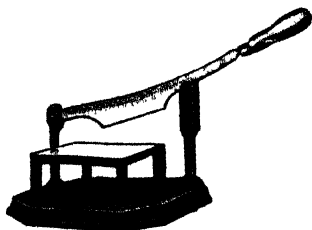


FIG. 49.



FIG. 50.

account be distilled over the bare flame, but always from the water-bath, and then with a long, well-cooled condenser. The distillation of large quantities should be avoided as far as possible. In such cases it is convenient to employ a distilling flask of moderate size (250 c.c.), and to add, as the liquid distils, a fresh supply of ether

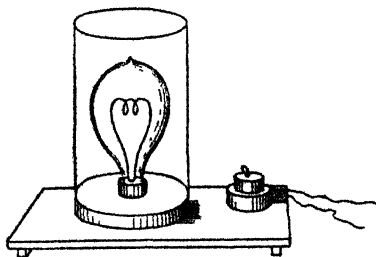


FIG. 51.

or ether solution from a tap-funnel inserted through the neck of the flask, which can be done without interrupting the distillation. A further safeguard is to distil the liquid over a *carbon filament lamp* (as shown in the annexed Fig. 51), which should give out sufficient heat to boil the ether briskly. The lamp is surrounded by a metal cylinder covered with sheet asbestos on which the distilling flask rests.

## PREPARATION 5.

**Ethylene Bromide.**  $\text{CH}_2\text{Br}.\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$ .

## (METHOD I.)

Balard, *Ann. Chim. Phys.* 1826 (2), **32**, 375; Erlenmeyer, Bunte, *Annalen*, 1873, **168**, 64.

- 25 grams (30 c.c.) absolute alcohol  
 150 „ (80 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid  
 200 „ (66 c.c.) bromine (which must be measured out in the fume-cupboard)  
 300 „ of a mixture of 100 grams (124 c.c.) alcohol and 200 grams (108 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid.

Fit up an apparatus as shown in Fig. 52. It consists of a round flask (2 litres), which is furnished with a double-bored cork. A

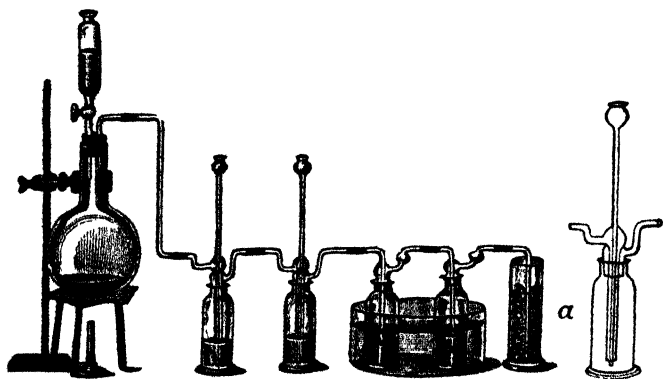
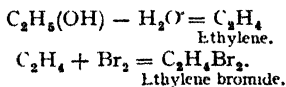


FIG. 52.

tap-funnel is inserted through one hole and a delivery tube through the other, by which it is connected with two wash-bottles with safety tubes. A useful form of wash-bottle is that shown in Fig. 52 and in section at *a*. Otherwise a three-necked Woulff bottle will serve, with a long tube inserted through the central neck. The wash-bottles are one-third filled with caustic soda solution. The two ordinary wash-bottles standing in the trough of water contain the bromine. The first contains about 50 c.c. of bromine and 1 c.c. of water and the second about 15 c.c. of bromine and 1 c.c. of water. The latter is attached to a wide U tube or cylinder containing

pieces of soda-lime. If a cylinder is used, glass fragments or marbles should form a layer round the orifice of the inlet tube with the soda-lime above.

The joints being tight, the mixture of 25 grams of alcohol and 150 grams of sulphuric acid is run into the large flask containing a little dry sand or anhydrous aluminium sulphate and heated with a small flame on the sand-bath until a steady stream of gas is evolved. When this occurs the mixture of alcohol and sulphuric acid is dropped in slowly from the tap-funnel. It is important to moderate the temperature to prevent excessive frothing and the separation of carbon, which, however, cannot altogether be avoided. A considerable quantity of sulphur dioxide which is evolved with the ethylene is removed by the caustic soda in the wash-bottles. If the water surrounding the bromine bottles becomes warm, small lumps of ice should be thrown in. The caustic soda should be occasionally renewed otherwise sulphur dioxide may pass into the bromine and reduce it to hydrobromic acid. If the pressure in the apparatus causes a back rush of bubbles through the tap-funnel attached to the flask, the difficulty is met by inserting the stopper in the tap-funnel. After a few hours the bromine in both vessels is decolourised or at least changes to a straw colour. The crude ethylene bromide is removed and shaken with dilute caustic soda solution, then with water, separated from the aqueous layer and dehydrated over small pieces of calcium chloride. It is decanted or filtered from the calcium chloride and distilled. The distillate is collected at 130—132°. The yield is nearly equal to the weight of bromine taken.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid, which solidifies at 0° to a crystalline mass and melts at 9°; b.p. 131.5°; sp. gr. 2.19 at 15°.

(METHOD II.)

Newth, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1901, 74, 915.

50 grams (60 c.c.) 90—95 per cent. spirit  
150 c.c. syrupy phosphoric acid  
200 grams (66 c.c.) bromine (which must be measured out in the fume-cupboard).

Fit up an apparatus as shown in Fig. 53. It consists of a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre), with a wide neck furnished with a treble-bored cork. A tube closed at the lower end for holding a thermometer is inserted through one hole, a tube ending in a spiral-shaped capillary, as shown in *a*, is inserted through a second hole and a delivery tube through the third. The upper end of the spiral outside the flask is attached by rubber tubing to a long wide tube (holding the spirit) drawn out below and provided with a screw clip to adjust the flow of alcohol.

A Woulff bottle is attached to the delivery tube, which terminates below the first tubulus; through the second tubulus an open safety tube is inserted with a side piece near the upper end, and through the third tubulus a delivery tube which is attached to a wide bent

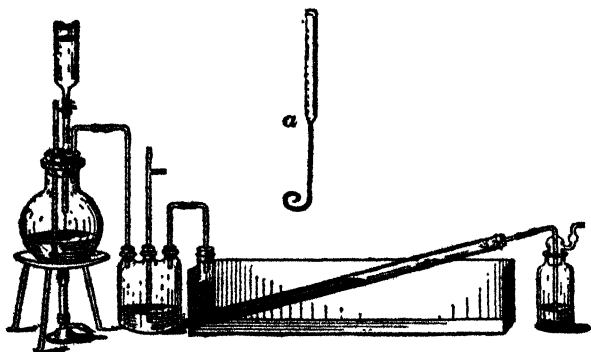


FIG. 53

tube lying in a metal or earthenware trough through which cold water flows, or to which ice is added from time to time. The upper end of this tube is connected to a wash-bottle. The 150 c.c. of syrupy phosphoric acid are poured into the round flask, about 55 c.c. of bromine and 10 c.c. of water are introduced into the wide tube, and 10 c.c. of bromine and 10 c.c. of water into the end wash-bottle. The phosphoric acid is heated to  $190-200^{\circ}$ , and then the spirit is allowed to flow in slowly, the temperature being maintained at  $200^{\circ}$ . The phosphoric acid froths freely, but does not froth over, and ethylene comes off rapidly. Gradually the bromine loses its colour, and finally a nearly colourless liquid is obtained which is ethylene bromide. The crude ethylene bromide is removed and purified as described under Method I.

See *Appendix*, p. 372.

## PREPARATION 6.

**Acetaldehyde,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO.H}$** 

Liebig, *Annalen*, 1835, 14, 133; Staedeler, *J. prakt. Chem.* 1859, (1) 78, 54.

200 grams sodium dichromate  
420 c.c. water.

A mixture of 100 grams (125 c.c.) absolute alcohol and 140 grams (75 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid.

100 c.c. methylated ether, which has been left to stand over solid caustic potash for a few hours, and then distilled from the water-bath.

A round flask (1½ litres) is provided with a double-bored cork. A bent tube, which passes through one hole, connects the flask with a condenser and receiver. A tap-funnel is inserted through the other hole. The flask is placed upon a sand-bath, and the receiver is cooled in ice. It is important that all the corks should be tight, as a small leak will considerably diminish the yield. The dichromate in small pieces and the 420 c.c. of water are placed in the flask and gently warmed. The flame is then removed, and the mixture of alcohol and sulphuric acid, which may be used warm, is slowly added from the tap-funnel. The flask is occasionally shaken. A considerable rise of temperature occurs and the liquid darkens, whilst aldehyde, with a little water and alcohol, distils. When the mixture has all been added, the flask is heated on the sand-bath until all the aldehyde has distilled (about 150 c.c. of liquid), which may be determined by removing the cork from the flask and noticing if the smell of aldehyde is still perceptible. The distillate is now redistilled on the water-bath in the apparatus shown in Fig. 54.

The flask is attached to an upright condenser in which the water is kept at a temperature of 30—35°. Alcohol and aqueous vapour condense in the condenser; the aldehyde, on the other hand, passes by a tube attached to a 100 c.c. pipette into two narrow (100 c.c.) cylinders, one-third filled with the dry ether, and cooled in ice-water. The aldehyde readily dissolves in the ether and is rapidly absorbed. If the ethereal solution is now

saturated with dry ammonia gas, the whole of the aldehyde separates out in the form of colourless crystals of aldehyde-ammonia,

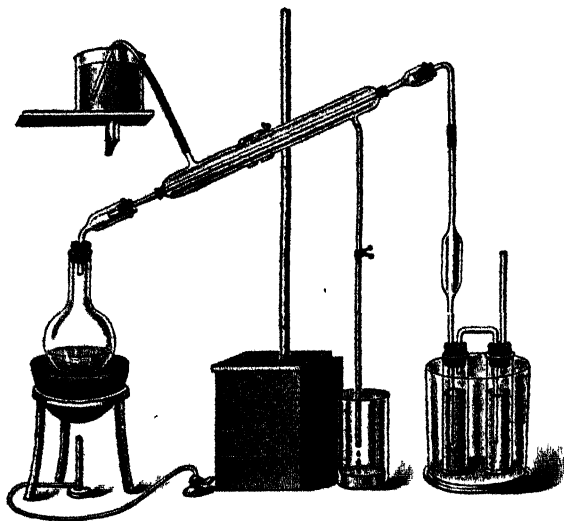


FIG. 54.

$\text{CH}_3\text{CH.OH.NH}_2$ . The apparatus for preparing the dry ammonia is shown in Fig. 55. The flask containing strong ammonia solution is heated by a *small* flame, when the gas is readily evolved and passes up the tower, which is filled with soda-lime or quicklime. The ethereal solution is saturated with the gas, and is then allowed to stand for an hour.

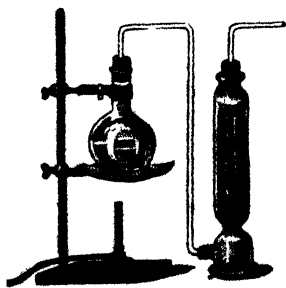
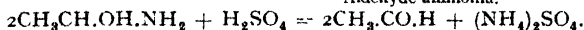
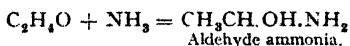
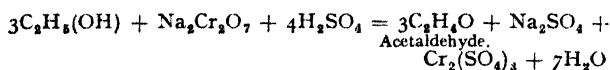


FIG. 55.

The ether is then decanted from the crystals, which are drained at the filter-pump, washed with a little ether, and finally dried in the air on filter-paper. Yield of aldehyde-ammonia, 25—30 grams. It may be used for the reactions described on p. 73.

Pure aldehyde may be prepared from the aldehyde-ammonia as follows: The crystals are dissolved in an equal weight of water

and distilled on the water-bath with a mixture of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  parts of concentrated sulphuric acid and 2 parts of water, the receiver being well cooled in ice. The temperature of the water-bath is gradually raised until the water begins to boil, and the distillation is then interrupted. The distillate is dehydrated over an equal bulk of calcium chloride, from which it is distilled in the water-bath, heated to  $30^{\circ}$ . The anhydrous aldehyde is kept in a well-stoppered bottle.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid with a distinctive smell; b.p.  $21^{\circ}$ ; sp. gr. 0.807 at  $0^{\circ}$ ; soluble in water, alcohol and ether.

*Reactions.*—Acetaldehyde and many of the aliphatic aldehydes are characterised by the following reactions:—

1. Prepare a little ammonio-silver nitrate by adding dilute ammonia drop by drop to silver nitrate solution until the precipitate just dissolves. Add to a third of a test-tube full of the ammonia-silver nitrate solution about 1 c.c. of aldehyde, and place it in a beaker of hot water. A mirror of metallic silver is deposited.  $\text{Ag}_2\text{O} + \text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O} = \text{Ag}_2 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O}_2$  (acetic acid).

2. To 1 c.c. of aldehyde add 2—3 times its volume of a cold saturated solution of sodium bisulphite and shake up. The additive compound,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH.OH.SO}_3\text{Na}$ , crystallises out on standing. A crystal of the substance introduced into the liquid will hasten its formation. The bisulphite solution is prepared either by dissolving sodium metabisulphite in water, or by passing sulphur dioxide into soda crystals covered with a layer of water. It forms an apple-green solution smelling strongly of sulphur dioxide. The sulphur dioxide is conveniently obtained from a bottle of the liquid which can be purchased, or by dropping concentrated sulphuric acid on to solid sodium sulphite.

3. A solution of magenta decolourised by sulphur dioxide becomes violet on the addition of a drop of aldehyde (Schiff). Prepare a weak solution of magenta by dissolving a crystal in half a test-



tube of water and bubbling in sulphur dioxide until the colour disappears. Now add a few drops of aldehyde.

4. To a dilute solution of sodium nitroprusside add a few drops of acetaldehyde and then a drop or two of piperidine. A deep blue solution results.

5. Boil a few drops of aldehyde with 1—2 c.c. of caustic potash solution. The liquid becomes yellow and a brown resinous precipitate is formed.

6. Add a drop or two of concentrated sulphuric acid to 1 c.c. of aldehyde. The mixture becomes hot in consequence of the aldehyde undergoing polymerisation to paraldehyde  $(C_2H_4O)_3$ , b.p.  $124^\circ$ , which separates as an oil on adding water. See *Appendix*, p. 374.

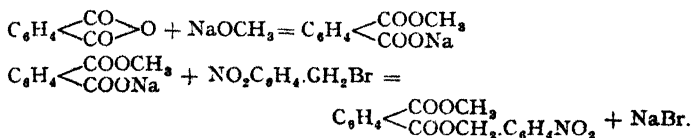
### Methyl Alcohol. $CH_3.OH$ .

Commercial methyl alcohol is obtained by purifying wood spirit. It often contains a little acetone, which may be detected by the iodoform reaction (see p. 80). To remove acetone, chlorine is passed into the boiling liquid, which is contained in a round flask fitted with a reflux condenser and then distilled with a thermometer. Any trichloroacetone which is formed (b.p.  $170^\circ$ ) remains behind. But for ordinary purposes it may be purified by boiling it, using a reflux condenser, with 3—4 per cent. of solid caustic potash on the water-bath, and then distilling. It is freed from water by standing for twenty-four hours in a flask one-third filled with freshly-burnt quicklime, and re-distilling from the water-bath, using a thermometer.

*Properties*.—Colourless liquid; b.p.  $66-67^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 0.796 at  $20^\circ$ .

*Reactions*.—1. The same reaction may be carried out with *p*-nitrobenzoyl chloride as described under ethyl alcohol. (*Reaction 2*, p. 55.) The melting-point of the methyl ester is  $96^\circ$ . 2: Methyl alcohol may be identified as follows: 0.25 gram of metallic sodium is dissolved in 10 c.c. of methyl alcohol, using a reflux condenser. To this 1.5 grams of phthalic anhydride are added and boiled on the water-bath for  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour. This converts the anhydride into methyl sodium phthalate. If 1 gram of *p*-nitrobenzyl bromide is now added and 5 c.c. of water, and the mixture

heated on the water-bath with reflux for an hour and then filtered hot from any undissolved substance, on cooling the *p*-nitrobenzyl methyl ester of phthalic acid crystallises in colourless needles and, when recrystallised from spirit, melts at 106—107°.



3. Methyl alcohol heated on the water-bath with an equivalent of phenylisocyanate gives the methyl ester of phenyl urethane, m.p. 47°; see Reaction 3 for ethyl alcohol (p. 55).

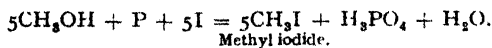
#### PREPARATION 7.

##### Methyl Iodide (Iodomethane), $\text{CH}_3\text{I}$ .

Dumas and Peligot, *Annalen*, 1835, **15**, 20.

18 grams methyl alcohol  
5   ,,   red phosphorus  
50   ,,   iodine.

Attach a flask (250 c.c.) to an upright condenser, and bring into it the methyl alcohol and red phosphorus. Add the iodine gradually by detaching the flask for a moment from the condenser. A considerable evolution of heat occurs. When the iodine has been added the flask is left attached to the condenser overnight, and the contents then distilled from the water-bath using a similar apparatus to that of Fig. 44, p. 59. The distillate is shaken with dilute caustic soda in a separating funnel, to remove iodine and hydriodic acid. If sufficient caustic soda has been used the lower layer of methyl iodide will be colourless. Separate the methyl iodide, add a few pieces of solid calcium chloride, and after standing until clear, distil from the water-bath with thermometer. Yield 45 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless, highly refractive liquid; b.p. 45°; sp. gr. 2.27 at 15°.



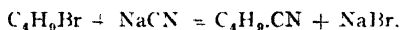
## PREPARATION 9.

**n-Butyl Cyanide** (Valeronitrile),  $C_4H_9CN$ .

Lieben, Rossi, *Annalen*, 1871, **158**, 171; Adams, Marvel, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1920, **42**, 310.

50 grams sodium cyanide in 35 c.c. water  
125 c.c. purified spirit  
75 grams n-butyl bromide.

Mix together the sodium cyanide, spirit and butyl bromide in a half litre round flask and digest the mixture on a water-bath with reflux condenser for 24 hours. When cool the sodium bromide is removed by filtration and the liquid is fractionated, using a column (see p. 152). The fraction which distils up to  $85^\circ$  is mainly alcohol and water. The following fraction is collected between  $85^\circ$  and  $140^\circ$ . On the addition of solid calcium chloride it separates into two layers, the upper layer consisting of n-butyl cyanide. It is dehydrated with solid calcium chloride and re-distilled. The pure butyl cyanide is collected at  $138-140^\circ$ . The yield is about 30 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p.  $140^\circ$ ; sp. gr. of 0.8164 at  $0^\circ$ .

## PREPARATION 10.

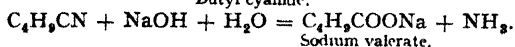
**n-Valeric Acid**,  $C_4H_9COOH$ .

Lieben, Rossi, *Annalen*, 1871, **159**, 58; Adams, Marvel, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1920, **42**, 310

50 grams sodium cyanide in 35 c.c. water  
125 c.c. purified spirit  
75 grams n-butyl bromide.

The mixture is treated as in the previous experiment and, after filtering from the sodium bromide, the filtrate is digested for 24 hours under a reflux condenser with 43 grams of caustic soda dissolved in about an equal weight of water. As much of the alcohol as possible is then distilled off from the water-bath, and the residue transferred to a basin and heated on the water-bath

for several hours to remove the remainder of the alcohol. The residue is dissolved in the smallest quantity of water, transferred to a flask, and acidified with 60 per cent. sulphuric acid, using Congo-red paper. A layer of valeric acid separates, which is extracted with ether, dehydrated over anhydrous sodium sulphate and distilled with a column. The distillate is collected between  $180^{\circ}$  and  $186^{\circ}$ . It is redistilled and collected at  $180$ — $181^{\circ}$ . The yield is about 45 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p.  $181^{\circ}$ ; sp. gr. 0.956 at  $0^{\circ}$ . See *Appendix*, p. 376.

#### PREPARATION II.

##### *n*-Ethyl Valerate, $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ .

Liebén Rossi, *Annalen*, 1873, **165**, 117; Adams, Marvel, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1920, **42**, 310.

52 grams *n*-butyl cyanide

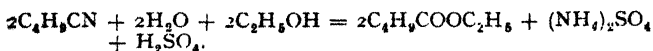
125 „ (68 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid

64 „ (80 „) absolute alcohol

64 „ (80 „) spirit (64 o.p.).

The sulphuric acid is slowly added to a well-cooled mixture of the absolute alcohol and spirit, and then the butyl cyanide introduced. The mixture is heated on the sand-bath with a reflux condenser for 8 hours, cooled and poured into ice and water so as to dissolve the ammonium sulphate.

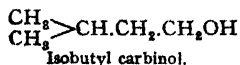
The upper layer of ester is separated, dehydrated with calcium chloride and distilled with a fractionating column (see p. 152). The portion distilling at  $143$ — $148^{\circ}$  is collected, and is nearly pure ester. Yield 65 grams.



*Properties.*—Sweet-smelling, colourless liquid; b.p.  $144$ — $145^{\circ}$ ; sp. gr. 0.894 at  $0^{\circ}$ . See *Appendix*, p. 376.

**Amyl Alcohol,  $C_5H_{11}.OH$ .**

Commercial amyl alcohol is contained in fusel oil from fermentation and consists mainly of isobutyl carbinol together with about 13 per cent. of secondary butyl carbinol, which renders the liquid optically active. It turns the plane of polarisation to the left (see p. 401).



*Properties.*—Colourless, highly refractive liquid with a burning taste and penetrating smell; b.p.  $131-132^\circ$ , sp. gr. 0.8113 at  $19^\circ$ ; dissolves in 39 parts of water at  $16.5^\circ$ . It gives an isoamylurethane with phenyl isocyanate, m.p.  $52-53^\circ$  (see Reaction 3, p. 55).

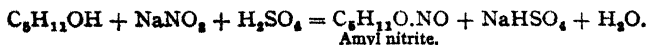
PREPARATION 12.

**Amyl Nitrite,  $C_5H_{11}O.NO$**

Balard, Guthrie, *Quart. Jour. Chem. Soc.*, 1858, **11**, 245; Rennard, *Jahresb.*, 1874, p. 352.

- 30 grams (37 c.c.) amyl alcohol
- 30 „ sodium nitrite (finely powdered)
- 18 „ (10 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid.

The amyl alcohol and sodium nitrite are mixed in a flask (500 c.c.), and whilst the mixture is cooled in ice-water, the conc. sulphuric acid is added drop by drop from a funnel with constant shaking. Towards the end of the process a more vigorous reaction sets in, when care must be taken to add the sulphuric acid more slowly. When the whole of the acid has been added, the top layer of amyl nitrite is decanted into a separating-funnel. A little water is then added to the residue and, after shaking, a further quantity of amyl nitrite separates and is decanted as before. The whole of the amyl nitrite is then separated from water, dehydrated over calcium chloride, decanted and distilled. The liquid boiling at  $95-100^\circ$  is collected separately. Yield, 30—35 grams.



**Properties.**—Yellow-green liquid with a peculiar penetrating and sweet smell, which, on inhaling, causes a rush of blood to the head; b.p.  $96^{\circ}$ ; sp.gr. 0.902. See *Appendix*, p. 377.

**Acetone** (Dimethyl ketone),  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO.CH}_3$ .

Commercial acetone is obtained from the products of the distillation of wood. To purify it, it is shaken with a saturated solution of sodium bisulphite (see Reaction 2, p. 73). The crystalline mass,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{ONaHSO}_3$ , is filtered and well drained and then distilled with sodium carbonate solution. The distillate is dehydrated over solid calcium chloride and finally distilled.

**Properties.**—Colourless liquid with a pleasant colour; b.p.  $56.3^{\circ}$ ; sp. gr. 0.792 at  $15^{\circ}$ ; soluble in water.

**Reactions.**—1. Acetone gives the *iodoform reaction* like ethyl alcohol (p. 54). 2. Dissolve a few crystals of *p*-bromophenylhydrazine or *p*-nitrophenylhydrazine in a few drops of glacial acetic acid, dilute with about 1 c.c. of water and add a drop of acetone. The bromo- or nitro-phenylhydrazone of acetone separate as crystalline precipitates.

PREPARATION 13.

**Chloroform** (Trichloromethane),  $\text{CHCl}_3$ .

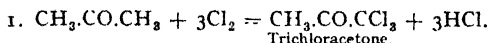
Liebig, *Pogg. Ann.*, 1831, **23**, 444; Dumas, *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1834, **56**, 115.

200 grams bleaching powder (fresh)  
800 c.c. water  
40 grams (50 c.c.) acetone.

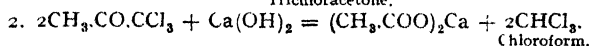
A large round flask (4 litres) is fitted with a cork, through which a bent tube passes connecting the flask with a long condenser and receiver. The flask is placed upon a large sand-bath. Grind the bleaching powder into a paste with 400 c.c. of water and rinse it into the flask with the remaining 400 c.c. Add the acetone and attach the flask to the condenser. Heat cautiously until the reaction sets in, which is indicated by the frothing of the liquid.

Remove the flame for a time, and when the reaction has moderated, boil the contents until no more chloroform distils. This is easily determined by collecting the distillate in a test-tube and observing if any drops of heavy liquid are present. The distillate is shaken with dilute caustic soda solution in a separating funnel and the lower layer of chloroform run into a distilling flask. A few pieces of solid calcium chloride are added and left until the liquid is clear, when it is distilled from the water-bath with a thermometer inserted into the neck of the flask. Yield about 40 grams.

The bleaching powder acts as though it consisted of a compound of calcium hydrate and chlorine, and the process probably occurs in two stages.



Trichloroacetone.

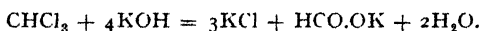


Chloroform.

Trichloroacetone is first formed, which is then decomposed by the lime into calcium acetate and chloroform.

*Properties.*—Colourless liquid possessing a sweet smell, b.p. 60—62°; sp. gr. 1.498 at 15°; very slightly soluble in water; non-inflammable. As chloroform slowly decomposes in presence of air and sunlight into phosgene, it is usual to add a little alcohol to the commercial product, which arrests the change. Pure chloroform is neutral to litmus, has no action on silver nitrate solution and does not discolour concentrated sulphuric acid when shaken with it for an hour or left for a day.

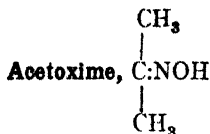
*Reactions.*—1. Heat a few drops with double its volume of methyl alcoholic potash. On the addition of water a clear solution is obtained. Potassium formate and chloride are formed.



2. Bring into a test-tube two drops of chloroform, one drop of aniline and 1 c.c. of alcoholic potash and warm *in the fume cupboard*. Note the intolerable smell of phenyl carbamine (carbamine reaction),  $\text{CHCl}_3 + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2 + 3\text{KOH} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NC} + 3\text{KCl} + 3\text{H}_2$ . Wash out the contents of the test-tube in the fume cupboard.



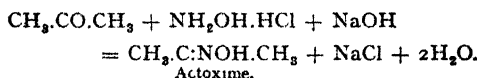
## PREPARATION 14.



V. Meyer, Fanin, *Ber.*, 1882, **15**, 1324; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. III., p. 61.

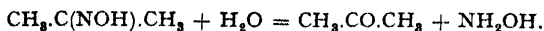
- 5 grams hydroxylamine hydrochloride in 10 c.c. water  
 3 „ caustic soda in 10 c.c. water  
 6 „ (7.6 c.c.) pure acetone.

Add the acetone slowly to the mixture of the hydroxylamine hydrochloride and caustic soda in a small flask and shake well. The flask is then corked and left for twenty-four hours, during which the crystalline oxime separates. The process may, however, be completed in a much shorter time by placing the flask in a freezing mixture. The presence of any free hydroxylamine is then tested in a few drops of the liquid with Fehling's solution, or by merely adding a drop or two of copper sulphate, then a sufficient quantity of caustic soda to produce a clear blue solution and warming. An orange-red precipitate of cuprous oxide indicates uncombined hydroxylamine. If no free hydroxylamine is present, the liquid is shaken up with an equal volume of ether, in which the acetoxime dissolves. The ethereal solution is separated and the process repeated twice with fresh ether. The united ethereal extract is filtered, if necessary, through a dry filter into a distilling flask. The greater part of the ether is distilled off on the water-bath. The remaining liquid is poured into a glass basin and the rest of the ether left to evaporate in the air, the last traces being removed by heating for a few minutes on the water-bath. The acetoxime separates out on cooling in colourless needles. It is dried on a porous plate and recrystallised from a little petroleum spirit, m.p. 61–62°. Yield, 4–5 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless needles; m.p. 60°.

**Reaction.**—Boil a small quantity for a few minutes with dilute hydrochloric acid, and test with Fehling's solution. The oxime is decomposed into acetone and hydroxylamine,



**Melting-point Determination.**—For this purpose the following apparatus is used (Fig. 56). A small sample of finely powdered substance, which has been carefully dried, is introduced into a capillary tube of about 1 mm. inside diameter sealed at one end. The tube is made from soft thin-walled glass tubing, about 15 mm. diameter, by rotating it in the blow-pipe flame until the glass softens, and then quickly drawing it out. The long capillary is then broken into lengths of about 7 cm. ( $2\frac{1}{2}$  in.) by scratching across with a writing diamond, and each short tube is sealed at one end. To introduce the substance, it is convenient to scoop up the finely powdered material off a watch glass with the open end. By tapping the closed end on the bench, the powder is shaken down. The quantity introduced should occupy a length of about 2—3 mm. when tightly packed. The tube is attached to a thermometer (preferably with a very small bulb) so that the substance is level with the bulb. The attachment may be made by a narrow rubber ring or by simply moistening the side of the capillary with the thermometer bulb, which has been dipped in the liquid in the bath, and then pressing it against the thermometer stem. The thermometer passes through a cork inserted into a round flask with a long neck, the bulb of which is three-quarters filled with concentrated sulphuric acid, glycerol, or castor oil. The flask is clamped to a retort stand and is heated very gradually by a small flame. Instead of clamping the flask to a retort stand, it can be fixed in a small brass tripod, shown in Fig. 56, which fits on to an ordinary laboratory tripod and from which it can be removed when not required.<sup>1</sup> When a certain tem-

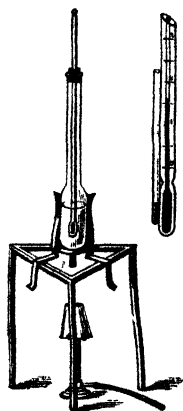


FIG. 56.

<sup>1</sup> The apparatus (bulb tube and stand) can be purchased from Mr. J. Watkinson, Electrical Engineering Department, The University, Leeds.

perature is reached, the substance, if pure, melts suddenly within one or two degrees. When approaching the melting-point, it is desirable to remove the flame or turn it very low so that the rise of temperature is very gradual. If the liquefaction is protracted, it is an indication that the substance is not pure. The melting-point, obtained in this way, to be quite accurate, must be corrected for the temperature of the thread of mercury outside the liquid, the same formula being used as in the correction for the boiling-point (see p. 63). When the acid becomes discoloured, a crystal of potassium nitrate will remove the colour on warming.

#### PREPARATION 15.

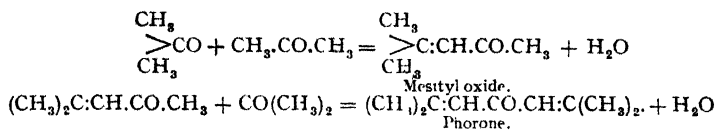
**Mesityl oxide**,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}:\text{CH}.\text{CO}.\text{CH}_3$ .  
**Phorone**,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}:\text{CH}.\text{CO}.\text{CH}:\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ .

Claisen, *Annalen*, 1875, **180**, 1; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. 1., p. 53.

250 c.c. acetone.

Two hundred and fifty c.c. of acetone are dehydrated by standing overnight with calcium chloride and then distilled. The acetone is poured into a bottle (1 litre) provided with a double bored cork. Through one hole a delivery tube passes to the bottom of the vessel and through the other a calcium chloride tube is inserted. The acetone, cooled in a freezing mixture, is saturated with hydrogen chloride, which is evolved by dropping conc. sulphuric acid from a tap-funnel on to conc. hydrochloric acid (see p. 362). With a rapid stream the process may take two to three hours, and the increase in weight is about 60 per cent. After saturation, the bottle is left in ice or ice-water for twenty-four hours, and then at the ordinary temperature for two days. The dark-coloured liquid is now poured on to about 300 grams of crushed ice and well stirred. The upper layer, which contains the mesityl oxide, is separated and shaken with a strong solution of caustic soda until faintly yellow. Thus purified it is distilled in steam with the addition of a little strong caustic soda solution to decompose any hydrochloride of mesityl oxide which may remain. The distillate is separated, dehydrated over calcium chloride, and finally fractionated with a column, first on the water-

bath and then over the flame. A small quantity distils below  $65^{\circ}$ , consisting mainly of unchanged acetone; the temperature then rises and the portions boiling at  $129\text{--}137^{\circ}$  and  $180\text{--}200^{\circ}$  are collected separately. The lower boiling fraction is re-fractionated between  $129^{\circ}$  and  $131^{\circ}$  and consists of mesityl oxide. Phorone, which constitutes the higher boiling portion, boils at  $190\text{--}191^{\circ}$ . The yield is about 100 grams of mesityl oxide.



*Properties.*—*Mesityl oxide*, colourless liquid, smelling strongly of peppermint, b.p.  $130^{\circ}$ ; sp. gr. 0.848 at  $23^{\circ}$ . It gives the usual reaction for ketones. *Phorone*, long yellowish-green crystals, m.p.  $28^{\circ}$ ; b.p.  $190\text{--}191^{\circ}$ . See *Appendix*, p. 377.

#### PREPARATION 16.

**Diacetonamine**,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{NH}_2)\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ .

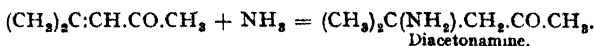
Heintz, *Annalen*, 1877, **189**, 214

42 grams (50 c.c.) mesityl oxide.

The mesityl oxide is dissolved in twice its volume of spirit (64 o.p.), cooled in a freezing mixture to  $-10^{\circ}$ , and dry ammonia is passed into the solution until saturated. The solution is allowed to stand for two days. The base is separated as the acid oxalate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}\cdot\text{C}_2\text{H}_2\text{O}_4 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Thirty grams of powdered oxalic acid are mixed with 120 c.c. of spirit (64 o.p.) in a beaker placed in ice. The ammoniacal solution is gradually added so that the temperature does not rise above  $20^{\circ}$ , and stirred vigorously until the pasty mass is neutral. To the resulting mixture, which is nearly solid, a further 30 grams of powdered oxalic acid are added and stirred until the mixture can be poured out. Pour it into a tin vessel fitted with reflux condenser and boil for fifteen minutes to complete the reaction. The product is filtered hot and the solution cooled slowly to  $0^{\circ}$ . The diacetonamine oxalate separates in

crusts, which are filtered. The yield from 50 c.c. of mesityl oxide is about 50 grams of diacetoneamine oxalate.<sup>1</sup>

The base may be separated from the oxalate by adding alkali in excess and extracting with ether. On distilling the ether the diacetoneamine remains as liquid.



*Properties.*—An ammoniacal smelling liquid, specifically lighter than water, in which it is only slightly soluble. It decomposes into mesityloxide and ammonia on distillation. See *Appendix*, p. 378.

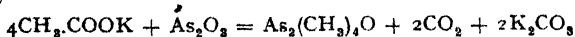
### Acetic Acid, $\text{CH}_3.\text{CO}.\text{OH}$ .

Commercial acetic acid is manufactured from pyroligneous acid obtained in the destructive distillation of wood. The latter is neutralised with lime, and separated by distillation from wood-spirit and acetone. The crude calcium acetate, which has a dark colour, is then distilled with the requisite quantity of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Anhydrous or glacial acetic acid is obtained by distilling fused sodium acetate with concentrated sulphuric acid.

*Properties.*—Colourless liquid with pungent smell; b. p.  $119^\circ$ ; m. p.  $16.7^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 1.055 at  $15^\circ$ . It should not decolourise a solution of permanganate. The vapour of the boiling acid is inflammable.

*Reactions.*—Add a few drops of alcohol to the same quantity of acetic acid, and an equal volume of concentrated sulphuric acid. Warm gently and notice the fruity smell of ethyl acetate. Neutralise a few drops of acetic acid by adding excess of ammonia and boiling until neutral. Let cool and add a drop of ferric chloride. The red colour of ferric acetate is produced. On boiling, basic ferric acetate is precipitated.

Heat a very small quantity of potassium acetate with an equal bulk of arsenious oxide. The disagreeable and poisonous vapour of cacodyl oxide is evolved.



<sup>1</sup> Diacetoneamine can also be prepared directly by the action of ammonia on acetone.

## PREPARATION 17.

**Acetyl Chloride,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCl}$ .**

Gerhardt, *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1853, (3), **37**, 285; Béchamp, *Compt. rend.* 1855, **40**, 944, and 1856, **42**, 224.

50 grams glacial acetic acid

40 „ phosphorus trichloride.

Fit up the apparatus shown in Fig. 57. It consists of a distilling flask (250 c.c.), which is attached to a condenser. A small filter flask serves as receiver, the side-tube being attached to a calcium chloride tube. The distilling vessel is provided with a cork,

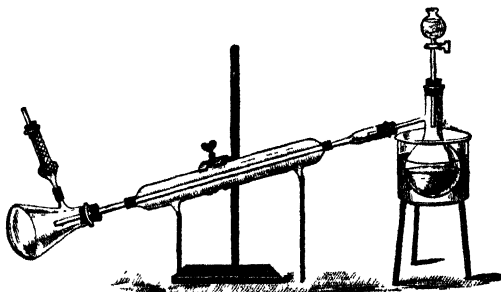
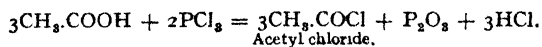


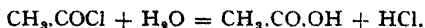
FIG. 57.

through which a tap-funnel is inserted. The flask is cooled in cold water in the water-bath (outlined in Fig. 57), whilst the phosphorus trichloride is slowly run in from the tap-funnel.\* When the phosphorus chloride has been added, the water in the water-bath is warmed to 40–50°, until the evolution of hydrochloric acid gas, which at first is very rapid, begins to abate. The water-bath is then heated to boiling until nothing further distils. The distillate is now redistilled as before, but with a thermometer, and the distillate collected at the boiling-point of acetyl chloride (53–56°). Yield 45 grams.

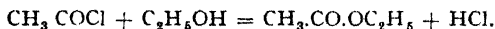


**Properties.**—Colourless liquid with a pungent smell; it fumes in contact with moist air; b.p. 55°; sp. gr. 1.105 at 20°.

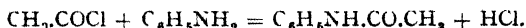
*Reactions.*—1. Add a few drops of acetyl chloride to about 5 c.c. of water in a test-tube. The acetyl chloride sinks to the bottom of the test-tube, but on shaking rapidly dissolves, and heat is evolved. The acetyl chloride is converted into acetic acid and hydrochloric acid.



2. To about 1 c.c. of ethyl alcohol in a test-tube, add 1 c.c. of acetyl chloride drop by drop, cooling under the tap. Then add about 1 c.c. of a solution of common salt. Ethyl acetate, recognised by its fragrant smell, separates out on the surface of the liquid.



3. Add two drops of acetyl chloride to a drop of aniline. A vigorous action occurs, and a solid separates. This is acetanilide, and may be obtained in larger crystals by dissolving in boiling water and cooling slowly.



See *Appendix*, p. 378.

#### PREPARATION 18.

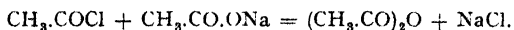
**Acetic Anhydride** (Diacetyl Oxide),  $\begin{matrix} \text{CH}_3\text{CO} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CO} \end{matrix} > \text{O}.$

Gerhardt, *Ann. Chem. Phys.*, 1853, (3), **37**, 311

55 grams sodium acetate (fused)  
40 „ acetyl chloride.

A retort (250 c.c.) is attached to a short condenser and receiver, which is furnished, as in the previous preparation, with a calcium chloride tube. The tubulus of the retort is closed by a cork, through which a tap-funnel is fixed. The fused sodium acetate is prepared by fusing crystallised sodium acetate, ( $\text{CH}_3\text{COONa} + 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ). The sodium acetate (100 grams) is placed in a shallow tin, heated over a Bunsen burner and stirred. It first melts in the water of crystallisation, after which it becomes solid, and finally melts again as the temperature rises. When completely melted it is allowed to cool, powdered, and introduced into the retort. The

acetyl chloride is gradually added through the tap-funnel, the retort being cooled in water.\* When the acetyl chloride has been added, the contents of the retort are well stirred by means of a thick glass rod pushed through the tubulus. The retort is now closed by an ordinary cork or stopper, and heated over a small flame, which should be moved about to prevent the retort cracking. When nothing further distills, the retort is allowed to cool somewhat, and the distillate poured back and redistilled. Finally it is distilled from a distilling flask with a thermometer, and collected at 130—140°. Yield 40 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid with an irritating smell; b.p. 138°; sp. gr. 1.08 at 15°.

*Reactions.*—Repeat the three experiments described under acetyl chloride. The result is the same in each case; but as the acetic anhydride reacts less readily than acetyl chloride, the mixture requires to be warmed.

1.  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO} > \text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{O} = 2\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}.$
2.  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO} > \text{O} + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} = \text{CH}_3\text{CO.OCC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{CH}_3\text{COOH}.$
3.  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO} > \text{O} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2 = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.CO.CH}_3 + \text{CH}_3\text{COOH}.$

In Reaction 2, combination is not complete, even on boiling, and a little dilute caustic soda must be added to decompose the unchanged acetic anhydride. In Reaction 3, the product remains liquid until water is added, when it becomes solid, and on heating dissolves. See *Appendix*, p. 379.

#### PREPARATION 19.

##### Acetamide, $\text{CH}_3\text{CO.NH}_2$ .

Hofmann, *Ber.*, 1882, **15**, 981; Noyes and Goebel, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1922, **44**, 2286; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. II., p. 3.

100 grams ammonium acetate.

Acetamide may be obtained by boiling 100 grams of ammonium acetate with 120 grams of glacial acetic acid for 5—6 hours with



reflux condenser and then distilling the product in the ordinary way. A considerable quantity of water and acetic acid first distils. When the temperature reaches  $180^{\circ}$  the apparatus shown in Fig. 58 is used in which the condenser is replaced by a straight wide tube. The distillate solidifies, and consists mainly of acetamide. The yield is about 60 grams. A better result is obtained by first heating the ammonium acetate in sealed tubes. The ammonium acetate, if not procurable, may be prepared by adding to 70 grams glacial acetic acid, warmed in a basin on the water-bath, about

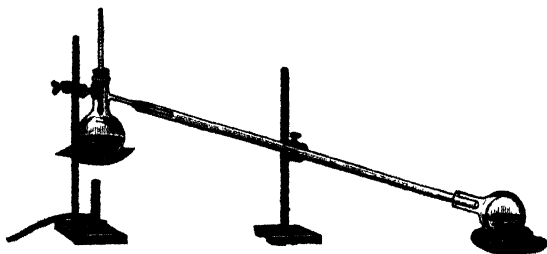
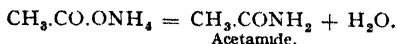


FIG. 58.

80 grams powdered ammonium carbonate until the acid is neutralised, which is recognised by diluting a sample with a little water, and testing with litmus.

**Heating under Pressure.**—Two tubes are made from the usual thick-walled tubing by sealing one end (see p. 24). These are gently warmed, and the melted acetate is poured in until they are about half full. They are then sealed in the manner described on p. 25. The tubes are then placed in a tube furnace (p. 25) and gradually heated to  $200^{\circ}$ , at which temperature they are maintained for 5–6 hours. Without removing the tubes from the furnace they are allowed to cool, and the capillary end is opened by holding a Bunsen burner to the tip until fused, when the pressure within perforates the glass. If a deep file scratch is then made about an inch below the sealed end and the end of a red-hot glass rod held against the scratch, a deep crack is produced and the end easily removed. After heating, the tubes contain a clear, oily-looking liquid, which consists of an aqueous solution of acetamide, together with some unchanged acetate. The contents are poured

into a distilling flask and distilled with a straight tube as condenser, and the portion boiling above  $180^{\circ}$  is collected in a small beaker. This distillate, on standing, almost completely solidifies to a colourless crystalline mass. It is freed from mother-liquor by spreading on a porous plate, and purified by a second distillation. The acetamide has then a nearly constant boiling-point. Yield, about 40 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless, rhombohedral crystals, having a peculiar smell of mice. This is due to impurity, which may be removed by recrystallising from benzene; m.p.  $82^{\circ}$ ; b.p.  $222^{\circ}$ ; easily soluble in water and alcohol.

*Reaction.*—Boil a small quantity of acetamide with caustic soda solution. Ammonia is evolved, and sodium acetate is found in solution,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CONH}_2 + \text{NaOH} = \text{CH}_3\text{CO.ONa} + \text{NH}_3$ . See *Appendix*, p. 380.

#### PREPARATION 20

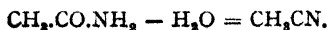
##### Acetonitrile (Methyl cyanide), $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$ .

Dumas, Malaguti and Leblanc, *Annalen*, 1848, **64**, 332.

10 grams acetamide

15 „ phosphorus pentoxide.

The phosphorus pentoxide is introduced into a small distilling flask (200 c.c.) attached to a short condenser. As the pentoxide absorbs moisture rapidly and becomes sticky, it is convenient to push the neck of the distilling flask through a cork which fits the phosphorus pentoxide bottle, and then to shake in the oxide until the required weight is obtained. The powdered acetamide is immediately introduced and shaken up, and the mixture distilled over a small flame, which is constantly moved about. Add to the distillate about half its volume of water, and then solid potassium carbonate, until no more dissolves. The upper layer of liquid, which consists of methyl cyanide, is separated and distilled over a little fresh phosphorus pentoxide with thermometer. Yield, about 5 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid with peculiar smell; b.p.  $82^{\circ}$ .

*Reaction.*—Boil a few grams of the acetonitrile with three times its weight of a mixture of 2 vols. water and 3 vols. concentrated sulphuric acid for an hour with a long upright tube or air-condenser. Distil a few c.c. of liquid, and test the distillate for acetic acid  
 $2\text{CH}_3.\text{CN} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 + 4\text{H}_2\text{O} = 2\text{CH}_3.\text{COOH} + (\text{NH}_4)_2.\text{SO}_4$ . See *Appendix*, p. 381.

#### PREPARATION 21.

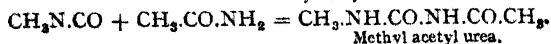
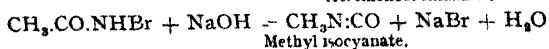
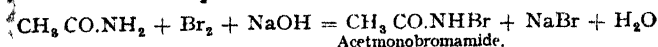
#### Methyl Acetyl Urea, $\text{CH}_3\text{NH.CO.NH.CO.CH}_3$ .

Hofmann *Ber.*, 1881, 17, 2725.

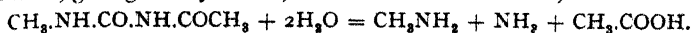
50 grams acetamide

67.5 „ (22.5 c.c.) bromine.

The acetamide and bromine are mixed together in a 1 litre flask and shaken, when a homogeneous red liquid is obtained. A 10 per cent. solution of caustic soda is gradually added in small quantities at a time until the red colour almost disappears. On warming gently on the water-bath, the red colour reappears, but is removed by a further addition of caustic soda. By alternately warming and adding caustic soda, the colour is permanently discharged. If effervescence occurs on warming, the flask must be promptly immersed in cold water. The solution (about 600–700 c.c.) is poured into a basin or beaker and left for a day or two in a cool place (in warm weather in an ice-chest). Large, colourless, prismatic crystals of methyl acetyl urea separate. They are filtered and the mother-liquor is evaporated to dryness on the water-bath and the dry residue extracted on the water-bath with about 200 c.c. benzene in a flask with reflux condenser. When the benzene has been removed first by distillation and then by heating the residue in an open vessel, a further quantity of the substance is obtained. The combined material is then recrystallised from boiling water. Yield 25 grams; m.p.  $179\text{--}180^{\circ}$ .



*Properties.*—Methyl acetyl urea is decomposed on boiling with alkalis, giving methylamine, ammonia and acetic acid,



See *Appendix*, p. 383.

#### PREPARATION 22.

#### Methylamine Hydrochloride, $(\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2\text{HCl})$ .

##### (METHOD I.)

Wurtz, *Compt. rend.*, 1848, **28**, 223; Hofmann, *Ber.*, 1882, **14**, 2725, and *Ber.* 1883, **15**, 407 and 762.

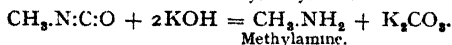
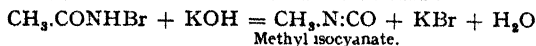
20 grams acetamide

54 „ (18 c.c.) bromine

56 „ caustic potash.

The dry acetamide and bromine are mixed in a flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre), and whilst the mixture is cooled in water, a 10 per cent. solution of caustic potash (about 20 grams KOH) is added, until the dark-brown liquid changes to a deep yellow colour. The solution, which now contains potassium bromide and acetmonobromamide, is slowly added from a tap-funnel inserted, together with a thermometer, into the neck of a distilling flask (1 litre). The flask contains a concentrated solution of caustic potash (56 grams in 100 c.c. of water), heated to 60—70°. Heat is evolved, and care must be taken that the rise of temperature does not greatly exceed the above limits. The reaction goes on quietly, and the yellow solution is gradually decolourised. The mixture is then digested for a short time at the above temperature until the yellow colour completely disappears. A few bits of broken pot are now introduced into the flask, which is closed with an ordinary cork, and the liquid distilled over wire-gauze. The vapours of methylamine and ammonia, which are cooled, are passed by means of a bent adapter, attached to the end of the condenser, into dilute hydrochloric acid contained in the receiver. Care must be taken that the adapter does not dip too far into the acid, or liquid may be sucked back into the condenser and distilling flask. When the distillate is no longer alkaline, and consequently all the methylamine has been driven over, the hydrochloric acid solution is evaporated to dryness on the water-bath, and the colourless crystalline residue extracted

repeatedly with small quantities of absolute alcohol, which dissolves out the methylamine salt from the ammonium chloride. From the hot alcoholic solution foliated crystals separate out on cooling.



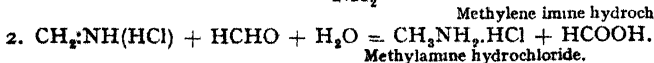
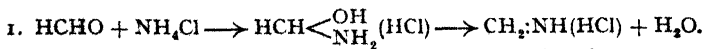
### (METHOD II.)

Brochet, Cambier, *Compt. rend.*, 1895 **120**, 449, 557; E. A. Werner, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1917, **111**, 844; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. III, p. 67.

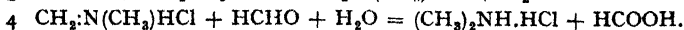
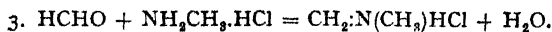
125 grams ammonium chloride

250 c.c. formaldehyde (40 per cent. solution).

The ammonium chloride and formaldehyde are mixed together in a 1 litre distilling flask attached to a long condenser and the mixture is gradually heated to 104° (the thermometer being immersed in the liquid) and the temperature maintained until no more liquid distils (4—5 hours). The main product in the flask is methylamine hydrochloride, together with small quantities of diethylamine and triethylamine hydrochlorides. It is allowed to cool, when ammonium chloride separates and is filtered with the pump. The filtrate is concentrated by evaporation in a basin to about half the volume, when more ammonium chloride separates. After filtration the liquid is further evaporated until crystals appear. On cooling, methylamine hydrochloride (about 35 grams) crystallises and is filtered. A second crop (15—20 grams) is obtained by further evaporation of the mother-liquors. The final filtrate is concentrated as far as possible by evaporation and left in a vacuum desiccator over solid caustic soda for 24 hours. The semi-solid residue is digested with chloroform, which dissolves the dimethylamine hydrochloride. The solution is filtered and the insoluble methylamine hydrochloride washed with a little chloroform (8—10 c.c.). The total yield of methylamine hydrochloride is about 55 grams.



With rise of temperature, the following reactions occur, yielding dimethylamine hydrochloride :—



*Properties.*—Large deliquescent tablets, which melt at  $227^\circ$ , and sublime above that temperature, with slight decomposition. The base is liberated on warming with caustic soda, as an inflammable gas with strong ammoniacal smell. See *Appendix*, p. 383.

#### PREPARATION 23.

##### Dimethylamine Hydrochloride, $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NH}.\text{HCl}$ .

Knudsen, *Ber.*, 1914, **47**, 2694; E. A. Werner, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1917, **111**, 850.

100 grams ammonium chloride

200 c.c. formaldehyde (40 per cent. solution).

The mixture of ammonium chloride and formaldehyde is distilled at  $104^\circ$  as in the previous preparation until no more liquid passes over, when the contents are left to cool and the crystals of ammonium chloride are filtered off. A further 150 c.c. of formaldehyde are now added to the filtrate and the mixture is poured back into the distilling flask and heated to  $115^\circ$  until no more liquid distils (about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  hours). The product is concentrated on the water-bath until a scum forms on the surface, when it is allowed to cool and the solid ammonium chloride and methylamine hydrochloride are removed by filtration. The filtrate is heated to  $120^\circ$  until a sample of the liquid, on cooling, becomes semi-solid. The liquid is then allowed to cool and placed in a vacuum desiccator over solid caustic soda for 2 days. The dimethylamine hydrochloride is then extracted with chloroform and filtered, when the filtrate, on cooling, deposits crystals of dimethylamine hydrochloride. Yield about 42 grams. The reaction involved is given in the previous preparation.

Another method for preparing dimethylamine is described under *Reaction 3*, p. 179.

*Properties.*—The free base is a gas at ordinary temperatures which liquefies below  $9^\circ$ .

## PREPARATION 24.

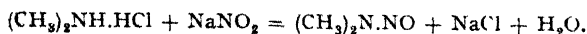
**Dimethylnitrosamine,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N.NO}$ .**

Geuther, *Annalen*, 1863, **128**, 151; Renouf, *Ber.*, 1880, **13**, 2170.

50 grams dimethylamine hydrochloride

45 „ sodium nitrite (in 50 c.c. water).

The dimethylamine salt is dissolved in 25 c.c. of water and made acid to Congo-red paper by the addition of dilute sulphuric acid. A solution of 45 grams of sodium nitrite in 50 c.c. of hot water is then gradually added and the mixture quickly distilled to dryness when the nitrosamine passes over. As a little of the base in the form of the nitrite is carried over with the distillate, the latter is redistilled with the addition of a little more sulphuric acid. Solid potassium carbonate is now added to the distillate, when the nitrosamine separates as a yellow oil. It is dehydrated over potassium carbonate and redistilled at  $148-149^\circ$ . Yield 30—35 grams.



*Properties.*—Yellow oil, b.p.  $149^\circ$ , with a characteristic smell and alkaline reaction. It forms a colourless, crystalline hydrochloride,  $\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N.NO.HCl}$ , when hydrogen chloride gas is passed into the ether solution of the nitrosamine. See *Appendix*, p. 384.

## PREPARATION 25.

**Ethyl Acetate (Acetic Ether),  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO.OCC}_2\text{H}_5$ .**

Scheele, *Chemical Essays*, 1782, p. 307; Frankland, Duppa, *Phil. Trans.*, 1865, **156**, 37; Pabst, *Bull. Soc. chim.*, 1880, **33**, 350.

50 c.c. conc. sulphuric acid.

50 „ absolute alcohol.<sup>1</sup>

Mixture of equal volumes of glacial acetic acid (100 c.c.) and absolute alcohol (100 c.c.).

A distilling flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) is attached to a condenser and receiver. The flask is provided with a cork, through which a separating funnel

<sup>1</sup> *Methyl acetate* may be made in precisely the same way, using methyl alcohol. The product is then fractionated and collected at  $57-63^\circ$ .

is inserted. The mixture of 50 c.c. of concentrated sulphuric acid and 50 c.c. of absolute alcohol is poured into the flask, which is then heated in a bath of paraffin wax or fusible metal <sup>1</sup> to 140°, and kept at this temperature. The mixture of equal volumes of acetic acid and alcohol is now added, drop by drop, from the tap-funnel at the speed at which the liquid distils, as in the preparation of ether (p. 65). When all the mixture has been added, the distillate, which contains the ester, and also acetic acid, alcohol, ether, and sulphurous acid, is shaken in a separating funnel with a strong solution of sodium carbonate (50 c.c.) until the upper layer of ethyl acetate ceases to redden blue litmus. The lower layer is removed as completely as possible, and a strong solution of calcium chloride (50 grams in 50 c.c. of water) added, and the shaking repeated. The lower layer of calcium chloride is run off, and the ethyl acetate carefully decanted from the mouth of the funnel into a dry distilling flask. A few pieces of solid calcium chloride are added, and, after standing overnight, the ethyl acetate is distilled from the water-bath with a thermometer in the neck of the flask. The portion distilling below 74° contains ether, that boiling at 74–79° is mainly ethyl acetate, and is separately collected. Yield, 80 per cent. of the theory.<sup>2</sup>

*Properties.*—Colourless liquid, with an agreeable fruity smell; b.p. 77°; sp. gr. 0.9068 at 15°; soluble in about 11 parts of water; miscible in all proportions with alcohol, ether, and acetic acid.

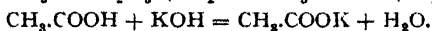
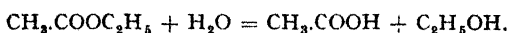
**Hydrolysis (Saponification) of Ethyl Acetate.**—Weigh out 20 grams of ethyl acetate, and heat in a round flask with three times its volume of aqueous potash (1 KOH : 3 H<sub>2</sub>O) with upright condenser over wire gauze. Add a small piece of porous pot to prevent bumping. After an hour or so the upper layer of ethyl acetate will have disappeared. Distil the product with a thermometer

<sup>1</sup> A fusible metal bath has the advantage over an oil-bath of neither smelling nor being liable to catch fire. It is made by melting in a small cooking pan one part of lead and two parts of bismuth. This alloy is fluid above 120°.

<sup>2</sup> The ethyl acetate prepared by the above method is never free from alcohol. In order to remove the last traces of alcohol, the ethyl acetate is mixed with five times its volume of water and distilled from the water-bath until all the ester has distilled. The ethyl acetate is separated from the water and dehydrated first over solid potassium carbonate and then over phosphorus pentoxide, decanted and redistilled (Wade, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1905, **87**, 1656; 1912, **101**, 2429).



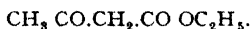
until the temperature reaches  $100^{\circ}$ . Add solid potassium carbonate to the distillate until no more dissolves. Separate the top layer of alcohol and dehydrate over fresh potassium carbonate or quicklime. Distil with a thermometer and weigh the distillate. Neutralise the alkaline liquid, from which the alcohol was first distilled, with dilute sulphuric acid, and evaporate to dryness on the water-bath. Break up the solid residue, and distil with concentrated sulphuric acid (20 c.c.) until the thermometer marks  $130^{\circ}$ . Redistil and collect between  $115^{\circ}$  and  $120^{\circ}$ . Weigh the distillate. This process furnishes an example of *hydrolysis* or *saponification*,



See *Appendix*, p. 384.

#### PREPARATION 26.

##### Ethyl Acetoacetate (Acetoacetic Ester),



Geuther, *Jahresb.*, 1863, p. 323; Frankland, Duppa, *Phil Trans.*, 1865, **156**, 37; Wislicenus, *Annalen*, 1877, **186**, 161.

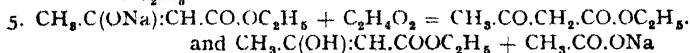
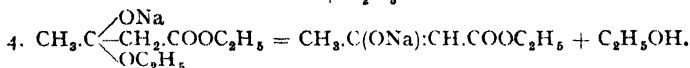
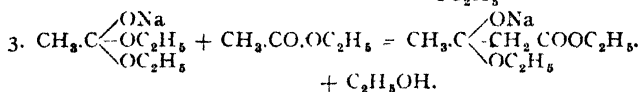
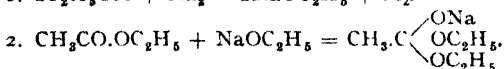
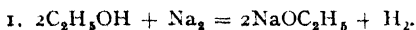
200 grams ethyl acetate  
20     ,     sodium.

The ethyl acetate, carefully dehydrated as described in the previous preparation, is introduced into a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) connected with a long upright condenser. 20 grams of well-pressed sodium, cut into thin slices, are quickly added, and the flask is cooled in water. After a short time a brisk reaction sets in, and ultimately the liquid boils. When the first action is over, and no further evolution of heat occurs, the mixture is heated on the water-bath, without detaching the condenser, until the sodium is completely dissolved. A 50 per cent. acetic acid solution is at once added and well shaken, until the liquid is acid (about 100 c.c.), and then an equal volume of concentrated brine. The liquid divides into two layers; the upper one, consisting of acetoacetic ester and unchanged ethyl acetate, is carefully separated. It is distilled over wire-gauze until the thermometer marks  $100^{\circ}$ , and all the ethyl acetate has been removed. The distillate is now col-

lected in five fractions (100—130°, 130—135°, 165—175°, 175—185°, 185—200°). The fraction distilling at 175—185° is nearly pure acetoacetic ester. Yield 30—40 grams. A further quantity may be obtained by redistilling the other fractions; but it is undesirable to repeat the process frequently, as acetoacetic ester gradually decomposes at the boiling-point. It is for this reason that Gattermann recommends the fractional distillation to be carried out *in vacuo*.

The brown residue remaining in the distilling flask solidifies, on cooling, to a crystalline mass consisting chiefly of dehydracetic acid,  $C_6H_8O_4$ . It is converted into the sodium salt by boiling with soda solution with the addition of animal charcoal. The sodium salt crystallises from the filtrate. On adding dilute sulphuric acid, the free acid is obtained as colourless needles; m.p. 109°.

The formation of ethyl acetoacetate probably occurs in four steps. The presence of a small quantity of alcohol gives rise to sodium ethylate, which forms an additive compound with ethyl acetate. The latter unites with a second molecule of ethyl acetate, yielding the sodium salt of ethyl acetoacetate, and splitting off alcohol, which reacts with fresh metallic sodium. The sodium salt on acidifying passes mainly into the tautomeric (ketonic) form of acetoacetic ester, although a little "enolic" form is present, forming an equilibrium mixture of the two.



**Properties.**—Colourless liquid possessing a fruity smell; b.p. 181°; sp. gr. 1.03 at 15°. Boiled with dilute caustic potash, the ester decomposes into alcohol, carbon dioxide, and acetone (ketonic decomposition); with strong or alcoholic caustic potash, sodium acetate and alcohol are formed (acid decomposition).

**Reactions.**—1. Add a drop of ferric chloride dissolved in alcohol to a few drops of the ester; a deep violet coloration is produced.

2. Add about 1 c.c. of a saturated aqueous solution of cupric acetate to a few drops of the ester, then alcohol drop by drop until a clear solution is obtained; a bluish-green crystalline precipitate of

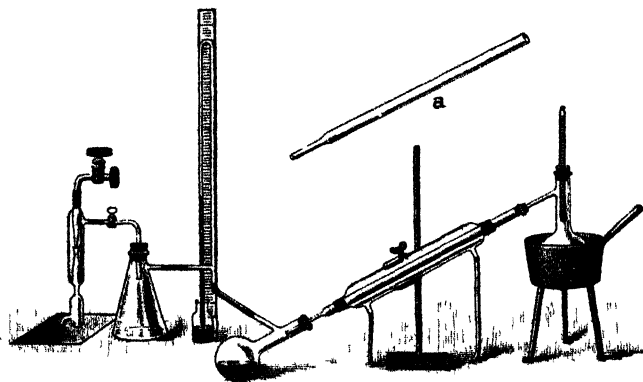


FIG. 59.

copper acetoacetic ester,  $(C_8H_9O_3)_2Cu$ , is formed. See *Appendix*, p. 385.

**Distillation in vacuo.**—The apparatus is shown in Fig. 59. The distilling flask is provided with a thermometer and attached to a short condenser and receiver. The receiver consists of a second distilling flask, which is tightly attached to the end of the narrow condenser tube, figured at *a*, and connected by the side limb by means of pump-tubing to a water-jet aspirator and mercury-gauge.<sup>1</sup> Some small bits of porous pot are

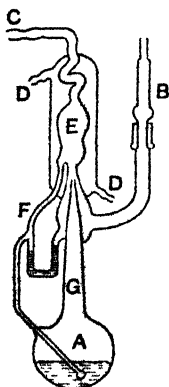


FIG. 60.

<sup>1</sup> With a good water pressure a vacuum of 10–15 mm. should be obtainable. For higher vacua, various forms of oil pumps of the Gaede type may be used, but are costly. A less expensive and at the same time efficient apparatus is the mercury vapour or Langmuir pump shown in section in Fig. 60. The mercury vapour from *A*, which is allowed to boil gently, drives the air, which is drawn in at *B*, to the top of *E*, where it is withdrawn at *C* by a water-aspirator. The apparatus is clamped below

placed in the flask, which is heated in a paraffin bath, and the apparatus exhausted to about 35–40 mm. pressure. At this pressure ethyl acetoacetate boils at about 90°. The following table gives the temperatures corresponding to different pressures :—

<i>t.</i>	<i>mm.</i>	<i>t.</i>	<i>mm.</i>
74° . . . . .	14	94° . . . . .	45
79° . . . . .	18	87° . . . . .	59
88° . . . . .	29	100° . . . . .	80

The chief inconvenience which attends distillation *in vacuo* is the bumping of the liquid in the distilling flask. This may be moderated or removed by various devices, such as the introduction of porous pot, capillary glass tubes, &c., or by driving a rapid stream

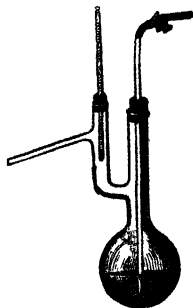


FIG. 61.

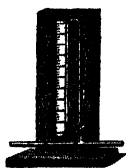


FIG. 62.

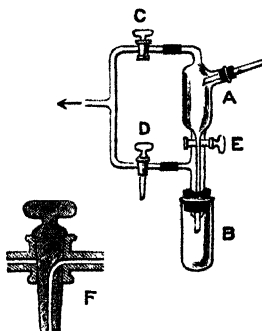


FIG. 63.

of fine air-bubbles through the liquid. For this purpose a Claisen flask (Fig. 61), may be used with advantage. A tube is drawn out into a fine capillary and is open at both ends, the wide end being attached to a short piece of rubber tubing and screw-clip. This tube is inserted through a cork in the straight neck of the flask, whilst the thermometer is fixed in the second neck, which is attached

D, the vessel to be exhausted attached to B and a good water pump attached to C. D are the inlet and outlet tubes of the condenser through which water circulates. It is advisable to surround G with asbestos to prevent radiation. The mercury in A, which should be about the volume shown in the Fig. is boiled gently, preferably with a small ring or Argand burner, as soon as the apparatus has been exhausted as far as possible with the water-pump. With a good water-pump, a vacuum of 1 to 2 mm. should be obtained, or if two mercury vapour pumps be attached in series a fraction of a mm. may be reached.

to the condenser. The stream of air-bubbles is regulated by the clip. Instead of the long manometer shown in Fig. 59, a more compact, and, for low pressures, a more convenient form is shown in Fig. 61. If the distillate has to be separated into fractions, it is undesirable to interrupt the boiling. Various forms of apparatus for effecting this object are shown in Figs. 63—64. The apparatus

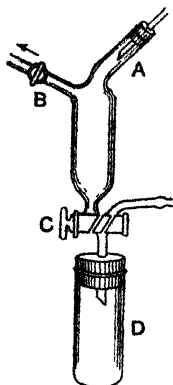


FIG. 63a.

(Fig. 63) consists of a double receiver A and B; c and E are ordinary two-way taps, whilst D is a three-way tap pierced lengthwise and crosswise as shown in section at F. The aspirator is attached to the limb marked with the arrow. During the distillation the taps c and D connect the apparatus with the aspirator whilst E is closed. The distillate collects in A. When this fraction is to be removed, c is closed and E is opened. The liquid is thereby transferred to the second receiver B; E is now closed, c is opened and D turned so as to let air into B; B may now be removed and replaced by a similar vessel and the process repeated. Fig. 63a is similar to Fig. 63. A is connected to the condenser, B is attached to the pump and c is a three-way tap which allows air to enter D before removing it. Fig. 64 needs little explanation. There are two or

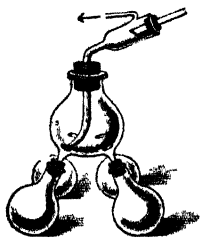


FIG. 64.

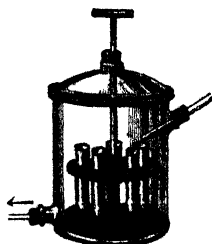


FIG. 64a.

more receivers on one stem. By rotating the stem the distillate falls into one or other receiver. Fig. 64a consists of a vacuum vessel containing a series of test-tubes which can be moved in turn, under the end of the condenser, by means of a vertical axis. It is often

preferable to heat the distilling flask in an oil or metal bath instead of using wire-gauze. Distilling flasks above 250 c.c. capacity should not be used for low pressures, as they may collapse. For high boiling liquids, or for substances which may solidify in the condenser, a condenser tube without water-jacket is used. A convenient form of condenser tube is shown at *a*, Fig. 59. It consists of a straight tube fused on to a short narrower tail-piece. In certain cases it is found convenient to insert the side-tube of the distilling flask directly into the neck of the receiver (see p. 342).

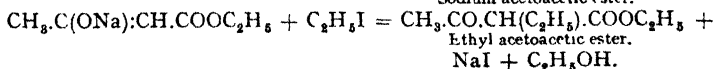
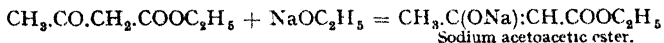
#### PREPARATION 27.

**Ethyl Acetoacetic Ester**,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)\cdot\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ .

. Conrad and Limpach, *Annalen*, 1878, **192**, 155.

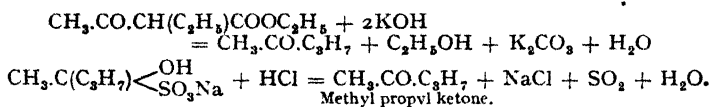
5·7 grams sodium  
80 c.c. absolute alcohol  
32·5 grams acetoacetic ester  
40 „ ethyl iodide.

The alcohol is poured into a 500 c.c. round flask furnished with a reflux condenser, and the sodium, cut into coarse lumps added. When the sodium has dissolved as sodium ethoxide, the flask is cooled somewhat and the acetoacetic ester and ethyl iodide are added. The mixture is heated on the water-bath for about 2 hours until the liquid is neutral to litmus. The alcohol is now distilled as far as possible by immersing the flask in the water-bath; to the residue 60 c.c. of water are added and the oil is extracted with ether. The ether solution is dehydrated over calcium chloride and distilled, preferably under diminished pressure. At the ordinary pressure, the ethyl acetoacetic ester distils as a colourless oil at 190—196°; 90—100° at 20 mm. The yield is about 24 grams.



**Methyl Propyl Ketone**,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{C}_3\text{H}_7$ .—Mix together in a 500 c.c. round flask furnished with a reflux condenser 20 grams of the ethylacetoacetic ester and 100 c.c. of 10 per cent. caustic potash

solution and heat on the water-bath for about 5 hours. Hydrolysis will then be complete and the smell of the acetoacetic ester will be replaced by one resembling acetone. The oily layer is now separated, the remaining solution saturated with common salt and extracted twice with small quantities of ether, which is added to the separated oil. To the ether solution an equal volume of saturated sodium bisulphite solution (see p. 232) is added, and the mixture well shaken and left for a time. The bisulphite compound is filtered, washed with a little ether and then decomposed by the addition of hydrochloric acid (10 c.c. of conc. HCl + 15 c.c. of water) and left for an hour. Salt is added and the oily layer extracted with ether dehydrated over calcium chloride, the ether removed and the ketone distilled. It boils at 96—102°. The yield is 7—8 grams.



Colourless liquid with a smell of acetone; b. p. 102°; sp. gr. 0.808 at 20°. See *Appendix*, p. 388.

#### PREPARATION 28.

##### Acetylacetone, $\text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ .

Claisen, Ehrhardt, *Ber.* 1889, **22**, 100.

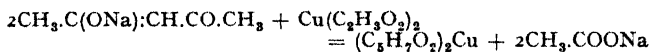
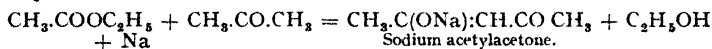
25 grams sodium  
225 c.c. pure (alcohol free) ethyl acetate  
79 „ acetone.  
125 grams copper acetate.

The alcohol-free ethyl acetate is prepared as described on p. 97. The sodium is pressed as wire into a 1½ litre flask containing about 20 c.c. of dry ether to prevent oxidation of the metal. The flask is fitted with a reflux condenser and cooled in a freezing mixture and the ethyl acetate, likewise cooled, is added. To this the acetone, also cooled, is introduced in small quantities and the mixture shaken continually. The addition of the acetone must not be done too quickly because of the violence of the reaction, nor too slowly, as otherwise a considerable quantity of ethyl

acetoacetate may be formed (see p. 98). When all the acetone has been added, the flask is left for several hours in a freezing mixture and then for a further 12 hours (overnight) at the ordinary temperature. The sodium compound of acetyl acetone is dissolved by adding about 350 to 400 c.c. of ice-water, and the water layer is then separated from the upper layer of ethyl acetate. The aqueous solution is slightly acidified with acetic acid.

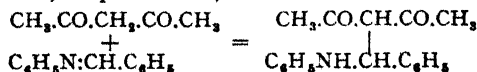
Meanwhile 125 grams of copper acetate, finely powdered, are boiled with  $1\frac{1}{2}$  litres of water for several hours and filtered from undissolved basic salt.

This solution, whilst still lukewarm, is added to the acidified solution, when copper acetyl acetone is thrown down. The precipitate is allowed to stand several hours, filtered and the moist solid suspended in ether. Dilute sulphuric acid is then gradually added and the mixture shaken until the solid disappears, when two layers are formed. The lower layer of copper sulphate solution is removed in a separating funnel and the ether layer dehydrated over calcium chloride. After removing the ether on the water-bath, the residue is fractionated and the portion boiling at  $125-140^\circ$  collected. It may be further purified by a second fractionation. Yield 29 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless, pleasant-smelling liquid; b. p.  $136^\circ$ ; it dissolves in 8 parts of water. It combines with hydrazine to form pyrazole and with hydroxylamine to form isoxazole compounds. It also forms well-crystallised salts with various metallic oxides.

*Reaction.*—To 0.5 gram of acetylacetone add 1 gram of benzal-aniline (see p. 233) and a drop of piperidine. The mixture becomes warm and soon solidifies. Recrystallised from alcohol, it forms colourless needles, m. p.  $106-107^\circ$ .



See *Appendix*, p. 389.



## PREPARATION 29.

**Monochloroacetic Acid,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl.CO.OH}$ .**

R. Hofmann, *Annalen*, 1857, **102**, 1; Auger, Béhal, *Bull. Soc. chim.*, 1889, (3) **2**, 145.

100 c.c. glacial acetic acid  
10 grams red phosphorus.

Fit up the apparatus shown in Fig. 65.\* It consists of a stoneware jar one-third full of pyrolusite in lumps, and fitted with exit tube and tap-funnel. It is heated on a sand-bath over a small

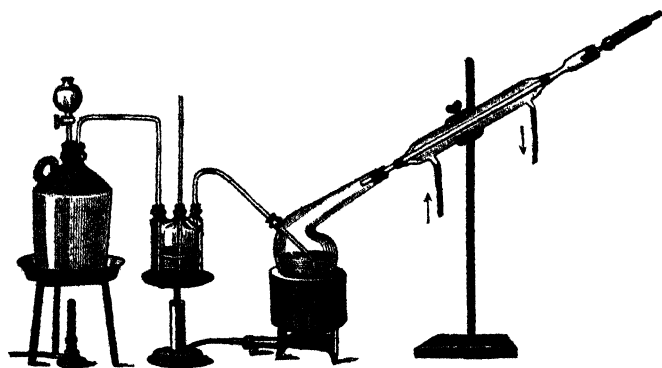


FIG. 65.

flame, whilst concentrated hydrochloric acid is allowed to drop in from the tap-funnel. A rapid current of chlorine is thus evolved, which is dried by passing through concentrated sulphuric acid in the Woulff bottle.<sup>1</sup> The Woulff bottle has a safety and an exit tube, the latter being connected with a straight tube passing to the bottom of the retort. The retort is tilted upwards and connected with an upright condenser, which is furnished with an open calcium chloride tube. The acetic acid and phosphorus are placed in the retort and heated on the water-bath. The retort and contents are weighed at the commencement of the operation on a rough balance. A rapid current of chlorine is then passed through for six to twelve hours, and the retort occasionally weighed, until the increase in

<sup>1</sup> Cylinders of liquid chlorine can be purchased and conveniently replace the preparation from pyrolusite as described above.

weight (50 grams) roughly corresponds to the formation of mono-chloroacetic acid. The operation is stopped when a sample solidifies on cooling and on rubbing with a glass rod. The action of the chlorine is greatly facilitated by sunlight. The yellow liquid in the retort is poured into a distilling flask, and distilled over wire-gauze. Some acetyl chloride and unchanged acetic acid first distil, after which the temperature rises and the fraction boiling at  $150\text{--}190^\circ$  is collected separately. It is advisable to run the water out of the condenser when the temperature approaches  $170^\circ$ , as the acid may solidify and block the condenser-tube. The distillate solidifies on cooling. Any liquid is drained off at once, and the solid is redistilled and collected at  $180\text{--}190^\circ$ . It is nearly pure chloroacetic acid. Yield 80—100 grams.



The phosphorus acts as a "chlorine carrier" by forming probably phosphorus pentachloride, and then reverting to the state of trichloride.

*Properties.*—Colourless crystals; m.p.  $63^\circ$ ; b.p.  $185\text{--}187^\circ$ ; readily soluble in water, and deliquescent in moist air. It causes blisters on the skin. See *Appendix* p. 390.

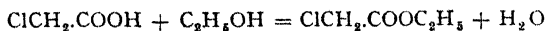
#### PREPARATION 30.

##### **Ethyl Chloroacetate, $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl.COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ .**

Conrad, *Annalen*, 1877, **188**, 218.

50 grams chloroacetic acid  
 60 „ (75 c.c.) absolute alcohol  
 18 „ (10 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid.

The above mixture is heated on the water-bath with a reflux condenser for 6 hours. It is then cooled, diluted with ice water and the ester extracted with ether. The ether extract is dehydrated with sodium sulphate and distilled with a fractionating column. The ester is collected at  $144\text{--}145^\circ$ . The yield is 50 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless, sweet-smelling liquid, b.p.  $145^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 1.158.

## PREPARATION 31.

**Cyanacetic Ester and Cyanacetic Acid,**

Kolbe, Müller, *Annalen*, 1864, **181**, 350; Phelps, Tillotson, *Amer. Journ. of Science*, 1908, (iv), **26**, 275; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. III. p. 53.

50 grams monochloracetic acid (in 25 c.c. of water).

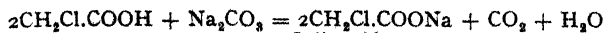
77 „ sodium carbonate (hydrated).

35 „ sodium cyanide (in 63 c.c. of water).

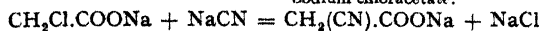
The powdered sodium carbonate is added to the solution of the chloracetic acid. As the reaction is endothermic, the temperature may fall so low as to freeze the mixture, and it is therefore advisable to keep the vessel in water at room temperature. The alkaline solution is now poured into a hot solution of 35 grams of sodium cyanide contained in a 1-litre flask, and the mixture boiled for 5 minutes to complete the reaction. The solution is cooled below  $20^\circ$ , stirred and conc. sulphuric acid added drop by drop, keeping the temperature below  $25^\circ$ , until it is just acid to logwood paper. Considerable frothing occurs at this stage. The sodium chloride which now separates is removed by filtration, transferred to a flask, and shaken up with 75 c.c. of purified spirit. It is filtered and the residue washed with a further 25 c.c. of spirit. The alcoholic extract is preserved for further treatment. The filtrate from the salt is now evaporated *in vacuo* on the water-bath at  $70\text{--}80^\circ$  (see p. 342), the residue well shaken with the above alcoholic extract and filtered. The solid is again treated with 50 c.c. of spirit and filtered. The combined alcoholic extracts (about 150 c.c.) are distilled *in vacuo* on a water-bath at  $50\text{--}60^\circ$ , which removes the greater portion of the solvent. The residue is mixed with 35 c.c. of absolute alcohol and 2 c.c. of conc. sulphuric acid and heated in a paraffin-bath at  $100\text{--}110^\circ$ , whilst the vapour from 150 to 200 c.c. of absolute alcohol is introduced. It is then heated for a further half hour and cooled. Ice is now added and the cooled product extracted with ether. The ether extract is washed with sodium carbonate solution and dehydrated over calcium chloride.

The solvent is distilled from a water-bath and the residual

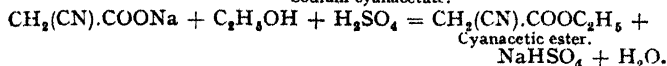
cyanacetic ester purified by distillation *in vacuo*. At 20 mm. pressure it boils at 105–106°. The yield is 45–50 grams.



Sodium chloracetate.



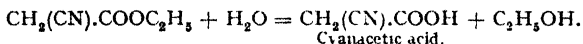
Sodium cyanacetate.



Cyanacetic ester.

*Properties*.—Colourless liquid with b.p. 207° at normal pressure.

**Cyanacetic Acid**.—In order to prepare the free acid the ester is mixed with 2 parts of water and a few drops of nitric acid and heated at 60° until a homogeneous liquid is obtained. This is evaporated in an open dish until crystallisation begins. The crystals are separated and purified by recrystallisation from a mixture of ether and chloroform. The melting-point is 66–67°.



Cyanacetic acid.

*Properties*.—Colourless, well-formed crystals which decompose on heating to 165° into CO<sub>2</sub> and CH<sub>3</sub>CN. See *Appendix*, p. 391.

#### PREPARATION 32.

##### Nitromethane, CH<sub>3</sub>.NO<sub>2</sub>.

Kolbe, *Journ. prakt. Chem.*, 1872, (2), 5, 427; Preibisch, *Journ. prakt. Chem.*, 1874, (2), 8, 316; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. III. p. 83.

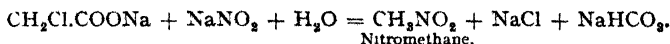
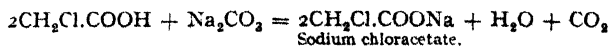
100 grams monochloroacetic acid (in 200 c.c. of water).

60 „ sodium carbonate (anhydrous).

73 „ sodium nitrite (in 100 c.c. of water).

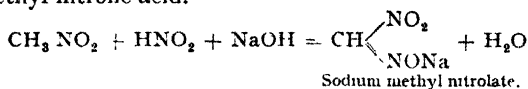
The monochloroacetic acid solution is placed in a 1½-litre distilling flask, and is made faintly alkaline by the gradual addition of sodium carbonate. The flask is now attached to a condenser and the sodium nitrite solution run in from a tap-funnel inserted in the neck of the flask. The mixture is slowly distilled over wire-gauze. The liquid gradually turns red, carbon dioxide is evolved and the nitromethane and water distil. The heavier nitromethane is separated from the water, dried over calcium chloride and redistilled. It boils at 101–102°. The yield is about 30 grams. The aqueous layer, which still contains some

dissolved nitromethane, can be used, if necessary, instead of water for further preparations.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid with a not unpleasant smell, b.p.  $101^\circ$ , sp. gr. 1.144 at  $15^\circ$ .

*Reaction.*—It forms a sodium salt when an alcoholic caustic soda solution is added to the nitromethane dissolved in alcohol as a white precipitate of the formula  $\text{CH}_2\text{Na.NO}_2$  or  $\text{CH}_2\text{NO.ONa}$ . If to a solution of nitromethane in caustic soda a few drops of sodium nitrite are added and then dilute sulphuric acid, a red substance is produced, which is soluble in ether and is the sodium sal. of methyl nitrolic acid.



On further addition of acid, the sodium salt is decomposed and the colour vanishes. See *Appendix*, p. 392.

### PREPARATION 33.

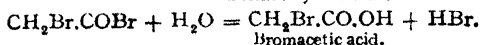
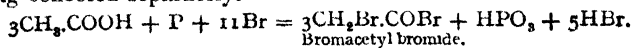
#### Monobromacetic Acid, $\text{CH}_2\text{Br.COOH}$ .

Hell, *Ber.*, 1881, **14**, 891; Volhard, *Annalen*, 1887, **242**, 141; Zelinsky, *Ber.*, 1887, **20**, 2026.

30 grams (30 c.c.) glacial acetic acid.  
105    ,   (35 c.c.) bromine.  
5     ,    red phosphorus.

All the above substances must be dry. The acetic acid is frozen in ice, and any liquid drained off, and the red phosphorus is washed with water to free it from phosphoric acid, dried in the steam oven, and kept over sulphuric acid in a desiccator until required. The bromine is placed in a separating funnel with half its volume of concentrated sulphuric acid overnight, and then separated. The apparatus is shown in Fig. 66. It consists of a round flask (250 c.c.) attached to an upright condenser, which is provided with a cork. A tap-funnel containing the bromine passes through one hole, and

a wide bent tube, attached at its lower end to a funnel, passes through the other. As a large quantity of hydrobromic acid is evolved in the reaction, the funnel is made to touch the surface of water contained in a beaker, whereby it is completely absorbed. The phosphorus and acetic acid are placed in the flask, and bromine is dropped in from the tap-funnel.\* A vigorous reaction occurs, and the liquid becomes very warm. After half the bromine has been added the action moderates, and the remainder may be run in more quickly. When the whole has been added, the liquid is boiled gently until the colour of the bromine disappears. It is now allowed to cool, and the liquid decanted into a distilling flask for distillation *in vacuo*. Care must be taken not to touch the substance with the hands, as even a small quantity produces very unpleasant sores. The apparatus for distilling *in vacuo* is shown in Fig. 59 (p. 100). The distilling flask is provided with a thermometer, and attached to a short condenser and receiver. The receiver consists of a second distilling flask, which is tightly attached to the end of the condenser and connected by the side limb with pump-tubing to a water-jet aspirator and mercury manometer. Some small bits of a porous pot are placed in the flask, and the apparatus exhausted to about 50–60 mm. pressure. The liquid distils at a nearly constant temperature (about 50–53°), and consists of nearly pure bromoacetyl bromide. The calculated quantity of water is added to convert it into bromoacetic acid, when the liquid forms a solid crystalline mass.\* It may be purified by distillation at atmospheric pressure with condenser-tube only, the portion boiling above 165° being collected separately.



*Properties.*—Colourless crystals; m.p. 50–51°; b.p. 208°. See *Appendix*, p. 390.

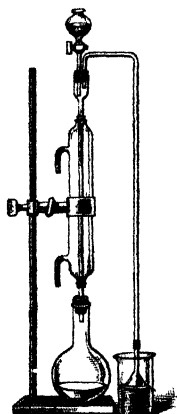


FIG. 66.

## PREPARATION 34.

**Glycine** (Glycocoll, Aminoacetic Acid).  $\text{CH}_2\begin{matrix} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{CO.OH} \end{matrix}$ .

Braconnot, *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1820, (2) **13**, 114; Perkin, Duppa, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1859, **11**, 22; Kraut, *Annalen*, 1891, **266**, 292.

50 grams chloracetic acid

50 c.c. water

600 „ ammonia 26.5 per cent. (sp. gr. 0.907 at 14°).

Fit up the apparatus shown in Fig. 67. It consists of a large wide-necked bottle, in which the ammonia solution is placed. The solution is stirred by a mechanical stirrer, rotated by means of a water-turbine. The solution of the chloracetic acid in 50

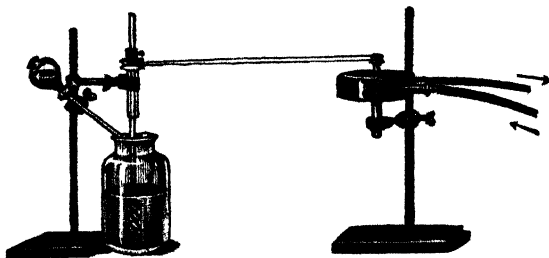
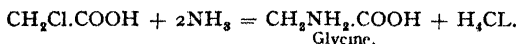


FIG. 67.

c.c. water, is dropped in from a tap-funnel. After standing 24 hours the liquid is poured into a flask, and the excess of ammonia is removed by passing in a current of steam, and evaporating at the same time on the water-bath until the last traces of ammonia disappear. The solution now contains glycine and ammonium chloride. Precipitated carbonate of copper is added to the hot liquid until no further effervescence occurs, and some carbonate remains undissolved. It is filtered and evaporated on the water-bath until crystallisation sets in. This is determined by removing and cooling a small portion in a test-tube or watch-glass. The blue needles of copper glycine,  $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{NO}_2)_2\text{Cu}, \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , are filtered and washed, first with dilute and then with stronger spirit. The mother liquor may be further evaporated, and a fresh quantity of crystals obtained. The copper

salt is dissolved in water and precipitated hot with hydrogen sulphide, the free glycine passing into solution. The precipitate is filtered and well washed, and the filtrate evaporated to a small bulk on the water-bath. Crystals of glycine separate out. Yield 15—20 grams. The loss is due to the formation of di- and tri-glycolaminic acid,  $\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2\text{COOH})_2$  and  $\text{N}(\text{CH}_2\text{COOH})_3$ .



*Properties.*—Large monoclinic crystals; discoloured at  $228^\circ$ ; m.p.  $232\text{--}236^\circ$ ; scarcely soluble in alcohol and ether, readily soluble in water (1 part glycine in 4 parts water).

*Reactions.*—1. Add a drop of copper sulphate to a solution of glycine, and notice the blue colour of the copper salt.

2. Add a drop of ferric chloride to the solution. It gives a deep red colour. See *Appendix*, p. 392.

#### PREPARATION 35.



Klages, *Ber.*, 1903. **36**, 1506, Hantzsch and Siberrad, *Ber.*, 1900, **33**, 70.

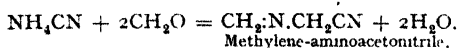
250 c.c. formaldehyde solution (40 per cent.).

90 grams ammonium chloride (powdered).

85 „ sodium cyanide (in 200 c.c. water).

63 c.c. glacial acetic acid.

The first part of the process consists in the preparation of methylene-aminoacetonitrile.

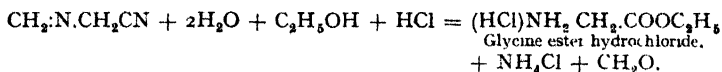


The formaldehyde and ammonium chloride are mixed in a wide-necked glass jar, cooled in a freezing mixture and stirred by means of a stirrer as shown in Fig. 67. When the temperature falls to  $5^\circ$  the sodium cyanide solution is slowly run in from a tap-funnel during three hours, the temperature being maintained below  $10^\circ$ . When half the cyanide solution has been added, the



ammonium chloride will have completely dissolved. Whilst the second half of the solution is being added, 63 c.c. of glacial acetic acid are dropped in from another tap-funnel at about the same rate, whilst the temperature is kept below  $15^{\circ}$ . As soon as the acetic acid is added, a white crystalline substance begins to separate and gradually fills the liquid. The stirring is continued for another hour after the solutions have been added. The crystalline mass is filtered, washed with water and dried. The yield is 60—70 grams. Methyleamino-acetonitrile melts at  $129^{\circ}$ . It may be recrystallised from alcohol, but is usually pure enough for further treatment.

On hydrolysis in presence of alcohol it breaks up into glycine ester hydrochloride, ammonium chloride and formaldehyde.

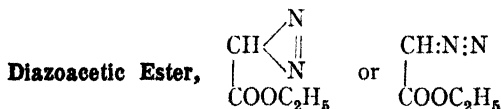


Twenty-five grams methyleamino-acetonitrile are added to 170 c.c. of absolute alcohol previously saturated in the cold with hydrogen chloride. See p. 362.

When saturated, the mixture is boiled for an hour with reflux condenser on the water-bath and filtered hot from the ammonium chloride which remains undissolved. On cooling, the greater portion of the ester hydrochloride crystallises. A further quantity may be obtained by concentrating the mother liquors. Yield 30—35 grams.

*Properties.*—Colourless needles; m. p.  $144^{\circ}$ , soluble in hot alcohol, very soluble in water. See *Appendix*, p. 392.

#### PREPARATION 36.



Curtius, *J. prakt. Chem.*, 1888, **38**, 401; Silberrad, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1902, **81**, 600.

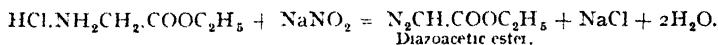
25 grams glycine ester hydrochloride (in 50 c.c. of water).

18 „ sodium nitrite in fine powder.

The glycine ester and sodium nitrite are shaken together in a

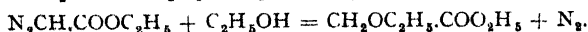
separating funnel (250 c.c.) until the nitrite is dissolved, a little water being added if necessary. Fifteen c.c. of ether are poured into the funnel, and when the temperature has sunk to about  $5^{\circ}$ , two or three drops of a 10 per cent. sulphuric acid solution are added. The mixture is now well shaken for a minute and the aqueous layer drawn off into a flask standing in ice, whilst the yellow ethereal solution, separated as completely as possible from water, is poured from the neck of the funnel into a dry flask. The aqueous portion cooled at  $5^{\circ}$  is returned to the funnel and the process is repeated five or six times with fresh quantities of ether, a few drops of sulphuric acid being added each time before shaking, and the yellow ethereal layer separated, until the ether is only slightly coloured.

The united ethereal extracts are shaken with very small quantities of sodium carbonate solution until no more carbon dioxide is evolved and the solution remains alkaline. The ether solution is then thoroughly dehydrated over calcium chloride overnight and the ether carefully removed on the water-bath, which should not be heated to boiling. When most of the ether has been distilled off, the flask is taken from the water-bath and the remainder of the ether removed by blowing air over the surface of the liquid. Yield about 15 grams.



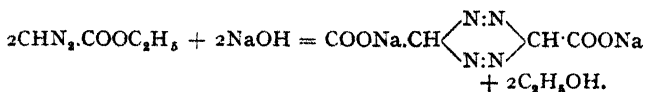
*Properties.*—Deep yellow liquid which explodes on boiling; but distils undecomposed under diminished pressure.

*Reactions.*—Add a drop of the diazoacetic ester to concentrated sulphuric acid. It decomposes explosively. Heat a few c.c. of the ester in turn with water and alcohol. Nitrogen is evolved with the formation of glycollic ester in the first case and ethyl glycollic ester in the second.



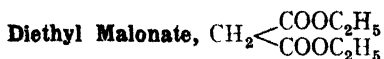
Add an ethereal solution of iodine. Nitrogen is evolved and iodacetic ester is formed. Heat a little of the ester with concentrated hydrochloric acid. Nitrogen is evolved and chloracetic ester is formed. Gradually add five grams of the diazoacetic ester to a solution of 8 grams of caustic soda dissolved in 12 c.c. of water

heated on the water-bath. A vigorous reaction occurs and yellow crystals of sodium bisdiaoacetate are deposited. Cool, add 10 c.c. of spirit, and filter and wash with spirit.



See *Appendix*, p. 393.

#### PREPARATION 37.

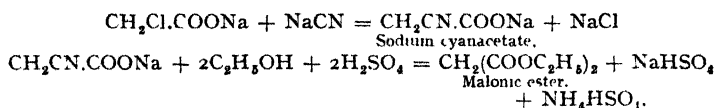


Conrad, *Annalen*, 1880, **204**, 126; W. A. Noyes, *Amer. Chem. J.*, 1896, **18**, 1105.

- 50 grams chloracetic acid (in 100 c.c. water)
- 28 „ sodium carbonate (anhydrous)
- 28 „ sodium cyanide (in powder).

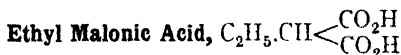
The solution of chloracetic acid is poured into a wide basin (20 cm. diam.), and whilst the mixture is heated to 55–60°, sodium carbonate (28 grams) is added until the evolution of carbon dioxide ceases and the liquid is neutral. A solution of sodium chloracetate is thus obtained. Sodium cyanide (28 grams) is now added, the mixture gently heated and well stirred.\* Vigorous effervescence occurs and the flame is removed. When the reaction is over, the contents of the basin are rapidly evaporated on the sand-bath, whilst the mass is continuously stirred with a thermometer until the temperature reaches 135°. The brown semi-fluid mass is allowed to cool and stirred whilst solidifying, and then quickly broken up into coarse powder and introduced into a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre). The sodium cyanacetate which has been formed is now converted into the ester, and at the same time hydrolysed by boiling with sulphuric acid. Absolute alcohol (20 c.c.) is added, and the flask is then mounted on a water-bath and attached to a reflux condenser. A cold mixture of 80 c.c. absolute alcohol and 90 c.c. concentrated sulphuric acid is added in the course of about ten minutes, and the flask heated for two hours on the water-bath. The mixture is cooled quickly, 100 c.c. of water are added, and any insoluble matter

is filtered off. The filter is washed several times with small quantities of ether, and the filtrate shaken up with the ether and separated. The filtrate is shaken up again with fresh ether when the ester is completely separated, and the united ethereal extracts freed from acid by shaking with water and then with a strong solution of sodium carbonate until the latter remains alkaline. The ether extract is then separated, dehydrated with calcium chloride, and the ether removed on the water-bath. The residual ester is distilled under reduced pressure. Yield 45—50 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p.  $195^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 1.068 at  $18^\circ$ . See *Appendix*, p. 394.

#### PREPARATION 38.

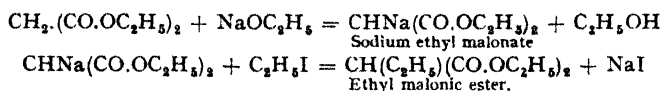


Conrad, *Annalen*, 1880, **204**, 134.

- 16 grams ethyl malonate
- 25 „ (32 c.c.) absolute alcohol
- 2.3 „ sodium
- 20 „ ethyl iodide.

Sodium ethoxide is first prepared by dissolving 2.5 grams sodium in 25 grams alcohol, and the reaction completed, if necessary, on the water-bath as described on p. 103. Whilst the product is still slightly warm, 16 grams of malonic ester are added from a tap-funnel. The liquid remains clear at first, but before the ester has all been added a white crystalline body (sodium ethyl malonate) separates, and soon the whole solidifies. To the solid mass 20 grams of ethyl iodide are slowly added. The mass softens and, after continued shaking, completely liquefies with evolution of heat. The product is now heated on the water-bath, when it becomes turbid from the separation of sodium iodide in the form of a fine powder. After one and a half hours the liquid ceases to be alkaline and the

reaction is complete. The alcohol is distilled off from a brine-bath (water saturated with common salt). On the addition of water to the residue an almost colourless oil separates out. The oil is removed by extraction with ether, dehydrated over calcium chloride and distilled. When the ether has been driven off, almost the whole of the residue (ethyl diethyl malonate) passes over at 206—208°. Yield about 15 grams.



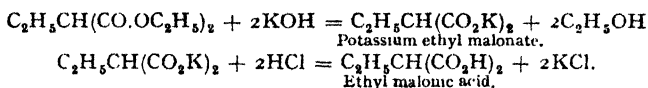
*Properties.*—Colourless liquid with an agreeable fruity smell; b.p. 207°, sp. gr. 1.008 at 18°.

To obtain the free acid, the ester is hydrolysed with caustic potash. This may be effected in two ways.

(1) To 15 grams caustic potash dissolved in an equal weight of water 10 grams of the ester are slowly added from a tap-funnel and shaken. At first an emulsion forms, which soon solidifies to a white mass. This is heated on the water-bath with frequent shaking for about three-quarters of an hour, until it becomes completely liquid. The hydrolysis is then complete. The product is diluted with a little water, neutralised with concentrated hydrochloric acid, and the free acid precipitated with a strong solution of calcium chloride as the calcium salt. This is separated from the solution by filtration and concentrated hydrochloric acid added to the calcium salt until distinctly acid to Congo red paper. From the acid solution the free ethyl malonic acid is extracted by shaking with ether. The ether solution is dehydrated with anhydrous sodium sulphate. After evaporating off the ether, the acid remains behind as a syrup, which solidifies when cold. This is redissolved in water, boiled with a little animal charcoal to free it from any adhering colouring matter, filtered, and evaporated to syrupy consistency on the water-bath. The colourless acid crystallises on cooling. The crystals should be pressed on a porous plate and recrystallised from benzene. Yield about 5 grams.

(2) The second method is to hydrolyse with alcoholic potash and precipitate the acid directly from the alkaline solution. The alcoholic potash solution is prepared by dissolving a slight excess

above the calculated weight of caustic potash in an equal weight of water and adding four times the volume of purified spirit. The mixture is placed in a round flask fitted with reflux condenser and the ethyl malonic ester added slowly with shaking. When all is added, the clear solution is heated on the water-bath until a test portion dissolves completely in water. The liquid is then poured into a basin, the alcohol removed on the water-bath and the residue dissolved in water, well cooled and conc. hydrochloric acid added until a drop gives an acid reaction to Congo-red paper. The acid is extracted with ether and purified as described above.



*Properties.*—Rhombic prisms; m.p. 111.5°, easily soluble in water, alcohol, and ether.

*Reaction.*—Heat a gram or two of the acid in a test-tube over a small flame and have at hand a second test-tube one-third full of lime water. The acid decomposes at 160° into butyric acid and carbon dioxide. When the effervescence begins to slacken, decant the gas downwards into the test-tube of lime-water, shake up and notice the turbidity. The acid which remains will have a strong smell of butyric acid,



See *Appendix*, p. 394.

#### PREPARATION 39.

##### Glutaric Acid, $\text{HO}.\text{CO}.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}_2.\text{COOH}$ .

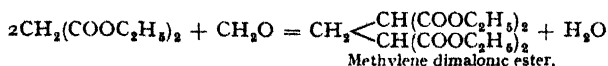
Conrad, Guthzeit, *Annalen*, 1884, **222**, 253; Knoevenagel, *Ber.*, 1914, **27**, 2346.

##### *Methylene dimalonic ester.*

- 32 grams malonic ester
- 8 „ formaldehyde solution 40 per cent.
- 0.5 gram piperidine (or diethylamine).

The mixture of malonic ester and formaldehyde is cooled in ice before adding the piperidine and is then left for 12 hours in a closed

vessel at the ordinary temperature. It is then heated on the water-bath for several hours. The water, which now separates, is removed and the oily layer distilled *in vacuo*. By keeping the temperature at 50° until the water is driven off, previous dehydration of the liquid is unnecessary and the liquid boils quietly. The oil distils at 200—205° at 20 mm. The yield is 26—27 grams.

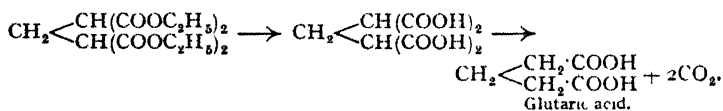


### Glutaric acid.

10 grams methylene dimalonic ester

10 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (in 10 c.c. water).

The mixture is boiled with reflux condenser for 6 hours, when the oil gradually disappears. The liquid is then evaporated to dryness on the water-bath and the semi-solid glutaric acid distilled *in vacuo*. It boils at 185—195° at 10 mm. A little anhydride is formed, which may be removed by warming with a few drops of water. The distillate on cooling solidifies and may be crystallised from benzene, m.p. 97—98°. The yield is about 3 grams.



### Chloral Hydrate, $\text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$

Liebig, *Annalen*, 1832, **1**, 189; Dumas, *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1834, **56**, 123.

Chloral hydrate is obtained by the action of chlorine upon ethyl alcohol. The solid chloral alcoholate is formed,  $\text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5$ , which, when decomposed with sulphuric acid, yields chloral,  $\text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{COH}$ , a liquid which combines with water to form the crystalline hydrate.

*Properties.*—It crystallises in prisms, which dissolve easily in water, alcohol, and liquid hydrocarbons. It has a peculiar smell; m.p. 57°; b.p. 97·5°. It volatilises on evaporating its aqueous solution.

**Reactions.**—1. Add a few drops of a solution of chloral hydrate to a little ammonio-silver nitrate solution and warm. Metallic silver will be deposited.

2. Add a little caustic soda to a solution of chloral and warm gently. The heat of the hand is sufficient for the purpose. A smell of chloroform is at once apparent,  $\text{CCl}_3\text{CH}(\text{OH})_2 + \text{NaOH} = \text{CHCl}_3 + \text{HCO.ONa} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Sodium formate remains in solution.

3. Add a few drops of ammonium sulphide solution and warm gently. A brown coloration or precipitate is formed.

#### PREPARATION 40.

##### Dichloroacetic Acid, $\text{CHCl}_2\text{COOH}$ .

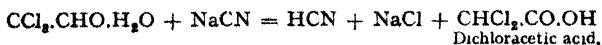
Wallach, *Annalen*, 1874, **173**, 295; Pucher, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1920, **42**, 2251.

50 grams chloral hydrate (in 150 c.c. of water)

20 „ sodium cyanide (in 55 c.c. of water).

The solution of chloral is heated on the water-bath to  $40^\circ$ , and whilst the solution is stirred by a mechanical stirrer (see p. 112); the solution of sodium cyanide is slowly added in the course of an hour, the temperature being maintained below  $50^\circ$ . The mixture is then stirred for another hour and finally evaporated to dryness in a basin on the water-bath. The crude sodium salt of dichloroacetic acid is powdered, and transferred to a wide-mouthed bottle provided with a rubber cork carrying inlet and outlet tubes and a stirrer with mercury seal (see p. 162).

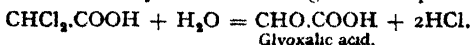
Sufficient benzene is poured on so as to cover the acid, which is cooled in ice and hydrochloric acid gas passed into the mixture through the inlet tube until saturation is complete (about 4 hours). The benzene solution is filtered from the sodium chloride and dehydrated over anhydrous sodium sulphate. The benzene is removed by distillation from a water-bath at  $60^\circ$  under somewhat reduced pressure and the residue distilled *in vacuo* at  $102\text{--}104^\circ$  at 20 mm. Yield about 20 grams.



**Properties.**—Colourless liquid, b.p.  $190^\circ$  at the ordinary pressure, sp. gr. 1.522 at  $15^\circ$ , solidifies below  $0^\circ$ .



**Reaction.**—Boil gently with reflux a little dichloroacetic acid for half an hour (see *Appendix*, p. 369) with ten times its volume of water and test for glyoxalic acid as follows: Pour a few drops of the glyoxalic acid solution into a test-tube, add a few c.c. of egg-albumin or gelatin solution, mix and pour carefully down the inclined side of the test-tube a layer of conc. sulphuric acid. At the division of the two layers a violet ring is developed.



See *Appendix*, p. 396.

#### PREPARATION 41.

##### Trichloroacetic Acid, $\text{CCl}_3\text{CO.OH}$ .

Dumas, *Compt. rend.*, 1838, 8, 609; Clermont, *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1871, (b), 6, 135.

25 grams chloral hydrate

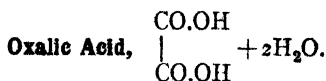
20 „ fuming nitric acid; sp. gr. 1.5 (see p. 24).

The chloral hydrate is melted in a distilling flask (250 c.c.) and the fuming nitric acid added.\* The mixture is heated carefully over a small flame until the reaction sets in. After a few minutes red fumes are evolved, consisting mainly of nitrogen tetroxide. The reaction proceeds without the application of heat, and is complete when, on warming the liquid, nitrous fumes cease to come off. The product is now distilled; below  $123^\circ$  excess of nitric acid distils; between  $123^\circ$  and  $194^\circ$  a mixture of trichloroacetic acid and a small quantity of nitric acid pass over, and at  $194$ — $196^\circ$  nearly pure trichloroacetic acid collects in the receiver and solidifies on cooling. It is advisable to distil the last fraction with a condenser-tube only. The fraction boiling at  $123$ — $190^\circ$  is treated with a fresh quantity of fuming nitric acid (10 c.c.), and the product purified as before. Yield, 10—15 grams.



**Properties.**—Colourless, rhombohedral crystals; m.p.  $52^\circ$ ; b.p.  $195^\circ$ . See *Appendix*, p. 396.

## PREPARATION 42.



Scheele (1776), Naumann, Moeser, Lindenbaum, *J. prakt. Chem.*, 1907, **75**, 146.

140 c.c. conc. nitric acid  
20 grams cane-sugar  
0.1 gram vanadium pentoxide.

The nitric acid is warmed gently on the water-bath in a large flask (1 litre) with the addition of the vanadium pentoxide. It is then placed in the fume cupboard and the cane-sugar at once added. As soon as torrents of brown fumes begin to be evolved, the flask is placed in cold water. After the reaction has ceased the liquid is left for twenty-four hours, when colourless crystals of the acid separate. A further small quantity may be obtained from the mother liquor on standing. The crystals are drained on a small porcelain funnel without filter paper, and recrystallised from a very small quantity of water. Yield, 15–20 grams.

A quantity of mesoxalic acid remains in the mother liquor (Chattaway).

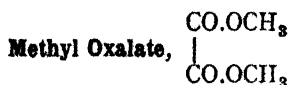
*Properties.*—Colourless crystals, which, on heating to 100°, lose their water of crystallisation, melt, and then partly sublime and partly decompose, giving off carbon dioxide and formic acid. M.p. of the hydrated crystals 101.5°. Soluble in water and in alcohol, very slightly soluble in ether.

*Reactions.*—1. Boil a little of the acid with ammonia solution until neutral, and add calcium chloride solution. A white precipitate of the calcium salt is obtained, which is insoluble in acetic acid.

2. Add to a solution of the acid a few drops of dilute sulphuric acid, and warm gently. On adding permanganate solution it is immediately decolorised,  $5\text{C}_2\text{H}_2\text{O}_4 + 2\text{KMnO}_4 + 3\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 = 10\text{CO}_2 + 8\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{K}_2\text{SO}_4 + 2\text{MnSO}_4$ .

3. Heat two or three grams of the crystals with about 5 c.c. concentrated sulphuric acid. Rapid effervescence occurs, and the gas may be ignited at the mouth of the tube,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_2\text{O}_4 - \text{H}_2\text{O} = \text{CO} + \text{CO}_2$ . See *Appendix*, p. 397.

## PREPARATION 43.



Dumas, Peligot, *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1836, **58**, 44; Erlenmeyer, 1874, *Rep. Pharm.* (2), **23**, 432.

70 grams crystallised oxalic acid  
50 „ (63 c.c.) methyl alcohol.

The oxalic acid is powdered and heated in a basin on a water-bath, which is kept boiling briskly, until no more water is given off (one to two hours). It must be occasionally stirred and powdered. It is then heated to 110—120° in an air-bath or in a Victor Meyer drying apparatus (see p. 28) until it loses the weight corresponding to two molecules of water. If the Victor Meyer apparatus is used, amyl alcohol, b.p. 132°, should be placed in the outer jacket.<sup>1</sup>

The dehydrated and powdered oxalic acid is mixed with the methyl alcohol, and the mixture heated on the water-bath for two hours with an upright condenser. The liquid is then distilled with a thermometer. When the temperature rises to 100° the receiver is replaced by a beaker, and the water-jacket of the condenser removed. The thermometer rises rapidly to the boiling-point of methyl oxalate, 160—165°, and the distillate solidifies in the receiver. It is drained at the pump and dried. It may be recrystallised from spirit. Yield, 20—25 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless plates; m.p. 54°; b.p. 163°.

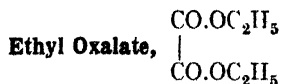
*Reactions.*—For this purpose the alcoholic mother liquor from the crystals may be used.

1. Add a little caustic potash solution. Crystals of potassium oxalate are deposited. The ester is hydrolysed.

2. Add a few drops of concentrated ammonia. A white crystalline precipitate of oxamide is formed,  $\text{C}_2\text{O}_2(\text{OCH}_3)_2 + 2\text{NH}_3 = \text{C}_2\text{O}_2(\text{NH}_2)_2 + 2\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ .

<sup>1</sup> Oxalic acid may be dehydrated by heating with carbon tetrachloride on the water-bath when the water distils with the carbon tetrachloride (*J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1921, **43**, 366).

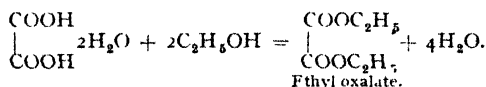
## PREPARATION 44.



Fittig, *Grundriss der org. Chem.*, 10th ed p. 198; P. K. Dutt, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1923, **123**, 2714.

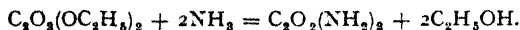
100 grams oxalic acid (crystals)  
1 litre absolute alcohol.

The oxalic acid and 200 c.c. of the alcohol are placed in a wide-mouthed round flask, fitted with a rubber stopper and furnished with an inlet tube reaching almost to the bottom of the vessel and a fractionating column, connected with a long condenser. The flask is heated in a water-bath and when the liquid begins to boil the vapour of about 800 c.c. of absolute alcohol from a second flask is passed in through the inlet tube. The alcohol which distils carries over both the water of crystallisation and the water separated in the process of esterification. This alcohol can be dehydrated and preserved for other purposes. The residue in the flask is distilled with a fractionating column over wire-gauze and the fraction boiling above  $130^\circ$  collected. It is dehydrated over calcium chloride and redistilled. The final distillate is collected at  $184$ — $186^\circ$  and is the pure ester. Yield, about 90 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid, with a faint ethereal smell; b.p.  $185^\circ$ , sp. gr. 1.086 at  $15^\circ$ .

*Reaction.*—Add to a few drops of the ester a few drops of conc. ammonia. A colourless crystalline powder of oxamide is precipitated.

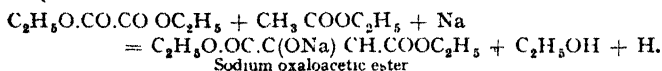


## PREPARATION 45.

**Oxaloacetic Ester,  $C_2H_5O.CO.CO.CH_2.COOC_2H_5$** W. Wislicenus, *Annalen*, 1897, **295**, 347.

73 grams ethyl oxalate  
 400 c.c. dry ether.  
 11.5 grams sodium wire  
 55 „ ethyl acetate.

The sodium wire is squeezed into a 1 litre Erlenmeyer flask containing the ether and the ethyl oxalate added. The flask is then attached to a reflux condenser through the top of which the ethyl acetate is slowly dropped from a tap-funnel. The reaction soon starts and when the ethyl acetate has been added the flask is heated on the water-bath to about  $30^\circ$  until the sodium has passed into solution (about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours). A dark-coloured solution is obtained which on leaving overnight sets to a yellow solid. The contents of the flask are next transferred to a linen bag and the solvent is squeezed out in a screw press. The solid cake of the sodium salt is then spread on a porous plate and left in a vacuum desiccator. In order to prepare the free ester, the sodium salt is mixed with 160 c.c. of water, covered with ether and gradually acidified with dilute sulphuric acid. The ether is separated, washed with dilute sodium carbonate solution and dried over calcium chloride. The ether is removed by distillation on the water-bath and the residual ester distilled *in vacuo* over wire-gauze. It boils at  $125-130^\circ$  at 20 mm. Yield, 25—30 grams.



The reaction probably proceeds in a manner similar to the formation of acetoacetic ester (see p. 103).

**Properties.**—Thick, colourless oil with very little smell; decomposes on heating at the ordinary pressure; sp. gr. 1.159 at  $23^\circ$ .

**Reaction.**—Add to a dilute alcoholic solution of the ester, a drop of ferric chloride. An intense red coloration is produced. It forms a copper salt of the formula  $(C_8H_{11}O_5)_2Cu$  crystallising in bright green needles in the same way as acetoacetic ester (see p. 103).

## PREPARATION 46.

**Glyoxalic Acid** (Glyoxylic Acid),  $\text{CHO.COOH} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

**Glycollic Acid**,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH.COOH}$ .

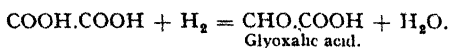
Tafel and Friedrichs, *Ber*, 1904, **37**, 3187; *Centralblatt*, 1905 II, 1699.

20 grams oxalic acid (in fine powder)  
100 c.c. sulphuric acid (10 per cent.).

The process is one of electrolytic reduction and the apparatus is similar to that shown in Fig. 75, p. 160. It consists of a small porous cell (8 cm.  $\times$  2 cm. diam.) surrounded by a narrow beaker (11 cm.  $\times$  6 cm. diam.). The oxalic acid, mixed with 100 c.c. 10 per cent. sulphuric acid (titrated against standard baryta solution) forms the cathode liquid and is placed in the beaker. The porous cell is filled with the same strength of sulphuric acid and forms the anode liquid. The electrodes are made from ordinary clean sheet lead. The anode consists of a thin strip projecting about two inches from the cell and the cathode is made from a rectangular piece 10  $\times$  15 cm. with a long tongue, the square portion being bent into the form of a cylinder surrounding the porous cell, and the projecting tongue serving as attachment to the circuit. It is advisable to reverse the current before use so as to produce a metallic surface.

The whole apparatus is placed in a good freezing mixture. The electrodes are connected in circuit with an ammeter and resistance as described on p. 160. The reduction requires theoretically 9 ampere-hours and the strength of current may vary between moderately wide limits (2—6 amperes) per 100 sq. cm. of cathode surface. The cathode liquid should be frequently stirred so as to bring the suspended oxalic acid into solution, and, as the yield of glyoxalic acid depends on efficient cooling, it is important that the temperature should not exceed 10°. If the temperature is allowed to rise, glycollic acid is formed. The glyoxalic acid is separated as the calcium salt. The cathode liquid is poured into a basin and the sulphuric and unchanged oxalic acid precipitated with standard baryta solution. The mixture is filtered and the filtrate is concentrated *in vacuo* at 60° (see p. 342), neutralised in the cold

with calcium carbonate, boiled up for a short time and filtered. As calcium glyoxalate is only slightly soluble in cold water (1 part in 140 of water at 18°) the greater portion crystallises on cooling. If calcium glycolate, which is much more soluble, is present, it may be separated from the filtrate by concentrating the solution on the water-bath and precipitating with spirit. To obtain free glyoxalic acid, the calcium salt is dried and suspended in water, the calculated quantity of oxalic acid added and the mixture filtered. The filtrate is evaporated in a vacuum desiccator, when the glyoxalic acid remains as a viscid liquid which may crystallise on long standing,

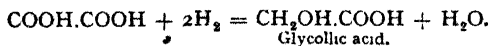


*Properties.*—Crystallises in rhombic prisms; very soluble in water.

*Reactions.*—1. Add a few drops of the acid solution or solution of the calcium salt to a few c.c. of ammonia-silver nitrate and warm in hot water. A silver mirror is deposited.

2. To the acid, neutralised with potassium carbonate, or to the solution of the calcium salt, add a solution of phenylhydrazine acetate and a little sodium acetate. The phenylhydrazone separates on standing in minute yellow crystals, which can be recrystallised from alcohol. The neutral salts also combine with sodium bisulphite and hydroxylamine.

**Glycollic Acid.**—If it is required to convert the oxalic acid completely into glycollic acid, the same method is employed as described above, but the temperature is raised to 35° and the number of ampere-hours is doubled. The separation from glyoxalic acid is effected by its conversion into the calcium salt and precipitation with alcohol as already described.



*Properties.*—Crystals, m.p. 79–80°; very soluble in water. The air-dried calcium salt contains three molecules of water of crystallisation and is soluble in 80 parts of water 15°; and in 19 parts at 100°. See *Appendix*, p. 397.

**Glycerol** (Glycerin),  $\text{CH}_2(\text{OH}).\text{CH}(\text{OH}).\text{CH}_2(\text{OH})$ .Scheele, *Opusc.*, 1779, 2, 175

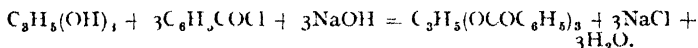
Glycerol is obtained by the hydrolysis of fats and oils, and purified by distillation under reduced pressure with superheated steam.

*Properties.*—A viscid, colourless liquid, with a sweet taste; m p.  $17^\circ$ , b.p.  $290^\circ$ . It boils, *under ordinary pressure*, with partial decomposition forming acrolein; sp. gr. 1.269 at  $12^\circ$ ; miscible with water and alcohol; insoluble in ether and the hydrocarbons.

*Reactions.*—1. Heat a few drops of glycerol with some powdered potassium hydrogen sulphate. The irritating smell of acrolein is at once perceptible.

2. Make a borax bead and dip it into a solution of glycerol and bring it into the flame. A green coloration due to boric acid is produced

3. Prepare the tribenzoyl ester by shaking together 4 grams of glycerol, 3 grams of caustic soda <sup>1</sup> in 30 c.c. of water and adding gradually and shaking at the same time 3.5 grams of benzoyl chloride. The mixture becomes warm after each addition. When the benzoyl chloride has been added and the mixture begins to cool, heat for a few minutes on the water-bath and then let it stand for a day or so, when the viscid liquid slowly solidifies. Decant and wash by decantation, press on a porous plate and crystallise from ligroin. Glyceryl tribenzoate,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5(\text{O}.\text{COC}_6\text{H}_5)_3$ , melts at  $76^\circ$ .



<sup>1</sup> In the above reaction, in place of caustic soda, pyridine may be substituted, in which case 12 grams of pyridine are used as follows. The glycerol and pyridine are mixed together and cooled to  $0^\circ$  and the benzoyl chloride is added gradually, the temperature being maintained below  $10^\circ$  and the mixture well shaken. The liquid becomes pale yellow, which changes to orange. If the mixture ultimately becomes too viscid, the temperature may be raised to  $25^\circ$ . After standing overnight, the product is poured into ice-cold water, the aqueous layer (containing pyridine hydrochloride) decanted and the oil dissolved in ether. The ether extract is washed with dilute hydrochloric acid to remove pyridine and then with dilute sodium carbonate, dehydrated over calcium chloride, the ether removed and the tribenzoyl ester left till it solidifies.



## PREPARATION 47.

**Formic Acid,  $\text{H.CO.OH}$ .**

Berthelot, *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1856, (3) **46**, 477; Lovin, *Bull. Soc. chim.*, 1866, (2) **5**, 7; 1870, (2) **14**, 367.

50 grams anhydrous glycerol  
200 „ oxalic acid (in four portions of 50 grams).

The glycerol is dehydrated by heating it gently in a basin on a sand-bath until a thermometer with the bulb immersed in the liquid indicates  $175^{\circ}$ . Fifty grams of commercial crystallised oxalic acid and 50 grams of glycerol are heated in a retort (250 c.c.) over wire-gauze, with condenser and receiver. A thermometer is fixed through the tubulus with the bulb in the liquid. The reaction begins at about  $80^{\circ}$ , and at  $90^{\circ}$  proceeds briskly, carbon dioxide being evolved. The temperature is maintained at  $105$ — $110^{\circ}$  until the evolution of gas has slackened. Some aqueous formic acid has meanwhile collected in the receiver. The contents of the retort are now cooled to about  $80^{\circ}$  and a further 50 grams of oxalic acid added. The reaction recommences on heating, with the formation of aqueous formic acid, which becomes more concentrated with each fresh addition of oxalic acid until the distillate eventually contains 56 per cent. of acid. The other portions of oxalic acid are added in the same way. In order to regain the formic acid which remains as monoformin in the retort, the contents are transferred to a round flask, diluted with about 250 c.c. of water and distilled in steam, until the distillate has only a faintly acid reaction.

**Distillation in Steam.**—The apparatus for distilling in steam is shown in Fig. 68. A large flask, or, preferably, a 1-gallon tin is closed by a double-bored cork. A safety-tube passes through one hole, and a bent tube which terminates below the cork passes through the second hole, and is attached by rubber tubing to the inlet-tube of the distilling flask (1 litre). The flask is sloped to prevent the contents being splashed over into the condenser. It is heated on the sand-bath or asbestos board to boiling, and steam passed in. The united distillates are poured into a basin and neutralised by adding lead carbonate until, on heating, no

further effervescence occurs. The liquid is now left for a moment to settle, and the clear solution decanted, whilst hot, through a fluted filter. The residue in the basin is boiled up again with a volume of water equal to that decanted, and again a third and

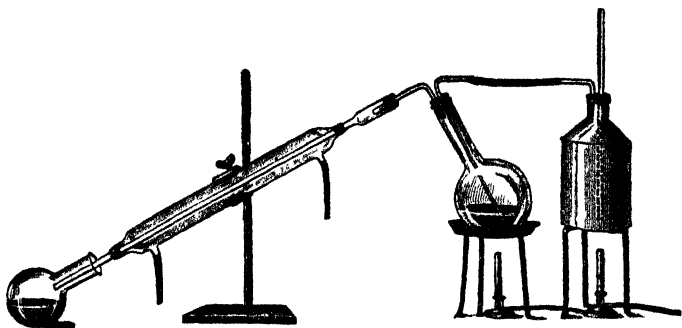


FIG. 68.

fourth time, and filtered hot each time until no more lead formate is dissolved. The lead formate will have now passed into solution, and the liquid is then evaporated down on a sand-bath or ring-burner (see Fig. 69), until crystals appear on the surface, when the liquid is put on one side to cool. Lead formate crystallises out in long white needles. Yield about 150 grams. In order to obtain pure formic acid, hydrogen sulphide is passed over the heated lead salt. It is carried out as follows :—

The powdered salt, dried on the water-bath, is introduced in a long layer into a sloping wide tube, loosely stopped at the lower end by a plug of glass wool or asbestos.\* To the lower end of the tube a receiver, in the form of a distilling-flask, is attached, which is protected from moisture by a drying-tube. The salt is heated gently by moving a flame along the tube whilst hydrogen sulphide, washed through water, and dried by passing through a U-tube containing calcium chloride, is led over the salt in not too rapid a stream. The lead formate blackens, and is slowly converted into lead sulphide and formic acid, which drops into the receiver. The acid, which retains a strong smell of

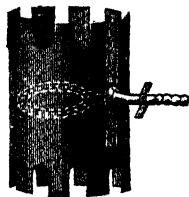
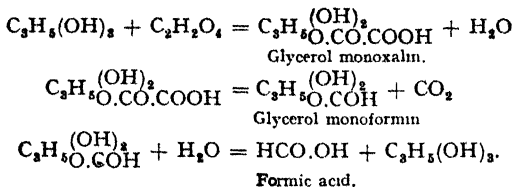


FIG. 69.

hydrogen sulphide, is freed from the latter by distillation over a little dry lead formate. The yield is nearly theoretical.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid, with a penetrating smell resembling sulphurous acid; b.p.  $100^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 1.223 at  $0^\circ$ ; solidifies below  $0^\circ$  to colourless crystals; m.p.  $8.6^\circ$ ; soluble in water and alcohol.

*Reactions.*—For the following tests use a neutral solution prepared as follows: Boil a little lead formate with a solution of sodium carbonate, filter, add a slight excess of nitric acid, boil a minute, add dilute ammonia and boil until neutral.

1. Add a drop of ferric chloride. A red coloration is produced, which, on boiling, becomes turbid from the formation of basic ferric formate. (Compare acetic acid, p. 86.)

2. Add to the solution a few drops of a solution of silver nitrate and warm. Metallic silver is deposited as a black powder.

3. Add to the solution a few drops of a solution of mercuric chloride and warm. White mercurous chloride is deposited.

4. Add concentrated sulphuric acid to a little formic acid, solid lead formate, or other salt and heat. Carbon monoxide is evolved, and may be lighted at the mouth of the test-tube  $(\text{HCOO})_2\text{Pb} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 = \text{PbSO}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} + 2\text{CO}$ . See *Appendix*, p. 398.

#### PREPARATION 48.

##### Allyl Alcohol, $\text{CH}_2\text{:CH.CH}_2\text{OH}$ .

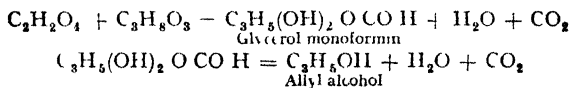
Tollens, Henninger, *Annalen*, 1870, **156**, 129.

##### METHOD I.

50 grams oxalic acid  
200 „ glycerol  
 $\frac{1}{4}$  gram ammonium chloride.

A mixture of the above substances is heated in a retort ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) over wire-gauze with condenser and receiver.\* A rapid evolution

of carbon dioxide at first occurs, and the temperature, indicated by a thermometer dipping into the liquid, remains for some time stationary at about 130°. As the temperature slowly rises the evolution of gas slackens, and after a time (at about 180°) entirely ceases. When the temperature has reached 195° the receiver, which contains aqueous formic acid, is changed. At 200—210° carbon dioxide is again given off, and oily streaks are observed to run down the neck of the retort, at the same time a disagreeable penetrating smell is perceptible. By gently heating the contents of the retort, a temperature of 220—230° is maintained for some time, and when it has finally risen to 260° the distillation is stopped. The distillate is a mixture of allyl alcohol and water, and there is also present allyl formate, glycerol, and acrolein. Excess of glycerol remains in the retort and may be used again by repeating the operation with a smaller quantity of oxalic acid (30—40 grams) until the residue is too small or has become dark-coloured and thick. The distillate is submitted to a second distillation, which is continued until no oily layer separates from the latter portions which distil, on treating with solid potassium carbonate. This occurs when the temperature reaches about 105°. On adding solid potassium carbonate to the distillate, the allyl alcohol settles out as an oil. This is separated and distilled. Yield about 15 grams, boiling at 92—96°.



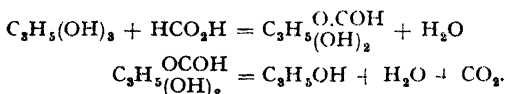
## METHOD II.

*Organic Syntheses*, Vol I p 15.

70 grams commercial formic acid (85 per cent.)  
200 „ glycerol.

The mixture of formic acid and glycerol is heated in a half-litre flask attached to a condenser and receiver.\* A thermometer is inserted through the cork of the flask so that the bulb is in the liquid and a few pieces of porous pot are introduced. The temperature of the mixture is raised as quickly as possible by means

of a ring burner; carbon dioxide is evolved and liquid distils. The heating is continued until the temperature reaches  $195^{\circ}$ , when the receiver is changed and the temperature raised to  $260^{\circ}$ . The liquid which collects at  $195-260^{\circ}$  is about 74 c.c. The distillation is then stopped and when the temperature has fallen to  $120-130^{\circ}$  a further addition of 50 grams of formic acid is made. The flask is again rapidly heated as before and the fraction distilling at  $195-260^{\circ}$  collected separately as before (45 c.c.). The process is again repeated, when a further 36 c.c. of distillate are obtained, about 50 c.c. remaining in the flask. To the combined distillate ( $195-260^{\circ}$ ) a quantity of solid potassium carbonate is added, when an oil separates on the surface and is removed. The aqueous portion is extracted with small quantities of ether, which is added to the oil and the whole dehydrated over fresh potassium carbonate. After removing the ether, the residue distilled at  $90-95^{\circ}$ . The yield is 42 grams (34 per cent.).



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid, with a pungent odour; b.p.  $96.5^{\circ}$ ; sp. gr. 0.858 at  $15^{\circ}$ .

*Reaction.*—Add bromine water to a little of the allyl alcohol. It is immediately decolourised,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{OH} + \text{Br}_2 = \text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{Br}_2\text{OH}$ . See *Appendix*, p. 398.

#### PREPARATION 49.

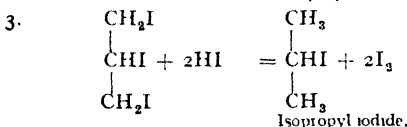
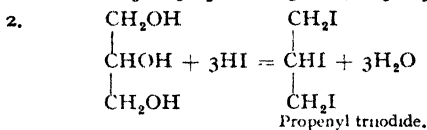
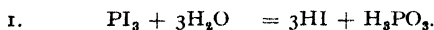
##### Isopropyl Iodide, $\text{CH}_3\text{CHI.CH}_3$ .

Markownikoff, *Annalen*, 1866, **138**, 364.

60	grams	iodine
40	„	glycerol
32	„	water
11	„	yellow phosphorus.

The iodine, glycerol, and water are placed together in a retort (250 c.c.), standing over wire-gauze and attached to a condenser and receiver. The phosphorus is cut up under a layer of water

into small pieces, the size of a pea, and, with crucible tongs, dropped gradually into the retort. The introduction of the phosphorus generally produces at the beginning a violent reaction, often accompanied by a vivid flash. If no reaction occurs on adding the first few pieces of phosphorus the retort must be warmed gently. The last two-thirds of the phosphorus may be added more quickly. The contents of the retort are now distilled as long as any oily liquid passes over. The distillate is poured back into the retort and redistilled. The liquid is then shaken up with dilute caustic soda solution in a separating-funnel, the isopropyl iodide separated, dried over calcium chloride, poured off and fractionated in a distilling flask. It distils entirely at 88–89°. Yield, 30–35 grams.



Propenyl triiodide is probably formed as an intermediate product, though it does not exist in the free state.

*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p. 89.5°; sp. gr. 1.744 at 0°. See *Appendix*, p. 399.

#### PREPARATION 50.

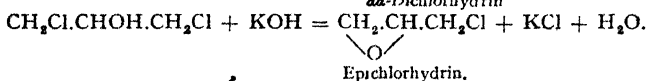
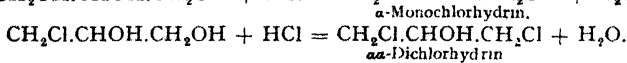
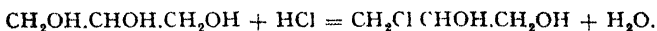
**Dichlorhydrin**,  $\text{ClCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ .

**Epichlorhydrin**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \quad \quad \quad \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{O} \end{array}$

Reboul, *Annalen, Spl.*, 1861, 1, 221; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. II. p. 29, and Vol. III. p. 47.

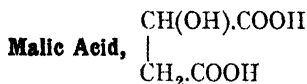
200 grams glycerol  
160 c.c. glacial acetic acid.

The glycerol, which must be dehydrated (see p. 130), is mixed with an equal volume of glacial acetic acid. Hydrochloric acid gas (see Fig. 98, p. 363) is passed into the cold liquid for about two hours, when it ceases to be absorbed. The mixture is now heated on the water-bath, and, after standing twenty-four hours, the current of gas is continued for about six hours more. The liquid is distilled with a thermometer.\* Hydrochloric acid is first given off, together with acetic acid. As the temperature rises, the dichlorhydrin and acetodichlorhydrin distil. The portion distilling at 160—210°, consisting mainly of dichlorhydrin, is collected separately and used for the preparation of epichlorhydrin. Yield of dichlorhydrin about 120 grams. Epichlorhydrin is obtained by the action of aqueous potash solution upon the dichlorhydrin. A solution of 100 grams of caustic potash in 200 c.c. of water is well cooled and poured slowly, with constant stirring, into the dichlorhydrin. Rise of temperature must be carefully avoided. The epichlorhydrin is separated from the product by adding ether, which dissolves out the epichlorhydrin. The upper layer is separated, shaken up with a little water, and again separated. It is then dehydrated over calcium chloride and decanted into a round flask. The ether is first removed on the water-bath. The residue is then fractionally distilled. This is effected by attaching a fractionating column to the flask (see p. 152). The portion boiling at 115—125° is epichlorhydrin, and is collected separately. The portion boiling above this temperature consists mainly of acetodichlorhydrin. Yield, 25—30 grams.



*Properties.*—Mobile liquid, with an ethereal smell; b.p. 117°; sp. gr. 1.203 at 0°.

*Reaction.*—Warm a little of the epichlorhydrin with caustic potash solution. It dissolves, forming glycerol. See *Appendix*, p. 399.



Malic acid is prepared from the juice of the mountain ash berries by precipitation as the calcium salt.

*Properties.*—It is soluble in water and alcohol, but not in ether. On heating, it loses water and is converted into fumaric and maleic acids (see p. 405). On oxidation it gives malonic acid and on reduction succinic acid.

*Reactions.*—1. Make a strong neutral solution, add calcium chloride solution and boil. The calcium salt is precipitated.

2. Mix about 0.5 gram each of powdered malic acid and resorcinol, and add 1 c.c. of concentrated sulphuric acid. Warm the mixture for a moment over the flame until it begins to froth. On cooling and adding water and caustic soda solution, an intense blue fluorescence is produced (von Pechmann).

#### PREPARATION 51.

##### **Succinic Acid** (Ethylenedicarboxylic Acid), $\text{COOH.CH}_2\text{.CH}_2\text{.COOH.}$

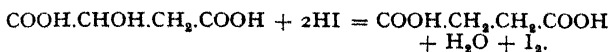
Schmitt, *Annalen*, 1860, **114**, 106.

10 grams malic acid  
 30 „ hydriodic acid (see p. 363)  
 2 „ red phosphorus.

The malic acid is dissolved in the hydriodic acid and poured into a stout-walled tube for sealing. The red phosphorus is added, and the tube sealed in the usual way (see p. 26). It is heated in the tube-furnace for six hours at  $120^\circ$ . On removing the tube it is found to be filled with crystals of succinic acid mixed with iodine. The contents are poured into a basin and evaporated to dryness on the water-bath. The residue, when cold, is stirred with a little chloroform to dissolve the free iodine, which is then decanted, and the process repeated if necessary. After warming to drive off the chloroform, the substance is dissolved in hot water

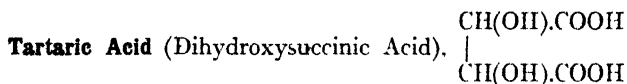


and set aside to crystallise. Succinic acid crystallises in long prisms. Yield, 5 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless prisms; m.p.  $180^\circ$ . On distillation, the acid loses water and is converted into the anhydride.

*Reaction.*—Make a neutral solution by boiling with an excess of ammonia, and add to one portion, calcium chloride; no precipitate is formed; to another portion add a drop or two of ferric chloride; a brown precipitate of ferric succinate is thrown down. See *Appendix*, p. 400.



Scheele (1769).

The acid potassium or calcium tartrates are found in many plants; but the chief source of tartaric acid is the impure acid potassium salt, which separates out as wine- lees, or argol from grape-juice in process of fermentation.

*Properties.*—The acid crystallises in monoclinic prisms, soluble in alcohol and water, but not in ether. It turns the plane of polarisation to the right; m.p.  $167-170^\circ$ .

*Reactions.*—1. Heat a crystal of the acid. It gives an odour resembling burnt sugar. Carefully neutralise a solution of tartaric acid with caustic soda, and make the following tests:—

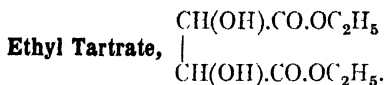
2. Add calcium chloride and stir with a glass rod. A crystalline precipitate of calcium tartrate,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_6\text{Ca} + 4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , is formed which dissolves in acetic acid and caustic alkalis. Repeat the foregoing test, but add a few drops of acetic acid before the calcium chloride. There is no precipitate. Calcium sulphate also gives no precipitate with tartaric acid or neutral tartrates (compare reactions for oxalic acid, p. 123).

3. Add silver nitrate solution. The white precipitate is the silver salt. Add two or three drops of dilute ammonia until the precipitate is nearly dissolved, and place the test-tube in a beaker of hot water. A silver mirror will be deposited.

4. Add a few drops of acetic acid and a little ammonium or potassium acetate solution to a moderately strong solution of tartaric acid or a neutral tartrate. On stirring with a glass rod, the acid potassium or ammonium tartrate will be precipitated.

5. To a solution of tartaric acid or a tartrate in water add a drop of ferrous sulphate solution and a few drops of hydrogen peroxide and make alkaline with caustic soda. A violet coloration is produced (Fenton's reaction).

#### PREPARATION 52.



Anschutz, Pictet, *Ber.*, 1880, **13**, 1176.

30 grams tartaric acid  
160 c.c. absolute alcohol.

The tartaric acid is finely powdered and mixed with half the above quantity (80 c.c.) of absolute alcohol. The mixture is heated on the water-bath with upright condenser until dissolved. The flask is immersed in cold water, and the well-cooled solution saturated with dry hydrochloric acid gas (prepared in the usual way by dropping conc. sulphuric acid into conc. hydrochloric acid, see Fig. 98, p. 363). After standing for an hour or two (or preferably overnight), the hydrochloric acid, excess of alcohol and water are expelled by evacuating the flask and distilling *in vacuo* on the water-bath. The remaining half of the alcohol is added to the residue, and the mixture again saturated in the cold with hydrochloric acid gas. After standing, the acid, alcohol and water are removed as before, and the residue is fractionated from an oil- or metal-bath *in vacuo*. The ethyl tartrate distils as a clear viscid liquid. After a second distillation *in vacuo* the substance is pure.

At 11 mm. it boils at 155°.

„ 20 „ „ 164°.

The yield is 80 per cent. of the theory. See *Appendix*, p. 401.

**Determination of Rotatory Power.**—The rotatory power of ethyl tartrate, which is an optically active substance, is determined by

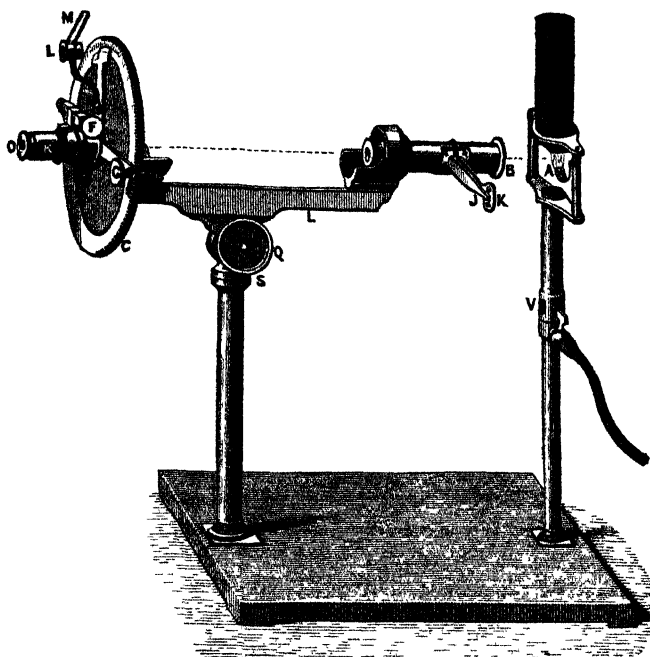


FIG. 70.

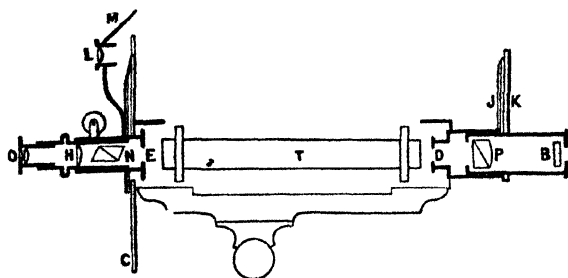


FIG. 71.

means of a polarimeter. One of these instruments known as Laurent's polarimeter is shown in Figs. 70 and 71.

The monochromatic light of a sodium flame is used in these determinations and is obtained by suspending in a Bunsen or Meeker burner a platinum wire basket containing fused sodium chloride or the more volatile bromide. The latter gives a brighter flame, but the basket requires replenishing more frequently. The light from the flame passes through a cell, B, containing a solution of potassium dichromate (or a crystal of this substance), which deprives it of blue or violet rays. It then passes through the polarising nicol prism P. A plate of quartz cut parallel to the optic axis covers half the opening, D, and is of such a thickness

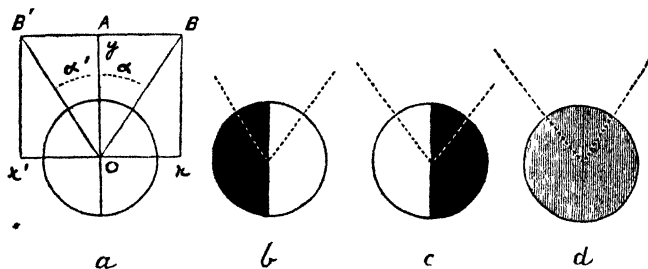


FIG. 72.

that it produces a difference of a half-wave length (or an exact odd multiple of a half-wave length) between the two rays, which it gives by double refraction. The light then passes through the substance placed in the tube, T, and entering at E strikes the analysing nicol N. The telescope, OH, is focussed on the edge of the quartz plate at D. When N is turned, a pointer moves over the graduated circle, C, and its position can be read by means of the lens, L.

**The Theory of the Instrument** may be explained as follows:—If, after passing through the nicol, P, the plane of vibration is in the direction OB, Fig. 72 a, then in the half of the field to the right, uncovered by the quartz plate, it passes on unchanged. When it strikes the quartz the ray is broken up into the two components oy and ox. These traverse the quartz with different velocities,

and since one ray is retarded half a wave-length in respect of the other, the vibration of one component will be represented by  $oy$ , but the other must be represented by  $ox'$  instead of  $ox$ . These two combine on emerging to a plane polarised ray vibrating in the direction  $OB'$  so that the angle  $AOB'$  is equal to the angle  $AOB$ .

If now (the tube containing water or other non-rotating liquid) the nicol  $N$  be so placed that it is parallel to nicol  $P$ , then the light, in the half of the field to the right, will pass through unchanged, but only a portion of the light which has passed through the quartz diaphragm with its plane of vibration in the direction  $OB'$ , will pass through  $N$  and consequently there will be different intensities of illumination in the two halves of the field, Fig. 72 *b* (if the angle  $\alpha$  is  $45^\circ$  then the angle  $BOB'$  will be  $90^\circ$ , and the light in the left half of the field will be completely obscured) Similarly if the plane of the nicol  $N$  be made parallel to  $OB'$  there will be a greater intensity of illumination in the left half of the field, Fig. 72 *c*. Between the two positions of the nicol  $N$  there must necessarily be one which gives uniform illumination of the whole field, and this is the zero point of the instrument, Fig. 72 *d*.

If the tube  $T$ , containing the active substance, be interposed between the two nicols, then both rays  $OB$  and  $OB'$  will be rotated through equal angles, and to re-establish uniform illumination in the two halves of the field, the nicol  $N$  must be turned back through an angle equal to the angle of rotation, which is then measured on the divided circle.

When the angle  $\alpha$  is small, *i.e.* when the plane of vibration of the polarised light is almost parallel to the optic axis of the quartz, the greatest degree of sensitiveness is attained, for then a very small change in the position of  $N$  causes a great difference in the respective illuminations in the two halves of the field. As  $\alpha$  increases, the sensitiveness diminishes, but a greater total intensity of illumination is obtained. By moving  $J$  (Fig. 71) the position of the nicol  $P$  may be altered. For clear colourless liquids the angle  $\alpha$  may be made comparatively small; but in the case of coloured liquids it is necessary to have  $\alpha$  larger, and so obtain a greater intensity of light at the cost of sensitiveness.

**Calculation of Results; Homogeneous Liquids.**—The angle of rotation, represented by  $\alpha_D$  (for sodium light), varies with the

length of the column of substance through which the light passes. One decimetre has been chosen as unit of length. The angle also varies with the temperature, which must consequently be determined for each observation.

For the comparison of the rotatory power of different substances, use is made of the constant *specific rotation*, which may be defined as the angle of rotation, produced by 1 gram of active substance in 1 c.c. by a layer 1 dm. in length. This is obtained by dividing the observed angle of rotation by the product of the length in decimetres, and the density of the substance at the temperature at which the observation was made.

$$[\alpha]_D^t = \frac{\alpha_D^t}{l \times d}$$

**Molecular Rotation** is the above quantity multiplied by the molecular weight *M* of the compound, and divided by 100 to avoid unwieldy numbers, and is represented thus—

$$[M]_D^t = \frac{[\alpha]_D^t \times M}{100}$$

It expresses the angle of rotation of 1 mm. of active substance containing 1 gram-molecule in 1 c.c.

**Rotation of Ethyl Tartrate.**—Fill a 200 mm. polarimeter-tube with the tartrate prepared. Whilst it is settling determine the zero of the instrument, and if it does not coincide with the zero of the graduated circle, a corresponding correction must be introduced in the subsequent observations. The tube is then placed in the instrument, and the angle of rotation determined by turning the analyser *N* until equality of illumination is established in the two halves of the field. In making polarimetric observations reliance should not be placed on a single setting of the instrument, but at least five or six readings should be made, which, with a good instrument, should not differ by more than four or five minutes. The temperature at the time of observation must be noted, and the density determined either at that temperature or at two or three other temperatures, and the required density found by extrapolation.

*Example :—*

Temp.	Length.	$\alpha$	$d$	$[\alpha]_D$
20°	199.85 mm.	18° 28'	1.2059	7.66

$$\begin{array}{l}
 [\alpha]_D^{20} = 7.66^\circ \\
 [\alpha]_D^{18} = 7.47^\circ \\
 [\alpha]_D^{16} = 7.27^\circ \\
 [\alpha]_D^{14} = 7.07^\circ \\
 [\alpha]_D^{12} = 6.86^\circ \\
 [\alpha]_D^{10} = 6.66^\circ
 \end{array}
 \left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{Anschutz, Pictet, Ber., 1880, 13, 1177.} \\ \\ \\ \text{By extrapolation.} \\ \end{array}$$

**Rotation of Tartaric Acid.**—The specific rotation of a dissolved substance can be calculated from the rotation of the solution if the concentration is known. The formula to be used for this purpose is :—

$$[\alpha]_D = \frac{100\alpha_D}{l \cdot c},$$

where  $\alpha$  is the angle of rotation of solution,  $l$  the length of the tube, and  $c$  the concentration, i.e., the weight in grams of the dissolved substance contained in 100 c.c. of solution. The formula

$[\alpha]_D = \frac{100\alpha_D}{l \cdot p \cdot d}$  may also be used (it is, in fact, identical), where  $p$  is the percentage (by weight) of substance in solution, and  $d$  the density of the solution. The specific rotation of dissolved substances varies with the concentration and with the temperature.

Heat some tartaric acid in an air-bath to 110° until it is quite dry. Weigh accurately about 20 grams of the dry acid and dissolve in water; then make up the solution to exactly 100 c.c. Determine the rotation of the solution in a 200 mm. tube, and note the temperature at which the observation is made.

Take 50 c.c. of the solution and dilute it to 100 c.c. Determine the rotation of this solution at the same temperature as that at which the first rotation was observed.

Dilute 50 c.c. of the second solution to 100 c.c., and again determine the rotation at the same temperature.

The same process can be repeated once or twice more. Calculate the specific rotation of the tartaric acid, using the first

formula. Plot the results on squared paper, making the ordinates specific rotation and the abscissæ concentration.

*Example :—*

Temp.	Concentration.	Length of tube.	Angle of Rotation.	Spec. Rot. $\frac{100\alpha}{l.c.}$
10°	40	200 mm.	6°	+ 7.5°
10°	20	"	3° 59'	+ 9.96°
10°	10	"	2° 11'	+ 10.91°

(Krecke, *Bischoff, Stereochemie*, p. 228.)

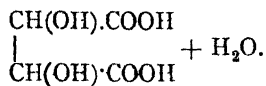
The following table shows the influences of temperature on the specific rotation of an aqueous solution containing 20 grams of tartaric acid in 100 c.c. :—

Temp.	Length of tube.	Angle of Rotation.	Specific Rotation.
0°	200 mm.	3° 28'	+ 8.66°
10°	"	3° 50'	+ 9.96°
20°	"	4° 38'	+ 11.57°
40°	"	5° 28'	+ 13.66°
60°	"	6° 28'	+ 16.16°
80°	"	7° 21'	+ 18.38°
100°	"	8° 36'	+ 21.50°

(Thomsen *J. prakt. Ch.* [2], 32, 211.)

### PREPARATION 53.

#### Racemic Acid and Mesotartaric Acid.



Pasteur, *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1848, (3) **24**, 442; 1850, (3) **28**, 56; Dessaignes, *Bull. Soc. chim.*, 1863, **5**, 350; Jungfleisch, *Bull. Soc. chim.*, 1872, **18**, 201; Hollemann, *Rec. trav. chim. Pays-Bas*, 1898, **17**, 66.

100 grams tartaric acid

350 " caustic soda (in 700 c.c. water).

Boil the tartaric acid and caustic soda solution for three hours in a round flask (1 litre), or preferably in a tin bottle furnished with  
COHEN'S P. O. C.

L



reflux condenser. The use of a tin vessel obviates certain difficulties of filtration which the solution of the silica by the action of the alkali on the glass entails. The liquid, after boiling, is carefully neutralised with conc. hydrochloric acid (it is advisable to remove a little of the solution beforehand in case of overshooting the mark) and an excess of calcium chloride solution is added to the hot liquid. The mixture is left overnight, and the calcium salts are filtered off at the pump, washed with water, and well pressed.

The calcium salts are well dried on the water-bath, or a fraction of the whole weight of the moist salts is taken and dried, and the total dry weight estimated. The substance is then suspended in boiling water and the calculated quantity of sulphuric acid added, after which the mixture is boiled for an hour. The calcium sulphate is removed by filtration, well washed with hot water, and the precipitate pressed down. The filtrate is concentrated on the water-bath until crystallisation begins. Racemic acid crystallises first, and after dehydrating on the water-bath melts at  $205^{\circ}$ . A further quantity is obtained on evaporation. Yield 50–60 grams.

The last mother liquors contain mesotartaric acid, m. p.  $143-144^{\circ}$ , which is much more soluble in water than racemic acid. To obtain a pure specimen repeated crystallisation is necessary. The yield varies with the period of boiling, but usually does not exceed 10 grams.

**Resolution of Racemic Acid.**—The racemic acid is dissolved in water (250 c.c.) and divided into two equal volumes. Half of the solution is carefully neutralised with caustic soda and the other half with ammonia, and the two solutions are then mixed.

The liquid is concentrated and poured into a crystallising dish. If, on cooling, the crystals are small and massed together, the solution has been too concentrated, and must be diluted so that small, well-defined crystals deposit. A dozen or so of these are picked out, dried, and put on one side. The remaining crystals are re-dissolved and left to cool in a room of fairly even temperature.

When the solution is just cold the crystals, previously removed, are sown evenly over the bottom of the dish at distances of 1–2 cms. apart and left for two days. The crystals will now have grown to a size which will enable the facets to be readily recognised. The crystals are dried and carefully examined with a pocket lens

in order to determine the position of the hemihedral facets, and placed in separate heaps. These facets lie to the right or left hand of the central prism face, as shown in Fig. 73. The crystals should

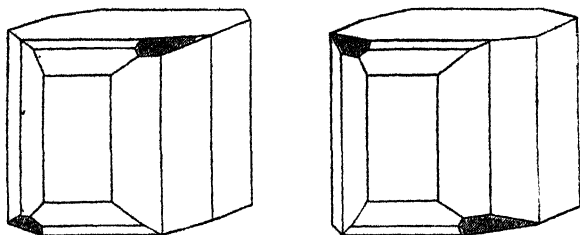


FIG. 73.

be weighed, dissolved, and the solution diluted and examined in the polarimeter. The specific rotation may then be calculated. See *Appendix*, p. 403.

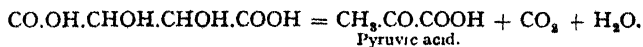
#### PREPARATION 54.

##### Pyruvic Acid, $\text{CH}_3\text{CO.CO.OH}$ .

Doebner, *Annalen*, 1887, **242**, 268; Ward, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1923, **123**, 2207.

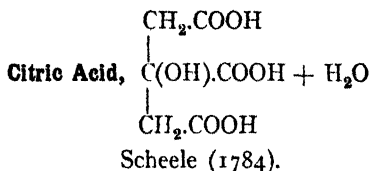
200 grams potassium hydrogen sulphate  
100 „ tartaric acid.

The potassium hydrogen sulphate and tartaric acid must be finely powdered and intimately mixed. The mixture is distilled in a round flask (2 litre), attached to a moderately long condenser tube, from a metal bath heated to  $220^\circ$ .\* The mass at first froths up, and it may be necessary to interrupt the heating. The distillation is carried on until no more liquid distils. The distillate, which consists of water and pyruvic acid, and has a yellow colour, is fractionated *in vacuo*. It is collected at  $68-70^\circ$  at a pressure of 20 mm., and is quite colourless. Yield 20–25 grams. It may be fractionated at the ordinary pressure, but is difficult to obtain colourless in this way.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p.  $165^\circ$  at atmospheric pressure; m.p.  $10-11^\circ$ ; polymerises on keeping.

**Reaction.**—Dissolve a drop of phenylhydrazine in two drops of glacial acetic acid, dilute with about 1 c.c. of water, and add a drop of pyruvic acid. A yellow crystalline precipitate of the phenylhydrazone,  $\text{CH}_3\text{C}(\text{N}.\text{NH}.\text{C}_6\text{H}_5).\text{CO}.\text{OH}$ , is formed.



Citric acid occurs in the free state, as well as in the form of the calcium and potassium salts, associated with malic and tartaric acids, in many plants. It is prepared principally from lemon juice, from which it is precipitated as the calcium salt on boiling with chalk and also by the citric fermentation of glucose.

**Properties.**—The acid, which contains 1 molecule of water, crystallises in prisms; soluble in water, alcohol, and also moderately soluble in ether; m.p.  $100^\circ$ . The anhydrous acid melts at  $153\text{--}154^\circ$ .

**Reactions.**—1. Heat a little of the acid and notice the irritating vapours.

Make a neutral solution of sodium citrate by adding caustic soda to a solution of the acid.

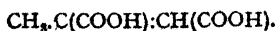
2. Add lime water. There is no precipitate of the calcium salt,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7)_2\text{Ca}_3 + 4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , until the solution is boiled.

3. Add calcium chloride solution and boil, and, to another portion, add silver nitrate solution. Note the results and compare the reactions with those of tartaric acid (p. 138).

#### PREPARATION 55.

##### Citraconic and Meseaconic Acids.

(Methyl maleic and Methyl fumaric acids.)



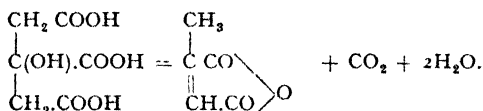
Kekulé, *Lehrbuch*, 2, 319; Fittig, *Annalen*, 1877, **188**, 73.

250 grams citric acid (crystallised).

Heat the crystallised citric acid, without powdering, in a porcelain basin to a temperature not exceeding  $150^\circ$ . The water of

crystallisation is expelled, and the crystals become pasty and then fluid. When cold, the solid mass is removed from the basin by gently warming, and is coarsely powdered. The anhydrous acid is *rapidly* distilled in portions of 100 grams, from a retort (250 c.c.) with bent neck (see Fig. 20, p. 24), fitted to a condenser, the receiver being a separating funnel. The distillate consists of two layers. The lower layer of impure citraconic anhydride is run off, and the upper layer, consisting of water and citraconic acid, is fractionated, the portion distilling at 190—210° being collected and mixed with the previous lower layer.

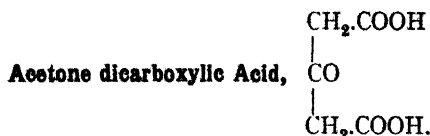
The citraconic anhydride is now distilled *in vacuo* and collected at 110—114° under a pressure of 30 mm. Yield, 30—35 grams.



**Properties.**—Colourless liquid; b.p. 213—214° (ordinary pressure). To convert the anhydride into citraconic acid the calculated quantity of water is added (1 mol. acid : 1 mol. water), and the mixture well stirred. The whole solidifies, on standing, to a mass of colourless crystals of citraconic acid, which are dried on a porous plate; m.p. 84—86°.

**Mesaconic Acid.**—To a saturated solution of citraconic acid in ether (4 parts citraconic acid require about 5 parts of anhydrous ether), about 1 part of chloroform is added, and a few drops of a moderately strong solution of bromine in chloroform. The mixture is placed in strong sunlight or in front of an arc lamp, when mesaconic acid, which is insoluble in ether and chloroform, begins at once to deposit on the side of the vessel nearest the light. Drops of bromine are added from time to time until no further precipitation occurs. The pasty mass is then filtered, washed with ether, and dried on a porous plate. Yield, 73 per cent. of the citraconic acid; m.p. 202°. See *Appendix*, p. 404.

## PREPARATION 56.

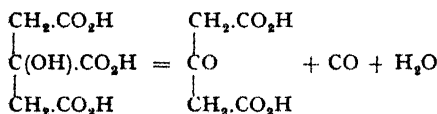


Von Pechmann, *Annalen*, 1890, **281**, 155; Jordan, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1899, **75**, 809; Ingold and Nickolls, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1922, **121**, 1642.

200 grams citric acid

400 „ fuming sulphuric acid (15 per cent.  $\text{SO}_3$ ).

The finely powdered citric acid is rapidly added with constant shaking to the fuming sulphuric acid contained in a 2-litre flask. A vigorous reaction takes place, attended with evolution of heat and much frothing, whilst carbon monoxide is given off, which may be ignited by inserting into the neck of the vessel a cork with a short glass tube from which the gas escapes. Otherwise the operation should be performed in a fume cupboard. After a quarter of an hour the frothing subsides and the mixture is then cooled in a freezing mixture and crushed ice gradually added to the flask. A straw-coloured solution results which, when thoroughly cooled, crystallises, forming a thick paste. It is filtered through asbestos or glass wool, drained well and thoroughly dried on a porous plate. The yield is 90–100 grams. The acid may be purified by crystallisation from ether; but is sufficiently pure for conversion into the ester.



**Properties.**—Colourless needles, m.p.  $135^\circ$  with decomposition into acetone and carbon dioxide.

**Acetone dicarboxylic ester.**—Fifty grams of absolute alcohol cooled to  $0^\circ$  are saturated with dry hydrogen chloride gas. To this are added 30 grams of the powdered, crude acetone dicarboxylic acid. The mixture is occasionally shaken during two days, whilst standing at the ordinary temperature. The acid gradually

dissolves as the ester and gives a clear solution, which becomes straw-coloured and syrupy. The solution is now poured into an equal volume of water, and extracted with ether, which removes the ester. (During these two processes heat is developed and the vessel should be at once immersed in cold water.) The ether solution is dehydrated over anhydrous sodium sulphate, the ether distilled and the residual ester fractionated *in vacuo*. The fraction boiling at 140—145° at 15 mm. is collected. The yield is about 15 grams. See *Appendix*, p. 406.

### Benzene.

**Pure Commercial Benzene**, obtained from coal-tar naphtha, should distil within one degree (80—81°), and solidify completely when cooled to 0°. Other tests are as follows: shaken with concentrated sulphuric acid for a few minutes, the acid should not darken, and a drop of bromine water should not be immediately decolourised. A single distillation over a few small pieces of sodium, which absorb any traces of water, is usually a sufficient purification. If the benzene imparts a brown or black colour to the sulphuric acid, it must be repeatedly shaken with about 20 per cent. of the acid until the latter becomes only slightly yellow on standing. This is done in a stoppered separating funnel, and after shaking for a few minutes the mixture is allowed to settle, and the lower layer of acid drawn off. The benzene is then shaken two or three times with water to free it from acid, carefully separated from the aqueous layer, and left in contact with fused calcium chloride until the liquid becomes clear. It is then decanted, frozen in ice, and any liquid (carbon bisulphide, paraffins) carefully drained off, and the benzene finally distilled over sodium.

**Properties.**—Mobile, colourless liquid; m.p. 5·4°; b.p. 80·4°; sp. gr. 0·874 at 20°. Coal-tar benzene usually contains a little thiophene,  $C_4H_4S$ , which may be detected by dissolving a few crystals of isatin (see p. 275) in concentrated sulphuric acid and shaking up with the benzene. If thiophene is present, a blue colour is produced (indophenin reaction).

**Fractional Distillation.**—It is often possible to separate almost completely by a single distillation, two liquids occurring together

in a mixture when their boiling-points lie widely apart. The more volatile liquid first passes over, the temperature suddenly rises, and the higher boiling liquid distils.

It is otherwise when a liquid consists of a mixture of substances boiling at temperatures not very far removed from one another,

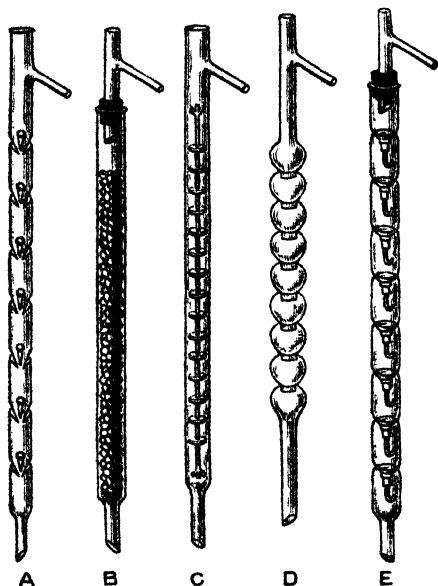


FIG. 74.—Represents a series of simple and efficient fractionating columns or still-heads. A is that of Vigreux in which the constrictions are formed by indenting the tube itself; B is Hempel's column and consists of a long wide tube filled with glass beads; C, D, and E are columns devised by Young and Thomas, the last being useful when large quantities of liquid have to be distilled. C contains a series of glass discs fused on to a rod, which can be removed from the tube; D has a series of pear-shaped bulbs blown on the stem and E is a wide tube with a series of constrictions, in each of which a small bent glass dripping tube is suspended in a gauze cup.

especially in the case of homologous compounds, such as occur in petroleum and coal-tar naphtha. One distillation suffices only to produce very partial separation of the different substances, a portion of the less volatile liquid being carried over in the first distillate, together with the more volatile body, the temperature

gradually rising throughout the distillation. In order to effect separation of the several substances, recourse is had to the method of fractional distillation.

The liquid is distilled in a round flask over wire-gauze or, better, in a fusible metal bath, a bit of porous pot or a coil of platinum-wire being placed in the flask to prevent bumping. The flask is surmounted with a fractionating column, in which the thermometer is fixed. Various forms of fractionating columns are used (see Fig. 74).

The effect of the column may be explained as follows: the vapour given off from a mixture of liquids contains a larger proportion of the more volatile constituent than the liquid. If this vapour is condensed in its ascent, the vapour above this condensed liquid will be still richer in the more volatile constituent. If, by a series of constrictions or diaphragms, the condensed liquid is obstructed in its return flow, a momentary equilibrium between liquid and vapour is established at each diaphragm, and the longer the column the greater will be the amount of more volatile constituent in the last portion of vapour to undergo condensation. This passes off by the condenser and is collected in the receiver. The apparatus (Fig. 74, E) can be made out of a piece of wide tubing. This is constricted in the blow-pipe flame, near one end, and a piece of copper wire-gauze with a circular hole, carrying the little bent tube, is placed on the constriction. A second constriction is made and another gauze diaphragm introduced. The number of diaphragms may vary from 10 to 20, according to the degree of separation required.<sup>1</sup>

**Commercial 50 per cent. and 90 per cent. Benzene** are mixtures of benzene and larger or smaller quantities of its higher boiling homologues, viz., toluene (b.p.  $110^{\circ}$ ) and the xylenes (b.p.  $137$ — $143^{\circ}$ ). The constituents may be separated by fractional distillation.

Fit up an apparatus with fractionating column and distil 200 c.c. 50 per cent. or 90 per cent. benzene, at a regular speed, so that the drops falling from the end of the condenser may be readily counted. Collect the distillate between every five degrees in separate flasks. Redistil each of these fractions in order, adding the next to the residue of the previous one in the distilling-flask. Collect portions

<sup>1</sup> *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1899, **76**, 700.



boiling below  $85^{\circ}$  and above  $105^{\circ}$ , between every two or three degrees. It will be found that by a repetition of the process the liquid is gradually separated into two large fractions, consisting chiefly of benzene and toluene, and a number of smaller intermediate fractions. The following table gives the volume in c.c., and the boiling-points of the fractions obtained by this method from 200 c.c., 50 per cent. benzene, each table denoting a complete series of fractionations, using a simple column with two bulbs.

## I.

A. $71.5-85^{\circ}$	B. $85-90^{\circ}$	C. $90-95^{\circ}$	D. $95-100^{\circ}$	E. $100-105^{\circ}$	F. $105-110^{\circ}$	G. $110-115^{\circ}$	Residue.
10 c.c.	53 c.c.	26 c.c.	15 c.c.	13 c.c.	17 c.c.	21 cc.	33 c.c.

## II.

	A' below $79^{\circ}$ .	B' $79-81^{\circ}$	C' $81-85^{\circ}$	D' $85-105^{\circ}$	E' $105-108^{\circ}$	F' $108-110^{\circ}$	Residue.
A.	5 c.c.	...	...	...	...	...	...
Added B.	...	42 c.c.	(10 c.c.)*	...	...	...	...
Added C.	...	...	(9 c.c.)*	...	...	...	...
Added D. E.	...	...	...	50 c.c.	...	...	...
Added F.	...	...	...	...	(11 c.c.)*	...	...
Added G.	...	...	...	...	...	22 c.c.	42 c.c.
* Refrac- tionated C'	...	12 c.c.	7 c.c.	...	...	...	...
E'.	...	...	...	...	6 c.c.	5 c.c.	...
	5 c.c.	54 c.c.	7 c.c.	50 c.c.	6 c.c.	27 c.c.	42 c.c.

The fraction  $79-81^{\circ}$  is further purified in the manner already described.

## PREPARATION 57.

Chlorobenzene,  $C_6H_5Cl$ .

Müller, *Jahresber.*, 1862, 415; Cohen, Dakin, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1901, 79, 1118.

250 c.c. benzene.

The benzene, distilled over a little metallic sodium, is poured into a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre), connected with a reflux condenser and provided with an inlet tube extending below the surface of the

liquid for introducing the chlorine.\* About 0.5 gram of aluminium-mercury couple is prepared as described on p. 262 and dropped into the benzene. The flask and contents are weighed and dry chlorine is at once passed into the liquid. The reaction takes place with evolution of heat, and torrents of hydrogen chloride are emitted through the top of the condenser, which it is advisable to absorb by means of a bent tube just dipping into water, as shown in Fig. 66, p. 111. The liquid is cooled by surrounding the flask with cold water, and the chlorination continued until the liquid has increased in weight by about 75 grams. The liquid is poured into its own bulk of water and the heavy chlorobenzene separated. It is washed with dilute caustic soda solution, again with water and then dehydrated over calcium chloride. It is now fractionated with a column and the fraction boiling at 125–135° collected. This is redistilled and collected between 129° and 132°. The yield is about 145 grams.



The precise action of the aluminium-mercury couple is unknown, but it obviously acts as a catalyst.

*Properties.*—Pleasant-smelling, colourless liquid, b.p. 132°; sp. gr. 1.128 at 0°. See *Appendix*, p. 406.

#### PREPARATION 58.

##### **Bromobenzene** (Phenyl bromide), $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{Br}$ .

Cohen and Dakin, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1899, **76**, 894; Cross and Cohen, *Proc. Chem. Soc.*, 1908

50 grams benzene  
120   ,,   (40 c.c.) bromine  
0.5 gram pyridine.

The apparatus is similar to that shown in Fig. 66, p. 111, but the flask should be placed in a water-bath, in which it can be heated, and the tap-funnel may be dispensed with. The benzene, bromine, and pyridine are placed in the flask and heated to 25–30°, when a vigorous and steady evolution of hydrogen bromide takes place, the gas being absorbed by the water in the beaker. When

the action slackens (about 1 hour) the temperature of the water-bath is gradually raised to 65—70°, and the process stopped when most of the bromine has disappeared and the evolution of hydrogen bromide has nearly ceased. The contents of the flask are cooled and poured into dilute caustic soda solution contained in a separating funnel and shaken. Sufficient alkali must be present to give an alkaline reaction after shaking. The lower layer is drawn off and dehydrated over calcium chloride. When perfectly clear the bromobenzene is filtered or decanted into a distilling flask (200 c.c.) provided with a thermometer and distilled over wire-gauze. Unchanged benzene first passes over; the temperature then rises rapidly and the portion boiling at 140—170° is collected separately. It is redistilled and collected at 150—160°. Yield, 60 grams.



The pyridine acts as "halogen carrier," probably by forming the additive compound,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{NBr}_2$ , which gives up its bromine to the benzene.

**Properties.**—Colourless liquid; b.p. 154—155°; sp. gr. 1.496 at 16°.

**Hydrobromic Acid.**—The weak solution of hydrobromic acid which collects in the beaker in the course of the above reaction may be concentrated by fractional distillation, as in the case of hydriodic acid (p. 362), and used in the preparation of bromotoluene (p. 189). It boils at 126° at the normal pressure, has a sp. gr. of 1.49, and contains about 47 per cent. of  $\text{HBr}$ . See *Appendix*, p. 406.

#### PREPARATION 59.

##### Ethyl Benzene, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ .

Fittig, *Annalen*, 1864, **181**, 303.

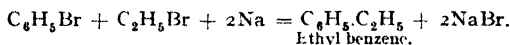
60 grams bromobenzene

52 „ ethyl bromide (see p. 59)

26.5 „ sodium.

A quantity of ether, which has been freed from alcohol by distilling over caustic potash, and dried over calcium chloride and

sodium (see p. 66), is poured into a round flask (1 litre). The amount of ether should be about twice the volume of the mixed phenyl and ethyl bromides. The sodium, cut into thin slices with the sodium knife, or squeezed into fine wire, is added to the ether, and when all evolution of hydrogen has ceased, the flask is attached to an upright condenser and immersed in a vessel of ice-water. The mixture of bromobenzene and ethyl bromide, both carefully dehydrated, is poured into the flask. The reaction is allowed to commence spontaneously, the fact being indicated by the appearance of the sodium, which becomes darker in colour and sinks to the bottom of the vessel. Although the flask is allowed to remain in the outer vessel, and is cooled by water and ice, the heat evolved often causes the ether to boil. The flask is therefore not removed until the reaction is over. It is convenient to leave it overnight. The liquid is then decanted from the sodium bromide, which has a blue colour, into a distilling flask, and rinsed out once or twice with ether. The ether is removed on the water-bath, a bit of porous pot being added, and the residue is fractionated with a fractionating column. The portion boiling at  $132-135^{\circ}$  is collected separately. Yield, 20—25 grams. The residue from which the ether has been decanted may contain a little unchanged sodium, which should therefore be decomposed with spirit before washing out with water.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p.  $134^{\circ}$ ; sp. gr. 0.8664 at  $22.5^{\circ}$ . See *Appendix*, p. 407.

#### PREPARATION 60.

##### Nitrobenzene, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NO}_2$ .

Mitscherlich, *Annalen*, 1834, **12**, 305.

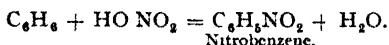
50 grams benzene.

80 „ (60 c.c.) conc. nitric acid, sp. gr. 1.4

120 „ (60 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid

The two acids are mixed and well cooled, and then slowly added from a tap-funnel to the benzene, which is contained in a flask

( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre). The contents of the flask are *well shaken* after each fresh addition. Nitrous fumes are evolved, and a considerable amount of heat developed. Care must, however, be taken that the temperature does not exceed  $50-60^{\circ}$  by immersing the flask, if necessary, in cold water. The nitrobenzene separates out as a brown, oily layer on the surface of the acid liquid. When the acid has all been added, an operation which lasts about half an hour, the mixture is heated for about twenty minutes on the water-bath, and again well shaken. The contents of the flask, on cooling, are poured into a stoppered separating-funnel, the lower layer of acid is removed, and the nitrobenzene washed free from acid by shaking once with water (50 c.c.), then with dilute carbonate of soda solution, and again with water, the oil being each time withdrawn from the bottom of the vessel. The nitrobenzene, separated as carefully as possible from water, is allowed to stand over a few pieces of fused calcium chloride, and shaken occasionally until the liquid is clear. The yellow liquid is decanted, or filtered from the calcium chloride, and distilled in a distilling-flask, with condenser tube only. At first a little benzene passes over; the temperature then rises, and the nitrobenzene distils at  $204-207^{\circ}$ , and is separately collected. The brown residue consists of dinitrobenzene, the quantity depending upon whether the temperature during nitration has been allowed to rise too high. Yield about 60 grams.



The function of the sulphuric acid is that of a dehydrating agent taking up the water formed in the reaction.

*Properties.*—Light yellow liquid, with a smell of bitter almonds; b.p.  $206-207^{\circ}$ , sp. gr. 1.208 at  $15^{\circ}$ ; m.p.  $3^{\circ}$ ; insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol, ether and benzene.

*Reaction.*—Pour a drop of nitrobenzene into a test-tube with 1 c.c. water and 1 c.c. glacial acetic acid. Add a little zinc-dust on the point of a penknife, and warm for a minute. Dilute with a few c.c. of water, and add caustic soda solution until alkaline, and pour a few drops into a test-tube half filled with sodium hypochlorite solution. A violet coloration, which gradually fades, is produced, due to the presence of aniline (see p. 166). See *Appendix*, p. 408.

## PREPARATION 61.

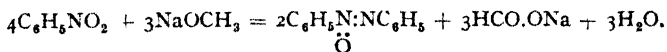
**Azoxybenzene,  $C_6H_5NO:NC_6H_5$ .**Klinger, *Ber.*, 1882, **15**, 865.

200 grams methyl alcohol

40 „ caustic soda

30 „ nitrobenzene.

Attach an upright condenser to a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre). Pour in the methyl alcohol, nitrobenzene and caustic soda and boil in the water-bath for six hours. A sample of the liquid is then diluted with water, and if any unchanged nitrobenzene can be detected by the smell, the boiling is continued. The methyl alcohol is then distilled off in the water-bath. As the liquid is liable to bump, owing to the separation of solid matter, it is advisable to add a few pieces of pot. When no more alcohol distils, the residue is poured into a beaker of water, rinsed out and acidified with hydrochloric acid. A dark-coloured oil is deposited, which soon solidifies, and is then washed by decantation, and pressed on a porous plate. Yield about 23 grams. It is recrystallised, when dry, from methyl alcohol, in which it is rather soluble.



Azoxybenzene

*Properties.*—Yellow needles; m.p.  $36^\circ$ . See *Appendix*, p. 409.

**Azoxybenzene from Nitrobenzene by Electrolysis.**—Nitrobenzene can be conveniently converted into azoxybenzene by electrolytic reduction. The apparatus required is shown in Fig. 75.

It consists of a porous cell which forms the cathode chamber and contains 20 grams nitrobenzene and 160 grams 2·5 per cent. caustic soda solution. The two are kept well mixed throughout the operation by a rapidly revolving stirrer. The cathode is a cylinder of nickel gauze (12 cms.  $\times$  8·5 cms. = 100 sq. cms.). The anode chamber is the outer glass vessel or beaker, which contains a solution of sodium sulphate acidified with sulphuric acid; a cylinder of sheet lead serves as the anode. An ordinary ammeter (A) and resistance (R) are connected in series with the battery and electrodes, and it is also useful, though not essential, to insert a

voltmeter (v) between the two electrodes. A current density of 1 to 5 amperes per 100 sq. cms. is used and 15–20 ampere hours will complete the reduction.<sup>1</sup>

The oily liquid which separates in the cathode chamber, and

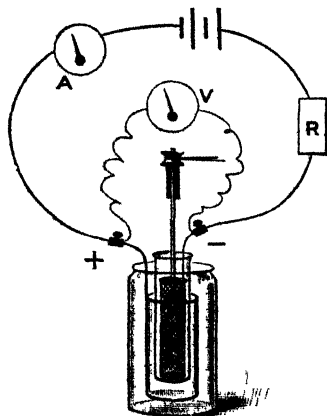


FIG. 75.

consists of azoxybenzene mixed with aniline and a little unchanged nitrobenzene, is distilled in steam, which removes the impurities. The residue then solidifies on cooling, and is filtered, dried, and recrystallised. Yield 11 grams (60–70 per cent. of the theory) (Elbs, *Electrolytic Preparations*, trans. by R. S. Hutton, p. 76).

#### PREPARATION 62.

#### Azobenzene, $C_6H_5N:N.C_6H_5$ .

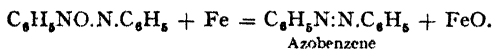
Mitscherlich, *Annalen*, 1834, **12**, 311.

5 grams azoxybenzene  
15 „ iron filings.

The azoxybenzene and iron filings, both of which must be carefully dried on the water-bath, are powdered together and distilled from a small retort, which is conveniently made by blowing a

<sup>1</sup> The current may be obtained from a number of secondary batteries or from a direct electric light circuit with a suitable resistance.

large bulb on the end of a piece of rather wide tubing  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cm. inside diameter, and then allowing the bulb whilst hot to bend over. The mixture is carefully heated, the burner being moved about until the contents are thoroughly hot, and then the mixture is more strongly heated until nothing further distills. The distillate, which forms a solid, dark-red mass, is washed with a little dilute hydrochloric acid and water, and then pressed on a porous plate. It is crystallised from ligroin, in which it is very soluble.



*Properties.*—Red plates; m.p.  $68^\circ$ ; b.p.  $295^\circ$ . See *Appendix*, p. 409.

**Azobenzene from Nitrobenzene by Electrolysis.**—A good yield of azobenzene can be obtained by the electrolytic reduction of nitrobenzene in alcoholic solution. The apparatus is similar to that shown in Fig. 75, p. 160, but in the present case the cathode chamber is the outer vessel, which should be a deep, narrow glass cylinder or beaker. The cathode liquid is a solution of 20 grams nitrobenzene and 5 grams sodium acetate crystals in 200 c.c. 70 per cent. spirit. The cathode is a cylinder of nickel gauze. A large porous cell forms the anode chamber, and contains a cold saturated solution of sodium carbonate. The anode is a wide strip of sheet lead. A current density of 6 to 9 amperes per 100 sq. cms. is passed for 17.4 ampere hours, and then a lower current density for a further 1—2 ampere hours. During the reduction the cathode liquid becomes very hot and the alcohol which evaporates must be replaced. The cathode liquid at the end of the process contains, in addition to azobenzene, azoxybenzene and hydrazobenzene. It is poured into a flask and the hydrazobenzene is oxidised to azobenzene by aspirating a current of air through the solution for half an hour. The greater part of the azobenzene separates and can be filtered; the remainder, which is less pure, is precipitated from the filtrate by the addition of water. It is recrystallised from ligroin. Yield, 90 per cent. of the theory.

(Elbs, *Electrolytic Preparations*, trans. by R. S. Hutton, p. 78.)



## PREPARATION 63.

**Hydrazobenzene (Diphenylhydrazine)**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.NHC}_6\text{H}_5$ 

Alexejew, *Zeitschr. f. Chem.*, 1867, 33; 1868, 497; E. Fischer, *Anleitung zur Darstellung org. Präparate*, p. 23.

- 50 grams (42 c.c.) nitrobenzene  
 54 „ caustic soda (in 200 c.c. water)  
 50 c.c. alcohol  
 100—125 grams zinc dust.

The apparatus is shown in Fig. 76. It consists of a large, round, wide-necked flask ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  litre) furnished with a cork perforated with three holes. Through one hole a stirrer, moved by a water-turbine or electric motor, passes in the manner shown in Fig. 76. To the stem of the stirrer a short, wide glass tube is attached, which revolves

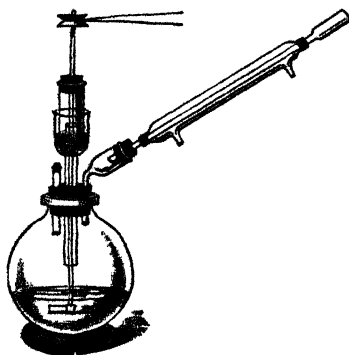
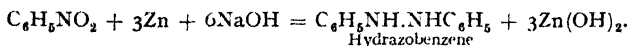


FIG. 76.

in the annular space formed at the end of an adapter by fusing to it an outer concentric piece of wider tubing. When this space is filled with water it serves as a water seal. Through a second hole a wide glass tube is inserted by which the zinc dust is introduced, and is fitted with a cork. The third hole is furnished with an adapter to which a condenser is attached. The nitrobenzene, caustic soda solution, and the alcohol are poured

into the flask and the stirrer set in rapid motion so that the contents are kept well agitated. The thorough mixing of the materials is essential to the success of the process. The zinc dust is added in quantities of 3—4 grams at a time through the wide glass tube, which is closed by a cork after each addition. The mixture soon becomes warm and eventually boils. To prevent the liquid boiling over, the frothing is allowed to subside before fresh zinc dust is added. The operation is usually completed in  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour, when the liquid, which has first a deep red colour (azobenzene), becomes

pale yellow. To examine the colour a sample should be withdrawn with a pipette and filtered. The stirring is continued for another  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour. A litre of cold water is added, which precipitates the hydrazobenzene. The mixture of hydrazobenzene and zinc residues is filtered at the pump and washed free from alkali with water. The precipitate is then pressed down and extracted with 750 c.c. of spirit on the water-bath with reflux condenser and filtered. On cooling in a freezing mixture, the hydrazobenzene crystallises in colourless plates, which are filtered and washed with a little spirit. The mother-liquor is used for a second extraction of the zinc residues, and from the filtrate a further quantity of hydrazobenzene is precipitated with water. If the second crop of crystals have a yellow colour, crystallisation from alcohol will remove it. Yield, 30–35 grams.

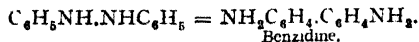


*Properties.*—Colourless plates; m.p.  $125^\circ$ .

*Reactions.*—1. Heat a small quantity in a dry test-tube. Notice the colour. On cooling add a little water and pour a few drops into a solution of sodium hypochlorite. A violet coloration indicates aniline.  $2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.NH.C}_6\text{H}_5 \neq \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N:NC}_6\text{H}_5 + 2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2$ .

2. Heat a small quantity with Fehling's solution and observe the formation of cuprous oxide. The hydrazobenzene is oxidised to azobenzene.

**Benzidine.**—Five grams of powdered hydrazobenzene are shaken with 125 c.c. hydrochloric acid (3 per cent.) at  $20$ – $30^\circ$ . In  $\frac{1}{4}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$  hour the substance will have completely dissolved. Finally, the mixture is heated to  $45$ – $50^\circ$ , a little water added to redissolve any benzidine hydrochloride, and filtered warm. The benzidine is precipitated from the solution of the hydrochloride by adding to the cold solution an excess of caustic soda solution. It is filtered and washed free from alkali, and recrystallised from boiling water or dilute alcohol. It crystallises in plates with nacreous lustre, m.p.  $127^\circ$ .



See *Appendix*, p. 409.

## PREPARATION 64

**Phenylhydroxylamine,  $C_6H_5.NH.OH$ .**

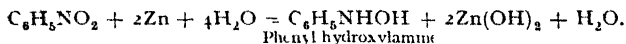
Bamberger, *Ber.*, 1894, **27**, 1548; Wohl, *Ber.*, 1894, **27**, 1432; Friedländer, *Theerfarbenfabrikation*, IV., 48.

6 grams ammonium chloride (in 200 c.c. water)

12 „ nitrobenzene

18 „ zinc dust (good quality).

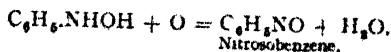
Mix the nitrobenzene and ammonium chloride solution in a flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre). The zinc dust is added in portions of about a gram at a time with constant shaking or stirring by turbine, the temperature being maintained below  $15^\circ$ , by cooling if necessary in ice water. The addition of the zinc dust should take about an hour. The shaking is continued for another quarter of an hour, when the smell of nitrobenzene will have disappeared. The contents of the flask are filtered and washed with 100 c.c. water, so that the water trickles slowly through the filter. The filtrate is saturated with clean salt (80 grams) and cooled to  $0^\circ$ . Colourless crystals of phenylhydroxylamine fill the liquid. They are filtered at the pump, dried on a porous plate, and recrystallised if necessary from benzene. Yield, 6–8 grams.



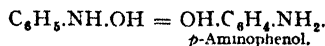
*Properties.*—Colourless needles; m.p.  $81^\circ$ .

*Reactions.*—Add to a solution of phenylhydroxylamine Fehling's solution and warm. Cuprous oxide is precipitated. To another portion add ammoniacal silver nitrate and warm. Silver is deposited. See *Appendix*, p. 411.

**Nitrosobenzene.**—Dissolve 4 grams of phenylhydroxylamine in the equivalent quantity of ice-cold 6 per cent. sulphuric acid (4 c.c. in 66 c.c. water), and add a well-cooled solution of 4 grams potassium dichromate in 200 c.c. water. Yellow crystals of nitrosobenzene are deposited, which distil in the vapour of steam with an emerald-green colour; m.p.  $67-68^\circ$ .



***p*-Aminophenol.**—Add gradually 1 gram of phenylhydroxylamine to 10 c.c. conc. sulphuric acid and 15 grams of ice, dilute with 100 c.c. of water and boil. Test a small sample with dichromate solution in order to see if the smell is that of nitrobenzene or quinone. In the latter case conversion is complete. The acid liquid is neutralised with sodium bicarbonate, saturated with common salt and extracted with ether. On distilling off the ether, *p*-aminophenol crystallises; m.p. 186°.



#### PREPARATION 65.

**Aniline** (Aminobenzene; Phenylamine),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2$ .

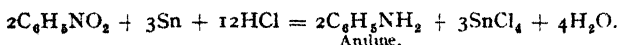
##### METHOD I.

Zinin, *Annalen*, 1842, **44**, 283; Roussin, *Compt. rend.*, 1861, **52**, 797.

50 grams nitrobenzene  
90 „ granulated tin  
170 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (sp. gr. 1.16).

Introduce the tin and nitrobenzene into a round flask ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  litre), and fit it with a straight upright tube about 2 feet long (air-condenser). Heat the mixture for a few minutes on the water-bath. Then remove the flask and add the concentrated hydrochloric acid in quantities of 5–10 c.c. at a time, and shake repeatedly. The liquid should become hot and boil quietly; but if the action becomes too violent it must be moderated by cooling the flask in cold water. In the course of  $\frac{1}{2}$ – $\frac{3}{4}$  hour all the acid should have been added; the flask is then replaced on the water-bath without the air-condenser, and heated for an hour or more until the reduction is complete. This is ascertained by the absence of any smell of nitrobenzene. The contents of the flask, on cooling, solidify to a crystalline mass (a double salt of stannic chloride and aniline hydrochloride). Whilst still warm, water (100 c.c.) and strong caustic soda solution (140 grams in 200 c.c. water) are added until the stannic oxide, which is first precipitated, nearly redissolves and the liquid has a strongly alkaline reaction. If the mixture

begins to boil during the addition of the caustic soda solution it must be cooled. The aniline, which separates out as a dark-coloured oil, is distilled in steam. The apparatus is shown in Fig. 68, p. 131. The flask containing the aniline is gently heated on the sand-bath, and steam is passed in from the tin bottle. It is advisable to heat the aniline mixture on the water-bath before steam is admitted, as otherwise a large quantity of water condenses in the flask. On distillation, aniline and water collect in the receiver, the former as a colourless oil. When the distillate, as it comes over, appears clear instead of milky, the distillation is stopped. The oil is now extracted from the distillate by shaking up the liquid in a separating-funnel three times with small quantities 30 c.c.) of chloroform. The chloroform solution, separated as far as possible from water, is further dehydrated by adding a little solid potassium carbonate. The clear liquid is decanted into a distilling-flask, the flask rinsed with a little chloroform, and the chloroform removed by distillation until the temperature reaches  $100^{\circ}$ , when the receiver is changed. Aniline distils at  $182-183^{\circ}$ , and has usually a faint amber colour. Yield, about 30 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless, highly refractive liquid, which soon darkens in colour; b.p.  $183^{\circ}$ ; sp. gr. 1.0265 at  $15^{\circ}$ .

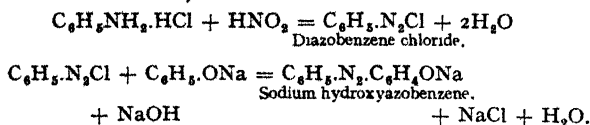
*Reactions.*—1. Add a drop of the oil to a solution of bleaching powder or sodium hypochlorite. An intense violet coloration is produced, which gradually fades.

2. Heat a drop of the oil with a few drops of chloroform and about 1 c.c. of alcoholic potash *in the fume-cupboard*. Phenyl carbamine is formed, which possesses an intolerable smell. (Hofmann's reaction for primary amines.)

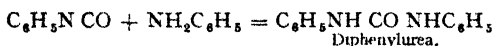
3. Add to a drop of aniline in a basin a few drops of concentrated sulphuric acid, and stir with a glass rod. Then add a few drops of potassium dichromate solution. An intense blue colour is obtained.

4. Dissolve a few drops of aniline in 5 c.c. dilute hydrochloric acid, cool under the tap and add a few drops of a solution of sodium nitrite. Then pour some of the solution into about half a gram of phenol dissolved in a few c.c. of caustic soda solution. An

orange solution of sodium hydroxyazobenzene is formed (see Reaction 6, p. 184).



5. Mix together 0.2 gram of aniline and 0.3 gram of phenyl isocyanate. The mixture becomes hot and solidifies. When crystallised from alcohol (it is not very soluble), the diphenyl urea forms colourless needles, m.p.  $238^\circ$  with decomposition.



See also Reaction 3, p. 55.

6. Dissolve a few drops of aniline in HCl (1 conc. HCl : 1  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) and add bromine water until a faintly brown colour persists on shaking. A precipitate of tribromaniline is thrown down and may be crystallised from glacial acetic acid. It forms colourless needles; m.p.  $119^\circ$ .

See *Appendix*, p. 411.

## METHOD II.

Béchamp, *Ann chim. phys*, 1854, (3) **42**, 186.

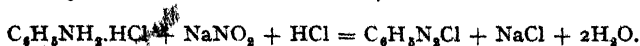
44 grams nitrobenzene

44 „ clean and fine iron borings free from dust

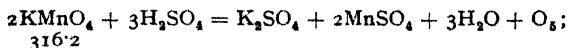
5 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (in 10 c.c. of water).

The nitrobenzene and iron borings are mixed together in a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -litre round flask. The hydrochloric acid is added in portions of 5 c.c. at a time and well shaken or stirred with a mechanical stirrer. There is a vigorous reaction and the temperature rises, and should be maintained at about  $70^\circ$ . When the reaction is over, as indicated by the disappearance of the smell of nitrobenzene, 50 c.c. of water are added and 10 grams of anhydrous sodium carbonate, in small quantities at a time, and the alkaline mixture is distilled in steam. The subsequent operations are identical with those described in the previous preparation. The yield is about 30 grams.

**Estimation of Aniline by diazotisation.**—The reaction depends upon the conversion of aniline hydrochloride into benzene diazonium chloride by the action of nitrous acid,



A normal solution of sodium nitrite is first prepared by dissolving 75 grams of the salt in water and diluting to 1 litre. This is titrated against *N*/2-potassium permanganate solution (in presence of dilute sulphuric acid), made by dissolving 3.95 grams of the salt in 250 c.c. of water, according to the equation :



316.2

$$0.5 \text{ gram H} = \frac{316.2}{20} = 15.8.$$

Weigh out carefully 3.5–4 grams of aniline, dissolve in 5–6 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid and dilute to 100 c.c. Twenty c.c. of this solution are titrated with the sodium nitrite solution as follows : The aniline hydrochloride solution is diluted to 100 c.c. with ice-cold water and 10 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid are added. About four-fifths of the calculated amount of nitrite solution is run in from the burette, the nozzle of which is kept below the surface of the liquid, which is well stirred. Whilst stirring, a further quantity of nitrite solution is gradually added until a blue colour is obtained with potassium iodide-starch paper which subsists for ten minutes.

*Example.*—The amount of aniline taken = 3.9142 grams. Twenty c.c. of the solution required 7.8 c.c. of sodium nitrite solution (*N* × 1.04).

The amount of aniline in 100 c.c. is therefore

$$\frac{7.8 \times 1.04 \times 93 \times 5}{1000} = 3.772 \text{ grams.}$$

The percentage is therefore

$$\frac{3.772 \times 100}{3.9142} = 96.4.$$

See footnote p. 185.

## PREPARATION 66.

**Acetanilide** (Phenylacetamide),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.CO.CH}_3$ .G. Williams, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1864, 2, 106.

25 grams aniline (freshly distilled)

30 c.c. glacial acetic acid.

A round flask (250 c.c.) is fitted with a condenser tube as in Fig. 77, into the wide end of which a thermometer and exit tube for carrying off condensed water and acetic acid are inserted.<sup>1</sup> The mixture is boiled over wire-gauze at such a rate that the thermometer at the upper end of the condenser registers  $105^\circ$ . After about two hours the water formed during the reaction along with some acetic acid will have been driven off, and the temperature indicated by the thermometer will begin to fluctuate. The process is then complete, and as the liquid solidifies on cooling, it is at once poured out, while hot, into a basin of cold water (500 c.c.). It is filtered and washed with cold water. Acetanilide crystallises best from hot water, in which, however, it is not very soluble. Place the moist acetanilide in a large basin, and add gradually about a litre of boiling water. If the substance does not dissolve completely on boiling, a small quantity of spirit will bring it into solution. Filter through a large fluted filter or Buchner funnel (p. 45) and set the solution aside to crystallise. If the product is dark coloured it is redissolved as before, and heated with a little animal charcoal (5–10 grams) for half an hour and then filtered. Yield, 30–35 grams.

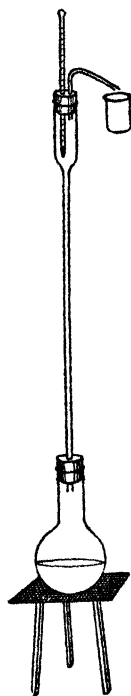
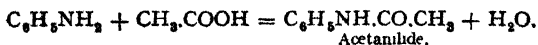


FIG. 77.

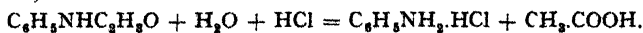


**Properties.**—Rhombic plates; m.p.  $112^\circ$ ; b.p.  $295^\circ$ .

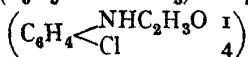
<sup>1</sup> N. V. Sidgwick, *Private Communication*.



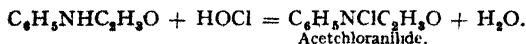
**Reaction.**—Introduce about 0.5 gram of the substance into a test-tube, and add 3 c.c. concentrated hydrochloric acid or 3 c.c. of a mixture of equal volumes of conc. sulphuric acid and water and heat on the water-bath for a few minutes. On diluting with water, a clear solution is obtained.



**Acetchloranilide** ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NCICO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ ) and **p-Chloracetanilide**



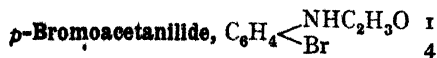
Grind up 10 grams of good bleaching powder with 100 c.c. of water, let it stand an hour and filter. Determine the strength of the solution by withdrawing 5 c.c., diluting to about 100 c.c., adding 10 c.c. of a 10 per cent. solution of potassium iodide solution and 2 c.c. of glacial acetic acid. The available chlorine ( $\text{HOCl}$ ) is estimated by titrating with  $\text{N}/10$ -thiosulphate. Calculate the amount of bleaching solution required for 1 gram of acetanilide from the equation



Add to the finely powdered acetanilide a slight excess of the bleaching solution and add further 1 gram of potassium bicarbonate to liberate  $\text{HOCl}$  from the calcium hypochlorite, and let the mixture stand for an hour. There is no apparent change in the acetanilide, which remains colourless and undissolved. Shake up with about 10 c.c. of chloroform, which dissolves the acetchloranilide, and separate the chloroform solution. On removing the chloroform on the water-bath and pouring out the residual liquid into a small basin, the acetchloranilide, on cooling, crystallises in colourless, prismatic crystals. The yield is nearly theoretical. Recrystallise a small quantity by dissolving in a very little chloroform and adding petroleum ether. It melts at  $91^\circ$ . Dissolve the remainder in a little glacial acetic acid, add a drop of conc. sulphuric acid and warm on the water-bath. After a short time a vigorous reaction suddenly sets in and the liquid boils. After cooling somewhat, pour into water and crystallise from alcohol. The product which separates in colourless needles is p-chloracetanilide and melts at  $172^\circ$  (Chattaway and Orton, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1899, **75**, 1046; 1900, **77**, 134, 790).

See *Appendix*, p. 412.

PREPARATION 67.



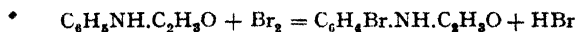
Remmers, *Ber.*, 1874, 7, 346.

5 grams acetanilide

25 c.c. glacial acetic acid

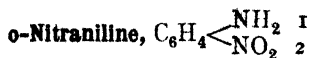
6 grams bromine.

Dissolve the acetanilide in the acetic acid in a flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre), and add gradually the bromine, dissolved in about twice its volume of glacial acetic acid, and shake well. When the bromine has been added, let the mixture stand  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour and then pour into 200 c.c. water and rinse out with water. Filter the crystalline precipitate at the pump and wash three or four times with water. Press it well down and let it drain. Dissolve the moist substance in spirit (about 60 c.c.) and pour into a beaker to crystallise. Filter the crystals, wash with a little dilute spirit, and dry on filter paper or porous earthenware. Yield, 6—7 grams.



*Properties*.—Colourless needles; m.p. 165—166°. On hydrolysis with concentrated hydrochloric acid, *p*-bromoaniline is formed (see above reaction for acetanilide).

PREPARATION 68.



Witt, Utermann, *Ber.*, 1906, 39, 3903.

45 grams acetanilide (finely powdered)

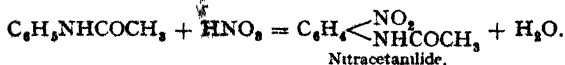
50 „ acetic anhydride

25 c.c. fuming nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.5).

The acetanilide is suspended in the acetic anhydride in a beaker, cooled to about 5° and stirred with a mechanical stirrer. In another vessel 25 c.c. of fuming nitric acid are cooled in ice and mixed with 0.5 gram of urea and 15 grams of acetic anhydride. The

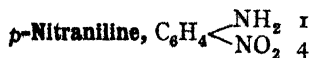
cooled acid mixture is added slowly to the acetanilide, the temperature of the mixture being kept at 10—20°. The acetanilide first dissolves and, as the nitration proceeds, the nitro-compound gradually separates as a deep yellow mass. It is left overnight and then mixed with about 500 grams of crushed ice, when yellow crystals of a mixture of ortho- and para-nitracetanilide separate. They are filtered, washed with water and dried. The yield is usually 55—58 grams. The two isomers are separated as follows: 400 c.c. of alcoholic potash (made by adding 1 vol. of purified spirit and 4 vols. of water to 1 vol. of a 50 per cent. caustic potash solution) are cooled in ice to 0° and stirred. The dry, powdered nitro-compounds are gradually added and the stirring is continued for three hours. The ortho-compound dissolves, giving a red solution, which is filtered from the para-compound and washed, first with about 60 c.c. of the same alcoholic potash solution, also cooled in ice, and finally with ice-cold water. On keeping the red solution for some time at the ordinary temperature, large, needle-shaped, orange crystals of *o*-nitracetanilide are deposited. They are filtered and washed with water. The product usually melts at 70—71° and is nearly pure. If not, it should be recrystallised from spirit. Yield, 30 grams.

The insoluble residue still contains some of the ortho-isomer, and by treating it again with about 150 c.c. of the same alcoholic potash a few grams more of the ortho-compound can be recovered. The final insoluble residue is nearly pure *p*-nitracetanilide, and melts at 204—206°. The yield is 12—14 grams. It may be recrystallised from spirit.



**Reaction.**—On boiling the *o*-nitracetanilide with conc. hydrochloric acid or heated with sulphuric acid (equal volumes of conc. sulphuric acid and water) on the water-bath until the product dissolves on pouring into water and warming, *o*-nitraniline is produced, and separates on cooling in the form of orange needles. On reduction (see next preparation), it gives *o*-phenylene diamine.

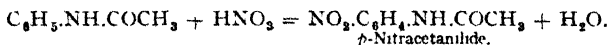
PREPARATION 69.



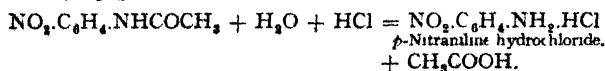
Bender and Erdmann, *Chemische Präparatenkunde*, Vol. II., p. 438.

- 25 grams acetanilide
- 25 c.c. acetic acid (glacial)
- 50 „ conc. sulphuric acid
- 10 „ fuming nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.5).

The acetanilide, acetic acid, and sulphuric acid are mixed by means of a mechanical stirrer and cooled in a freezing mixture. The fuming nitric acid is then gradually added from a tap-funnel at such a speed that the temperature does not exceed 20°. After the acid has been added, the mixture is stirred for an hour and poured on to ice. The product is then diluted with water, left to stand for a time, filtered, washed, and dried on a porous plate. It may be recrystallised from dilute alcohol, but is usually pure enough for further treatment. Yield is 80 per cent. of the theory; the remaining 20 per cent. is ortho-compound and remains in solution; m.p. 207°.



The *p*-nitracetanilide is either boiled with 2½ times its weight of concentrated hydrochloric acid, or heated on the water-bath with twice its weight of equal volumes of sulphuric acid and water until the liquid remains clear on diluting with water. The *p*-nitraniline which is now present in the liquid as the hydrochloride or sulphate is diluted with water and precipitated by the addition of an excess of caustic soda or ammonia. When cold, the yellow crystalline precipitate is filtered, washed and re-crystallised from boiling water. Yield, 25 grams.



*Properties*.—Yellow needles; m.p. 147°; soluble in hot water; very soluble in alcohol.

*Reactions*.—1. Dissolve 0.5 gram of *p*-nitraniline in 1 c.c. conc. HCl diluted with an equal volume of water, add a few small pieces of

ice and then 0.3 gram of sodium nitrite. Pour the solution into 0.75 gram of  $\beta$ -naphthol dissolved in caustic soda solution. The red precipitate is *paramtraniline red*.

2. Dissolve 1.38 grams of *p*-nitraniline in 2.5 c.c. conc. HCl diluted with an equal volume of water, add 10 grams of ice and then 0.8 gram of sodium nitrite. Pour this solution into 40 c.c. of 18 per cent. caustic soda solution heat d to 50–60° and shake well. On cooling, golden-yellow crystals of sodium diazotate,  $\text{NO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{ONa}$ , separate, and may be recrystallised from spirit.

The above reactions depend on the formation of diazonium salts described in Preparation 76, p. 182.

#### PREPARATION 70.



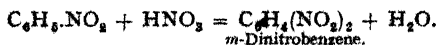
Deville, *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1841 (3), 3, 187, Hofmann, Muspratt, *Annalen*, 1846, 57, 214.

30 grams nitrobenzene

35 „ (24 c.c.) fuming nitric acid; sp. gr. 1.5

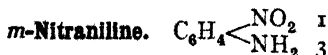
35 „ (20 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid.

The acids are mixed in a flask (500 c.c.), and the nitrobenzene added in portions of 5–10 c.c. at a time. Heat is evolved, and the mass becomes somewhat deeper in colour. When the nitrobenzene has been added, the flask is heated for a short time on the water-bath. A few drops are then poured into a test-tube of water. The dinitrobenzene should, if the reaction is complete, separate out as a hard, pale yellow cake. If it is semi-solid, the heating must be continued. The contents of the flask are then poured, whilst warm, into a large quantity of water. The dinitrobenzene, which separates out, is filtered at the pump and well washed with water. It is then dried. The yield is nearly theoretical. A few grams should be recrystallised from spirit. The remainder may be used for the next preparation without further purification.



*Properties*.—Colourless long needles; m.p. 90°; b.p. 297°. See Appendix, p. 414.

PREPARATION 71.



Hofmann, Muspratt, *Annalen*, 1846, 57, 217.

25 grams *m*-dinitrobenzene  
75 „ (95 c.c.) spirit  
12 „ (13 c.c.) conc. ammonia.

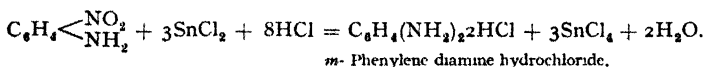
The powdered dinitrobenzene, spirit and ammonia are mixed together in a flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre). Hydrogen sulphide, washed through water, is passed into the dark-red pasty mass, which is occasionally shaken.\* The dinitrobenzene slowly dissolves, whilst, at the same time, flakes of crystallised sulphur are deposited. When the gas has been passing for an hour the flask is removed and heated on the water-bath for a few minutes. After cooling, the liquid is again saturated with hydrogen sulphide and then heated on the water-bath as before. When the gas has been passing in a steady stream for fully two hours the process is complete. Water is now added to the liquid until nothing further is precipitated. The mixture is filtered at the pump and washed with a little water. The solid residue is transferred to a flask and shaken up with successive small quantities of hot dilute hydrochloric acid and the liquid decanted through the original filter. The nitraniline dissolves, leaving the sulphur. When no more nitraniline is extracted (this may be ascertained by adding ammonia in excess to a portion of the acid solution, when no precipitate is formed), the acid solution is somewhat concentrated, cooled, and concentrated ammonia added. The *m*-nitraniline is precipitated, filtered when cold, and purified by recrystallisation from boiling water. The filtrate from the nitraniline may be concentrated on the water-bath and a further small quantity obtained. Yield, about 15 grams.



*Properties*.—Yellow needles; m.p. 114°; b.p. 285°. With tin and hydrochloric acid it is reduced to *m*-phenylenediamine,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{NH}_2)_2$ .

*m*-Phenylenediamine.—Dissolve 30 grams stannous chloride ( $\text{SnCl}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) in 50 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid in a round flask

( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) and gradually add 5 grams *m*-nitraniline. The mixture is heated on the water-bath until no precipitate is formed on adding water ( $\frac{1}{2}$  hour). The liquid is diluted with 500 c.c. water, heated nearly to boiling and a current of hydrogen sulphide passed in until all the tin is precipitated as sulphide ( $\frac{1}{2}$ — $\frac{3}{4}$  hour). With this object a small quantity should be filtered and tested from time to time by passing in hydrogen sulphide. The precipitate is left overnight to subside, the clear liquid decanted and the residue filtered at the pump through a double-filter. The clear filtrate is concentrated on the water-bath until crystallisation commences and allowed to cool. The crystals of the hydrochloride of phenylenediamine separate and are filtered. A further quantity may be obtained by concentrating the mother liquors. Yield, 6.5 grams.



**Reaction.**—Dissolve a few crystals in water, acidify with dilute hydrochloric acid, and add a drop of sodium nitrite solution. A deep brown solution (Bismarck brown) is obtained. See *Appendix*, p. 414.

#### PREPARATION 72.

##### **Dimethylaniline, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ .**

Poirrier, Chappat, *Jahresb.*, 1866, p. 903.

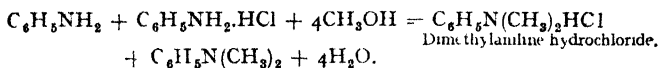
20 grams aniline hydrochloride

15   ,,   aniline

22   ,,   methyl alcohol.

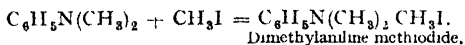
The aniline hydrochloride is prepared by gradually adding conc. hydrochloric acid to aniline (20 grams in a beaker) until a drop brought on to a piece of filter paper, stained with methyl violet, turns it green. The liquid is quickly cooled and stirred so as to produce small crystals. It is then filtered, well pressed and dried on a porous plate. The dry hydrochloride is brought into a thick-walled tube closed at one end, and the mixture of aniline and methyl alcohol added. The tube is then sealed in the ordinary way and heated in the tube furnace gradually to  $150^\circ$  during two hours, and then to  $180$ — $200^\circ$  for six hours more. The contents

of the tube divide into two layers, the lower one consisting of the hydrochloride of the base and water, and the upper one of the free bases. The whole of the contents are poured out into a large separating funnel, and caustic soda added in excess. The addition of a little ether causes the bases to separate out more readily. The top layer is removed, and the lower aqueous portion is shaken up twice with small quantities of ether. The ethereal solution is dehydrated over solid caustic potash, the liquid filtered and the ether removed on the water-bath. The residue is now boiled with 25 grams acetic anhydride, using an upright condenser, for an hour in the same flask, the side limb of which is stoppered. The contents are then distilled. Unchanged acetic anhydride passes over at 130—150°; the thermometer then rises, and the portion boiling at 190—200° is collected separately. When the higher temperature is reached, it is advisable to keep only the lower half of the condenser filled with water. The distillate has a bright amber colour. Yield, 20 grams. The residue in the flask consists of acetanilide and methylacetanilide and solidifies on cooling.



*Properties*.—Colourless liquid; b.p. 192°; sp. gr. 0.957 at 20°.

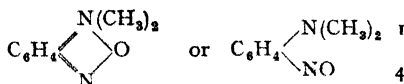
*Reaction*.—Warm with an equal volume of methyl iodide; the crystalline quaternary ammonium iodide will be formed,



See *Appendix*, p. 414.

#### PREPARATION 73.

##### *p*-Nitrosodimethylaniline,



Baeyer, Caro, *Ber.*, 1874, **7**, 810 and 963; Meldola, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1881, **39**, 37.

20 grams dimethylaniline

52 „ (45 cc). conc. hydrochloric acid in 100 c.c. of water.

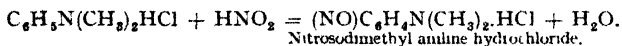
12 „ sodium nitrite (in 20 c.c. of water).

COHEN'S P. O. C.

N



The dimethylaniline is dissolved in the dilute hydrochloric acid in a beaker and cooled in a freezing mixture. The sodium nitrite, dissolved in a small quantity of water, is then slowly added with frequent stirring. The separation of the hydrochloride of nitroso-dimethylaniline in the form of small yellow needles soon begins, and the liquid is gradually filled with a thick crystalline deposit. When, after standing for a short time (half an hour), no further increase in the quantity of crystals is observed, the mass is filtered at the pump and washed with spirit to which one or two c.c. of concentrated hydrochloric acid has been added. It is then washed once or twice with spirit, drained and pressed on a porous plate. Yield, nearly theoretical. It may be recrystallised by adding small quantities of hot water until the salt is just dissolved, and then setting aside to cool. If the free base is to be prepared, recrystallisation is unnecessary. Ten grams of the hydrochloride are mixed into a paste with water in a flask, and caustic soda solution is added in the cold until alkaline. The yellow colour of the salt changes to green of the free base. Sufficient ether is added to dissolve the green precipitate. The ethereal solution is carefully separated by means of a separating-funnel and most of the ether is then removed by distillation. The remaining liquid is poured out into a beaker and set aside to crystallise. The base remains on evaporation of the ether in the form of brilliant green foliated crystals.



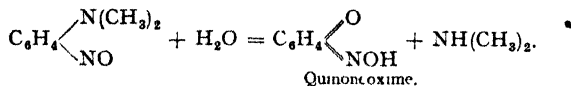
*Properties.*—Large green foliated crystals; m.p.  $85^\circ$ .

*Reactions.*—1. Dissolve a few crystals in dilute hydrochloric acid and add a little zinc dust. The solution is decolorised through the formation of dimethyl *p*-phenylenediamine,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{N.C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH}_2$ .

2. Warm a few of the crystals with yellow ammonium sulphide solution for a few minutes, acidify with hydrochloric acid, and finally add a little ferric chloride. A deep blue coloration is produced, due to the formation of methylene-blue.

3. Dissolve 6 grams of caustic soda in 250 c.c. of water and heat to boiling. Add 5 grams of the hydrochloride of nitroso-dimethylaniline gradually. The free base, which separates out in oily drops, is allowed to dissolve before each fresh addition. The boiling is continued until the dark green colour of the liquid changes

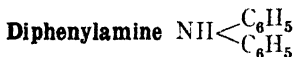
to reddish-yellow. Dimethylamine is evolved and is easily recognised by its smell. After cooling, acidify the liquid in the flask and extract with ether. On distilling off the ether, nitrosophenol (quinoneoxime) remains in the form of dark-coloured crystals, which are difficult to purify.



The presence of a nitroso-compound may be detected as follows : Melt together a minute quantity of nitrosophenol and a few crystals of phenol. Add about 2 c.c. concentrated sulphuric acid and warm very gently. A blue solution is obtained, which changes to red on dilution with water, and back to blue on adding alkali (Liebermann's "nitroso" reaction; see Reaction 4, p. 206).

4. Dissolve a little nitrosodimethylaniline in aniline. On cooling, steel-blue needles of the additive compound,  $2\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NO.N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2$ , are formed. See *Appendix*, p. 415.

#### PREPARATION 74.



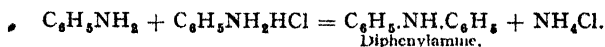
A. W. Hofmann, *Annalen*, 1864, **132**, 163.

27 grams aniline

25.5 „ aniline hydrochloride.

The aniline and aniline hydrochloride are introduced into a sealed tube and heated to about  $240^\circ$  for twenty-four hours. When the furnace is cold, the tubes are opened in the usual way and the contents melted and poured into a large beaker (2 litres) and the tube is rinsed out with about 50 c.c. of conc. hydrochloric acid diluted with half its volume of water. A solution of the hydrochlorides of aniline and diphenylamine are thus obtained. On diluting with about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  litres of boiling water the diphenylamine hydrochloride is hydrolysed (breaks up into the base and hydrochloric acid), and the base is deposited as a heavy oil at the bottom of the vessel. On leaving overnight, it solidifies and is then filtered

and dried on a porous plate. The crude base is distilled from a retort, when a light-coloured oil passes over, which solidifies in the receiver and is nearly pure diphenylamine. The yield is about 16 grams. To purify it, it is dissolved in ligroin, decolourised with animal charcoal, filtered and cooled.



*Properties.*—It crystallises in colourless leaflets with a faintly fragrant smell, melts at  $54^\circ$  and boils at  $302^\circ$ .

*Reactions.*—1. Dissolve a few crystals of diphenylamine in conc. sulphuric acid and add a small crystal of sodium nitrite. A deep blue colour is produced (test for nitrous acid).

2. Dissolve a small quantity of the base in alcohol and add a few drops of sodium nitrite solution and a few drops of dilute hydrochloric acid. The yellow nitrosamine,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{N.NO}$ , crystallises.

#### PREPARATION 75.

**Thiocarbanilide** (Diphenylthiourea),  $\text{CS} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix}$

Hofmann, *Annalen*, 1849, **70**, 142.

30 grams aniline

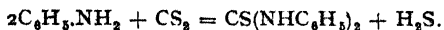
30 „ carbon bisulphide

30 „ absolute alcohol.

The aniline, carbon bisulphide,<sup>1</sup> and alcohol are poured into a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) and heated for a day (8 hours) on the water-bath with upright condenser. As hydrogen sulphide is evolved, the operation must either be conducted in the fume cupboard or an exit tube must be attached to the top of the condenser tube dipping into soda-lime. The contents of the flask solidify after a time. When the reaction is complete, the condenser is reversed, and excess of carbon bisulphide and alcohol distilled off on the water-bath. The residue is washed on to a filter with very dilute hydrochloric acid, to remove any unchanged aniline, and then with

<sup>1</sup> Carbon bisulphide being very volatile and exceedingly inflammable, great care must be taken when using it in the neighbourhood of a flame.

water. The crystals are dried on a porous plate, and a portion crystallised from spirit. Yield, 30—35 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless rhombic plates; m.p.  $151^\circ$ ; scarcely soluble in water, easily soluble in alcohol or ether.

**Phenyl Thiocarbimide (Phenyl Mustard Oil),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}:\text{CS}$**

The thiocarbanilide is boiled with two to three times the weight of concentrated hydrochloric acid in a flask with an upright condenser for half an hour. It is decomposed into triphenylguanidine, which remains as the hydrochloride in solution (it is subsequently separated), and phenyl mustard oil, which separates out as a brown oil. On distilling the product in steam, the phenyl mustard oil is carried over into the receiver. It is separated by shaking out with ether and removing the ethereal layer with a tap-funnel. It is dehydrated over calcium chloride, and decanted into a small distilling flask. The ether is removed on the water-bath and the mustard oil distilled, with the thermometer, using a short condenser tube. Yield, 9—10 grams.

*Properties.*—Colourless oil with a peculiar smell; b.p.  $220^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 1.135 at  $15^\circ$ .

*Reactions.*—1. Heat gently for a few minutes 0.5 c.c. phenyl mustard oil, 0.5 c.c. alcohol and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  c.c. concentrated ammonia. On cooling, thiocarbanilamide,  $\text{NH}_2\text{CS.NH.C}_6\text{H}_5$ , crystallises in needles.

2. Heat gently 0.5 c.c. phenyl mustard oil, and 0.5 c.c. aniline; on cooling and rubbing with a glass rod, thiocarbanilide crystallises.

3. Heat on the water-bath in a small flask with upright condenser 3 grams of phenyl mustard oil and 10 c.c. absolute alcohol for three hours, and pour into cold water. Phenylthiourethane,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.CS.OC}_2\text{H}_5$ , separates out and may be recrystallised from alcohol. Yield, 2½ grams; m.p.  $67^\circ$ .

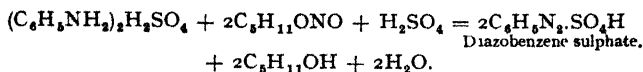
4. Heat a few drops of the mustard oil with yellow mercuric oxide and notice the irritating smell of phenyl carbimide (isocyanate).



**Triphenylguanidine.**—In order to separate the triphenylguanidine remaining in the flask as hydrochloride after distilling off the



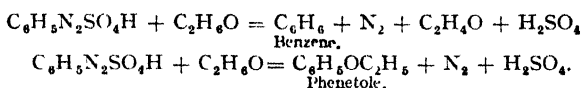
become quite dry. The various reactions described below are carried out with the slightly moist and well-pressed precipitate.



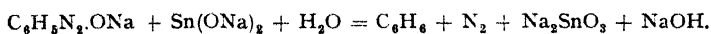
*Properties.*—Colourless needles; soluble in water and methyl alcohol; slightly soluble in ethyl alcohol.

*Reactions.*—The following reactions are performed in test-tubes with about a gram of the substance.

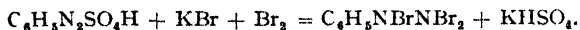
1. Warm the substance with a few c.c. of ethyl alcohol. Vigorous effervescence occurs and the liquid turns red. When effervescence ceases, add water. An oil separates out on the surface consisting of benzene mixed with a little phenetole.



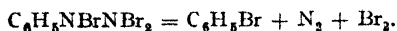
2. Dissolve about a gram of the substance in a little water, cool in ice and make alkaline with caustic soda. Make an alkaline solution of stannous hydrate by dissolving 3—4 grams of stannous chloride in twice its weight of water and adding strong caustic soda solution until the precipitate redissolves. Cool the diazo-solution and add the alkaline stannous hydrate. Effervescence occurs, nitrogen is liberated and benzene separates on the surface of the liquid and can be detected by its smell.



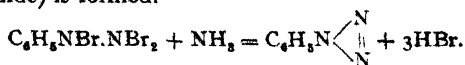
3. Dissolve the substance in a few c.c. of cold water and add a solution of bromine in potassium bromide until no further turbidity is produced. A black oil collects at the bottom of the test-tube. Pour off the top layer as far as possible, and let the oil stand in cold water. It solidifies. This is the perbromide of diazobenzene.



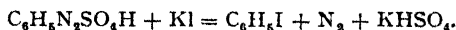
Decant any liquid and warm the perbromide with a little alcohol. Nitrogen and bromine are given off and bromobenzene is formed.



By the action of ammonia on the perbromide, diazobenzolimide (phenylazoimide) is formed.



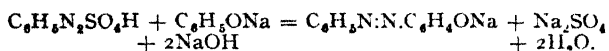
4. Dissolve the substance in a little cold water and add potassium iodide solution. Effervescence occurs and a dark-coloured liquid separates. This is iodobenzene.



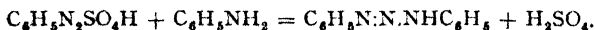
5. Dissolve the substance in water and warm gently. Effervescence occurs and a dark-coloured oil separates, which has the smell of phenol. When effervescence ceases, cool and shake up with a little ether. Decant the ether into a dry test-tube. Evaporate the ether and test the residue for phenol, see p. 186.



6. Dissolve the substance in cold water and add it to a solution of phenol in caustic soda, drop by drop. An orange, crystalline precipitate of hydroxyazobenzene is formed. Repeat, using  $\beta$ -naphthol in place of phenol. A scarlet precipitate is obtained.



7. Dissolve in cold water and add a few drops of aniline, and shake up. Diazoaminobenzene separates out as a yellow crystalline precipitate.



8. Heat 0.5 gram of the dry substance on an iron tray. It decomposes with slight explosion.

Any of the diazo-compound which remains over should be dissolved in water and poured away. See *Appendix*, p. 417.

#### PREPARATION 77.

##### Toluene from *p*-Toluidine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_3$ .

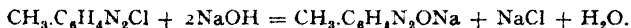
Friedländer, *Ber.*, 1889, **22**, 587.

10 grams *p*-toluidine

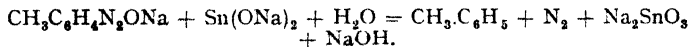
30 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (in 60 c.c. water)

- 7.5 grams sodium nitrite (in powder)  
 15 „ caustic soda (in 50 c.c. water)  
 30 „ stannous chloride (in 75 c.c. water)

The *p*-toluidine, which is placed in a beaker, is dissolved in the hydrochloric acid by warming and is then cooled under the tap, so as to obtain small crystals of the hydrochloride. The beaker is placed in a freezing mixture and the contents cooled below 10°. The powdered sodium nitrite is added in small portions at a time with stirring, the temperature being kept below 10°. The hydrochloride gradually dissolves in the form of the soluble diazonium salt. Towards the end of the operation a drop of the solution is occasionally tested with potassium iodide and starch paper after allowing time for the last portions of nitrite to react when an excess of nitrite is indicated by a blue stain.<sup>1</sup> The solution is poured very slowly into the solution of caustic soda previously cooled in ice so that the temperature does not rise above 10°.



Meantime the stannous chloride solution is converted into sodium stannite by adding a 50 per cent. solution of caustic soda until the precipitate of the hydrate nearly redissolves (about 30 grams of caustic soda). The liquid is placed in a round flask (500 c.c.) attached to a condenser and cooled in ice. The alkaline diazo-solution is poured through the top of the condenser in small quantities at a time. After each addition there is a vigorous effervescence and evolution of nitrogen, and a brown oil separates which consists of impure toluene.



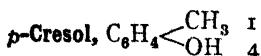
When the solution has all been added, the toluene is distilled off in steam, separated from the water, and dehydrated over calcium

<sup>1</sup> The potassium iodide-starch paper is prepared by grinding up about 0.5 gram of starch with a little water, adding about 100 c.c. of boiling water and boiling for a few minutes. About 0.5 gram of potassium iodide is added, and when dissolved and well shaken strips of filter paper are immersed, drained and dried. Cadmium iodide may be used in place of the potassium salt, as the paper keeps longer free from discoloration.



chloride. It distils at  $110^{\circ}$ . Yield, 5—6 grams. See *Appendix*, p. 419.

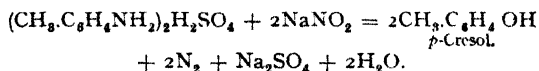
### PREPARATION 78.



Griess, *Annalen*, 1866, **137**, 39; Ihle, *J. prakt. Chem.*, 1876, **14**, 451.

- 25 grams *p*-toluidine  
 25 „ conc. sulphuric acid (in 750 c.c. water)  
 20 „ sodium nitrite (in 40 c.c. water).

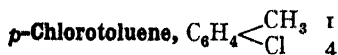
Mix the dilute sulphuric acid and toluidine in a large round flask ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  litre) and cool to the ordinary temperature. The nitrite solution is gradually added. The clear solution is then gently warmed on the water-bath until the evolution of nitrogen ceases. The solution, which has become very dark coloured, is distilled in steam until the distillate produces only a slight precipitate with bromine water (500 c.c.). A small quantity of tarry residue remains. The distillate is then extracted three times with small quantities (50 c.c.) of ether. The ethereal solution is dehydrated over anhydrous sodium sulphate, filtered, and the ether removed on the water-bath. The *p*-cresol is then distilled over the flame with a condenser tube, and collected at  $195\text{--}200^{\circ}$ . The distillate, which has a yellow colour, solidifies on cooling. Yield 10—15 grams.



*Properties*.—Colourless crystals; m.p.  $36^{\circ}$ ; b.p.  $202^{\circ}$ .

*Reactions*.—Make a solution of *p*-cresol by shaking up a few drops with 5 c.c. of water.\* To one portion add a few drops of bromine water. A white precipitate of tetrabromocresol is formed. To another portion add a drop of ferric chloride. A blue coloration is produced. See *Appendix*, p. 419.

## PREPARATION 79.



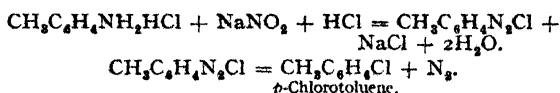
Sandmeyer, *Ber.*, 1884, **17**, 2651; Wynne, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1892, **61**, 1072; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. III. p. 33.

- 50 grams *p*-toluidine
- 120 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (in 80 c.c. water)
- 40 grams sodium nitrite (coarsely powdered)
- 30 „ copper carbonate to be dissolved in 300 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid.

Dissolve the *p*-toluidine in the hydrochloric acid and then cool quickly in a beaker, and stir so as to obtain small crystals. Place the beaker in ice and salt and, whilst it is cooling, prepare a solution of cuprous chloride. Dissolve the copper carbonate in the hydrochloric acid, and boil with excess of copper turnings until a nearly colourless solution is obtained. The solution is decanted into a large round flask (2 litres), which is loosely corked, and placed in ice.<sup>1</sup> Whilst this solution is cooling to 0° the diazotoluene chloride is prepared by adding the powdered sodium nitrite gradually to the *p*-toluidine hydrochloride and stirring. The temperature should not rise above 10°. When three-quarters of the nitrite has been added, test occasionally with potassium iodide-starch paper until a drop gives an immediate deep blue or dark brown coloration. Add this solution gradually in portions of about 20 c.c. at a time to the cold solution of the cuprous chloride, and shake up well after each addition. A thick crystalline mass of orange-coloured needles, consisting probably of the diazo-copper salt, separates, and, on standing, decomposes slowly, forming a dark-coloured

<sup>1</sup> If a syphon of sulphur dioxide is available, the cuprous chloride may be prepared by passing the gas into a solution of 125 grams CuSO<sub>4</sub> (= 32 grams Cu) and 60 grams of common salt dissolved in 400 c.c. of water and heated to 60–70°. When no more CuCl is precipitated, the product is filtered and washed with water. To obtain the dry cuprous chloride (not necessary in the above preparation), the filtered chloride is washed free from sulphurous acid with glacial acetic acid and the acetic acid removed on the water-bath. Cuprous chloride may also be obtained by adding to the above quantities of a hot solution of copper sulphate and salt, 26 grams of sodium bisulphite and 17 grams of caustic soda in 200 c.c. of water.

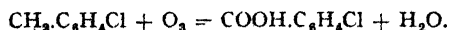
liquid. After standing a short time, the liquid is distilled in steam. The distillate is shaken up with a little caustic soda to remove cresol, and the chlorotoluene, which sinks to the bottom, is separated. The liquid is further shaken out with a little chloroform, which is then added to the chlorotoluene, and the whole dehydrated with calcium chloride. The liquid is decanted, the chloroform distilled off and the residue collected at 155—165°. Yield, about 45 grams.



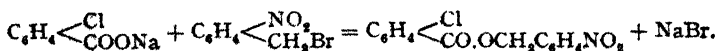
*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p. 162°; m.p. 7.4°.

*Reactions.*—**p-Chlorobenzoic Acid.**—Boil 10 grams p-chlorotoluene with 20 grams permanganate dissolved in 500 c.c. of water in a brine or calcium chloride bath, with upright condenser, for a day. The bath should keep the contents of the flask boiling briskly whilst the permanganate is gradually added. The oily drops of chlorotoluene will gradually cease to drip from the condenser and the permanganate will be nearly decolourised.

The precipitated manganese dioxide is now dissolved as sulphate by passing in sulphur dioxide gas until the last trace of brown precipitate has disappeared. The colourless chlorobenzoic acid comes down in the acid solution on cooling, and is filtered, washed with water, and recrystallised from spirit; m.p. 236°. The yield is theoretical.

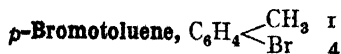


*Reaction.*—To 1 gram of p-chlorobenzoic acid in 5 c.c. of water add gradually anhydrous sodium carbonate and heat on the water-bath until a clear solution of the acid is obtained (about 0.5 gram of anhydrous  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ ). Add 1 gram of p-nitrobenzyl bromide in 10 c.c. of alcohol and boil with reflux for  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour. Filter the crystals, wash with dilute alcohol and crystallise from boiling alcohol. The ester crystallises in needles; m.p. 132°.



See *Appendix*, p. 419.

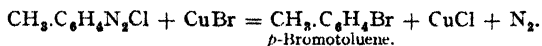
**PREPARATION 80.**



Sandmeyer, *Ber.*, 1884, **17**, 2651; Gattermann, *Ber.*, 1890, **23**, 1218.

- 50 grams *p*-toluidine
- 100 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (in 60 c.c. water)
- 35 grams sodium nitrite (in powder)
- 90 „ crystallised copper sulphate (in 300 c.c. water)
- 45 „ potassium bromide (in 100 c.c. water)
- 150 c.c. hydrobromic acid (sp. gr. 1.49, see p. 362).

The *p*-toluidine is diazotised as described in the previous experiment (Prep. 79) by forming the hydrochloride, cooling and gradually adding the sodium nitrite. The solution of the diazonium chloride is then poured into cuprous bromide dissolved in hydrobromic acid. The cuprous bromide is prepared by adding the potassium bromide solution to the copper sulphate solution and passing in sulphur dioxide until no more precipitate forms. The white cuprous bromide (about 35 grams) is filtered, washed, and well pressed on the funnel and introduced into a round flask (1½ litre). It is dissolved in 150 c.c. hydrobromic acid and well cooled in ice. The diazonium chloride is now added slowly with constant shaking. A thick pasty mass separates and nitrogen is evolved. When the evolution of gas has slackened the flask is heated on the water-bath until effervescence ceases, and the bromotoluene is then distilled in steam. The heavy yellow liquid is extracted with chloroform, shaken with caustic soda solution to remove traces of cresol, dehydrated over calcium chloride, and distilled. The distillate is collected at 180—190°. On cooling, it solidifies to a pale yellow mass, m.p. 28°; b.p. 185°. Yield, 35 grams.



**Gattermann's Method.**—According to this method the diazonium bromide is first prepared and then decomposed by finely divided metallic copper. The 50 grams *p*-toluidine are dissolved in 200 c.c. hydrobromic acid previously diluted with 100 c.c. water and

diazotised in the usual way. To this solution the copper powder is gradually added. It is prepared by dissolving 100 grams crystallised copper sulphate in 300 c.c. water and dusting in through a fine muslin bag 25 grams zinc dust with constant stirring. It is left until the blue colour of the copper salt has nearly disappeared. The precipitate powder is washed by decantation two or three times with cold water and then with very dilute hydrochloric acid to remove metallic zinc, and finally filtered and washed at the pump. The pasty mass is not allowed to dry, but is added at once in small quantities to the diazonium solution with constant stirring. After the evolution of nitrogen has ceased, the bromotoluene is distilled in steam and purified as described above.

See *Appendix*, p. 419.

#### PREPARATION 81.

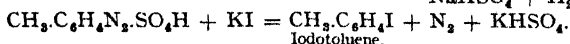
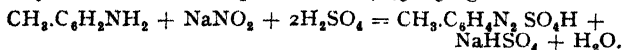
##### *p*-Iodotoluene.

Griess, *Annalen*, 1866, **137**, 76.

- 25 grams *p*-toluidine
- 50 „ (27 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid (in 250 c.c. water)
- 20 „ sodium nitrite (in 40 c.c. water)
- 60 „ potassium iodide (in 100 c.c. water).

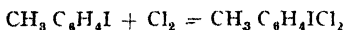
Mix the dilute sulphuric acid and *p*-toluidine in a large beaker ( $\frac{3}{4}$  litre) and cool to  $0^{\circ}$  in a freezing mixture. Stir whilst cooling, to produce small crystals of the sulphate. Add the solution of sodium nitrite slowly, and if the temperature rises above  $10^{\circ}$ , add a few lumps of ice. When three-quarters of the nitrite solution has been added, test occasionally with potassium iodide-starch paper until a blue or brown stain is produced. Now add the solution of potassium iodide gradually, and, after well stirring, leave the mixture at the ordinary temperature for an hour, and then warm cautiously on the water-bath until effervescence ceases. The liquid is dark coloured, and a black oil settles to the bottom of the vessel, which when cold solidifies. The oil consists of iodotoluene, and the dark colour of the solution is due to free iodine, which may be removed by the addition of a gram or two of sodium bisulphite. The mixture is now distilled in steam, using a beaker as receiver.

Care must be taken to prevent the condenser tube becoming blocked by the iodotoluene, which is solid at the ordinary temperature. This is effected by running the water very slowly through the condenser so that the upper part remains warm. The iodotoluene solidifies in the receiver. It has a yellow tint, which may be removed by recrystallisation from spirit. Yield, 45–50 grams.

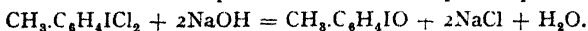


*Properties.*—Colourless plates; m.p. 35°; b.p. 211–212°.

1. **Tolyliodochloride.**—Dissolve 10 grams iodotoluene in five times its weight of chloroform, cool in ice, and pass in dry chlorine until saturated. If a chlorine cylinder is not available, the chlorine is conveniently made by dropping concentrated hydrochloric acid from a tap-funnel on to powdered potassium dichromate or permanganate in a round flask, heated on the water-bath. The chlorine is dried through concentrated sulphuric acid. When chlorine is no longer absorbed, the yellow needle-shaped crystals of the iodochloride are filtered, washed with a little chloroform, and dried on a porous plate.

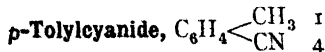


2. **Iodosotoluene.**—Dissolve 2.5 grams caustic soda in 20 c.c. water, and grind with 5 grams of iodochloride in a mortar. Leave overnight and then filter and wash with water. The colourless crystals of the iodoso-compound are dried on a porous plate.



See *Appendix*, p. 420.

#### PREPARATION 82.



Sandmeyer, *Ber.*, 1884, **17**, 2653.

20 grams *p*-toluidine

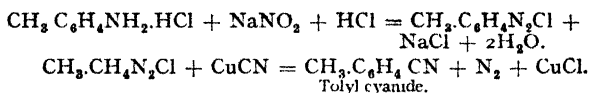
45 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (in 150 c.c. water)

16 grams sodium nitrite (in 40 c.c. water)

50 „ copper sulphate (in 200 c.c. water)

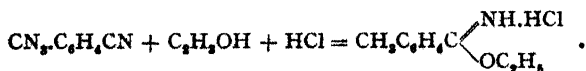
55 „ potassium cyanide, or 41 grams sodium cyanide (in 100 c.c. water).

The copper sulphate is dissolved in 200 c.c. water on the water-bath in a round flask (2 litres). Pure potassium cyanide is gradually added to the warm solution.\* The cuprous cyanide dissolves in excess of the potassium cyanide, and cyanogen gas is liberated,  $2\text{CuSO}_4 + 4\text{KCN} = 2\text{CuCN} + 2\text{K}_2\text{SO}_4 + (\text{CN})_2$ . The solution is left, whilst the *p*-toluidine is diazotised. The base is dissolved in the dilute hydrochloric acid, cooled in ice, and well stirred. The mixture is kept cold whilst the sodium nitrite solution is gradually added, until it gives an immediate coloration with potassium iodide-starch paper. The diazo-solution is then added in portions of about 10 c.c. at a time to the warm cuprous cyanide solution, with frequent shaking. A rapid effervescence occurs, nitrogen and some hydrocyanic acid being evolved. When, in the course of about fifteen minutes, the diazo-solution has been added, it is left on the water-bath until effervescence ceases ( $\frac{1}{4}$  hour). The liquid turns a dark colour, and a black tarry deposit is formed. The product is distilled in steam. This should be carried out in the fume cupboard, as not only is hydrocyanic acid liberated, but a small quantity of isocyanide, which is formed in the reaction, and produces an intolerable smell. The distillation is continued until no more yellow oil passes over. The tolyl cyanide solidifies in the receiver on cooling as a yellow crystalline mass, which is filtered, dried on a porous plate, and may be purified by distillation; but for the preparation of toluic acid this is unnecessary. Yield, about 15 grams.

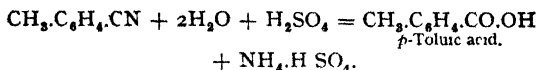


*Properties.*—Colourless crystals; m.p.  $29^\circ$ ; b.p.  $218^\circ$ .

*Reactions.*—I. **Tolylisiminoether.**—Dissolve 2 grams of tolyl cyanide in 0.5 c.c. of alcohol and add a few drops of dry ether and saturate with dry hydrogen chloride. The vessel is stoppered with a calcium chloride tube and left in the cold for twenty-four hours, when the hydrochloride of the iminoether will have crystallised.

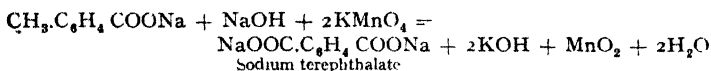


**2. *p*-Toluic Acid.**—Boil up 10 grams tolylcyanide with a mixture of 30 c.c. conc. sulphuric acid and 20 c.c. water, in a round flask with upright condenser until colourless crystals of toluic acid appear in the condenser tube (about half an hour). On cooling, the acid crystallises out, and is separated by filtration, washed with water and recrystallised from hot water; m.p. 179°.



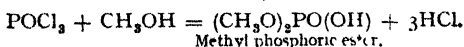
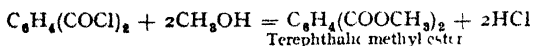
The yield is nearly theoretical.

**Terephthalic Acid.**—Dissolve 5 grams *p*-toluic acid in dilute caustic soda solution and boil with reflux condenser, adding 12 grams of permanganate in 250 c.c. water gradually from a tap-funnel inserted through the top of the condenser. When the red colour of the permanganate persists after continued boiling the solution is treated with sulphur dioxide (see p. 188), which dissolves the manganese dioxide and precipitates the terephthalic acid as a white amorphous powder. The latter is filtered, washed, and dried. It sublimes without melting at 300° and is insoluble in water and alcohol. The yield is nearly theoretical.



**Properties.**—It sublimes at about 300° without melting and without forming an anhydride (see phthalic acid, p. 270). It is almost insoluble in water, alcohol and ether.

**Reaction.**—**Terephthalic Ester** is prepared by adding to 1 gram of the acid 2.6 grams of  $\text{PCl}_5$  and warming until completely liquefied. The product is then boiled for an hour with 15 c.c. of methyl alcohol with reflux condenser and poured into water. The methyl ester crystallises; m.p. 140°.



The methyl phosphoric ester is soluble in water.



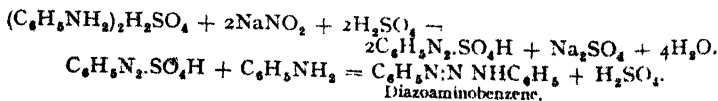
## PREPARATION 83.

**Diazoaminobenzene,  $C_6H_5N:N.NH.C_6H_5$ .**

Griess, *Annalen*, 1866, **137**, 58; Staedel, Bauer, *Ber.*, 1886, **19**, 1952.

20	grams aniline
6	„ conc. sulphuric acid
600	„ water
7.4	„ sodium nitrite.

The acid is poured into the water contained in a large beaker (1 litre) and the aniline then added. About half the aniline dissolves as sulphate. The liquid is warmed in the water-bath to  $27^\circ$ , and the sodium nitrite, dissolved in a small quantity of water, is slowly added and the whole well stirred. The temperature is maintained at  $27-30^\circ$  for a quarter of an hour. As soon as the sodium nitrite is added, the liquid turns yellow and rapidly becomes turbid from the formation of diazoaminobenzene, which separates out in yellowish-brown crystalline crusts. The solution is now allowed to stand at the ordinary temperature for half an hour, when nearly the whole of the diazoaminobenzene crystallises out. It is filtered, washed with cold water, pressed well on the filter, and dried on a porous plate or a pad of filter paper. It forms a brown sandy powder, and may be purified by recrystallisation from benzene or alcohol. In crystallising, it is necessary to bring the substance into solution as quickly as possible. Boiling spirit (about three times the weight of substance) should be added and the liquid heated for a moment until a clear solution is obtained, and then allowed to cool. On prolonged boiling it decomposes. For the preparation of aminoazobenzene the dry powder is sufficiently pure. Yield, nearly theoretical.



N.B.—The sulphuric acid, set free in the second phase of the reaction, acts upon the sodium nitrite, so that one molecule only is required.

*Properties.*—Golden-yellow plates (from alcohol), m.p.  $98^\circ$ ; insoluble in water; it explodes when heated above its melting-point.

**Reaction.**—Dissolve a little of the substance in alcohol and add a drop or two of an alcoholic solution of silver nitrate. A red crystalline precipitate of  $C_6H_5N:N.NAg.C_6H_5$  is deposited. See *Appendix*, p. 420.

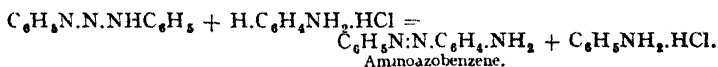
#### PREPARATION 84.

##### **Aminoazobenzene** (Aniline yellow), $C_6H_5N:NC_6H_4NH_2$ .

Mène, *Jahresb.*, 1861, 496; Kekulé, *Zeitsch. f. Ch.*, 1886, 2, 689; Staedel, Bauer, *Ber.*, 1886, 19, 1953.

10 grams diazoaminobenzene  
 25 „ aniline  
 5 „ aniline hydrochloride.

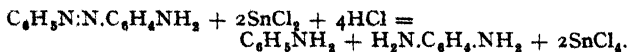
The finely powdered diazoaminobenzene, aniline hydrochloride (see p. 176), and aniline are mixed together and heated to  $40^\circ$  for an hour. The mixture forms a clear, deep red solution. After standing for twenty-four hours at the ordinary temperature, the diazoaminobenzene is converted into aminoazobenzene. A slight excess of moderately strong hydrochloric acid is added, care being taken that no great evolution of heat occurs. On cooling, the aminoazobenzene separates out together with aniline hydrochloride. It is filtered and washed with cold, very dilute hydrochloric acid, when small violet crystals of aminoazobenzene hydrochloride remain on the filter. In order to obtain the free base, the hydrochloride is warmed with dilute ammonia. The base, which has a brown colour, is filtered and dissolved in hot spirit, with the addition of a few drops of concentrated ammonia. Yield, about 8 grams.



**Properties.**—Orange prisms; m.p.  $127^\circ$ .

**Reaction.**—Make a solution of 4 grams stannous chloride in 10 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid, add 2 grams aminoazobenzene, and boil for a few minutes. On cooling crystals of the hydrochlorides of aniline and *p*-phenylenediamine separate out. The liquid is filtered and washed with a little conc. hydrochloric acid to remove the tin salts. If the precipitate is dissolved in water and

made alkaline with caustic soda, a mixture of liquid aniline and solid *p*-phenylenediamine is precipitated, from which the former may be removed by filtering, washing, and draining on a porous plate.



*p*-Phenylenediamine, when warmed with dilute sulphuric acid and potassium dichromate or lead peroxide, gives the odour of quinone (p. 226). After warming and cooling, extract with ether. The ethereal solution has a yellow colour. Decant the ether extract on to a watch-glass and leave it to evaporate in the air. A deposit of microscopic yellow crystals remains. See *Appendix*, p. 421.

#### PREPARATION 85.

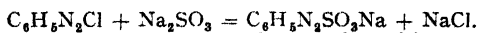
##### Phenylhydrazine, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.NH}_2$

E. Fischer, *Annalen*, 1878, **190**, 167; Meyer, Lecco, *Ber.*, 1883, **16**, 2976; Meyer and Jacobson, *Lehrbuch*, **2**, 305.

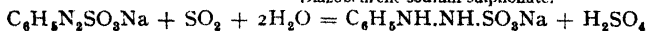
- 70 grams aniline
- 190 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (diluted with 250 c.c. of water)
- 53 grams sodium nitrite (in 100 c.c. of water)
- 400 „ sodium sulphite crystals
- 60 „ sodium carbonate (anhydrous).

The aniline hydrochloride is diazotised in the usual way (see p. 185) and the diazo-solution gradually added to a well-cooled mixture consisting of 400 grams sodium sulphite crystals, 60 grams of sodium carbonate (anhydrous) and 250 c.c. of water, which is mechanically stirred. A deep orange, crystalline precipitate is formed. After the addition of the diazo-solution the mixture is stirred for some time at the ordinary temperature, until a sample heated in a test-tube no longer appears turbid. The mixture is then warmed to 30° and reduced by passing in a current of sulphur dioxide. When thoroughly saturated (indicated by the bubbles being no longer absorbed and by the smell of the gas) it is warmed to about 70° and filtered. The filtrate is stirred and mixed with 200 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid, when the crystalline phenylhydrazine

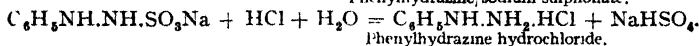
hydrochloride gradually separates. After leaving overnight it is filtered, pressed well, and the solid suspended in a little water and made alkaline with caustic soda solution, warming if necessary. The free base, which is liberated as a reddish oil, is extracted twice with benzene, the benzene solution dehydrated over potassium carbonate or caustic soda, and the benzene distilled on the water-bath. The residue is then distilled *in vacuo*, the first portions boiling below 100° being rejected. Phenylhydrazine distils at about 140° at 60 mm. The yield is 60—65 grams.<sup>1</sup>



Diazobenzene sodium sulphonate.



Phenylhydrazine, sodium sulphonate.



Phenylhydrazine hydrochloride.

*Properties.*—Nearly colourless oil freshly distilled; b.p. 241—242°; m.p. 17·5°; sp. gr. 1·097 at 23°.

*Reactions.*—1. Add a few drops of phenylhydrazine to 2 c.c. of water, then a drop or two of copper sulphate solution and excess of caustic soda. Cuprous oxide is precipitated with effervescence and benzene separates,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.NH}_2 + 2\text{CuO} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_6 + \text{N}_2 + \text{Cu}_2\text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The same reaction takes place if the phenylhydrazine is dissolved in dilute acetic acid and copper sulphate solution added and warmed.

2. Add 2 grams of phenylhydrazine to 4 c.c. water in a boiling tube, warm until dissolved, and then add about 3 c.c. of a warm saturated solution of cupric hydrate dissolved in conc. ammonia. Nitrogen is evolved and cuprous hydroxide dissolves. Add a 10 per cent. caustic potash solution until there is a slight permanent precipitate of cuprous hydroxide and heat the liquid in the water-bath. A copper mirror is deposited on the surface of the glass (Chattaway).

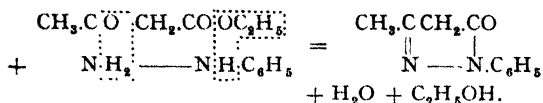
3. Add to a few drops of phenylhydrazine an equal quantity of glacial acetic acid, dilute with a little water, filter, if necessary, and add a drop of benzaldehyde. In a short time the phenylhydrazone of benzaldehyde will separate and may be recrystallised

<sup>1</sup> The product when dissolved in glacial acetic acid and diluted with water often gives a turbid solution, due to the presence of a little diphenyl.

from spirit, m.p.  $156^{\circ}$ . If the hydrazone is dissolved in conc. sulphuric acid and ferric chloride solution be added, a deep blue coloration will be produced (Bülow's reaction).

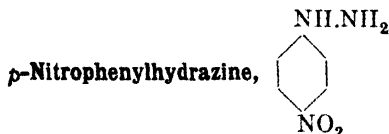
See also the Reactions on pp. 234 and 320, and *Appendix*, p. 422.

4. **Phenylmethylpyrazolone**.—Mix together 10 grams phenylhydrazine and 12.5 grams acetoacetic ester in a flask (200 c.c.). After standing for some hours, the separated water is removed and the mixture heated on the water-bath for two hours. The product on cooling is rubbed with a little ether to remove colouring matter, filtered and washed with ether (Knorr). It may be recrystallised from dilute alcohol or hot water; m.p.  $127^{\circ}$ . Yield 12 grams.



This compound is very reactive, combining with nitrous acid to form a nitroso compound, with diazonium salts and with aldehydes.

#### PREPARATION 86.



Bamberger, *Ber.*, 1896, **29**, 1834; Davies, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1922, **121**, 715.

10 grams *p*-nitraniline

21 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (and 20 c.c. of water)

6 grams sodium nitrite (in 10 c.c. of water)

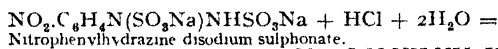
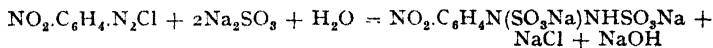
41 „ sodium sulphite,  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_3 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (in 100 c.c. of water <sup>1</sup>).

4 „ caustic soda.

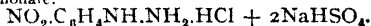
The *p*-nitraniline is dissolved in the hydrochloric acid and cooled quickly to  $0^{\circ}$  in a freezing mixture so as to obtain the hydrochloride

<sup>1</sup> In place of sodium sulphite, ammonium sulphite may be used, and is prepared by passing  $\text{SO}_2$  into a mixture of 1 part of conc. ammonia (sp. gr. 0.880) and 2 parts of powdered ice in a freezing mixture until it smells strongly of  $\text{SO}_2$ , and it is then neutralised with ammonia. Forty c.c. of this solution are used in place of the sodium sulphite and 8 c.c. conc. ammonia added.

of the base in a fine state of division. The diazotisation is effected in the usual way by the gradual addition of the nitrite solution cooled to  $0^{\circ}$ , the mixture being vigorously stirred. The stirring is continued for a few minutes after the addition of the nitrite, the solution filtered quickly and then added from a tap-funnel to the ice-cold sodium sulphite solution containing the 4 grams of caustic soda, whilst the mixture is stirred. The addition requires five minutes. The liquid is left for a further five minutes, then acidified with 70 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid and warmed on the water-bath at  $55^{\circ}$  for three minutes. It is left overnight, when a mass of yellow needles separate. They are filtered and drained and the crystals heated on the water-bath with 20 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid for seven minutes, when the colour changes to orange, the crystals remaining undissolved. After cooling for a time the sodium salts and the nitrophenylhydrazine hydrochloride are dissolved in water, and 7 to 8 grams of a cold saturated solution of sodium acetate added when the base separates. The yield is about 7 grams. It may be recrystallised from alcohol and melts at  $158-159^{\circ}$ .

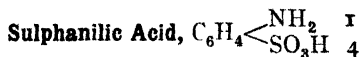


Nitrophenylhydrazine disodium sulphonate.



*Properties.*—The base crystallises in orange-red leaflets.

#### PREPARATION 87.



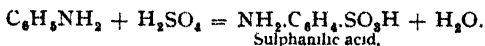
Gerhardt, *Annalen*, 1846, **60**, 312; Buckton, Hofmann, *Annalen*, 1856, **100**, 163.

25 grams aniline

80 „ conc. sulphuric acid.

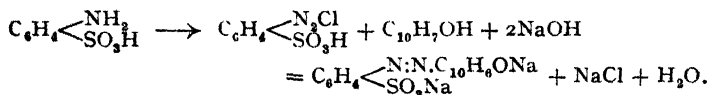
The aniline and sulphuric acid are cautiously mixed in a round flask (250 c.c.) and heated to  $180-190^{\circ}$  in an oil or metal bath for four to five hours until a sample dissolved in water remains clear on the addition of caustic soda in excess and no aniline separates. The product is poured into cold water, which precipitates the

sulphanilic acid as a grey crystalline mass. It is filtered, washed with a little cold water, recrystallised from hot water with the addition of a little animal charcoal, and dried in the air. Yield, 25—30 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless rhombic plates, containing 2 mols. of water of crystallisation, which they lose slowly in the air, and the crystals fall to powder. See *Appendix*, p. 423.

*Reaction.*—Add to a small quantity (about 0.2 gram) of the sulphanilic acid 2—3 c.c. of dilute hydrochloric acid and then a few small crystals of sodium nitrite. Pour this solution into a solution of about 0.2 gram of  $\beta$ -naphthol dissolved in dilute caustic soda solution. A brilliant azo-colour is precipitated.



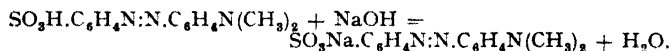
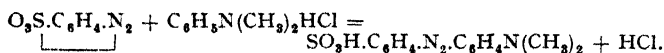
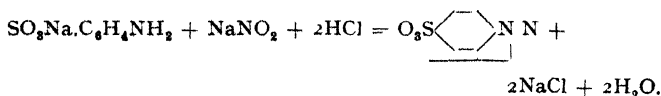
#### PREPARATION 88.

**Methyl Orange** (Helianthin),  $\text{SO}_3\text{Na.C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N:N.C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ .

- 10 grams sulphanilic acid  
 2.5 „ anhydrous sodium carbonate (in 100 c.c. water)  
 3.5 „ sodium nitrite (in 20 c.c. water)  
 6 „ conc. hydrochloric acid (in 10 c.c. water)  
 6 „ dimethylaniline (in 6 c.c. conc. HCl and 20 c.c. water).

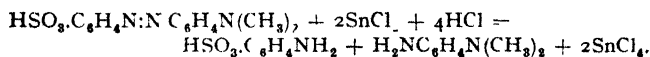
The sulphanilic acid is dissolved in the sodium carbonate ( $\frac{1}{2}$  mol.) solution and the sodium nitrite (1 mol.) solution added. The mixture is cooled in ice, and the solution of hydrochloric acid (1 mol.) gradually added. The solution of dimethylaniline (1 mol.) is now poured in, and the liquid made alkaline with caustic soda. The separation of methyl orange at once begins, and is assisted by the addition of a little common salt (20 grams). The pre-

precipitate is filtered at the pump, and crystallised from hot water. Yield, nearly theoretical.



*Properties.*—Methyl orange is the sodium salt of the sulphonic acid, and dissolves in water with a yellow colour. The free acid is red, and its action as an indicator depends upon this change on the addition of mineral acid.

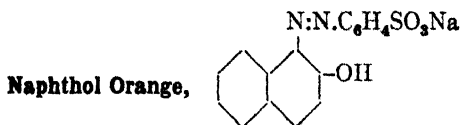
*Reaction.*—Methyl orange is decomposed, like the majority of azo-compounds, by stannous chloride in hydrochloric acid into two molecules, produced by the addition of hydrogen to the double-linked nitrogen atoms (see p. 203).



Make a solution of 4 grams stannous chloride in 10 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid, add 1 gram of methyl orange dissolved in a few drops of hot water, and boil for a few minutes until the red colour disappears. On cooling a crystalline precipitate consisting of sulphanilic acid and dimethyl *p*-phenylenediamine is deposited. In order to separate the base, dilute with water, add caustic soda solution until the precipitate of stannous hydrate redissolves, shake out the cold solution with ether, and dehydrate over potassium carbonate. On distilling off the ether, the dimethyl *p*-phenylenediamine remains as a crystalline solid; m. p. 41°. On warming with dilute sulphuric acid and lead peroxide the odour of quinone is readily perceived (see p. 226). It also gives the "methylene blue" reaction, like nitrosodimethylaniline (see p. 178). See *Appendix*, p. 424.



## PREPARATION 89.



(Sodium salt of sulphanilic-azo- $\beta$ -naphthol.)

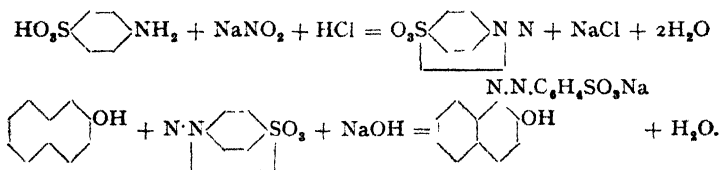
*Dingl. polyt. Journ.*, **264**, 240.

3.5 grams sulphanilic acid  
 4 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (in 50 c.c. of water)  
 25 grams ice  
 1.5 „ sodium nitrite in powder.

Mix together the sulphanilic acid, the hydrochloric acid and the ice, and when the temperature reaches  $0^\circ$  add the sodium nitrite gradually. In the meantime prepare a solution containing

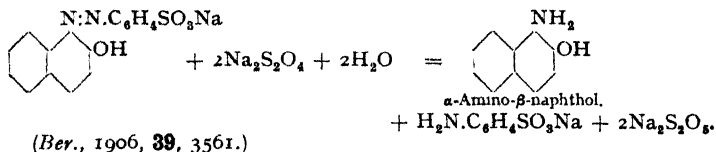
3 grams  $\beta$ -naphthol dissolved in  
 1.2 „ caustic soda (in 20 c.c. of water).

Cool the latter to  $0^\circ$  and whilst stirring add the diazo-solution. The mixture whilst cooled in ice is stirred for a further two hours. The dark red, crystalline precipitate is filtered, pressed on a porous plate and dried. The yield is 6 to 7 grams.



**$\alpha$ -Amino- $\beta$ -naphthol.**—Five grams of naphthol orange are dissolved in 15 c.c. of water and heated nearly to boiling on the water-bath. About 7 grams of sodium hydrosulphite are added in small portions until after boiling for a time the solution becomes almost colourless. On cooling, the aminonaphthol is filtered, washed with a little water and dried. It darkens at  $170^\circ$  and melts at about  $185^\circ$  with decomposition. The yield is 3.5 grams.

It may be recrystallised as the hydrochloride by dissolving in hydrochloric acid and adding sodium acetate.



#### PREPARATION 90.

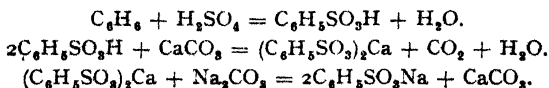
##### Sodium Benzenesulphonate, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SO}_3\text{Na}$ .

Mitscherlich, *Pogg. Ann.*, 1834, **31**, 283 and 364; Michael, Adair, *Ber.*, 1877, **10**, 585.

60 c.c. benzene

60 „ conc. sulphuric acid.

The benzene and sulphuric acid are heated together on a sand-bath in a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) with upright condenser. The mixture is kept at a gentle boil with frequent shaking (an apparatus like that shown in Fig. 76, p. 162, with mechanical stirrer is preferable) until the top layer of benzene has been nearly absorbed by the sulphuric acid (six to eight hours). On cooling, the dark-coloured liquid is poured into cold water (1 litre) contained in a large basin, boiled up and neutralised with powdered chalk or thick milk of lime. The mass is filtered hot through a porcelain funnel or cloth from the precipitate of calcium sulphate, washed with hot water and somewhat concentrated. The solution, which contains the calcium salt of benzene sulphonic acid, is treated with just sufficient sodium carbonate solution to precipitate the calcium as carbonate and convert the sulphonic acid into the sodium salt. This is ascertained by filtering small samples and testing the filtrate with sodium carbonate. The liquid is again filtered through cloth or through a porcelain funnel and concentrated first over a ring burner, and finally on the water-bath, until a sample crystallises on cooling. The sodium salt is drained at the pump and dried on porous plate. Yield, about 80 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless foliated crystals, which melt above  $300^{\circ}$  with slight decomposition; very soluble in water. See *Appendix*, p. 426.

#### PREPARATION 91.

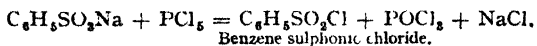
##### **Benzenesulphonic Chloride, $C_6H_5SO_2Cl$ .**

Gerhardt, Chiozza, *Annalen*, 1853, **87**, 299; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. I., p. 21.

#### METHOD I.

18 grams sodium benzene sulphonate  
25 „ phosphorus pentachloride.

The sodium benzenesulphonate is carefully dried on the water-bath, powdered, and mixed with the phosphorus pentachloride in a flask.\* A vigorous reaction sets in. When it has abated, the flask is heated on the water-bath for one hour,\* and the mass occasionally stirred with a glass rod. The product is poured into a flask containing 200 grams of crushed ice and allowed to stand an hour. The sulphonic chloride, which separates as an oil, is then extracted with ether, dehydrated over calcium chloride, decanted, and the ether removed on the water-bath. Yield, 10 grams of a light brown oil.



#### METHOD II.

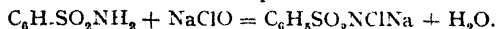
20 grams benzene  
100 „ chlorosulphonic acid (commercial).

The acid is poured into a distilling flask (250 c.c.), into the neck of which is fitted a tap-funnel, and thermometer, and the side-tube is furnished with a calcium chloride tube. The flask is immersed in cold water and the benzene dropped in with occasional shaking at such a rate that the temperature is maintained at  $15-20^{\circ}$ . After an hour the contents are poured on to crushed ice. The benzene sulphonic chloride forms a heavy, oily layer at the bottom of the vessel. It is extracted with ether, dehydrated over calcium chloride and the ether distilled. The residue is then

distilled *in vacuo* and boils at  $130-135^{\circ}$  at 18 mm. Yield, 28—30 grams.

**Properties.**—Colourless oil when pure; b.p.  $246-247^{\circ}$  with decomposition; m.p.  $14^{\circ}$ ; distils undecomposed *in vacuo*.

**Reactions.**—1. Grind up in a mortar 1 c.c. of sulphonic chloride with 5 grams powdered ammonium carbonate, and leave on the water-bath until the smell of the sulphonic chloride has gone. Add water, filter, and wash, and crystallise the residue of benzene sulphonamide from spirit,  $C_6H_5SO_2Cl + 2NH_4HCO_3 = C_6H_5SO_2NH_2 + 2H_2O + 2CO_2 + NH_4Cl$ . Warm very gently a small quantity of the sulphonamide with a little sodium hypochlorite solution until dissolved. On cooling foliated crystals of the sodium benzene chloramide separate.



The substance crystallises from water. It is decomposed on boiling with acid or alkali.

2. Add 1 c.c. of the sulphonic chloride to 2 c.c. aniline, stir up well, add water, and acidify with a few drops of concentrated HCl (methyl violet paper). Filter, wash, and crystallise the benzenesulphonanilide from spirit,  $C_6H_5SO_2Cl + NH_2C_6H_5 = C_6H_5SO_2NHC_6H_5 + HCl$ .

3. Add 2 c.c. absolute alcohol to 1 c.c. sulphonic chloride and excess of caustic soda until alkaline; warm gently for five minutes and add more caustic soda if necessary. Cool, and extract with ether. The residual liquid consists of benzene ethyl sulphonate,  $C_6H_5SO_2Cl + HOC_2H_5 = C_6H_5SO_2OC_2H_5 + HCl$ .

4. Repeat 3, using phenol in place of alcohol. See *Appendix*, p. 427.

#### PREPARATION 92.

**Phenol** (Carbolic acid, Hydroxybenzene),  $C_6H_5.OH$ .

Kekulé, Wurtz, Dusart, *Zeitschr. f. Ch. N F.*, 1867, 3, 299—301; Degener, *J. prakt. Chim.*, 1878, (2), 17, 394.

20 grams sodium benzenesulphonate

35 „ caustic soda.

The caustic potash is dissolved in the smallest quantity of water (5 c.c.) by heating in a silver or nickel basin or crucible, and the

powdered sodium benzenesulphonate added. The temperature of the melt, which during the process is kept constantly stirred, must not exceed  $250^{\circ}$ . It is convenient to use the thermometer as stirrer, the bulb and part of the stem being encased in a glass tube closed at one end. When the requisite temperature has been reached, a small flame is sufficient to maintain it. The mass is first thick and pasty, but soon becomes semi-fluid and remains in this condition, gradually changing in colour from yellow to brown. Towards the end of the operation (one hour) it regains somewhat its original consistency. On cooling, the melt is dissolved in a little water and the alkaline reddish-brown liquid (sodium phenate and excess of alkali) acidified with concentrated hydrochloric acid in the cold. Phenol separates out as a light yellow oil, which is extracted three times with ether. The ethereal solution dehydrated over anhydrous sodium sulphate is distilled, first on the water-bath until the ether is removed, and then over the flame. The portion boiling at  $175\text{--}185^{\circ}$  is nearly pure phenol. It distils as a colourless liquid and solidifies at once on cooling. Yield, 6—7 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless needles, with a characteristic smell; m.p.  $42\text{--}43^{\circ}$ ; b.p.  $182^{\circ}$ ; easily soluble in alcohol and ether, and in about 15 parts of water at the ordinary temperature; produces blisters on the skin.

*Reactions.*—1. Make a solution of phenol in water, and to one portion add a drop of ferric chloride. A violet coloration is produced.

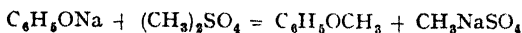
2. Add to another portion a drop of bromine water. A white crystalline precipitate of tribromophenol is formed.

3. To a third portion add an equal volume of dilute ammonia and a few drops of sodium hypochlorite and warm gently. A copper-sulphate-blue colour is produced.

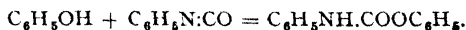
4. Add a small fragment of solid sodium nitrite to 5 c.c. concentrated sulphuric acid and warm very gently until dissolved. On adding about 0.5 gram of phenol, a brown solution is obtained, which rapidly changes to deep blue. If the blue solution is poured

into water, a cherry red coloration is produced, which changes to blue on the addition of an alkali (Liebermann's "nitroso" reaction, see p. 179).

5. Mix 1 gram of phenol with 1 c.c. of dimethyl sulphate<sup>1</sup> and add 4 c.c. of a 10 per cent. solution of caustic soda. Warm and shake. The odour of phenol is replaced by that of anisole, which can be extracted from the liquid by ether (Ullmann's reaction).



6. Mix 0.5 gram of phenol with 0.6 gram of phenyl isocyanate and heat for a few minutes on the water-bath. The mixture forms, on cooling, a crystalline mass of phenyl urethane of phenol. Recrystallised from alcohol, it forms colourless needles; m.p. 125°.



See *Appendix*, p. 428.

#### PREPARATION 93.

**Anisole** (Methyl phenate, Phenyl methyl ether),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5.\text{O}.\text{CH}_3$ .

##### METHOD 1.

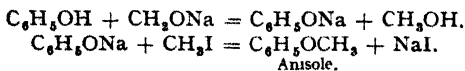
Cahours, *Annalen*, 1851, **78**, 226.

5 grams sodium  
100 c.c. methyl alcohol  
20 grams phenol  
40 „ methyl iodide.

The methyl alcohol is poured into a round flask (250 c.c.) connected with an upright condenser. The sodium, cut into small pieces, is then added, the flask being detached from the condenser for a moment and replaced. When the sodium has dissolved, the phenol and methyl iodide are added. The mixture is heated on the water-bath until the solution has no longer an alkaline reaction (two to three hours). As much as possible of the methyl alcohol

<sup>1</sup> The vapour of dimethyl sulphate is very poisonous, and care should be taken not to breathe it nor to let it come in contact with the skin.

is distilled from the water-bath and water added to the amber-coloured residue. A colourless oil separates, which is extracted with ether. The ethereal solution is dehydrated over calcium chloride and distilled, first on the water-bath until the ether has been driven off, and then over the flame. Almost the whole of the residue distils at 150—155°. Yield, nearly theoretical.



## METHOD II.

Ullmann, *Annalen*, 1903, **327**, 114; 1905, **340**, 208.

18.8 grams phenol

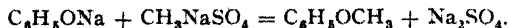
10    ,,   caustic soda (in 70 c.c. water)

24   c.c. dimethyl sulphate.

Dissolve the phenol in the caustic soda solution in a round flask (250 c.c.) and add the dimethyl sulphate about 5 c.c. at a time and shake vigorously. There is a rise of temperature as the reaction proceeds, and when it falls, at the end of a few minutes, a fresh addition of dimethyl sulphate is made as before, the temperature not being allowed to exceed about 60°. When the mixture begins to cool, it is heated on the water-bath for ten minutes and the upper oily layer of anisole separated. It is washed by shaking with a little water, dried over calcium chloride and distilled. Yield, 17 grams; b.p. 150—152°.



A further quantity of anisole may be obtained by adding the same quantity of phenol as before and 10 grams of caustic soda to the aqueous portion from the previous operation containing the methyl sodium sulphate, and boiling with reflux for five hours, when sodium sulphate is formed according to the equation



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid, possessing an agreeable smell; b.p. 154°; sp. gr. 0.991 at 15°. See *Appendix*, p. 429.

## PREPARATION 94.

**Hexahydrophenol** (Cyclohexanol),  $C_6H_{11}OH$ .Sabatier and Senderens, *Compt. rend.*, 1901, **132**, 210.

50 grams phenol.

The phenol is reduced with hydrogen in presence of finely divided metallic nickel, which acts as a catalyst. The apparatus is shown in Fig. 78.

It consists of an oblong Lothar-Meyer air-bath about 60 cms. (24 ins.) long and 15 cms. (6 ins.) wide. It is heated on each side

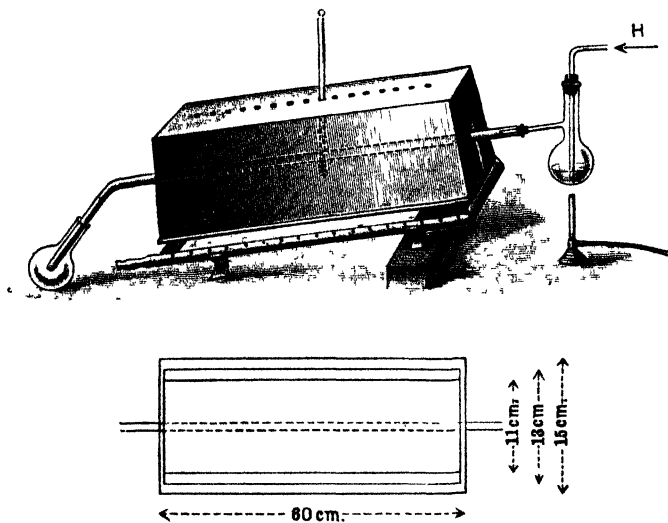


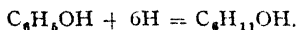
FIG. 78.

by a series of small gas jets made by perforating an iron pipe which runs below the air-bath. The hot air passes up the space between the outside metal casing and an inner rectangular metal box, and then down and into the interior of the air-bath through a number of round holes at the bottom of a central rectangular chamber, and finally escapes through a series of holes in the top of



the outer cover. The air-bath is perforated at both ends so as to admit a piece of wide glass tubing. This tubing (1.5–2 cms. diam.) is of such a length that it projects about 2–3 cms. at one end and 5–6 cms. at the other, the latter being bent and connected to a receiver. The shorter end is attached by a cork to a small distilling flask through which a current of dry hydrogen is passed from a Kipp by a delivery tube, which reaches to the bottom of the flask.

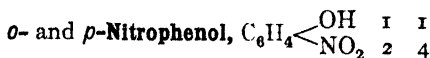
Small pieces of pumice impregnated with a paste of nickel oxide (NiO) and water are dried on the water-bath and packed into the wide tube, which is then loosely plugged at each end with asbestos. The phenol is melted and poured into the distilling flask. The air-bath is slightly tilted so that any liquid which may collect in the tube can run down into the receiver. The process is conducted as follows: the delivery tube from the Kipp is first raised above the surface of the phenol and as low current of pure,<sup>1</sup> dry hydrogen passed through the apparatus, the temperature of which is maintained at 300° for twenty minutes. The nickel oxide is thereby reduced and changes from black to pale yellow. After reduction, the temperature is lowered to 160–170° and kept at this point. The phenol in the flask is now melted and heated just below its boiling-point, whilst a fairly rapid current of hydrogen is passed through the delivery tube, which is thrust well into the liquid. The hexahydrophenol slowly distils and condenses in the receiver. Care must be taken that the phenol does not condense in the tube, but that only the vapour passes over. When sufficient liquid has collected, it is shaken with caustic solution, extracted with ether, dehydrated over potassium carbonate and distilled.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p. 170°; pleasant aromatic smell distinct from phenol; insoluble in water and solutions of caustic alkalis. See *Appendix*, p. 429.

<sup>1</sup> The hydrogen should be washed through solutions of alkaline permanganate, lead acetate and conc. sulphuric acid.

## PREPARATION 95.



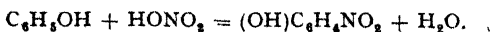
Hofmann, *Annalen*, 1857, **103**, 347; Fritsche, *Annalen*, 1859, **110**, 150; Kekulé, *Lehrbuch d. org. chem.*, 3, 40.

40 grams phenol

70 „ (50 c.c.) conc. nitric acid (in 170 c.c. water).

The phenol, melted in a basin on the water-bath, is slowly added in small quantities to the nitric acid and water contained in a large round flask (1 litre), and the contents of the flask are well shaken or stirred mechanically. The temperature should be maintained below 30° by cooling with water. On the addition of the phenol, the liquid immediately changes to a deep brown or black colour, and a heavy dark-brown oil separates out. When the phenol has been added, the mixture is allowed to stand for 12 hours. The oil has by that time collected at the bottom of the vessel, and may be freed from acid by repeatedly decanting and pouring in fresh water (three or four times). The contents of the flask consist of nearly equal quantities of para- and ortho-nitrophenol mixed with resinous products. In order to separate the two isomers, the product is distilled in a current of steam (see Fig. 68, p. 131) until the distillate is almost colourless. The ortho-compound distils in the form of a yellow oil, which may solidify in the condenser, in which event the water is temporarily run out of the condenser. The solid in the receiver is separated by filtration and dissolved in spirit at 40°, to which water is then added, drop by drop, until a turbidity is produced. Yield, 15 grams. The solid residue contains the para-compound mixed with black, resinous substances, from which it is separated by repeatedly extracting with boiling water. The united portions of the aqueous extract are boiled with animal charcoal for  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour in a large basin, and filtered through a fluted filter moistened with water. The filtrate is made alkaline with caustic soda solution, and concentrated to a small bulk (100 c.c.). If tarry matter separates, it must be filtered through a wet filter. To obtain the free para-compound, the concentrated aqueous solution of the sodium salt is cooled, and

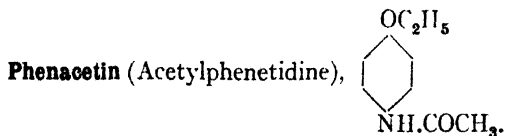
the separated sodium salt filtered. The crystals are dissolved and acidified with concentrated hydrochloric acid, and the nitrophenol, which separates, is filtered and recrystallised from hot water. Yield, 10 grams.



*Properties.*—*o*-Nitrophenol, sulphur-yellow needles, possessing a peculiar smell; m.p.  $45^\circ$ ; b.p.  $214^\circ$ ; distillable with steam; soluble in alcohol, ether, and hot water; less soluble in cold water.

*p*-Nitrophenol, colourless needles; m.p.  $114^\circ$ ; easily soluble in alcohol and hot water; slightly soluble in cold water. See *Appendix*, p. 430.

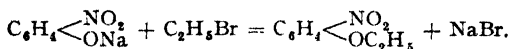
#### PREPARATION 96.



20 grams *p*-nitrophenol  
 125 c.c. absolute alcohol  
 3.3 grams sodium  
 16 „ ethyl bromide.

Into a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -litre round flask furnished with reflux condenser, the alcohol is placed and the sodium, cut into small pieces, introduced. When the latter is dissolved, the nitrophenol is added and then the ethyl bromide, and the mixture heated on the water-bath for twelve hours. It is desirable to attach a bent tube to the top of the condenser, the lower end of which is closed by an inch or two of mercury contained in a narrow glass cylinder, which, by introducing a slight pressure in the flask, prevents a certain amount of evaporation. Nevertheless some loss occurs, and an additional 5 grams of ethyl bromide are added half-way through the experiment to replace the loss. After boiling for the requisite time, the

excess of alcohol and ethyl bromide is removed by distilling from the water-bath. To the residue an excess of dilute caustic soda is added to dissolve unchanged, nitrophenol and the ethoxy-compound extracted two or three times with ether until no further substance is removed. The ether solution is shaken with a little caustic soda solution, separated, dehydrated over calcium chloride, and the ether distilled. The crude product is crystallised from a mixture of equal parts of water and spirit. Yield, 18 grams; m.p. 58—60°.



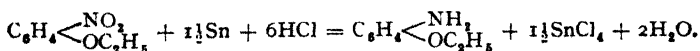
***p*-Amino-ethoxybenzene** (Phenetidine),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{<}\begin{smallmatrix}\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{NH}_2\end{smallmatrix}$ .

13 grams *p*-nitroethoxybenzene

16 „ tin

80 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid.

The nitroethoxybenzene, tin, and hydrochloric acid are heated together in a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) on the water-bath until the reaction sets in, when, if too vigorous, the flask should be removed. When the first reaction is over the flask is replaced on the water-bath and heated until all the tin is dissolved. When the reduction is complete a sample should dissolve completely in water. On cooling, the contents of the vessel solidify to a crystalline mass, which is filtered. By concentrating the filtrate a further quantity of crystals is obtained. To the products from both crystallisations, whilst still moist, caustic soda solution (30—35 grams of NaOH) is added until most of the stannic oxide passes into solution. The alkaline liquid is then extracted two or three times with ether until a specimen of the ether extract leaves no residue on evaporation. The ether solution is dehydrated with potassium carbonate, and the ether then removed by distillation. The residual dark-coloured oil is distilled *in vacuo*. It boils at 160—165° at 12 mm. Yield, 8 grams.

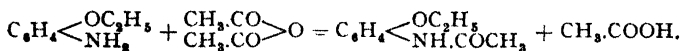
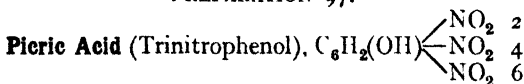


***p*-Acetylaminooethoxybenzene (Phenacetin).**

8 grams aminoethoxybenzene

8 „ acetic anhydride.

The amino-compound is mixed with 30 c.c. of water and the acetic anhydride then added and the mixture shaken vigorously. The acetyl compound crystallises at once. It is filtered and recrystallised from a mixture of equal parts of water and spirit. Yield, 8 grams; m.p. 135°.

**PREPARATION 97.**

25 grams phenol

125 „ (68 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid

100 „ (70 c.c.) conc. nitric acid, sp. gr. 1.4.

The phenol and concentrated sulphuric acid are heated together in a porcelain basin for half an hour on the water-bath, until a clear solution of phenol sulphonic acid is obtained. It is diluted with 100 c.c. of water, well cooled, poured into a flask (1 litre), and then 50 c.c. nitric acid are slowly added, in small quantities at a time, from a tap-funnel, and well shaken.\* The liquid assumes a deep red colour, a considerable rise of temperature occurs, and red fumes are evolved. When the nitric acid has been added, the flask is placed on the water-bath and heated, with the addition of the remaining 20 c.c. of nitric acid, for one to two hours.\* On cooling, picric acid separates out as a yellow, crystalline mass. It is diluted with water, filtered at the pump, and washed free from the mother-liquor with cold water. It is then purified by recrystallisation from a large quantity of hot water acidified with a few drops of sulphuric acid. Yield, about 30 grams.



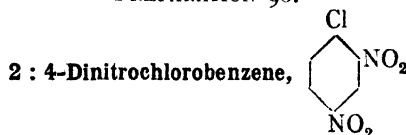
**Properties.**—Yellow, prismatic crystals; m.p.  $122\cdot5^{\circ}$ ; sublimes on gently heating; explodes on detonation; easily soluble in alcohol and ether; with difficulty in cold, more readily in hot water; the solution has a bitter taste.

**Reactions.**—1. To an aqueous solution of picric acid add a little potassium cyanide solution, and warm. A brown crystalline precipitate of isopurpuric acid separates.

2. Add picric acid and a few drops of caustic soda to a dilute solution of grape sugar and warm. The liquid turns deep brown.

3. Dissolve naphthalene in a little spirit, and add an equal quantity of a solution of picric acid in spirit. On cooling, yellow needles of naphthalene picrate separate,  $C_{10}H_8 \cdot C_6H_2OII(NO_2)_3$ . Benzene forms colourless crystals, anthracene, scarlet needles, having a similar composition. See *Appendix*, p. 430.

#### PREPARATION 98.



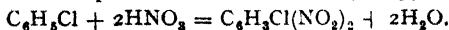
Jungfleisch, *Jahresb.*, 1868, 345.

28 grams chlorobenzene (see p. 154)

112 „ (61 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid

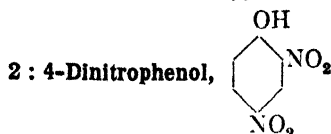
55 „ (40 c.c.) conc. nitric acid (sp. gr. 1·42).

The chlorobenzene is mixed with half the above quantity of sulphuric acid in a round flask, *warmed* on a water-bath and stirred mechanically. The nitric acid mixed with the other half of the sulphuric acid is added slowly and at such a rate that the temperature is kept below  $100^{\circ}$ . When all the acid has been added the mixture is stirred for an hour on the water-bath, heated to boiling and then heated for another hour at  $120^{\circ}$  in an oil- or on a sand-bath. The liquid is poured on to crushed ice and water and stirred. The solid nitro-compound is filtered, washed well with cold water and pressed down. It is dried on a porous plate. The yield is 38 grams; m.p.  $50-52^{\circ}$ . It may be purified by crystallisation from spirit and then melts at  $52-53^{\circ}$ .



*Properties.*—Colourless, rhombic crystals, m.p.  $53^{\circ}$ ; converted by caustic soda into dinitrophenol and by ammonia into dinitraniline. In contact with the skin it may produce eczema and should not be handled. See *Appendix*, p. 430.

PREPARATION 99.

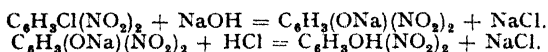


Engelhardt, Latschinow, *Zeitsch. f. Chem.*, 1870, 232.

25 grams crude dinitrochlorobenzene

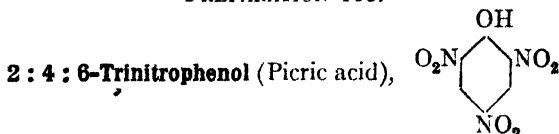
13 „ caustic soda (in 500 c.c. of water).

The mixture of dinitrochlorobenzene and caustic soda solution is boiled in a round flask, until the liquid is clear ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours). It is filtered hot and acidified with hydrochloric acid. When cold the precipitate of dinitrophenol is filtered, washed with water and dried on a porous plate. Yield, about 21 grams. It is sufficiently pure for the next preparation, but may be recrystallised from hot water or spirit and forms yellow plates; m.p.  $113-114^{\circ}$ .



*Properties.*—Pale yellow, rectangular plates; m.p.  $114^{\circ}$ . In small quantities it may be sublimed undecomposed; very soluble in ether, less soluble in hot alcohol, soluble in hot water (21 parts).

PREPARATION 100.



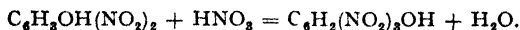
Körner, *Zeitsch. f. Chem.*, 1868, 322.

20 grams dinitrophenol

40 c.c. conc. sulphuric acid

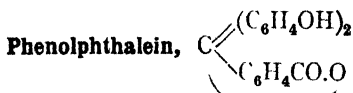
8.5 grams (5.6 c.c.) fuming nitric acid, sp. gr. 1.5.

The dinitrophenol and acid are mixed together in a beaker and 5.6 c.c. fuming nitric acid added with stirring. The reaction proceeds rapidly with evolution of heat. When cold the mixture is poured into a  $\frac{1}{2}$  litre of cold water and the yellow crystals of picric acid filtered, washed with water, and dried on a porous plate. Yield, about 30 grams; m.p.  $121-122^\circ$ . It may be recrystallised from hot water.



For properties and reactions, see p. 215.

#### PREPARATION 101.



Baeyer, *Ber.*, 1876, **9**, 1230, and *Annalen* 1880, **202**, 68.

10 grams phthalic anhydride

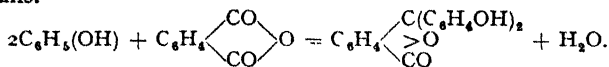
20 „ phenol

8 „ conc. sulphuric acid.

The phthalic anhydride, phenol, and concentrated sulphuric acid are heated together to  $115-120^\circ$  in the oil-bath eight to nine hours. The mass becomes semi-fluid and of a dark red colour. It is poured, whilst hot, into a basin of water (500 c.c.) and boiled until the smell of phenol has disappeared, the water being renewed as it evaporates. The undissolved yellow granular precipitate, on cooling, is separated from the liquid by filtration, and washed with water. It is then dissolved in dilute caustic soda solution, filtered from the undissolved residue, and the filtrate acidified with acetic acid and a few drops of hydrochloric acid. The phthalein separates out, after standing for some hours, as a light yellow, sandy powder, which is filtered and dried. It is purified by dissolving in absolute alcohol with the addition of animal charcoal (1 part phenolphthalein, 6 parts alcohol, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  part charcoal) and boiling the solution on the water-bath for an hour. The mass is filtered hot, washed with 2 parts of boiling alcohol, and the filtrate evaporated down to two-thirds its bulk on the water-bath. On adding 8 times the quantity of cold water to the cooled solution, the latter becomes turbid.



The liquid is well stirred, and, after standing a few seconds, filtered through cloth from the resinous oil which separates. On heating the filtrate on the water-bath to expel excess of alcohol, phenolphthalein crystallises out in the form of a white powder. Yield, 5 grams.



*Properties.*—White, granular, crystalline powder; m.p. 250—253°; very slightly soluble in water, readily soluble in hot alcohol; soluble in alkalis with a crimson colour. See *Appendix*, p. 431.

#### PREPARATION 102.

##### Fluorescein and Eosin,



Baeyer, *Annalen*, 1876, **188**, 3.

10 grams phthalic anhydride

15 „ resorcinol

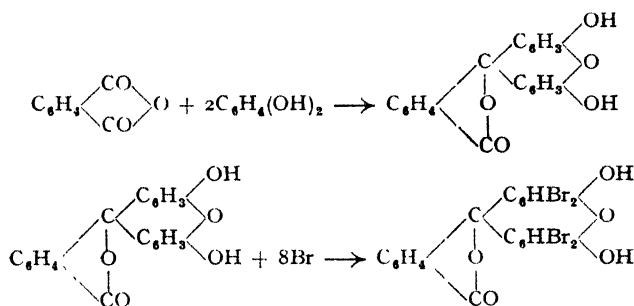
7 „ zinc chloride (fused and powdered).

The phthalic anhydride and resorcinol are ground together and heated in a deep tin dish or cylinder to 180°. To the fused mass the zinc chloride is added with continual stirring in the course of ten minutes. The temperature is now raised to 210° and the heating continued until the mass is quite hard (about two hours). On cooling, the melt is chipped out, pulverised, and boiled for ten minutes with 150 c.c. water and 10 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid. The fluorescein is filtered off, washed, and boiled with a small quantity of absolute alcohol to dissolve impurities. The residue is then dried on the water-bath. Yield, 20 grams.

**Eosin.**—Fifteen grams of the fluorescein are mixed in a flask with 80 c.c. spirit, and 11 c.c. bromine are dropped in from a burette in the course of quarter of an hour. Heat is developed, and the fluorescein gradually dissolves until, when half the bromine has been

added, a clear solution is obtained. Further addition of bromine precipitates the tetrabromo-compound (eosin). After standing two hours the precipitate is filtered, washed with spirit, and dried at  $110^{\circ}$  to expel alcohol of crystallisation. Yield, 30 grams.

In order to obtain the sodium compound, 6 grams of the product are ground in a mortar with 1 gram of sodium carbonate, placed in a beaker, and moistened with alcohol. Five c.c. of water are added and the mixture boiled until the evolution of carbon dioxide ceases. To the sodium salt 25 c.c. spirit are added and the mixture boiled and filtered. On standing for a day or two, the sodium salt crystallises in brown needles.



See *Appendix*, p. 431.

#### PREPARATION 103.

**Salicylaldehyde** (*o*-Hydroxybenzaldehyde)

***p*-Hydroxybenzaldehyde,**

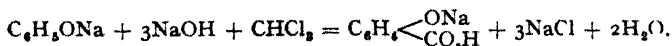


Reimer, Tiemann, *Ber.*, 1876, **9**, 824.

50 grams phenol  
 100 „ caustic soda  
 160 „ water  
 75 „ chloroform.

The phenol, caustic soda and water are mixed together in a round flask (1 litre) attached to an upright condenser and heated

to 50–60°. The chloroform is then added gradually through the top of the condenser and, after each addition, the flask is well shaken. A gentle reaction sets in, and the temperature rises. At the same time the surface of the brownish-yellow solution takes a violet tint, which rapidly fades, the liquid finally assuming a deep red colour. When all the chloroform has been added, the contents of the flask are boiled for half an hour. A yellow semi-solid mass separates from the solution. The unattacked chloroform is now distilled off on the water-bath, the liquid diluted with water and strongly acidified with dilute hydrochloric or sulphuric acid. A thick red oil separates on the surface and is subjected to distillation in steam. An oil, having a faintly yellow colour, distils with the water, and settles to the bottom of the receiver. When drops of oil cease to condense, the distillation is stopped. The distillate, which contains salicylaldehyde and phenol, is extracted with ether, and the ethereal solution well shaken with a saturated solution of sodium bisulphite (see Reaction 2, p. 73). The bisulphite compound of salicylaldehyde separates in colourless needles, which are filtered, washed free from traces of phenol with alcohol and then decomposed by heating with dilute sulphuric acid. The aldehyde which separates is taken up with ether, dehydrated over calcium chloride, the ether driven off and the aldehyde distilled. Yield, 10 grams. In the distilling flask, from which the salicylaldehyde has in the first instance been removed with steam, there remains a brownish liquid and a dark red substance, which sinks to the bottom of the vessel, and forms a brittle resin on cooling. The aqueous portion is filtered hot through a moistened filter, which retains the resin, and the filtrate, containing *p*-hydroxybenzaldehyde, is extracted when cold with ether. On distilling off the solvent, the aldehyde remains in the form of a yellow mass of stellar-shaped needles, which may be purified by crystallisation from hot water. Yield, about 2 grams.



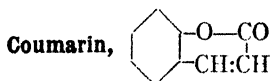
*Properties.*—*Salicylaldehyde.* Colourless fragrant oil, b.p. 196.5°; sp. gr. 1.173 at 13.5°; solidifies at 20°, forming large crystals. Volatile in steam; soluble in water; miscible in all proportions with alcohol and ether.

*Reaction*.—Add a drop of ferric chloride to the aqueous solution of the aldehyde. A deep violet coloration is produced.

*p-Hydroxybenzaldehyde*.—Colourless needles, m.p. 115–116°; scarcely soluble in cold water, readily in hot water, alcohol and ether. Non-volatile in steam. The bisulphite of sodium compound dissolves readily in water.

*Reaction*.—The same as above; but the coloration is less intense. See *Appendix*, p. 432.

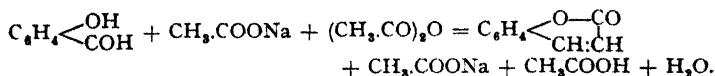
#### PREPARATION 104.



Perkin, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1868, **21**, 53; Yanagisawa and Kondô, *Abs. J.C.S.*, 1921, i, 682.

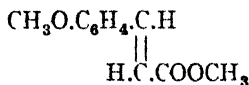
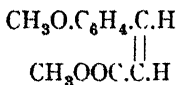
30 grams salicylaldehyde  
40 „ acetic anhydride  
50 „ sodium acetate (anhydrous)  
0.75 gram iodine.

The mixture of the above is heated in a metal or paraffin bath for two hours at 120° and then for a further four to five hours at 180–190°. The product is poured into water and extracted with ether. The ether solution is shaken with saturated sodium bisulphite solution to remove unchanged salicylaldehyde, the ether solution separated, dried over calcium chloride and the ether distilled. The residue is then either distilled under diminished pressure (at 20 mm. it distils at about 160°) or in steam. It may be recrystallised from ligroin. The yield is 18 grams if the first method of distillation is employed, and somewhat less by the second method.



See *Appendix*, p. 432.

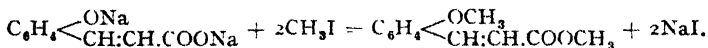
## PREPARATION 105.

*cis*- and *trans*- *o*-Methoxycinnamic Methyl Ester,I. *cis*-Methoxycinnamic Ester.

Reychler, *Bull. Soc. chim*, 1908, iv, 3, 551.

2.3 grams sodium  
34 c.c. absolute alcohol  
7.3 grams coumarin  
15 „ methyl iodide.

Dissolve the sodium in the alcohol contained in a 500 c.c. round flask fitted with a reflux condenser. When cold, add the coumarin, which readily dissolves, and then the methyl iodide, shake and cork up and leave for two days. A little sodium iodide will have crystallised. Boil on the water-bath for two hours with reflux, pour the product into a basin and evaporate most of the alcohol on the water-bath. Now add water to the residue, which is extracted twice with ether, the ether separated and dehydrated with calcium chloride. On distilling the ether the ester remains as a yellow oil. The yield is about equal to the weight of coumarin taken.

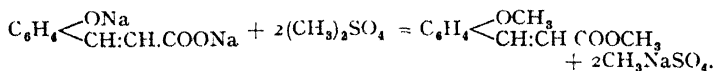


In order to determine the character of the ester it is hydrolysed as follows: 1 gram of ester is added to 0.5 gram of caustic potash dissolved in an equal weight of water, to which 6—7 c.c. of absolute alcohol are added, and the mixture heated with reflux condenser until the whole dissolves in water to a clear solution. Add water, neutralise with hydrochloric acid and evaporate the alcohol on the water-bath. On adding excess of hydrochloric acid the *cis*-methoxycinnamic acid separates, and after crystallisation from dilute alcohol melts at 185—186°.

II. *trans*-Methoxycinnamic Ester.Stoermer, *Ber.*, 1911, **44**, 643.

5 grams coumarin  
 2.8 „ caustic soda (in 6 c.c. of water)  
 2 c.c. absolute alcohol  
 10 grams dimethyl sulphate.

Dissolve the coumarin in the mixture of absolute alcohol and caustic soda solution, pour into a basin and evaporate as far as possible on the water-bath, and to the viscid residue when cold add the dimethyl sulphate. Leave in a desiccator for several days. The mass becomes gradually nearly solid, from the separation of sodium methyl sulphate. Add water to dissolve the solid and extract the yellow oil twice with small quantities of ether; dehydrate the liquid with calcium chloride and remove the ether by distillation on the water-bath. The oil which remains is the *trans*-ester. The yield is 6 grams.



The nature of the compound is ascertained by hydrolysis as in the previous case. On acidifying, an oil first separates which quickly solidifies. The *trans*-acid melts at 89°.

## PREPARATION 106.

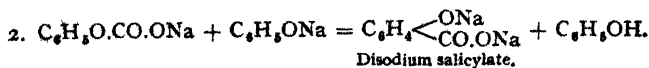
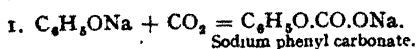
**Salicylic Acid** (*o*-Hydroxybenzoic Acid),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{<}^{\text{OH}}_{\text{CO.OH}}$

Kolbe, *J. prakt. Chem.*, 1874, (2), **10**, 95.

10 grams caustic soda  
 23 „ phenol.

This preparation should be commenced first thing in the morning. Dissolve the caustic soda in about 10 c.c. of water in a small porcelain basin and add the phenol. Heat the basin on wire-gauze over a very small flame, and, whilst holding it firmly with a small clamp (tongs are too insecure), keep constantly stirring with a glass rod. After a short time the mass becomes stiff and balls together. The basin should now be removed from the gauze, and

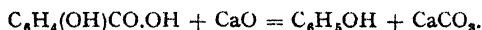
the mass stirred and broken up as it cools. When still warm, it is sufficiently hard to powder in a mortar. It is quickly powdered and transferred to a small retort (200 c.c.) heated in a metal or paraffin bath to 130—140°, and dried by passing over it a fairly rapid current of dry hydrogen from a Kipp. In about an hour all the moisture is removed, and the body of the retort appears dry. The light-coloured mass in the retort is allowed to cool whilst the hydrogen is passing through, then broken up and shaken into a mortar, when it is quickly powdered and replaced. The object of the above operation is to obtain perfectly dry, uncharred and well-powdered sodium phenate, upon which the success of the preparation entirely depends. A moderate stream of carbon dioxide, dried through concentrated sulphuric acid, is now passed over the surface of the sodium phenate by means of a bent tube fixed through the tubulus of the retort, and terminating just above the substance. The temperature of the oil-bath is gradually raised from 140° to 180—190°, whilst fresh surfaces are exposed by occasionally stirring with a glass rod inserted for a moment through the tubulus. At the end of four hours the temperature is raised to 190—200° for another hour, and the process stopped. During the heating a considerable quantity of phenol distils, and solidifies in the neck of the retort, whilst the contents become dark coloured. The mass is shaken out into a basin without disturbing the phenol in the neck, and the residue dissolved by filling the retort two-thirds full of water. This is poured into the basin containing the other portion, which soon dissolves. The solution is acidified with concentrated hydrochloric acid, which throws down impure salicylic acid in the form of a dark brown precipitate. When cold, the precipitate is filtered at the pump, and washed with a little cold water. A further quantity may be obtained by evaporating the filtrate to a small bulk. It is purified by dissolving in water, boiling with a little animal charcoal and filtering. The filtrate deposits the acid, on cooling, in colourless needles. Yield, about 6 grams.



**Properties.**—Colourless needles; m.p. 155–156°; soluble in alcohol and hot water. 100 parts water dissolve 0.225 part at 15° and 7.925 parts at 100°.

**Reactions.**—1. Dissolve a little of the acid in water and add a drop of ferric chloride. A violet coloration is obtained.

2. Grind up some of the acid with soda-lime and cover with a shallow layer of the same substance. On heating strongly the smell of phenol is perceived.



See *Appendix*, p. 432.

#### PREPARATION 107.

**Acetylsalicylic Acid (Aspirin),**  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{matrix} \text{O.CO.CH}_3 \\ \text{COOH} \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{matrix}$

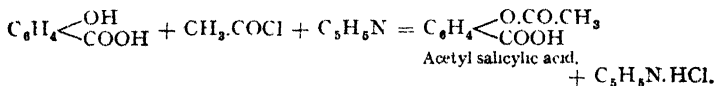
Wohlgemuth, *Chem. Centralbl.*, 1899, I, 1294.

14 grams salicylic acid

10 „ pyridine

10 „ acetyl chloride.

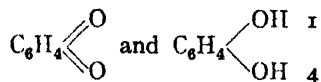
The salicylic acid and pyridine are mixed and cooled in ice and the acetyl chloride is then added drop by drop with stirring. The mixture is heated on the water-bath for two minutes and cooled, when a viscous semi-solid mass is obtained. On the addition of a small quantity of crushed ice, which is stirred into the mass, crude aspirin solidifies. It is filtered, washed with water and dried on a porous plate; m.p. 133–135°. Yield 16 grams. On crystallisation from benzene it melts at 136–138°.



It may also be obtained by heating the salicylic acid with rather more than its weight of acetic anhydride at 150–160° for several hours and removing the unchanged anhydride and acetic acid by distilling under reduced pressure. The residue is purified as described above. See *Appendix*, p. 433.



## PREPARATION 108.

**Quinone and Quinol (Hydroquinone),**

Woskresensky, *Annalen*, 1838, **27**, 268; Nietzki, *Ber.*, 1886, **19**, 1467; Meyer and Jacobson, *Lehrbuch*, vol. ii., p. 421.

25 grams aniline  
 200 „ (110 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid  
 750 c.c. water  
 80 grams potassium dichromate.<sup>1</sup>

The water and aniline are mixed together in a large glass jar (1½ litres) and the sulphuric acid added. The mixture is cooled in ice and stirred with a turbine (see Fig. 67, p. 112). The finely-powdered dichromate is added every few minutes in small quantities on the end of a small spatula, until about one-third has been added, care being taken that the temperature does not exceed 10°. The mixture is then left to stand overnight, and the remaining two-thirds of the dichromate introduced as before. Aniline black separates out in the first part of the operation, and in the second part of the process gradually dissolves, giving a deep brown solution. The liquid, after standing for four to five hours more, is divided into two about equal portions. One half is shaken up, not too vigorously, with a large quantity (200 c.c.) of ether three times. The same ether may be distilled and used again. Vigorous shaking produces an emulsion, which very slowly separates. On distilling off the ether, the quinone remains in the form of yellow needle-shaped crystals, which may be purified by sublimation. The substance is placed in a flask attached to a condenser, and a rapid current of steam blown through. The quinone sublimes and collects in the receiver, and is separated from the water by filtration, and dried. Yield about 10 grams.

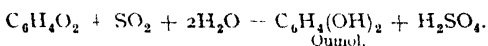
<sup>1</sup> Or an equivalent quantity of sodium dichromate (75 grams), which may be dissolved in 3—4 times its weight of water and delivered from a tap-funnel.

The reaction consists in the oxidation and elimination of the amino-group and simultaneous replacement of two hydrogen atoms in the benzene nucleus by oxygen, and cannot well be expressed in the form of equation. (See *Appendix*, p. 433.)

**Properties.**—Golden-yellow, needle-shaped crystals; m.p.  $116^{\circ}$ ; with difficulty soluble in water, readily soluble in alcohol and ether; sublimes on heating; its vapour has a penetrating smell and attacks the eyes.

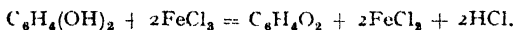
**Reaction.**—Dissolve a few crystals in water and add a solution of sulphur dioxide. The solution first darkens from the formation of quinhydrone,  $C_6H_4O_2 \cdot C_6H_4(OH)_2$ , and then becomes colourless and contains quinol.

**Quinol.**—The other half of the product is treated with a current of sulphur dioxide until, after standing for a time, it retains the smell of the gas.\* The sulphur dioxide is most conveniently obtained from a bottle of liquid, or it may be prepared by dropping concentrated sulphuric acid from a tap-funnel on to sodium sulphite. The liquid, after standing one to two hours, is extracted with ether until no more quinol is removed. The ether is distilled off, and the dark-coloured residue recrystallised from water with the addition of sulphur dioxide and a little animal charcoal. Yield about 10 grams.

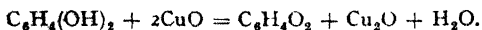


**Properties.**—Colourless prisms; m.p.  $169^{\circ}$ ; sublimes at a gentle heat; easily soluble in alcohol, ether, and hot water.

**Reactions.**—1. To a solution of quinol in water, add a few drops of ferric chloride. The solution turns dark green from the formation of quinhydrone and then brown and ether now extracts quinone.



2. Add to the solution of quinol in water, a drop of copper sulphate, and caustic soda, and warm. Cuprous oxide is precipitated.



See *Appendix*, p. 433.

## PREPARATION 109.

**Benzyl Chloride,  $C_6H_5CH_2Cl$** Cannizzaro, *Annalen*, 1853, 88, 129.

100 grams toluene

1 gram phosphorus trichloride.

The apparatus consists of vessels for evolving and drying chlorine (see Fig. 65, p. 106) and a weighed retort (300 c.c.) standing on wire-gauze, into which the toluene is brought (Fig. 79). The

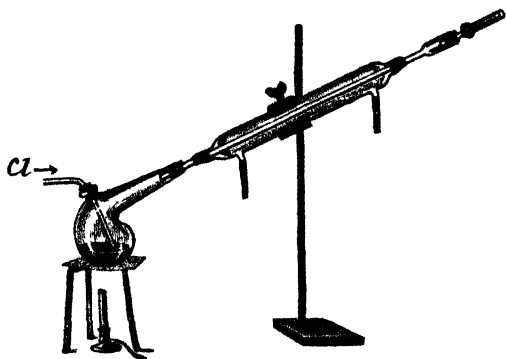
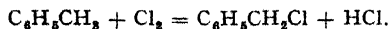


FIG. 79.

chlorine enters through an inlet tube, fixed through the tubulus of the retort, the neck being fixed to a reflux condenser. The dry chlorine is conducted into the toluene, which is kept boiling gently until it has gained about 37 grams in weight.\* The liquid turns yellow, and hydrochloric acid fumes are evolved at the upper end of the condenser. When the reaction is complete the contents of the retort are distilled.\* At first unchanged toluene distils; the fraction boiling at  $165-185^{\circ}$  contains nearly the whole of the benzyl chloride, and forms the greater part of the product. The liquid, which passes over above  $185^{\circ}$ , is a mixture of higher chlorinated compounds, and consists chiefly of benzal chloride,  $C_6H_5CHCl_2$ , and benzotrichloride,  $C_6H_5CCl_3$ . The portion containing the benzyl chloride is repeatedly fractionated until a

liquid is obtained, boiling at 176—180°, which is nearly pure benzyl chloride. Yield 80—90 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid with an irritating smell; b.p. 176°; sp. gr. 1.107 at 14°. See *Appendix*, p. 434.

#### PREPARATION 110.

##### **Benzyl Alcohol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ .**

Söderbaum, Widman, *Ber.*, 1892, **25**, 3290.

20 grams benzyl chloride

16 „ potassium carbonate (in 200 c.c. water).

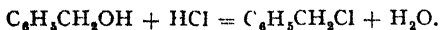
In a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) attached to a reflux condenser boil the mixture of benzyl chloride and potassium carbonate solution over wire-gauze with the addition of a few bits of porous pot. The boiling must be continued until the smell of benzyl chloride has disappeared (six to eight hours). Extract the liquid with ether, dehydrate over potassium carbonate, decant through a filter and distil off the ether on the water-bath. Continue the distillation over wire-gauze, run the water out of the condenser and collect at 200—210°. Yield 12—15 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid with a faint aromatic smell; b.p. 206.5°; sp. gr. 1.05 at 15.4°; moderately soluble in water.

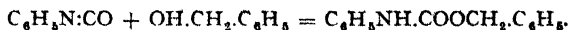
*Reactions.*—1. Boil 2 or 3 drops with 2—3 c.c. dilute nitric acid ( $1\text{HNO}_3, 4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ); benzaldehyde is first formed and is detected by the smell. On continued boiling, benzoic acid is formed and separates on cooling in crystals.

2. Warm 1 c.c. of the alcohol with 1 c.c. concentrated hydrochloric acid. The clear solution becomes turbid and benzyl chloride separates.



3. Mix together equal weights (about 0.5 gram) of benzyl alcohol and phenyl isocyanate and warm for  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour on the water-bath.

On cooling benzyl phenyl urethane crystallises. Re-crystallised from alcohol it forms colourless needles, m.p.  $75^{\circ}$ .



See *Reaction*, 3, p. 55.

See *Appendix*, p. 435.

### PREPARATION III.

#### Benzyl Cyanide, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$ .

Cannizzaro, *Annalen*, 1855, **96**, 247; Mann, *Ber.*, 1881, **14**, 1645;  
*Organic Syntheses*, Vol. II, p. 9.

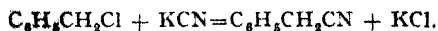
90 grams benzyl chloride

120 c.c. absolute alcohol

60 grams potassium cyanide, or 45 grams sodium cyanide  
(in 55 c.c. water).

The cyanide and water are placed in a 1-litre round flask attached to a reflux condenser and gently boiled on a sand-bath. The mixture of benzyl chloride in alcohol is added drop by drop from a tap-funnel inserted in the top of the condenser. After the addition of the benzyl chloride the liquid is boiled for four hours more. A dark brown liquid is obtained, which after cooling is filtered from solid matter. It is distilled in the ordinary way and the fraction boiling at  $190\text{--}240^{\circ}$  collected. It is re-distilled with a short fractionating column and collected at  $210\text{--}235^{\circ}$ . In a third distillation the fraction is collected boiling at  $225\text{--}233^{\circ}$ . Yield, 56 grams.

A better result is obtained by fractionating under reduced pressure. Benzyl cyanide boils at  $125\text{--}130^{\circ}$  at 25 mm. and at  $115\text{--}120^{\circ}$  at 10 mm.



*Properties*.—Colourless liquid; b.p.  $231^{\circ}$ ; sp. gr. 1.014 at  $18^{\circ}$ .

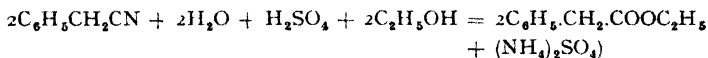
PREPARATION 112.

**Phenyl Acetic Ester**,  $C_6H_5.CH_2.COOC_2H_5$ .

Cannizzaro, *Annalen*, 1885, **96**, 247; Staedel, *Ber.*, 1886, **19**, 1951; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. II, p. 27.

55 grams benzyl cyanide  
30 „ (17 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid  
90 c.c. absolute alcohol.

The mixture of benzyl cyanide, absolute alcohol and conc. sulphuric acid is introduced into a half-litre round flask attached to a reflux condenser and heated in an oil-bath at 100—120° for four hours. The excess of alcohol is then distilled from a water-bath and the residue diluted with 300—350 c.c. of cold water. The ester which separates as an oily layer is extracted with ether. The extract is distilled first on the water-bath to remove the ether and finally on wire-gauze, and the ester collected at 215—230°. This is redistilled, using a column, and the fraction boiling at 225—230° collected. Yield, 50 grams.



*Properties*.—Colourless liquid with fragrant smell; b.p. 229°; sp. gr. 1.0861 at 16°. See *Appendix*, p. 436.

PREPARATION 113.

**Benzaldehyde** (Bitter Almond Oil),  $C_6H_5.CO.H$ .

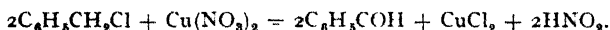
METHOD I (from Benzyl chloride).

Liebig, Wohler, *Annalen*, 1837, **22**, 1; Lauth, Grimaux, *Annalen*, 1867, **143**, 186.

50 grams benzyl chloride  
40 „ copper nitrate  
500 c.c. water.

The mixture of benzyl chloride, copper nitrate and water is heated to boiling in a round flask (1½ litre) with upright condenser on the sand-bath for a day (eight to nine hours). A slow current of carbon dioxide is at the same time passed through the liquid to prevent oxidation of the benzaldehyde by absorption of oxygen

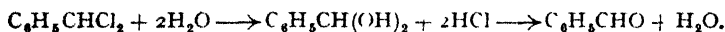
from the air. During the process nitrous fumes are slowly evolved. When the reaction is complete, the contents of the flask are extracted with ether, and the yellow oil remaining, after distilling off the ether, is well shaken with a saturated solution of sodium bisulphite<sup>1</sup> and allowed to stand for a time. The colourless crystalline mass which separates is filtered, washed with a little alcohol and ether, and then drained on a porcelain filter. The aldehyde is regained by adding dilute sulphuric acid in excess and distilling in steam. The distillate is extracted with ether, dehydrated over calcium chloride, decanted, and the ether distilled off. Yield, about 15 grams.



#### METHOD II (from Benzal chloride).

16 grams benzal chloride  
20 „ conc. sulphuric acid.

The benzal chloride and sulphuric acid are mixed and stirred until no more hydrogen chloride is evolved, a process which requires about three hours. Little heat is developed. The dark brown liquid is then poured on to crushed ice (about 50 grams), the benzaldehyde extracted with ether and dehydrated over calcium chloride. After removal of the ether, the remaining oil is distilled. The yield is 6 grams (60 per cent.).



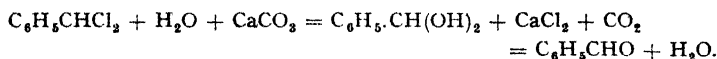
#### METHOD III (from Benzal chloride).

50 grams benzal chloride  
500 c.c. water  
150 grams precipitated calcium carbonate.

The benzal chloride, water and calcium carbonate are mixed in a 1-litre round flask and heated with reflux condenser in an oil or metal bath at 130° for four hours. The calcium salts are filtered

<sup>1</sup> The solution is prepared either by dissolving solid sodium bisulphite in water or by passing sulphur dioxide into powdered sodium carbonate covered with a shallow layer of water. The carbonate dissolves with effervescence, forming a heavy apple-green liquid smelling strongly of sulphur dioxide.

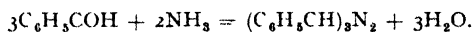
and the liquid is distilled in steam. When no oil distils, a strong solution of sodium bisulphite is added to the distillate until the benzaldehyde passes into solution. After filtration through a fluted filter, the liquid is made strongly alkaline with sodium carbonate and again distilled in steam. The subsequent process is the same as that described above. The yield is 27 grams (68 per cent). On concentrating the liquid in the distilling flask and acidifying with hydrochloric acid a few grams of benzoic acid can be obtained.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid, with a pleasant smell; b.p.  $179^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 1.0504 at  $15^\circ$ ; it quickly oxidises in the air, forming benzoic acid.

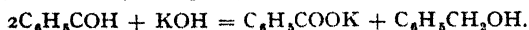
*Reactions.*—1. Leave a drop of benzaldehyde on a watch-glass. It solidifies by becoming oxidised to benzoic acid.

2. Add 5 c.c. conc. ammonia to 1 c.c. benzaldehyde, cork up and leave two days. Crystals of hydrobenzamide,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH})_3\text{N}_2$ , separate, which may be recrystallised from spirit.



3. Heat on the water-bath 2 c.c. of benzaldehyde and 2 c.c. of aniline for an hour. Crystals of benzalaniline are formed on cooling,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COH} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2 = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH:N.C}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , which may be filtered and crystallised from spirit; m.p.  $42^\circ$ .

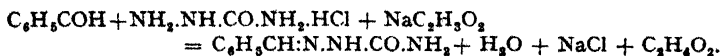
4. Shake up together 10 grams of benzaldehyde with 9 grams of caustic potash in 6 c.c. of water until a permanent emulsion is formed and let stand three to four hours. Dissolve the solid product in a little water and shake out with ether twice. On acidifying the aqueous portion with hydrochloric acid, benzoic acid is precipitated. Filter and wash with a little cold water and dry. Distil the ether from the ethereal solution. The residue is benzyl alcohol (Cannizzaro) (see p. 236).



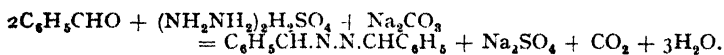
5. Mix together 0.5 gram of benzaldehyde, 0.6 gram of semicarbazide hydrochloride dissolved in 5 c.c. of water and then add 0.8 gram of sodium acetate in 5 c.c. of water and shake well. A thick white precipitate of the semicarbazone separates. It is



filtered, washed with water and when crystallised from spirit is deposited in fine, colourless needles, m.p. 208—210°.



6. Mix together 0.5 gram of benzaldehyde and 0.8 gram of hydrazine sulphate,  $(\text{NH}_2\text{NH}_2)_2\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , dissolved in hot water, and then add gradually 0.5 gram of sodium carbonate (anhydrous) dissolved in water and shake up. Effervescence occurs and the solid hydrazone separates, and may be crystallised from dilute spirit.



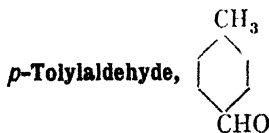
It forms glistening pale yellow plates; m.p. 94°.

7. Dissolve 0.5 gram of phenylhydrazine in about 3 c.c. of glacial acetic acid or alcohol, and add an equal weight of benzaldehyde in 3 c.c. of alcohol. A nearly colourless crystalline mass of the phenylhydrazone separates. Filter, wash with a little alcohol and crystallise from hot alcohol. Faintly yellow needles separate which redden in the light; m.p. 158°.

8. Dissolve 0.8 gram of nitrophenylhydrazine<sup>1</sup> in 5 c.c. of glacial acetic acid and whilst warm add 0.5 gram of benzaldehyde in 1—2 c.c. of glacial acetic acid and cool. A claret-coloured, crystalline precipitate separates. Filter, wash with a little acetic acid and crystallise from hot acetic acid; m.p. 192°.

See *Appendix*, p. 436.

#### PREPARATION 114.



Gattermann, *Ber.*, 1897, **30**, 1622; 1898, **31**, 1149; *Annalen*, 1906, **347**, 347.

- 30 grams toluene (freshly distilled)
- 45 „ anhydrous aluminium chloride
- 5 „ cuprous chloride (see p. 187).

<sup>1</sup> For the preparation of nitrophenylhydrazine, see p. 198.

The toluene is placed in a wide-necked bottle closed by a rubber bung having three holes, two for the inlet and outlet tubes and the third for the sealed stirrer (see p. 162). The inlet tube is furnished with a T-piece for conducting the carbon monoxide and the hydrogen chloride gases as shown in Fig. 80. The apparatus is placed in the fume cupboard.

**Preparation of carbon monoxide.**—The carbon monoxide may be prepared either from formic acid or oxalic acid. In the former case 100 c.c. of the commercial 98 per cent. formic acid are poured into a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -litre flask provided with a dropping funnel from which conc. sulphuric acid is run in rapidly till the temperature rises to about 60°, and then more slowly as the regulation of the stream requires. It is dried through a wash-bottle of conc. sulphuric acid. If oxalic acid is used, 200 grams of the crystals and 200 grams of conc. sulphuric acid are mixed in a 1-litre flask and are heated in the oil-bath to 120°, when a mixture of carbon monoxide and dioxide is evolved, the latter being removed by passing the mixed gases through two wash-bottles containing caustic potash solution and dried through two wash-bottles of conc. sulphuric acid.

The hydrogen chloride is generated as described on p. 362. It is dried through conc. sulphuric acid.

The toluene and aluminium chloride are placed in the bottle, which is immersed in a bath of cold water at 20°. A not too rapid stream of carbon monoxide and hydrogen chloride is led in through the T-piece and the stirrer set in motion. The current of gases is so regulated that the volume of carbon monoxide is about twice that of the hydrogen chloride. In the course of an hour about 1 to 2 litres of carbon monoxide should have passed into the mixture; the temperature is now raised to 25–30° and the remainder of the gas passed in during four to five hours. If the mixture becomes so viscous that the stirrer is obstructed, the operation may be stopped. The viscid product is poured into a

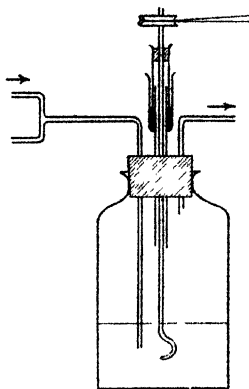
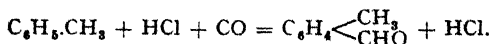


FIG. 80.

large flask containing powdered ice, and the aldehyde and any unchanged toluene distilled in steam. The distillate is extracted with ether, dried over calcium chloride and distilled *in vacuo*, the fraction passing over at 115–120° at 30 mm. being collected. The yield varies from 12 to 20 grams and depends on the properly regulated proportion of the two gases, which in the case of carbon monoxide is most conveniently delivered from a gas holder.



The aldehyde may be further purified by conversion into the bisulphite compound as described on p. 232.

*Properties.*—Colourless liquid with the smell of benzaldehyde, but rather more pungent. Like benzaldehyde it takes up oxygen readily and yields *p*-toluic acid. It boils at 204° at the ordinary pressure; sp. gr. 1.072.

#### PREPARATION 115.

##### Benzyl Alcohol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ .

(Another method.)

Cannizzaro, *Annalen*, 1853, **88**, 129

25 grams benzaldehyde

22 „ caustic soda (in 15 c.c. of water).

The benzaldehyde and caustic soda are mixed in a flask and shaken vigorously. An emulsion is formed which is left overnight. It is then shaken with a little water until a clear solution is obtained and extracted several times with ether. The water dissolves the sodium benzoate, whilst the ether extracts the benzyl alcohol and any unchanged benzaldehyde. Shake up the ether solution with a little saturated sodium bisulphite solution. To remove any benzaldehyde, separate the ether solution, wash with a little sodium carbonate to remove sulphur dioxide, then with water, dehydrate over anhydrous sodium sulphate and distil the ether on the water-bath. The residue is distilled over wire-gauze without

water in the condenser and collected at 200—210°. Yield, 9—10 grams.



The alkaline solution left after extraction with ether is acidified with conc. hydrochloric acid, cooled and the benzoic acid filtered. It is recrystallised from hot water, m.p. 121°. Yield, about 10 grams.

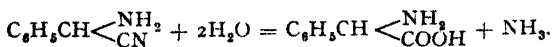
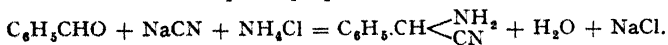
#### PREPARATION 116.

##### Phenylamino-acetic Acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{COOH}$ .

Zelinsky and Stadnoff, *Ber.* 1906, **39**, 1725; Marvel and Noyes, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1920, **42**, 2264.

- 53 grams benzaldehyde (in 100 c.c. of methyl alcohol)  
 25 „ sodium cyanide (in 100 c.c. of water)  
 27 „ ammonium chloride.

The ammonium chloride is added to the cold cyanide solution, and the benzaldehyde, dissolved in methyl alcohol, is gradually introduced, the flask being well shaken but not cooled. The mixture is left overnight, and after adding 125 c.c. of water allowed to stand for a few hours. It is then extracted by shaking with 125 c.c. of benzene. The benzene layer is separated and shaken twice with water, and then with 50 c.c. of 15 per cent. hydrochloric acid (1 conc.  $\text{HCl}$ : 1  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), and again with 25 c.c., in order to extract the amino-acid, which forms a soluble hydrochloride. The acid extract is boiled on wire-gauze, in a round flask attached to a reflux condenser, for two hours. It is cooled, filtered and the amino-acid precipitated by adding excess of ammonia. After standing overnight it is filtered, washed with a little water and finally with a little spirit and dried in a vacuum desiccator. Yield, 28 grams. It may be purified by crystallisation from hot water, but it is not essential for the subsequent preparation.



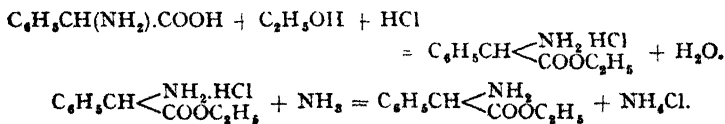
*Properties.*—Crystallises in leaflets with pearly lustre, m.p. 256°, with partial decomposition. Very insoluble in most solvents. See *Appendix*, p. 437.

## PREPARATION 117.

**Phenylaminoacetic Ester,  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH(NH_2) \cdot COOC_2H_5$** Kossel, *Ber.*, 1891, **24**, 4145.

20 grams crude phenylaminoacetic acid  
100 c.c. absolute alcohol.

The alcohol is poured into a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -litre round flask and weighed. It is surrounded by ice and dry hydrogen chloride passed in until 8–10 grams of the gas have been absorbed. The phenylaminoacetic acid is then added and the mixture digested with a reflux condenser for three hours. The alcohol is distilled from a water-bath under reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in the minimum quantity of cold water. About 100 c.c. of benzene are added, and the aqueous layer is made alkaline with ammonia in order to liberate the phenylaminoacetic ester, which as hydrochloride is soluble in the water. After shaking, the benzene layer is separated and the aqueous portion extracted a second time with half the original quantity of benzene. The mixed benzene extracts are dehydrated over anhydrous sodium sulphate and filtered into a Claisen distilling flask. The benzene is first distilled from a water-bath under somewhat reduced pressure and the residual liquid distilled at a pressure of 10 mm. and collected at 127–132°. The yield is 14 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p. 127–129° at 10 mm.

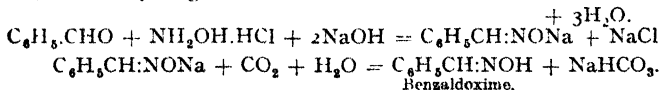
*Reaction.*—To prepare the hydrochloride dissolve 2 grams of the ester in 10 c.c. of benzene, and pass in dry hydrogen chloride. The hydrochloride is precipitated as a colourless crystalline powder, and after standing for a short time it is filtered, washed with a little benzene and dried in a vacuum desiccator. Yield, 2 grams; m.p. 201–202°.

## PREPARATION 118.

 $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Benzaldoximes,  $C_6H_5CH:NOH$ .Beckmann, *Ber.*, 1890, **23**, 1684.

- 21 grams benzaldehyde  
 15 „ hydroxylamine hydrochloride  
 14 „ caustic soda (in 40 c.c. water).

The solution of caustic soda and benzaldehyde are mixed and the hydroxylamine hydrochloride gradually added with constant shaking. The liquid becomes slightly warm and the oil eventually dissolves, forming a yellow solution which has lost the smell of benzaldehyde. On cooling, a crystalline mass of the benzaldoxime sodium salt separates. Sufficient water is added to form a clear solution, through which a current of carbon dioxide is passed. A colourless emulsion of the  $\alpha$ - or *anti*-aldoxime separates on the surface and is extracted with ether, dehydrated over anhydrous sodium sulphate and the ether removed on the water-bath. Impure benzaldoxime remains and is purified as follows. It is poured into a saturated solution of sodium ethoxide in alcohol (prepared by dissolving 5 grams sodium in 60 c.c. alcohol), when the aldoxime separates as the sodium compound in the form of a semi-solid mass. It is filtered and washed with a saturated solution of sodium ethoxide in alcohol to dissolve out the  $\beta$ -oxime. The product is dissolved in water, saturated with carbon dioxide and extracted with ether as before. Dry air is then drawn through the liquid to remove the last traces of ether when, if pure, the oxime, on cooling to  $0^\circ$ , solidifies. If not, it should be distilled *in vacuo*. At 12 mm. it boils at  $122-124^\circ$ ; at 10 mm. at  $118-119^\circ$ . Yield, 10 grams.



*Properties of  $\alpha$ -Benzaldoxime.*—Colourless needles, m.p.  $34-35^\circ$ .

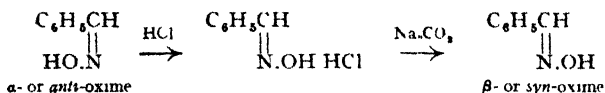
*Reaction.*—Dissolve a small quantity of the  $\alpha$ -oxime in a few drops of acetic anhydride, warm if necessary, and cool quickly by adding a little ice. Add to the clear solution solid sodium

carbonate and a little caustic soda solution. The solution becomes clear on shaking or warming.

**$\beta$ -Benzaldoxime.**—The various steps in the preparation of the  $\beta$ -oxime must be carried out continuously, and it is therefore necessary to be provided beforehand with about 300 c.c. of pure anhydrous ether.

The  $\alpha$ -compound is dissolved in 50 c.c. pure dry ether, and dry hydrogen chloride is passed in with constant shaking to prevent the delivery tube from becoming blocked. Colourless crystals of the hydrochloride of the  $\beta$ -oxime separate and are filtered and washed with dry ether and then placed in a separating funnel and covered with a layer of ether. A concentrated solution of sodium carbonate is gradually added with constant shaking until no further effervescence is observed. Sodium chloride is precipitated and the  $\beta$ -oxime dissolves in the ether. The ether extract is separated, dehydrated over sodium sulphate, and the ether removed as rapidly as possible at the ordinary temperature by evaporation *in vacuo*. The residue crystallises and, when pressed on a porous plate, leaves a mass of small silky needles, m.p. 126—130°. It may be recrystallised by dissolving it in the smallest quantity of ether and then adding petroleum ether.

The yield is theoretical.



**Properties of the  $\beta$ -Benzaldoxime.**—Colourless needles, m.p. 130°.

**Reaction.**—Repeat the action for  $\alpha$ -benzaldoxime. In this case benzonitrile is formed, which separates in oily drops having a characteristic smell. See *Appendix*, p. 437.

#### PREPARATION 119.

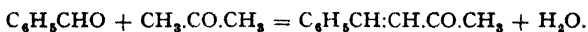
##### **Benzalacetone, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH:CH.CO.CH}_3$**

Claisen, *Annalen*, 1886, **233**, 137; Vorländer, *Annalen*, 1896, **294**, 275; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. III, p. 17.

25 grams benzaldehyde

38 „ acetone (in 25 c.c. water).

The benzaldehyde and acetone are mixed together in a flask and 12 to 15 c.c. of 10 per cent. caustic soda solution are gradually introduced through a dropping funnel and the mixture is mechanically stirred. In a few minutes heat is developed and an oily layer separates. After the alkali has been added the mixture is stirred for a further two hours and is then extracted with chloroform. The chloroform solution is dehydrated over calcium chloride and filtered. The solvent is removed from the water-bath and the residue distilled under reduced pressure. At 30 mm. the fraction distilling below  $150^{\circ}$ , which consists of benzaldehyde, is rejected. The second fraction, boiling at  $150-160^{\circ}$ , is nearly pure benzalacetone. It has usually a pale yellow colour and on standing completely solidifies, m.p.  $37-39^{\circ}$ . Yield, 15–20 grams. After crystallisation from ligroin it melts at  $40-41^{\circ}$ . The residue in the distilling flask, boiling above  $160^{\circ}$ , is dibenzalacetone.  $C_6H_5.CH:CH.CO.CH:CH.C_6H_5$ , m.p.  $112^{\circ}$ .



*Properties.*—Crystallises in colourless, highly refractive plates, m.p.  $41-42^{\circ}$ , b.p.  $260-262^{\circ}$ . Very soluble in alcohol, ether, chloroform, or benzene, much less so in ligroin; dissolves in conc.  $H_2SO_4$  with a deep orange colour. See *Appendix*, p. 438.

#### PREPARATION 120.

##### Benzoic Acid, $C_6H_5CO.OH$

5 grams benzyl chloride

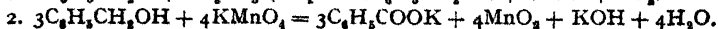
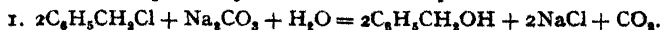
4 „ anhydrous sodium carbonate (in 50 c.c. water)

8.5 „ potassium permanganate (in 150 c.c. water).

The benzyl chloride and sodium carbonate solution are mixed in a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) attached to a reflux condenser, and boiled gently over wire-gauze, whilst the permanganate solution is gradually dropped in from a tap-funnel pushed through the top of the condenser. In the course of two to three hours the pink colour of the permanganate will have vanished and been replaced by a mass of dark-brown precipitate of manganese dioxide. When the liquid is cold, a stream of sulphur dioxide is passed in until the



manganese dioxide is dissolved (see p. 188). The liquid is cooled and the benzoic acid filtered, washed with a little cold water and crystallised from hot water; m.p.  $121^{\circ}$ . The yield is theoretical. The reaction probably occurs in two steps.

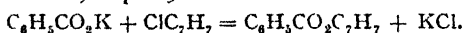


*Properties*.—Crystallises in needles; m.p.  $121^{\circ}$ ; on heating it melts and sublimes; soluble in hot water and alcohol. It distils in steam.

*Reactions*.—1. Make a neutral solution of ammonium benzoate by adding excess of ammonia to benzoic acid and boil until neutral. To different portions add solutions of calcium chloride, ferric chloride, silver nitrate and lead acetate and note the results.

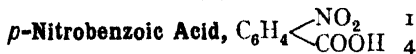
2. Grind up 0.5 gram of the acid with four times the weight of soda-lime and heat gently at first and then more strongly. Vapours of benzene will be given off, which may be detected by the smell.  $C_6H_5CO.OH + CaO = C_6H_6 + CaCO_3$ .

*p*-Nitrobenzyl benzoate. Dissolve 1 gram of benzoic acid and 0.5 gram of KOH in 5 c.c. of water: also 1 gram of *p*-nitrobenzyl chloride or bromide in 10 c.c. of alcohol. Mix the two solutions and boil with reflux for half an hour. Cool, filter and crystallise twice from alcohol; m.p.  $89^{\circ}$ .



See *Appendix*, p. 438.

#### PREPARATION 121.



Beilstein, Geitner, *Annalen*, 1866, **139**, 335. *Organic Syntheses*, II, p 53.

11.5 grams *p*-nitrotoluene

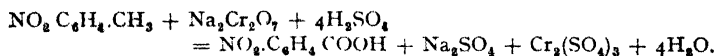
34 „ sodium dichromate (coarsely ground)

75 c.c. water

85 grams (46 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid.

The *p*-nitrotoluene, sodium dichromate and water are placed in a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -litre round flask provided with a mechanical stirrer, and whilst the mixture is being stirred the sulphuric acid is dropped through a tap-funnel. The mixture darkens and becomes hot, but is not allowed to reach a temperature at which the nitrotoluene may be driven off. When the acid has been added the contents of the

flask are gently boiled with reflux for half an hour, when a small quantity of impure nitrobenzoic acid separates. The mixture is cooled, and after the addition of 100 c.c. of water, filtered through cloth and washed with a further 50 c.c. of water. The crude dark-yellow product is digested on the water-bath with 50 c.c. 5 per cent. sulphuric acid for a time to remove any chromium salt, and after cooling and filtering the solid is dissolved in warm 5 per cent. caustic soda solution (about 150 c.c.) until the liquid after shaking remains alkaline. The liquid when cold is filtered from unchanged nitrotoluene and chromium hydroxide, and the filtrate, which has a pale greenish-yellow colour, acidified with dilute sulphuric acid by pouring the alkaline solution into the acid (not the reverse). The pale-yellow precipitate is filtered, washed well with water and dried on a porous plate in a vacuum desiccator. The yield is 8.5 grams (60 per cent.); m.p. 237—238°. It may be recrystallised from benzene, alcohol or boiling water.



**p-Nitrobenzoyl Chloride.**—Mix together in a 100 c.c. distilling flask with plugged side-tube and an air condenser 10 grams of *p*-nitrobenzoic acid and 12.5 grams of phosphorus pentachloride. The mixture is heated on the water-bath \* with occasional shaking until a clear homogeneous liquid is obtained and the evolution of hydrogen chloride nearly ceases. The contents of the flask are now distilled under reduced pressure from the water-bath to remove excess of phosphorus oxychloride, and the temperature finally raised in a paraffin bath to 200° to remove the last portions of the oxychloride. The residual *p*-nitrobenzoyl chloride solidifies on cooling and may be recrystallised from ligroin; m.p. 73°.



*p*-Nitrobenzoyl chloride combines readily with alcohols, forming crystalline esters. It is therefore frequently used for identifying alcohols, see p. 55. See *Appendix*, p. 440.

## PREPARATION 122.

*m*-Nitro-, *m*-Amino- and *m*-Hydroxy-benzoic Acids,*m*-Nitrobenzoic Acid*Organic Syntheses*, Vol. III, p. 53.

40 grams benzoic acid  
 80 „ potassium nitrate  
 100 c.c. conc. sulphuric acid.

The benzoic acid and potassium nitrate are mixed and carefully powdered. The sulphuric acid is warmed to 70° and stirred mechanically, whilst the mixture of benzoic acid and nitrate is added slowly, so that the temperature does not exceed 80°. When all is added the temperature is raised to 90°, and kept at this temperature until the nitrated acid separates as an oily layer on the surface. On cooling, the layer solidifies and can be separated. It is then distilled in steam to remove benzoic acid. The residue containing the nitrobenzoic acid is heated to boiling and made slightly alkaline with baryta. Two litres of water are added and the liquid is raised to the boiling point by passing in steam and then filtered. On cooling, the barium salt crystallises and is filtered off and decomposed with hot dilute hydrochloric acid. The precipitated acid is recrystallised from water; m.p. 141°. Yield, 28 grams.

*m*-Aminobenzoic Acid

20 grams nitrobenzoic acid  
 40 „ granulated tin  
 120 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid.

The nitrobenzoic acid, tin and hydrochloric acid are mixed in a litre flask and warmed until the reaction begins. When the first vigorous action is over, the mixture is heated on the water-bath until the tin is dissolved. The liquid is poured into a basin and evaporated on the water-bath to expel the excess of hydrochloric acid. The tin is then precipitated by passing into the hot,

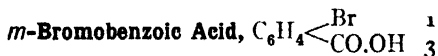
dilute solution a current of hydrogen sulphide. The sulphide is filtered and washed with hot water, and the filtrate evaporated to dryness. To obtain the free acid, a small portion of the residue is dissolved in very little water made alkaline with ammonia, and acidified with acetic acid. It is recrystallised from water, and melts at 174°.

***m*-Hydroxybenzoic Acid**

15 grams *m*-aminobenzoic acid hydrochloride (in 200 c.c. water)  
6.5 „ sodium nitrite (in 15 c.c. water).

The nitrite solution is slowly added to the solution of the hydrochloride dissolved in water. The liquid is heated on the water-bath until the evolution of nitrogen ceases, and then filtered and concentrated. The hydroxybenzoic acid separates on cooling as a brown mass, which may be purified by dissolving in water and boiling with animal charcoal. It separates in colourless crystals, m.p. 200°. Yield, 7 grams. See *Appendix*, p. 440.

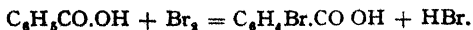
PREPARATION 123.



Hubner, Petermann, *Annalen*, 1869, **149**, 131.

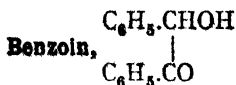
5 grams benzoic acid  
7 „ bromine  
30 c.c. water.

The mixture is brought into a thick-walled tube, closed at one end and sealed in the usual way. The tube is heated in the tube furnace to 140—150° for eight to nine hours. After cooling, the capillary is opened and the tube removed from the furnace. The bromine will have completely disappeared, and colourless crystals of bromobenzoic acid now fill the tube. The contents are removed, filtered, and boiled with water (100 c.c.) in a basin to drive off unchanged benzoic acid. The liquid is cooled, filtered, and the bromobenzoic acid crystallised from hot water. Yield, 5 grams.



*Properties*.—Colourless needles; m.p. 155°.

## PREPARATION 124.



Liebig, Wöhler, *Annalen*, 1832, **3**, 276; Zinin, *Annalen*, 1840, **34**, 186.

25 grams benzaldehyde

5 „ potassium or sodium cyanide pure (in 20 c.c. water)

50 c.c. purified spirit.

The mixture of benzaldehyde, potassium cyanide and alcohol is heated on the water-bath with an upright condenser for about half an hour. On cooling the liquid, the benzoin separates as a mass of small colourless crystals, which are filtered and washed with a little alcohol. Yield, about 20 grams. A portion of the substance may be purified by recrystallisation from spirit.



*Properties.*—Colourless prisms; m.p.  $137^\circ$ ; slightly soluble in water; soluble in alcohol and ether.

*Reaction.*—Add Fehling's solution to benzoin dissolved in alcohol. Benzil is formed and cuprous oxide precipitated. Benzil is also formed on oxidation with nitric acid. See *Appendix*, p. 440.

**Benzil**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ .

Zinin, *Annalen*, 1840, **34**, 188; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. 1, p. 25.

15 grams benzoin

35 „ (25 c.c.) conc. nitric acid, sp. gr. 1.4.

The benzoin and nitric acid are heated on the water-bath with an air condenser, the flask being occasionally shaken. Nitrous fumes are evolved, and the crystals of benzoin are converted into a yellow oil, which, after two hours' heating, is free from unchanged benzoin. The contents of the flask are now poured into water, and the yellow, crystalline deposit separated by filtration, washed with water and recrystallised from alcohol. Yield, 10—12 grams.

*Properties.*—Yellow prisms; m.p.  $95^\circ$ ; insoluble in water; soluble in hot alcohol.

**Reaction.**—Dissolve a small quantity of benzil in a little alcohol, add a fragment of caustic potash and boil. A violet solution is obtained. See *Appendix*, p. 440.

## PREPARATION 125.

**Benzilic Acid,  $(C_6H_5)_2C(OH).COOH$ .**

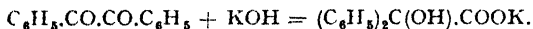
Liebig, *Annalen*, 1838, **25**, 25; *Organic Syntheses*, Vol. 1, p. 29.

32 grams benzil

32 „ caustic potash (in 64 c.c. of water)

80 c.c. spirit.

The benzil is dissolved in the spirit in a large round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) and the caustic potash solution added. The dark-coloured solution is heated on the water-bath with reflux for ten to twelve minutes. The contents of the flask are then poured into a large porcelain basin and left overnight. The potassium salt of benzilic acid, which separates, is filtered and washed with a little spirit. The alcoholic mother-liquor, on concentration, yields a small additional amount of salt. In order to obtain the free acid, the salt is dissolved in a litre of water and conc. hydrochloric acid slowly added with stirring. The first 10 c.c. of hydrochloric acid throw down a reddish precipitate which is slightly sticky. This is filtered and the filtrate, which should now be colourless, is further acidified until acid to Congo-red paper. The benzilic acid is filtered and washed well with cold water, and when dry crystallised from benzene; m.p.  $150^\circ$ . The coloured and sticky material obtained by the first precipitation is crystallised from hot water with the addition of animal charcoal. Yield, 33 grams.



**Properties.**—Colourless needles; m.p.  $150^\circ$ ; scarcely soluble in cold, readily soluble in hot water and alcohol.

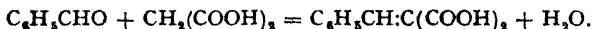
**Reaction.**—Add a little conc. sulphuric acid to benzilic acid. It dissolves with an intense red colour. See *Appendix*, p. 441.

## PREPARATION 126.

**Benzalmalonic Acid,  $C_6H_5CH:C(COOH)_2$ .***Annalen*, 1883, **218**, 129.

- 7 grams benzaldehyde
- 7 „ malonic acid
- 4 „ glacial acetic acid.

The mixture of the above is heated with reflux on the water-bath for ten hours and, whilst hot, poured into a basin and left to crystallise. Colourless crystals of benzalmalonic acid separate and are filtered, washed with chloroform and recrystallised from petroleum spirit. The yield is 5.5 grams; m.p. 194—196°.



*Properties.*—On heating to 200—210° benzalmalonic acid loses carbon dioxide and is converted into cinnamic acid; on reduction it yields benzylmalonic acid.

## PREPARATION 127.

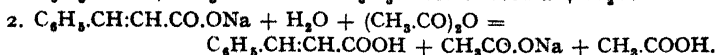
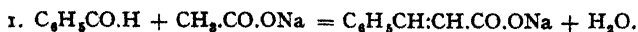
**Cinnamic Acid (Phenylacrylic Acid),**  
 $C_6H_5\cdot CH:CH\cdot CO_2H$ .

Bertagnini, *Annalen*, 1856, **100**, 126; Perkin, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1868, **21**, 53; Fittig, *Ber.*, 1881, **14**, 1826.

- 20 grams benzaldehyde
- 10 „ sodium acetate (fused)
- 30 „ acetic anhydride.

The mixture of benzaldehyde, sodium acetate, and acetic anhydride is heated to 180° in a small round flask with upright condenser in an oil-bath for about eight hours. The mass is poured out whilst hot into a large round flask (1 litre), sodium carbonate added until alkaline, and any unchanged benzaldehyde distilled off with steam. After filtering from undissolved resinous by-products, hydrochloric acid is added, which precipitates the

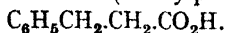
free cinnamic acid in white crystalline flakes. It may be purified by recrystallisation from hot water. Yield, 15—20 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless prisms; m.p.  $133^\circ$ ; b.p.  $300\text{--}304^\circ$ . See *Appendix*, p. 441.

#### PREPARATION 128.

##### Hydrocinnamic Acid (Phenylpropionic Acid),



Erlenmeyer, Alexejeff, *Annalen*, 1862, **121**, 375, and 1866, **137**, 237.

10 grams cinnamic acid

100 „ water

170 „ sodium amalgam ( $2\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.).

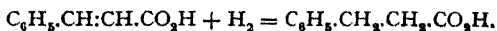
The sodium amalgam is prepared by warming 200 grams of mercury in a porcelain basin for a few minutes. The mercury is poured out into a mortar which is placed in the fume cupboard, the window of which is drawn down so as to protect the face. Five grams of sodium are introduced in small pieces, the size of a pea, and pressed with a pestle under the surface of the mercury. Each piece dissolves with a bright flash. The amalgam is poured out whilst semi-fluid on to an iron tray, broken up, and kept in a wide-necked stoppered bottle.<sup>1</sup>

The cinnamic acid and water are introduced into a strong beaker or bottle (300 c.c.), and the liquid is made slightly alkaline with caustic soda, which dissolves the acid forming the sodium salt. The sodium amalgam is added in small pieces from time to time and the liquid thoroughly agitated. The solution, which remains clear, becomes slightly warm, and the amalgam soon liquefies, but no hydrogen is evolved until towards the end of the operation.

<sup>1</sup> If larger quantities of amalgam are required, the mercury is heated in a small enamelled pan, or crucible, the sodium added in one lot, and the vessel immediately closed with a lid, which is held down with long crucible tongs until the reaction is over, and then poured out whilst fluid. It should be broken up at once and placed in a well-stoppered bottle.



When the whole of the amalgam has been added, and bubbles of gas cease to be given off, the solution is decanted from the mercury, which is rinsed with water. On acidifying the solution with hydrochloric acid, hydrocinnamic acid is precipitated as a colourless oil, which solidifies on standing. It may be recrystallised from a large quantity of warm water. Yield, 8—9 grams.



*Properties.*—Long colourless needles; m.p.  $47^\circ$ ; b.p.  $280^\circ$ ; soluble in water and alcohol; volatile in steam. See *Appendix*, p. 444.

#### PREPARATION 129.

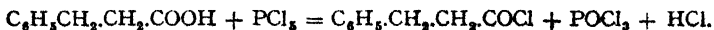
##### $\beta$ -Phenylpropionyl Chloride, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{COCl}$ .

Kipping, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1894, **65**, 480.

20 grams hydrocinnamic acid

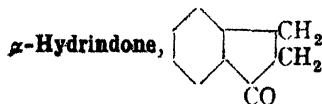
30 „ phosphorus pentachloride.

The phosphorus pentachloride is gradually added to the hydrocinnamic acid contained in a round flask (250 c.c.) provided with an air condenser.\* When the reaction has subsided the flask is heated for a short time on the water-bath to complete the process. A yellow liquid is obtained from which the phosphorus oxychloride is removed by distilling *in vacuo* from the water-bath. The phenylpropionyl chloride which remains is distilled under reduced pressure. Yield, 20 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p.  $119$ — $120^\circ$  at 15 mm.

#### PREPARATION 130.



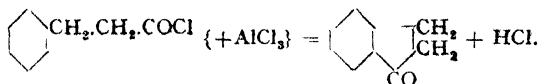
Kipping, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1894, **65**, 480.

20 grams phenylpropionyl chloride (in 60 c.c. of petroleum ether)

20 „ aluminium chloride (anhydrous)

20 „ petroleum ether (b.p.  $60$ — $70^\circ$ ).

The aluminium chloride (preferably freshly sublimed and powdered) together with the petroleum ether are put into a round flask (250 c.c.) with reflux condenser attached.\* The mixture is heated on the water-bath until it boils; the flame is then removed and the phenylpropionyl chloride solution dropped in from the top of the condenser. The aluminium chloride turns brown and hydrogen chloride is evolved as the reaction proceeds. The mixture is then heated on the water-bath until a brown liquid is formed, the petroleum ether floating as an almost colourless layer on the surface (twenty minutes). The evolution of hydrogen chloride, which is rapid at the beginning, now practically ceases. Water is now cautiously added and the mixture distilled in steam. The distillate is saturated with sodium sulphate and extracted with a mixture of petroleum spirit and ether. The extract is shaken with sodium carbonate solution and dried over anhydrous sodium sulphate. The ether is distilled and the oily residue on cooling forms a mass of colourless crystals of hydrindone, m.p.  $40-41^{\circ}$ . Yield, 12—13 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless tabular crystals; m.p.  $41^{\circ}$ ; forms an oxime,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8\text{:N.OH}$ , m.p.  $146^{\circ}$ , and a phenylhydrazone, m.p.  $130-131^{\circ}$ ,  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8\text{:N.NHC}_6\text{H}_5$ . See *Appendix*, p. 444.

#### PREPARATION 131.

##### Mandelic Acid, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH(OH).COOH}$ .

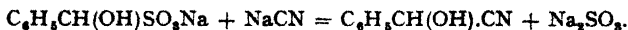
Friedlander, *Theerfarbenfabrikation*, Vol. IV, p. 160.

- 15 grams benzaldehyde
- 50 c.c. conc. sodium bisulphite solution
- 8 grams sodium cyanide <sup>1</sup> (in 20 c.c. water).

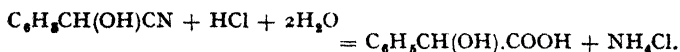
The benzaldehyde and sodium bisulphite are mixed together and stirred. The mixture forms a semi-solid mass of the bisulphite compound, which after standing for half an hour is filtered and

<sup>1</sup> Or the equivalent quantity of potassium cyanide (12 grams).

pressed at the pump and washed with a little water and spirit. The mass is then ground to a thick paste with water and the solution of sodium cyanide added. After a short time mandelic nitrile separates as a reddish oil and is removed by means of a tap-funnel with the addition of a little ether.



The ether is allowed to evaporate on the water-bath and the nitrile is then hydrolysed by continuing to heat it on the water-bath with the addition of 4—5 times its volume of conc. hydrochloric acid until crystals appear on the surface. Water is added and the hot liquid decanted and filtered from any oil. On cooling, the crystals are filtered, washed with a little cold water and dried. A further quantity can be extracted from the filtrate with ether. It may be recrystallised from benzene. Yield, 10—15 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless needles, m.p. 118—119°; dissolves readily in hot water and in 6 parts of water at 20°. The acid is racemic; the active components exhibit a rotation of  $[\alpha]_D^{20} = \pm 157^\circ$  in aqueous solution. See *Appendix*, p. 444.

#### PREPARATION 132.

##### Phenyl Methyl Carbinol, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_3$ .

Grignard, *Compt. rend.*, 1900, **130**, 1322; Klages and Ullendorf, *Ber.*, 1898, **31**, 1003.

- 36 grams methyl iodide
- 150 c.c. ether (purified and carefully dried over sodium)
- 6 grams magnesium ribbon or powder
- 26 „ benzaldehyde.

The magnesium methyl iodide is first prepared and is formed by the action of methyl iodide on the metal. The magnesium ribbon or powder is placed in a dry, round flask (1 litre), connected with a long condenser and dropping funnel as shown in Fig. 81.

The methyl iodide and 50 c.c. of dry ether are mixed in a separate vessel and 20 c.c. of this mixture poured on to the magnesium.

In a few seconds a vigorous action usually sets in or if it is delayed may be started by adding a crystal of iodine. When the first reaction has subsided, 70 c.c. of dry ether are added, and the remainder of the alkyl iodide and ether mixture is run in drop by drop from the tap-funnel. The contents of the flask are then boiled on the water-bath for half an hour when (if there has been no loss of alkyl iodide) the magnesium completely dissolves.

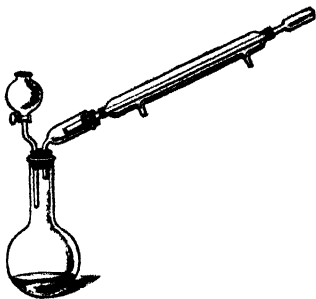
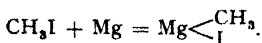
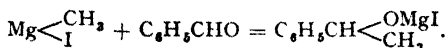


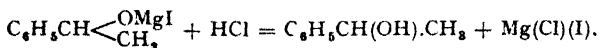
FIG. 81.



The flask is now disconnected and whilst it is kept cool in ice-water the benzaldehyde mixed with an equal volume of dry ether is dropped in from a tap-funnel with constant shaking. The white solid magnesium compound separates and is left overnight.



The contents of the flask are cooled under the tap whilst water and just sufficient hydrochloric acid to dissolve the magnesia are added, the acid being cautiously dropped in from a tap-funnel. The aqueous layer is removed in a separating funnel and the ether washed first with sodium bicarbonate solution, then with sodium bisulphite (to remove free iodine) and again with sodium bicarbonate.



The ether extract is then dried over potassium carbonate and the ether removed by distillation on the water-bath. The phenyl methyl carbinol which remains is distilled under reduced pressure; b.p. 100° at 15 mm.; 110—111° at 28 mm.; 128° at 40 mm. Yield, 20 grams.

The same method may be used without modification for preparing phenyl ethyl carbinol using a corresponding quantity of ethyl iodide. See *Appendix*, p. 445.

## PREPARATION 133.

**Benzoyl Chloride,  $C_6H_5CO.Cl$ .**

Wöhler, *Annalen*, 1832, 3, 262; Cahours, *Annalen*, 1846, 60, 255.

## METHOD I.

28 grams benzoic acid

50 „ phosphorus pentachloride.

A round flask (250 c.c.) is fitted with an air-condenser. The phosphorus pentachloride is quickly weighed into a test-tube which is then inverted in the neck of the flask. The operation must be conducted in the fume-cupboard. The benzoic acid is then added, the flask well shaken, and the air-condenser attached.\* The action begins almost immediately, and clouds of hydrochloric acid fumes are evolved. The whole contents become liquid and consist of benzoyl chloride (b.p.  $200^\circ$ ), phosphorus oxychloride (b.p.  $107^\circ$ ), and unchanged pentachloride. Most of the oxychloride may be removed by distilling *in vacuo* on the water-bath. The remainder is fractionated at the ordinary pressure and collected at  $190$ — $200^\circ$ . Yield, 20—25 grams.



## METHOD II.

28 grams benzoic acid

35 „ thionyl chloride (see p. 365).

The two substances are mixed together in a round flask (250 c.c.) and heated on the water-bath with reflux condenser until the evolution of hydrochloric acid gas ceases.\* The clear liquid is distilled over wire-gauze and the fraction boiling at  $192$ — $195^\circ$  collected. Yield, 25 grams.



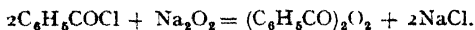
**Properties.**—Colourless liquid, which fumes in the air and possesses a pungent smell; b.p.  $198.5^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 1.214 at  $19^\circ$ .

**Reactions.**—1. Add a few drops of benzoyl chloride to 1 c.c. of water; the benzoyl chloride does not decompose at once, and requires warming for some time before it is completely dissolved (compare acetyl chloride, p. 87).

2. Add 2 c.c. ethyl alcohol to 1 c.c. benzoyl chloride and caustic soda solution until alkaline, and warm gently. After a time the smell of benzoyl chloride disappears, and ethyl benzoate remains as an oily liquid with a fragrant smell.  $C_6H_5COCl + C_2H_5OH + NaOH = C_6H_5COOC_2H_5 + NaCl + H_2O$ . Repeat the same reaction with phenol, taking 1 gram of each substance, and separate the solid phenyl benzoate. The phenyl ester melts at 68–69°. (Schotten-Baumann reaction.)

3. Add 5 grams benzoyl chloride to 10 grams ammonium carbonate in a mortar \* and grind up well. The reaction proceeds quietly. If after ten minutes the smell of benzoyl chloride still remains, add a few drops of concentrated ammonia. Add cold water and filter. Benzamide remains on the filter in the form of a white crystalline powder, and may be recrystallised from hot water; m.p. 128°.  $C_6H_5COCl + 2NH_4HCO_3 = C_6H_5CONH_2 + NH_4Cl + 2CO_2 + 2H_2O$ . The reaction may be repeated, using aniline (2 mols.) in place of ammonium carbonate. The product is heated with water and a few drops of dilute hydrochloric acid to dissolve the aniline hydrochloride and the residue crystallised from alcohol; m.p. 165°.

4. A gram of sodium peroxide is dissolved in a little sodium acetate solution in presence of a few small pieces of ice, and a few drops of benzoyl chloride added and the mixture shaken. Solid benzoyl peroxide separates and is recrystallised from alcohol; m.p. 103°. It explodes on heating.



See *Appendix*, p. 446.

#### PREPARATION 134.

**Ethyl Benzoate** (Ethyl Benzoic Ester),  $C_6H_5CO.OC_2H_5$ .

E. Fischer and Speier, *Ber.*, 1895, **28**, 1150.

25 grams benzoic acid

75 „ (90 c.c.) absolute alcohol.

Pass dry hydrochloric acid gas (see p. 362) through the alcohol, cooled in water until it has increased about 3 grams in weight. Add the benzoic acid and boil the mixture with upright condenser

over wire-gauze for two hours. On pouring a small quantity of the product into water, only the ester, which is a heavy oil, should separate, but no solid benzoic acid. The excess of alcohol is now distilled off on the water-bath and the residue poured into water. Any free hydrochloric or benzoic acid is removed by shaking with a dilute solution of sodium carbonate. On adding ether and shaking, the ester dissolves in the top layer of ether, which is separated and dehydrated over calcium chloride. The ether is removed on the water-bath, and the ethyl benzoate is then distilled over wire-gauze, a few bits of porcelain being added to prevent bumping. The distillate is collected between  $205^{\circ}$  and  $212^{\circ}$ . Yield, about 22 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless, sweet-smelling oil; b.p.  $211^{\circ}$ ; sp. gr. 1.05 at  $15^{\circ}$ .

**Quantitative Hydrolysis of Ethyl Benzoate.**—The quantitative estimation of an ester by hydrolysis is conducted as follows: a standard half-normal solution of alcoholic potash is prepared by dissolving 7 grams of caustic potash in about an equal weight of water and diluting to 250 c.c. with absolute alcohol. The liquid is allowed to stand overnight in a stoppered flask and filtered through asbestos into a clean dry bottle closed with a cork through which a 25 c.c. pipette is inserted. The solution is first standardised by titration against half-normal sulphuric acid, using phenolphthalein as

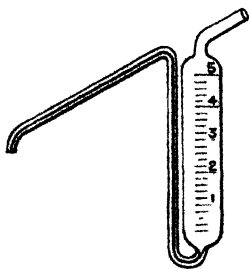


FIG. 82.

indicator. About 1 gram of ethyl benzoate is carefully weighed by difference by means of the apparatus shown in Fig. 82.

A volume corresponding to about 1 gram is delivered into a round flask (200 c.c.) by attaching a piece of rubber tubing to the wide end of the apparatus and blowing until the liquid descends to the required graduation on the wide limb. Twenty-five c.c. of the standard alcoholic potash solution are added, and the mixture is boiled on the water-bath with reflux condenser for twenty minutes.



The amount of free alkali is estimated by titration with standard sulphuric acid and the quantity of ester calculated.

*Example.*—1.355 grams required 15.1 c.c.  $N/2H_2SO_4$

$$\frac{15.1 \times 0.150 \times 100}{2 \times 1.1355} = 99.7 \text{ per cent.}$$

See *Appendix*, p. 446.

#### PREPARATION 135.

**Acetophenone** (Phenylmethylketone, Hypnone),  $C_6H_5.COCH_3$ .

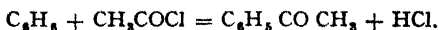
Friedel, Crafts, *Ann. Chim. Phys*, 1884, **1**, 507; **14**, 455

- 30 grams benzene
- 50 „ aluminium chloride (anhydrous)
- 35 „ acetyl chloride.

The various reactions, known as the Friedel-Crafts reactions, are effected by means of anhydrous aluminium chloride. The aluminium chloride, being very hygroscopic cannot be kept long, even in a stoppered bottle, without undergoing gradual decomposition. As the success of the reaction depends entirely on the quality of the chloride, it should be either freshly procured from a reliable firm or resublimed from a retort in a current of dry hydrogen chloride (see p. 362). It may also be prepared on a small scale by passing dry hydrochloric acid over heated aluminium foil or filings, but the operation is troublesome and scarcely repays the time spent. Attach a round flask (500 c.c.) to an upright condenser, and bring into it the aluminium chloride, which should be well powdered, and immediately cover it with the benzene. Place the flask in ice-water, and add the acetyl chloride drop by drop from a tap-funnel, which is pushed into the top of the condenser.\* A vigorous effervescence occurs, and hydrochloric acid is evolved. The contents of the flask are converted into a brown, viscid mass, which, after standing an hour, is stirred up and shaken into a beaker containing ice and water (250 c.c.). The mass decomposes with evolution of heat, and a dark oil separates on the surface. The liquid is poured into a separating-funnel and a little benzene added. The aqueous portion is drawn off, and the benzene layer shaken up with dilute caustic soda and then



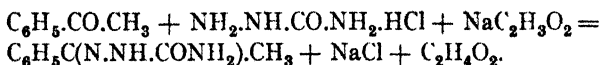
with water. The benzene solution is finally separated, dehydrated over calcium chloride, filtered, and distilled. The benzene first passes over. The thermometer then rises quickly to  $195^{\circ}$ . The receiver is now changed, the water run out of the condenser, and the distillate, which boils at  $195-200^{\circ}$ , collected separately. It forms a pale yellow oil with a characteristic sweet smell, and solidifies completely on standing. Yield, 20–25 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless plates; m.p.  $20^{\circ}$ ; b.p.  $202^{\circ}$ ; insoluble in water.

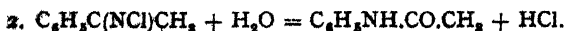
*Reactions.*—1. **Acetophenoneoxime.**—Mix together 5 grams of hydroxylamine hydrochloride dissolved in 10 c.c. of water, 8 grams of acetophenone, and 3 grams of caustic soda dissolved in a very little water. Add spirit until, on warming, the solution becomes clear, and boil it on the water-bath two to three hours. Pour into 100 c.c. water, and extract with ether. Distil off the ether and crystallise the solid residue from petroleum spirit. Yield, 8 grams; m.p.  $58-60^{\circ}$ .  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{COCH}_3 + \text{NH}_2\text{OH}\cdot\text{HCl} + \text{NaOH} = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{C}(\text{NOH})\cdot\text{CH}_3 + \text{NaCl} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

2. **Acetophenonesemicarbazone.**—Mix 1 gram of semicarbazide hydrochloride with 1.5 grams of crystallised sodium acetate, and dissolve in the smallest quantity of warm water. Add 1 gram of acetophenone and sufficient spirit to produce a clear solution when hot. Continue to heat for a few minutes. On cooling, the semicarbazone deposits as a colourless, crystalline mass.



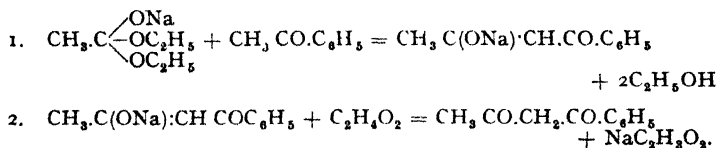
Theoretical yield; m.p.  $195-196^{\circ}$ .

3. **Beckmann's Reaction.**—Dissolve 1 gram of acetophenoneoxime in 30 c.c. anhydrous ether, and add gradually 1.5 grams of powdered phosphorus pentachloride. Distil off the ether, and add a little water to the residue. On cooling, crystals of acetanilide separate. Recrystallise from water, and determine the melting point.



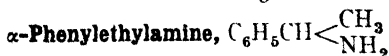
4. **Benzoylacetone** (*Claisen's Reaction*).—Six grams of dry, powdered sodium ethoxide are added to 20 grams of dry ethyl acetate, and cooled in water. The sodium ethoxide is prepared by dissolving 4 grams of sodium in 40 c.c. absolute alcohol, and distilling off the excess of alcohol, first from the water-bath, and then from the metal-bath, in a current of dry hydrogen, the temperature of the bath being raised gradually to  $200^{\circ}$ , until nothing more passes over. The white cake is detached, rapidly powdered, and the requisite quantity quickly weighed out and added to the ethyl acetate. After standing a quarter of an hour, 10 grams of acetophenone are added, when sodium benzoyl acetone begins to separate. A little ether is added, and, after standing for a few hours, the sodium compound is filtered and washed with ether. The sodium compound is then dried in the air, dissolved in cold water, and acidified with acetic acid. Benzoylacetone separates. Yield, 9–10 grams; m.p.  $60-61^{\circ}$ .

It behaves towards ferric chloride and copper acetate like ethyl acetoacetate (see Reactions, p. 100).



See *Appendix*, p. 447.

#### PREPARATION 136.



Kipping, Hunter, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1903, **83**, 1147.

25 grams acetophenoneoxime (see above) (in 50 c.c. absolute alcohol).

25 grams sodium freshly cut into small pieces and kept under benzene or in a well-stoppered bottle.

The alcoholic solution of acetophenoneoxime is placed in a round flask with a double-neck adapter (Fig. 83), the upright neck being closed by a cork and the other neck attached to a reflux condenser. The flask is heated on the water-bath until the liquid boils, when

the sodium is added piecemeal. The reaction is vigorous at first, but soon becomes sluggish when a further 50 c.c. of alcohol are added. The liquid is again boiled and the sodium added as before. The process of adding fresh alcohol and sodium is repeated until about 250 c.c. of alcohol and 25 grams of sodium have been introduced. The end of the reaction is determined by withdrawing

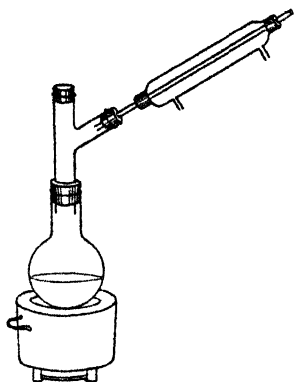
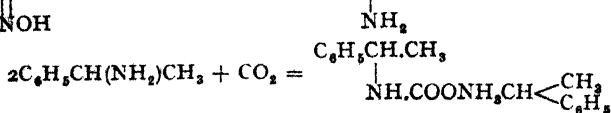
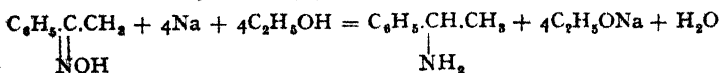


FIG. 83.

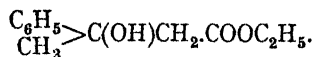
1 c.c., diluting with 1 c.c. of water, adding 1 c.c. of conc. hydrochloric acid, boiling for a minute and adding a few drops to a hot Fehling's solution. If no reduction occurs, the oxime is completely reduced. The contents of the flask are now poured into a basin, cooled in ice and neutralised with conc. hydrochloric acid. Common salt separates and is filtered, the salt in the funnel being washed with 25 c.c. of equal volumes of conc. hydrochloric acid and water and the filtrate added to the first portion. The filtrate, which

contains the hydrochloride of the base, is evaporated nearly to dryness on the water-bath and cooled. The residue is then shaken for a short time with excess of concentrated caustic soda solution which precipitates sodium chloride and causes the base to separate on the surface. The liquid is filtered and the salt washed with ether which is added to the filtrate, the latter being extracted with ether. The ether extract is dehydrated with anhydrous sodium sulphate and filtered. Dry carbon dioxide is passed into the ether solution when the carbamate of the base is precipitated. If the mixture becomes too thick, a further quantity of ether must be added or the ether filtered and carbon dioxide passed into the filtrate. The yield is 15 grams; m.p. 101–102°.



## PREPARATION 137.

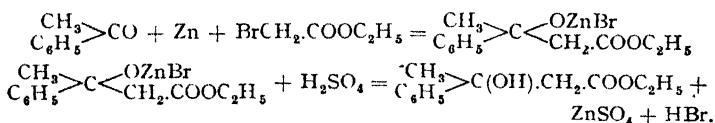
## Phenylmethyl-β-hydroxypropionic Ester,



Reformatsky, *Ber.*, 1887, **20**, 1210; Lindenbaum, *Ber.*, 1917, **50**, 1270.

12 grams acetophenone  
 20 „ bromoacetic ester  
 8 „ zinc filings or ribbon  
 75 c.c. benzene (dry).

The above are mixed together in a 500 c.c. round flask fitted to a reflux condenser and heated on the water-bath until the reaction sets in. The flask is raised from the bath until the reaction slackens and is then heated for three-quarters of an hour. The liquid becomes brownish in colour. The liquid is decanted from the small quantity of zinc left undissolved, cooled and an equal volume of dilute sulphuric acid added. The liquid becomes slightly warm and the solid matter which first separates redissolves after shaking in a separating funnel; the upper benzene layer is removed dehydrated over calcium chloride and distilled first from the water-bath to remove the benzene and finally under reduced pressure. It distils at 135–136° at 10 mm. The yield is about 16 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; soluble in most organic solvents. See *Appendix*, p. 450.

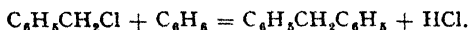
## PREPARATION 138.

 Diphenylmethane,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5.\text{CH}_2.\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ .

Cohen, Hirst, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1897, **67**, 826.

60 grams benzene  
 30 „ benzyl chloride  
 1 gram aluminium-mercury couple.

The benzene is placed in a flask attached to an upright condenser.\* The aluminium-mercury couple is then added. It is prepared by pouring a saturated solution of mercuric chloride on to aluminium foil, which is cut into strips or formed into rolls. After about a minute, the surface of the aluminium is coated with a film of metallic mercury. The solution is poured off, the foil well washed with water, then with alcohol, and finally with a little benzene. This must be done quickly and the pieces of couple dropped into the benzene. The benzyl chloride is added slowly from a tap-funnel inserted through the top of the condenser. A brisk effervescence occurs, accompanied by a considerable rise of temperature, and fumes of hydrochloric acid are evolved. When, in the course of an hour, the benzyl chloride has been added, the flask is heated on the water-bath for ten to fifteen minutes. The contents of the flask are now shaken up with water containing a little caustic soda, and the benzene solution is separated in a tap-funnel. The aqueous portion is again extracted with benzene, and the whole of the benzene solution is dehydrated over calcium chloride. The benzene is then distilled off, and when the thermometer reaches  $100^{\circ}$  the distillation is continued *in vacuo*. At 80 mm. diphenylmethane boils at  $174-176^{\circ}$ . This fraction solidifies completely on cooling, and is pure diphenylmethane; m.p.  $25-26^{\circ}$ . Yield, 14 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless needles; m.p.  $26-27^{\circ}$ ; b.p.  $262^{\circ}$ . On boiling with potassium dichromate and sulphuric acid it is oxidised to benzophenone,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{O}_2 = \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO.C}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ . See *Appendix*, p. 450.

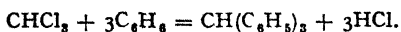
#### PREPARATION 139.

##### Triphenylmethane, $\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_3$ .

Friedel, Crafts, *Compt. rend.*, 1877, 1450; E. and O. Fischer, *Annalen*, 1878, 197, 252; Biltz, *Ber.*, 1893, 26, 1961.

200	grams (230 c.c.) benzene
40	„ (26 c.c.) chloroform
30	„ aluminium chloride.

The benzene and chloroform are mixed together and dehydrated over calcium chloride overnight before use. The liquid is then decanted into a retort connected with an upright condenser,\* and the powdered aluminium chloride (see p. 361) added in portions of about 5 grams at a time at intervals of five minutes and well shaken. On the addition of the chloride the reaction sets in spontaneously, and the liquid begins to boil with evolution of hydrochloric acid. The aluminium chloride gradually dissolves, forming a dark-brown liquid. The reaction is completed by boiling for half an hour on the sand-bath. When cold, the contents of the retort are poured into an equal volume of cold water, which decomposes the aluminium compound with evolution of heat, and the free hydrocarbon dissolves in the excess of benzene with a reddish-brown colour. The upper layer of benzene is separated from the aqueous portion, and the former dehydrated over calcium chloride. The excess of benzene is distilled off on the water-bath, and the dark-coloured residue fractionated up to 200°. It is then distilled *in vacuo* from a retort without condenser. At first an oil distils, which consists of impure diphenylmethane. When most of the diphenyl compound has passed over, the distillation suddenly slackens. The receiver is now changed, and the retort more strongly heated. An orange-coloured oil passes over, which crystallises in the receiver. The distillation is continued until the distillate no longer solidifies on cooling. A black, resinous mass remains in the retort. The crude triphenylmethane in the receiver is recrystallised from hot benzene, with which it forms a crystalline compound of the formula  $C_{19}H_{16}.C_6H_6$ . This is again crystallised. By heating the substance on the water-bath it loses benzene, and the hydrocarbon is finally crystallised from hot alcohol. Yield, 25—30 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless plates; m.p. 92°; b.p. 360°.

*Reactions.*—**Synthesis of Pararosaniline**—Dissolve a gram of the hydrocarbon in about 5 c.c. cold fuming nitric acid, pour into water, filter, wash, dry on porous plate, and dissolve in 5 c.c. glacial acetic acid. Add a gram of zinc dust on the point of a knife gradually, and shake up. The colour changes to brown, and the leuco-base of pararosaniline is formed. It is diluted with water and

precipitated by ammonia. It is then filtered and dried. On gently warming the dry precipitate with a few drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid in a porcelain basin and then diluting with water, a magenta coloration is produced from the formation of pararosaniline hydrochloride (E. and O. Fischer). See *Appendix*, p. 450.

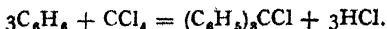
#### PREPARATION 140.

##### Triphenylmethyl Chloride, $(C_6H_5)_3CCl$ .

Friedel, Crafts, *Annales de Chem.*, 1884, (6), 1, 502. Gomberg, *Ber.*, 1900, 33, 3144; *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1900, 22, 754.

100 grams (113 c.c.) benzene  
 35 „ (22 c.c.) carbon tetrachloride  
 24 „ aluminium chloride (anhydrous).

The benzene and carbon tetrachloride are mixed together, dehydrated over calcium chloride and filtered into a 250 c.c. round flask to which a reflux condenser is attached. The mixture is then heated to boiling over wire-gauze, and after removing the flame, 24 grams of aluminium chloride (freshly sublimed and powdered) are added in small portions, so that the heat of the reaction keeps the mixture boiling. The product is heated on the water-bath for an hour, cooled somewhat and poured on to crushed ice in a thin stream and stirred. The benzene layer is separated and shaken twice with 20 per cent. hydrochloric acid (2 conc. HCl: 1H<sub>2</sub>O) and finally with conc. hydrochloric acid. The benzene solution is dehydrated over calcium chloride and the solvent distilled off on the water-bath. The residue is poured into a basin, cooled and stirred whilst it crystallises. The crystals are filtered and washed with a little ether. A further quantity can be obtained by concentrating the mother-liquor. The product is purified by crystallisation from benzene. It is washed with benzene and ether and dried. Yield, 24 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless crystals, m.p. 105–110°; decomposed at once by hot water into triphenylcarbinol and hydrogen chloride.

*Reaction.*—Dissolve about a gram of the substance in a test-

tube half filled with benzene and shake with a little zinc dust for two to three minutes. The yellow solution is filtered into a wide test-tube and shaken again until it becomes colourless. The explanation is that the chloride is converted by the zinc into triphenylmethyl,  $(C_6H_5)_3C$ , which dissolves with a yellow colour in the solvent. On exposure to air it takes up oxygen and is converted into the colourless peroxide,  $(C_6H_5)_3C.O.O.C(C_6H_5)_3$ . See *Appendix*, p. 451.

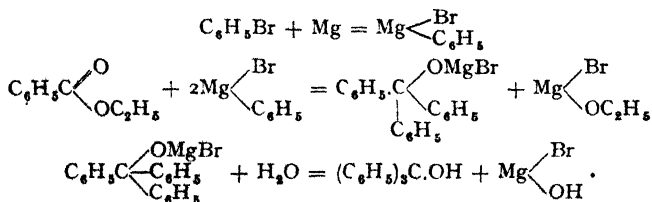
#### PREPARATION 141.

##### Triphenylcarbinol, $(C_6H_5)_3C.OH$ .

Ullmann and Munzhuber, *Ber*, 1903, **36**, 404.

80 grams bromobenzene  
 9.6 „ magnesium ribbon or turnings  
 140 c.c. ether (completely dehydrated over sodium)  
 30 grams ethyl benzoate.

The Grignard reagent is first prepared by adding the magnesium to the bromobenzene dissolved in 140 c.c. of dry ether, the reaction being started by adding a minute crystal of iodine (see p. 253). When the magnesium is dissolved, the liquid is cooled in ice and a mixture of 30 grams of ethyl benzoate in an equal volume of dry ether dropped in. After it has been added, the mixture is boiled with reflux condenser for an hour and shaken occasionally. It is then cooled and crushed ice added, followed by dilute sulphuric acid until it has an acid reaction. The ether is removed and the residue distilled in steam, which removes the bromobenzene and diphenyl formed in the reaction. The cooled resinous mass is filtered, dried and crystallised from benzene. Yield, 35 grams.

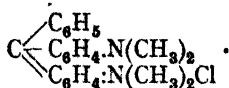


*Properties.*—Colourless needles; m.p.  $159^\circ$ ; b.p.  $360^\circ$  without decomposition. See *Appendix*, p. 452.



## PREPARATION 142.

**Benzaldehyde Green (Malachite Green)**  
 (Tetramethyldiaminotriphenylmethyl chloride),



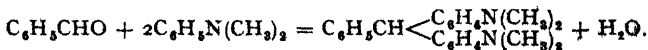
O. Fischer, *Annalen*, 1883, **217**, 250, 262.

50 grams dimethylaniline

20 „ benzaldehyde

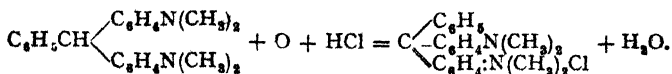
40 „ zinc chloride (fused and powdered).

A mixture of the above is heated on the water-bath in a porcelain basin until the smell of benzaldehyde has disappeared (four hours). The viscous mass is melted in boiling water, transferred to a round flask (1½ litres) and distilled in steam until no more dimethylaniline passes over. On cooling, the base adheres to the flask and is washed by decantation. It is recrystallised from absolute alcohol and is colourless. The yield is nearly theoretical. This is the leuco-base, and is formed according to the following equation :



It is converted into the colouring matter by oxidation. Ten grams of the base are dissolved by slightly warming with dilute hydrochloric acid containing exactly 2.7 grams of hydrogen chloride (made by diluting conc. hydrochloric acid with twice its volume of water and then determining the specific gravity or titrating with standard caustic soda). The liquid is diluted with 800 c.c. water, and 10 grams of a 40 per cent. acetic acid solution are added. The mixture is cooled with a few lumps of ice, and a thin paste of freshly precipitated lead peroxide containing exactly 7.5 grams  $\text{PbO}_2$  (estimated by drying a small weighed sample on the water-bath or precipitating the calculated weight of lead acetate with bleaching solution) is added in the course of five minutes with frequent shaking. The product is left five minutes, and then a solution of 10 grams sodium sulphate in 50 c.c. water is run in and the solution filtered from lead sulphate. To the filtrate a

solution of 8 grams zinc chloride in a little water is added, and then a saturated solution of common salt until no more of the dye is thrown down. It is filtered, and recrystallised by dissolving in water and adding salt solution. Yield, 80 per cent. of the theory of zinc salt.



See *Appendix*, p. 452.

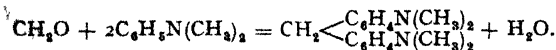
#### PREPARATION 143.

**Tetramethyldiaminodiphenyl Methane**,  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{cases} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{cases}$ .

Cohn, *Chem.-Ztg.*, 1900, **24**, 564; Möhlau, Heinze, *Ber.*, 1902, **35**, 359.

52 grams dimethylaniline  
18 „ formaldehyde 40 per cent.  
60 „ (52 c.c.) conc. hydrochloric acid.

The dimethylaniline and hydrochloric acid are mixed in a round flask and when cold the formaldehyde is added. The mixture is now heated on the water-bath with reflux condenser for six hours. The solution is made alkaline with a solution of caustic soda (about 25 grams of NaOH) and the unchanged dimethylaniline removed by steam distillation. The oily residue, on cooling, changes to a yellow, crystalline mass, which is filtered and crystallised from solution in 3 to 4 times its weight of hot alcohol. It forms colourless, glistening plates. Yield, 38 grams. A few more grams can be obtained by concentrating the mother-liquors:



*Properties.*—Lustrous plates; m.p. 90–91°; distils without decomposition, gives a blue colour with acetic acid and lead peroxide; it forms with picric acid a picrate, m.p. 178°.

## PREPARATION 144.

**Tetramethyldiaminobenzhydrol**,  $\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ .

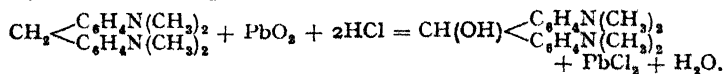
Michler, Dupertius, *Ber.*, 1876, 9, 1900; Nathanson, Müller, *Ber.*, 1889, 22, 1879.

25.4 grams tetramethyldiaminodiphenylmethane.

20 „ (19.5 c.c.) conc. hydrochloric acid.

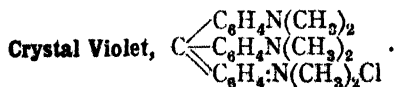
24 „ lead peroxide.

The base is dissolved in the conc. hydrochloric acid and poured into a mixture of 500 c.c. of water, 500 grams of ice and 30 c.c. of glacial acetic acid and stirred with a mechanical stirrer. When the temperature reaches  $0^\circ$  a stream of 24 grams of lead peroxide mixed into a thin paste with water (freshly prepared by adding a hot filtered solution of bleaching powder to the calculated quantity of lead acetate in solution and washing away excess of the former) is added. The liquid at once becomes dark blue. After stirring for twenty minutes the lead chloride which has dissolved is precipitated by the addition of an aqueous solution of 32–33 grams of sodium sulphate. The lead sulphate is filtered through a large fluted filter. The blue filtrate is neutralised with sodium hydroxide solution in the cold when the benzhydrol separates in greyish-blue flakes. It is filtered and dried on a porous plate. Yield, 15–18 grams. The crude product melts at  $90^\circ$  and can be used in the next preparation. To purify the benzhydrol it is crystallised from ligroin.



**Properties.**—Colourless crystals; m.p.  $96^\circ$ ; soluble in alcohol, glacial acetic acid, benzene or ether.

## PREPARATION 145.



16.2 grams tetramethyldiaminobenzhydrol

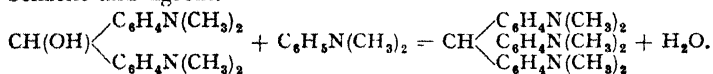
9 „ dimethylaniline

40 c.c. glacial acetic acid.

**Hexamethyltriaminobenzene**

(Leuco-base of crystal violet).

The three substances are mixed together, when a violet-blue solution results. The mixture is then heated on the water-bath and 40 c.c. of water are gradually introduced. After about a half-hour another 40 c.c. of water are added and the mixture is heated again for two hours. At the end of this time the leuco-base (hexamethyltriaminotriphenylmethane) separates in large plates which are slightly discoloured by a little crystal violet formed by oxidation. It is separated by filtration, washed with water and dried on a porous plate. Yield, 12—15 grams. The crude product melts at 170—172° and can be converted into crystal violet without further purification. A little may be recrystallised from a mixture of benzene and ligroin.



*Properties.*—Colourless, lustrous plates; m.p. 173°.

**Crystal Violet**

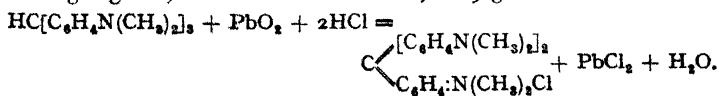
10 grams leuco-base of crystal violet

50 c.c. hydrochloric acid (10 per cent.)

6 c.c. glacial acetic acid

12 grams lead peroxide (made into a thin paste as described above).

The leuco-base is oxidised as follows: The substance is dissolved in the acid and diluted with 1 litre of water. The glacial acetic acid is then added and the mixture cooled to 0° and stirred. A thin paste of the lead peroxide (freshly prepared) is slowly added, when a bluish-violet solution is obtained. The lead is precipitated by the addition of a solution of sodium sulphate and after warming the liquid the lead sulphate is filtered through a fluted filter. The filtrate is then stirred, with the addition of a quantity of common salt, when the colouring matter separates in the cold in needles having a green, metallic lustre. Yield, 8—9 grams.



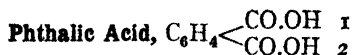
See *Appendix*, p. 453.

**Naphthalene,  $C_{10}H_8$** 

Naphthalene is obtained from the "middle oil" in the distillation of coal-tar. It crystallises in colourless, glistening plates, which have a characteristic smell.

*Properties.*—M.p.  $80^\circ$ ; b.p.  $218^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 1.145 at  $4^\circ$ . It sublimes readily, and can be distilled in steam. It is soluble in most of the common organic solvents.

*Reaction.*—Make strong solutions of about equivalent quantities of naphthalene and picric acid in acetic acid, or alcohol, and pour them together. On cooling, yellow, needle-shaped crystals of naphthalene picrate separate:  $C_{10}H_8 + C_6H_2(NO_2)_3OH$ ; m.p.  $149^\circ$ .

**PREPARATION 146.**

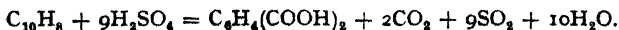
Friedländer, *Theerfarbenfabrikation*, vol. iv, p. 164.

15 grams naphthalene  
120 c.c. conc. sulphuric acid  
7.5 grams mercuric sulphate.

The mixture of naphthalene, sulphuric acid, and mercuric sulphate is placed in a retort (300 c.c.). The retort is clamped with the neck sloping upwards, and heated gently over wire-gauze with occasional shaking until the liquid surface layer of naphthalene dissolves.\* The retort is now placed in the ordinary position, with the neck sloping down, to which a condenser tube is attached by means of a roll of asbestos paper, or a lute of plaster of Paris. The end of the condenser tube is provided with a receiver containing water (100 c.c.), and cooled in cold water.

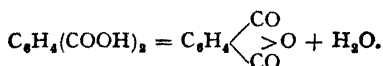
The retort is now heated (at first cautiously and then strongly) over the bare flame, and the contents are distilled. The liquid rapidly darkens in colour. At about  $250^\circ$  oxidation begins, with evolution of sulphur dioxide, which becomes very vigorous as the temperature of the liquid rises to the boiling-point. A little naphthalene first distils, and after a time crystals of phthalic anhydride appear in the condenser tube, whilst phthalic acid collects in the receiver.

The distillation is continued until the residue becomes viscid or even dry. The contents of the receiver, when cold, are filtered and washed, and then dissolved in caustic soda. Any undissolved naphthalene is removed by filtration, and the acid reprecipitated by hydrochloric acid. The acid may be recrystallised from water or dilute alcohol. Yield, about 7 grams.



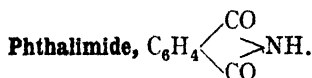
*Properties.*—Crystallises in plates with no definite melting-point, as the acid passes into the anhydride on heating. Soluble in alcohol and in hot water, slightly soluble in cold water.

*Reactions.*—Sublime a little of the acid in a test-tube or in a clock glass covered with a filter paper and funnel. Phthalic anhydride sublimes in long needles, m.p.  $128^\circ$ .



Heat about 0.25 gram of the anhydride with 0.5 gram of resorcinol in a test-tube over a small flame for a few minutes, so that the temperature remains at about  $200^\circ$ . Cool, dissolve in dilute caustic soda solution, and pour into water. A green fluorescence is produced, due to the formation of fluorescein (p. 218). See *Appendix*, p. 453.

#### PREPARATION 147.



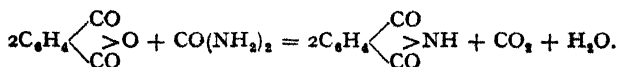
#### METHOD I.

Laurent, *Annales de Chemie*, 1836, **19**, 47; Herzog, *Zeit. angew. Chem.*, 1919, **32**, 301.

30 grams phthalic anhydride  
7 „ urea.

The mixture is heated in a large round flask on a sand-bath to  $130$ — $135^\circ$  (thermometer in the mixture). The reaction soon begins, the mass froths up, and the temperature rises spontaneously to  $160^\circ$ . When the reaction is over, a spongy solid is obtained,

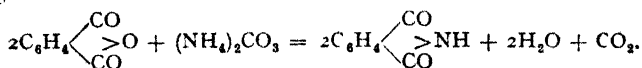
which is washed out of the flask with a little water on to a porcelain funnel. The crude product melts at  $230^{\circ}$  and is sufficiently pure for the next preparation. Yield, 25 grams.



#### METHOD II.

30 grams phthalic anhydride  
30 „ ammonium carbonate.

The finely ground mixture of phthalic anhydride and ammonium carbonate is placed in a 250 c.c. round flask furnished with a wide air condenser. It is heated over wire-gauze with occasional stirring or shaking, and finally over the bare flame until the mass fuses quietly. The process requires about one and a half hours. The air condenser should be cleared occasionally from the condensed sublimate. The contents of the flask, whilst hot, are poured out into a small porcelain basin, allowed to cool and broken up. The product is sufficiently pure without crystallisation. The yield is 25 grams.

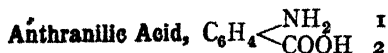


The operation requires more time than Method I; but the ammonium carbonate is more readily available.

*Properties.*—Colourless leaflets which melt at  $233^{\circ}$  and sublime.

It forms salts with metals of the general formula  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NM}' \end{array}$ .

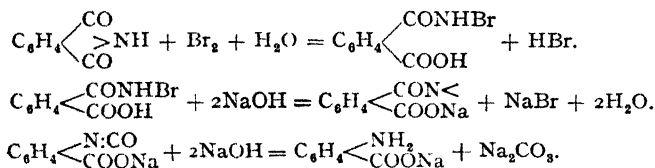
#### PREPARATION 148.



Fritsche, *Annalen*, 1841, **39**, 83; Hoogewerf and v. Dorp, *Rec. trav. chim. Pays. Bas*, 1891, **10**, 6.

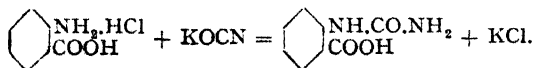
29.6 grams phthalimide  
40 „ sodium hydroxide (in 200 c.c. water)  
32 „ (10.6 c.c.) bromine.

The sodium hydroxide solution is cooled to  $-5^{\circ}$  in a freezing mixture and the bromine gradually introduced with stirring. The phthalimide, mixed into a thick paste with water, is now added. The freezing mixture is removed, and when the solution reaches room temperature, 24 grams of powdered sodium hydroxide are stirred in and the mixture is warmed to  $80^{\circ}$  and filtered. On cooling, 110 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid are poured in until the liquid is neutral, and the anthranilic acid is precipitated by the addition of 30 c.c. of glacial acetic acid. It is filtered, washed with water and dried in a desiccator. Yield, 25 grams; m. p.  $137^{\circ}$ . It is crystallised from hot water with the addition of a little animal charcoal. From the mother-liquor a further quantity can be obtained by adding cupric acetate, which precipitates the copper salt. The latter is separated by filtration and hydrogen sulphide passed through the substance suspended in water.



*Properties.*—Crystallises in plates, m. p.  $143$ – $144^{\circ}$ ; very slightly soluble in water.

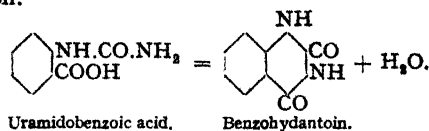
**Uramidobenzoic Acid and Benzohydantoin.**—Dissolve 2 grams of anthranilic acid hydrochloride (prepared by dissolving anthranilic acid in an equal weight of conc. hydrochloric acid diluted with an equal volume of water and cooling) in 25 c.c. of water and add 1 gram of potassium cyanate in 5 c.c. of water. On standing for a short time a thick paste of the uramido-compound separates in fine crystals; m. p.  $152^{\circ}$ . The yield is 1.5 grams.



The 1.5 grams of the uramido-compound are heated on the water-bath for half an hour with 4 c.c. of conc. hydrochloric acid. The uramido-compound first passes into solution and the hydantoin then separates in colourless needles, which can be crystallised from



much boiling water and do not melt at  $300^{\circ}$ , but sublime without decomposition.



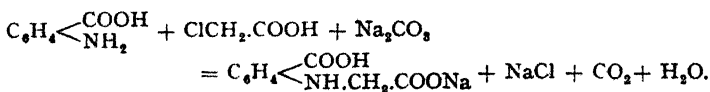
#### PREPARATION 149.

**Phenylglycine *o*-Carboxylic Acid**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{NH.CO.NH}_2$  1

Heumann, *Ber.*, 1890, **23**, 3431; Mauthner and Suida, *Monatsh.*, 1889, **9**, 728.

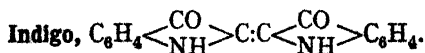
13.6 grams anthranilic acid  
 11.4 „ chloracetic acid  
 17 „ sodium carbonate (anhydrous) in 100 c.c.  
 water.

The mixture is heated on the water-bath for three hours, cooled and acidified with hydrochloric acid. A light-brown precipitate is obtained, which is filtered next day. It melts at  $185^{\circ}$  and is impure. After recrystallisation from water, the m.p. rises to about  $209^{\circ}$ . Yield, about 10 grams. A few more grams of the acid can be obtained by adding an excess of conc. hydrochloric acid to the filtrate from the crude product.



*Properties.*—Crystallises in colourless hexagonal plates; m.p.  $200^{\circ}$ .

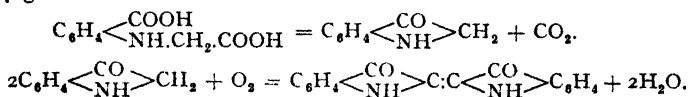
#### PREPARATION 150.



Heumann, *Ber.*, 1890, **23**, 3431.

10 grams phenylglycine *o*-carboxylic acid  
 30 „ sodium hydroxide  
 10 c.c. water.

The mixture is heated to  $210^{\circ}$  in a nickel basin and well stirred with a thermometer, protected by glass tubing (see Prep. 92, p. 206). The mass fuses and the colour gradually deepens to orange-red. Whilst still hot the melt is dissolved in 200 c.c. of water. The solution oxidises when shaken up in contact with air, forming a precipitate of indigo blue. The process is more rapidly effected by acidifying with hydrochloric acid and oxidising with ferric chloride solution until no further precipitate of indigo is formed. It is filtered, washed with water and dried. Yield, 3.7 grams.



#### PREPARATION 151.

##### Isatin from Indigo, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\left\langle\begin{smallmatrix}\text{CO} \\ \text{NH}\end{smallmatrix}\right\rangle\text{CO}$ .

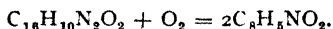
Erdmann, *J. prakt. Chem.*, 1841, 24, 11; Knop, *Jahresh.*, 1865, 580.

100 grams indigo (in fine powder)

50 c.c. conc. nitric acid diluted with 10 c.c. water.

Mix up the indigo into a paste with 300 c.c. of boiling water in a large basin. Heat to boiling and remove the flame. Then add the nitric acid to the hot liquid from a tap-funnel at the rate of a drop or two a second, so that it is all added in the course of twenty minutes, and stir well all the time. The mass, which is at first pasty, froths up, and towards the end becomes thinner. Boil up for about two minutes, as soon as the acid has all been added, and then pour out about half the liquid into a second large basin and add a litre of boiling water to each. Boil up for five minutes, and decant from the floating lumps of tarry matter through a large fluted filter paper previously moistened with water. Add another litre of hot water to each basin, boil up, and filter. Evaporate the combined red-coloured filtrates to about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  litres, and filter again, if necessary, from a further deposit of tar. On cooling, a quantity of red crystals discoloured with tar will separate. Filter and concentrate the filtrate, Redissolve

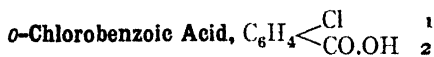
the crystals in the smallest quantity of boiling water, and let the liquid cool somewhat, so that some of the tarry matter may separate; filter and evaporate the filtrate until crystals of isatin nearly cover the surface; then cool and filter off the red, crystalline deposit. A further quantity of crystals may be obtained by evaporating the mother-liquors, which must be frequently filtered from tarry deposit. The crystals obtained in this way may be purified by dissolving them in caustic potash solution and adding concentrated hydrochloric acid to the clear liquid so long as a black precipitate is formed. The liquid is then filtered and the purified isatin completely thrown down in the filtrate with more acid. The substance is then filtered and recrystallised from water. Yield, about 10 grams.



*Properties.*—Red monoclinic prisms; m.p.  $201^\circ$ ; soluble in hot water and alcohol.

*Reaction.*—Dissolve a few crystals in concentrated sulphuric acid in the cold and shake up with a little coal-tar benzene. A blue colour due to thiophene is produced. See *Appendix*, p. 454.

#### PREPARATION 152.



Graebe, *Annalen*, 1893, **276**, 54.

13.7 grams anthranilic acid

30 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (in 75 c.c. water)

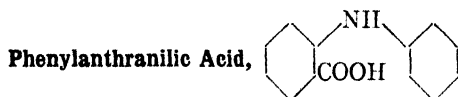
7 grams sodium nitrite (in 25 c.c. water).

The anthranilic acid is dissolved in the hydrochloric acid and diazotised in the usual way with the solution of sodium nitrite (see p. 187). The diazo-solution is slowly added with shaking to an ice-cold solution of cuprous chloride, made by boiling 7 grams of cupric chloride (or the equivalent of carbonate) in 50 c.c. of conc. hydrochloric acid diluted with 15 c.c. of water with the addition of 4–5 grams of copper. The reaction proceeds rapidly with frothing, produced by the evolution of nitrogen. The mixture is left four to five hours at the ordinary temperature, when the

chlorobenzoic acid is filtered and washed with a little water. Yield, about 15 grams; m.p. 133—135°. To purify it, it is dissolved in hot water containing a little alcohol, animal charcoal added and boiled. It is filtered hot, when the acid crystallises in colourless needles, m.p. 137—138°. Yield, 13—14 grams.



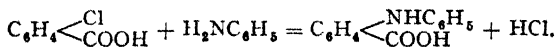
PREPARATION 153.



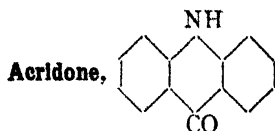
Graebe and Lagodzinski, *Ber.*, 1892, **25**, 1734; Ullmann, *Ber.*, 1903, **36**, 2382, 1907, **355**, 322.

10 grams *o*-chlorobenzoic acid  
 10 „ potassium carbonate  
 40 c.c. aniline  
 0.1 „ precipitated copper.

The above mixture is boiled in a round flask fitted with a short upright air condenser at such a rate that a little water may escape from the top of the condenser. The mixture gradually darkens and the reaction is complete in about three hours. The unchanged aniline is removed by steam distillation and the residue filtered hot. The latter is boiled with animal charcoal and again filtered. On adding conc. hydrochloric acid to the hot filtrate a nearly colourless precipitate of phenylanthranilic acid is thrown down. This is filtered when cold, washed with cold water and dried. The yield is 13 grams; m.p. 180—183°. It may be purified by recrystallisation from acetic acid and alcohol, and forms rhombic plates, m.p. 183—184°.



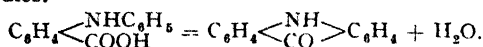
## PREPARATION 154.



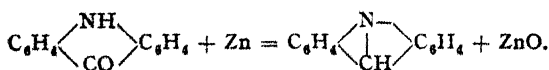
Graebe and Lagodzinski, *Ber.*, 1892, **25**, 1737; *Annalen*, 1893, **276**, 35.

5 grams phenylanthranilic acid  
 35 c.c. conc. sulphuric acid.

The phenylanthranilic acid and sulphuric acid are heated together on the water-bath for three hours. A yellowish-green, fluorescent solution is obtained, which is cooled in ice, and 40 c.c. of ice water are added slowly with vigorous shaking and cooling. The yellow precipitate of acridone is thrown down and filtered. It is then warmed in a basin with 300 c.c. of 2½ per cent. sodium carbonate solution to dissolve any unchanged phenylanthranilic acid and again filtered. It is washed with water and dried on a porous plate. Yield, 4 grams. It crystallises from glacial acetic acid in yellow needles.



**Acridine.**—To convert acridone into acridine it is well mixed with 12 to 15 grams of zinc dust and introduced into a thick-walled glass tube sealed at one end and bent at a right angle. The mixture is covered with 10 grams more of zinc dust and the tube clamped so that the open arm bends downwards into a beaker placed below, whilst the closed portion containing the mixture lies horizontally. The zinc layer is now heated and then the mixture. The acridine formed on reduction sublimes towards the open end of the tube. The sublimate, which has a slightly pink colour, is dissolved in hydrochloric acid, filtered if necessary and the acridine precipitated by the addition of alkali. It is filtered and crystallised from dilute methyl alcohol with the addition of a little animal charcoal. It forms light-yellow needles, m.p. 110°, which dissolve in alcohol with a blue fluorescence.



Acridine emits an irritating vapour which strongly attacks the eyes, a fact to which it owes its name. See *Appendix*, p. 455.

PREPARATION 155.

**β-Naphthalenesulphonate of Sodium,  $C_{10}H_7SO_3Na$ .**

Merz, Weith, *Ber.*, 1870, **3**, 196.

50 grams naphthalene  
60 „ conc. sulphuric acid.

The mixture is heated in a round flask (250 c.c.) in the metal-bath to 160—170° for four or five hours. The liquid is then poured into a basin of water (1 litre), which is heated up and neutralised with chalk or slaked lime in the form of a thick cream. The hot liquid is filtered through cloth, squeezed out, and washed with hot water. The filtrate is evaporated on a ring-burner until a sample crystallises on cooling. The crystalline mass of the calcium salt of naphthalene sulphonic acid is filtered and well pressed. It is redissolved in hot water, and a solution of sodium carbonate added, until the calcium is just precipitated. The liquid is again filtered through cloth, or at the pump, washed and well pressed. The filtrate is evaporated to crystallisation as before. The sodium naphthalene sulphonate is separated by filtration, and dried in a basin on the water-bath. The mother-liquor, on evaporation, yields a further quantity of the salt. Yield, about 60 grams.

1.  $C_{10}H_8 + H_2SO_4 = C_{10}H_7SO_3H + H_2O$ .
2.  $2C_{10}H_7SO_3H + CaO = (C_{10}H_7SO_3)_2Ca + H_2O$ .
3.  $(C_{10}H_7SO_3)_2Ca + Na_2CO_3 = 2C_{10}H_7SO_3Na + CaCO_3$ .

*Properties.*—Foliated crystals; soluble in water. See *Appendix*, p. 455.

**Naphthalene from Sodium β-Naphthalene Sulphonate.**—Mix together 10 grams of the sodium salt and 30 grams of syrupy phosphoric acid in a half-litre round flask and distil in *superheated steam*. The steam is superheated by passing it from the boiler through a spiral copper tube heated to redness by a Bunsen burner as shown in Fig. 84.

The spiral tube is attached by stout corks or folds of asbestos paper to the glass tube from the boiler on the one hand, and to the inlet tube to the distilling flask on the other, and the corks or asbestos are wired on. The temperature of the mixture in the

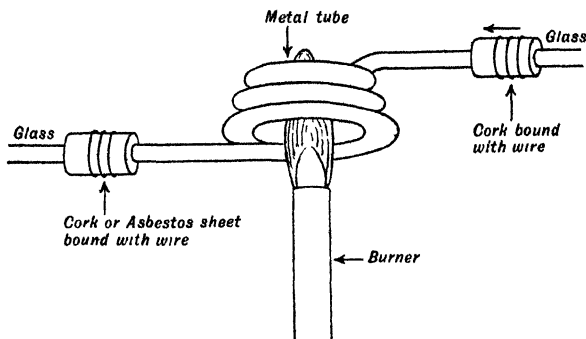
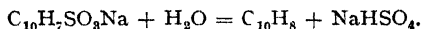


FIG. 84.

distilling flask is maintained at a temperature of about  $190-200^{\circ}$ . The naphthalene begins to pass over with the steam when the temperature reaches  $180^{\circ}$ . When no more naphthalene distils, the distillate is filtered and the naphthalene crystallised from alcohol. The yield is 4.5 grams (82 per cent.).



(Armstrong and Miller, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1884, **45**, 148.)

#### PREPARATION 156.

##### $\beta$ -Naphthol, $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_7\text{OH}$ .

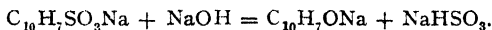
Eller, *Annalen*, 1869, **152**, 275; E. Fischer, *Anleitung z. D. org. Präparate*.

30 grams  $\beta$ -naphthalene sulphonate of sodium  
 90 „ caustic soda  
 3 c.c. water.

The caustic soda and water are heated in a nickel or silver crucible, and stirred with a thermometer, protected as described under the

preparation of phenol (p. 206). When the temperature reaches  $280^{\circ}$ , the powdered naphthalene sulphonate is added a little at a time. When all has been added, the temperature is raised. At about  $300^{\circ}$  the mass froths up and becomes light yellow in colour, which indicates the commencement of the reaction. The temperature is maintained at  $310$ — $320^{\circ}$  for a few minutes, and the end of the process is indicated by the yellow mass becoming thinner and also darker in colour, and separating into two layers. The stirring is now stopped and the flame withdrawn. The product, when cold, is dissolved in a little water, and acidified with a mixture of equal volumes of concentrated hydrochloric acid and water.\*

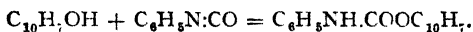
The naphthol is filtered off when cold, and is recrystallised from water. Yield, 15 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless leaflets; m.p.  $122^{\circ}$ ; b.p.  $286^{\circ}$ .

*Reactions.*—1. Add to a solution of the naphthol in water a few drops of ferric chloride. A green coloration is produced, and after a time a flocculent precipitate of dinaphthol,  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_2$ .

2. Heat on the water-bath 0.8 gram of  $\beta$ -naphthol with 0.6 gram of phenyl isocyanate for a few minutes. The mixture forms a crystalline mass of the phenylurethane of naphthol.



Recrystallised from alcohol, colourless flat prisms separate; m.p.  $158^{\circ}$ .

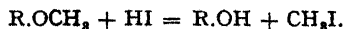
See also Reaction 6, p. 184.

**$\beta$ -Naphthyl methyl ether.**—Dissolve 3.6 grams  $\beta$ -naphthol in 12.5 c.c. 10 per cent. caustic soda solution, add 3 c.c. methyl sulphate, warm the liquid gently and shake vigorously. In a short time the naphthyl methyl ether separates as a solid mass. The product is heated for ten minutes on the water-bath, a little water is added, and the naphthyl ether filtered and washed with water. It is crystallised from alcohol and deposits in lustrous plates; m.p.  $70$ — $72^{\circ}$ . The yield is theoretical. It may be used for analysis by Zeisel's method.

**Zeisel's Method.**—The method consists in estimating methoxyl or ethoxyl groups by decomposing the substance with strong hydriodic acid and eliminating the alkyl group as alkyl iodide.



The alkyl iodide is passed through an alcoholic solution of silver nitrate, which decomposes the alkyl iodide, and the silver iodide is weighed.



The apparatus devised by Sir W. H. Perkin, is shown in Fig. 85 (*Proc. Chem. Soc.*, 1903, **19**, 1370).

It consists of a distilling flask (100 c.c.) with a long neck; the distance between the bulb and side tube is about 20 cms. (8 ins.). It is provided with an inlet tube which terminates above the surface

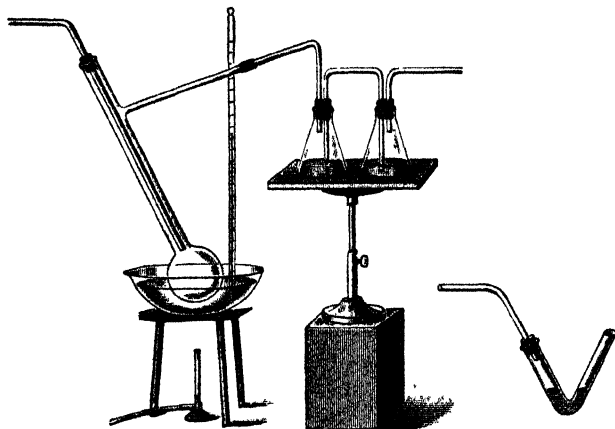


FIG. 85.

of the liquid, and is attached at the other end with a carbon dioxide Kipp and wash-bottle containing silver nitrate solution to remove traces of hydrochloric acid or hydrogen sulphide. The side-tube of the distilling flask is attached to two small 100 c.c. Erlenmeyer flasks, provided with double-bored rubber corks. The first bent tube, which is attached to the side-tube of the distilling flask, is cut off below the cork, the second terminates just above the surface of the liquid in the first flask and dips below the liquid in the second. The third or outlet tube is bent at right angles and is cut off below the cork.

The distilling flask is heated in a basin containing glycerol. The first Erlenmeyer flask is charged with 20 c.c. alcoholic silver nitrate,

and the second with 15 c.c. of the same solution, which is prepared by dissolving 2 grams of fused silver nitrate in 5 c.c. water and adding 45 c.c. absolute alcohol. An accurately weighed quantity (0.3—0.6 gram) of substance is introduced in a small weighing tube into the distilling flask and 15 c.c. of strong hydriodic acid (acid of sp. gr. 1.7 for Zeisel's estimations can be purchased). When the apparatus has been carefully fixed together, the glycerol bath is heated to 130—140° and a slow current of carbon dioxide (two bubbles a second) is passed through the apparatus. The temperature of the glycerol bath is slowly raised until the hydriodic acid begins to boil gently. A white deposit (a compound of silver iodide and nitrate) begins to form on the surface of the first flask and gradually settles to the bottom, but usually only a trace appears in the second vessel. The operation is generally completed in one hour; but before stopping the process it is advisable to test the vapour passing through by removing the flasks and attaching the small bent U-tube (shown in the Fig. and containing a little alcoholic silver nitrate solution) to the end of the side tube. If in the course of ten minutes no turbidity appears, the operation may be considered at an end, otherwise it is necessary to connect up the flask and continue the heating for another twenty minutes.

About 50 c.c. of water are heated to boiling in a beaker (250 c.c.) and the contents of both flasks gradually added and well washed out with hot water. The white precipitate changes to the yellow iodide and the alcohol is driven off.

When the top liquid is no longer opalescent but clear, the precipitate is collected in a Gooch crucible and dried and weighed as described on p. 28.

For volatile substances like anisole this method cannot be employed.

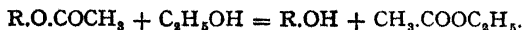
*Example.*—0.3150 gram naphthyl ether gave 0.468 gram AgI:

$$\frac{31 \times 0.468 \times 100}{235 \times 0.3150} = 19.6 \text{ per cent.}$$

Calculated for  $C_{10}H_7OCH_3$ ;  $CH_3O = 19.6$  per cent.

**$\beta$ -Naphthyl Acetate.**—Boil gently 5 grams  $\beta$ -naphthol and 10 grams acetic anhydride for a quarter of an hour with air condenser and pour the product into water. Crystallise from dilute alcohol; m.p. 70°.

**A. G. Perkin's Acetyl method** (*Proc. Chem. Soc.*, 1904, 20, 171). The method consists in hydrolysing the acetyl derivative in presence of alcohol and distilling off the ethyl acetate and then estimating the quantity by hydrolysis.



The apparatus is shown in Fig. 86. It consists of a small distilling flask (200 c.c.) with bent side-tube, which is fitted to a long condenser. A tap-funnel is inserted into the neck and the flask is heated over wire-gauze. About 0.5 gram of naphthyl acetate is accurately weighed out of a small sample tube by difference and any dust adhering to the neck of the flask washed down with 5 c.c. pure conc. sulphuric acid and 30 c.c. pure alcohol, which are

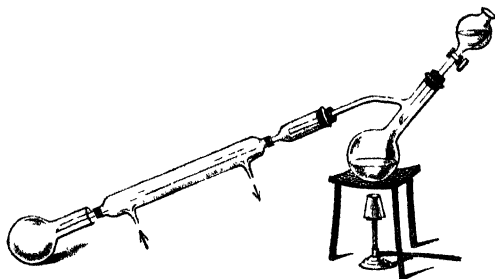


FIG. 86.

slowly run in with shaking. A small fragment of porous pot is also added. Twenty c.c. half-normal alcoholic potash (see p. 256) are introduced into the round flask (200 c.c.) which serves as receiver and 20 c.c. pure alcohol are poured into the tap-funnel. The liquid in the flask is slowly distilled whilst the alcohol is delivered drop by drop from the tap-funnel at about the same rate as the liquid distils. The distillation is continued until about half the bulk of liquid originally present in the flask remains. This residue should be quite colourless. The receiver is now attached to a reflux condenser and boiled on the water-bath for half-an-hour and finally titrated with half-normal sulphuric acid, using phenolphthalein as indicator.

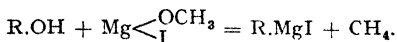
The method does not give good results with acetamido-compounds like acetanilide, etc.

*Example.*—0.663 gram naphthyl acetate required 7.5 c.c. N/2 KOH.

$$\frac{7.5 \times 0.043 \times 100}{2 \times 0.633} = 23.6 \text{ per cent.}$$

Calculated for  $C_{10}H_7.O.COCH_3$ ;  $C_2H_5O = 23.1$  per cent.

**Tschugaeff's Hydroxyl Method.**—This method rests upon the action of hydroxyl compounds on magnesium methyl iodide by which methane is evolved.



The apparatus is an ordinary Lunge nitrometer filled with mercury, which together with the attached Erlenmeyer flask is kept at constant temperature by a flow of water through an outer jacket. The three-way cock is connected with the Erlenmeyer flask (150 c.c.) by stout rubber tubing. A stock solution of magnesium methyl iodide is first prepared by mixing together in a flask connected with a reflux condenser 100 grams amyl ether distilled over sodium, 9.6 grams clean magnesium ribbon and 35.5 grams dry methyl iodide and a few iodine crystals. After the first reaction is over the mixture is heated for 1–2 hours on the water-bath with condenser to expel unchanged methyl iodide, and preserved in a vaselined stoppered vessel. About 0.1–0.15 gram  $\beta$ -naphthol is accurately weighed in a tube which is of such a length that it rests against the side of the nitrometer flask. About 10 c.c. of the reagent are poured into the flask; the tube containing the substance, which is dissolved in a little amyl ether, is slipped in; the flask is attached to the side-tube of the nitrometer and is then cut off from the nitrometer tube by turning the tap. A little moisture and oxygen in the flask are absorbed by the reagent and the pressure falls. After standing for a quarter of an hour the nitrometer tube is nearly filled up with mercury, the tap is withdrawn for a moment to readjust pressure and the tube then completely filled with mercury. The tap is now turned so as to establish communication between the flask and nitrometer tube and the mercury reservoir lowered. The tube containing the solution of the naphthol is inverted and shaken. Evolution of methane rapidly occurs and in a short time the volume remains

constant. The volume, temperature and pressure are read off and the percentage of hydroxyl calculated.

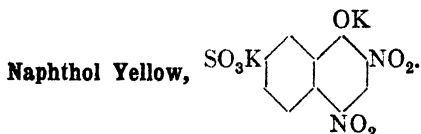
*Example.*—0.120 gram  $\beta$ -naphthol gave 20 c.c. methane at N.T.P.

$$\frac{20 \times 17 \times 100}{22400 \times 0.120} = 12.6.$$

Calculated for  $C_{10}H_7OH$ : OH = 11.8 per cent.

(Tschugaeff, *Ber.*, 1902, **35**, 3912; Hibbert and Sudborough, *Proc. Chem. Soc.*, 1903, **19**, 285; Zerewitinoff, *Ber.*, 1907, **40**, 2023.)

#### PREPARATION 157.



Friedländer, *Theerfarbenfabrikation*, I, 322, II, 215; Cain and Thorpe, *The Synthetic Dyestuffs*, p. 226.

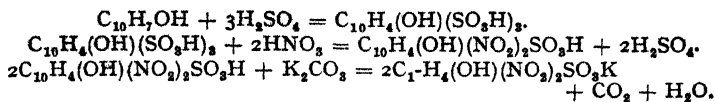
20 grams  $\alpha$ -naphthol.

80 „ (45 c.c.) conc. sulphuric acid.

40 „ (30 c.c.) conc. nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.4).

The mixture of  $\alpha$ -naphthol and sulphuric acid is heated for two hours to  $120^\circ$  and then dissolved in 120 c.c. water. The solution is cooled to  $20^\circ$  and stirred mechanically whilst the nitric acid is run in drop by drop. As the temperature should not rise above  $40^\circ$  it will be found necessary at the beginning to cool the vessel in a freezing mixture. After the nitric acid has been added the stirring is continued for another half hour and the product is then left overnight. The naphthol yellow crystallises out and is filtered and washed with small quantities of a cold, saturated solution of salt. The precipitate is then dissolved in a large basin of hot water and potassium carbonate solution added until the liquid gives an alkaline reaction. On cooling, the potassium

salt separates in small orange needles, and is filtered and dried on a porous plate. Yield, 20—25 grams.



See *Appendix*, p. 456.

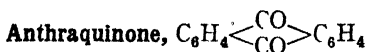
### Anthracene.

Anthracene,  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{10}$  (*άνθραξ*, coal) occurs with its isomer, *phenanthrene*, and a variety of other compounds in the last portion of the distillate from coal-tar, known as anthracene oil. The dark-coloured liquid deposits on standing a brown, crystalline mass. It is filtered and washed with naphtha and the purified, yellow crystalline product containing about 50 per cent. of anthracene is used commercially for the manufacture of alizarin.

*Properties.*—Pure anthracene crystallises in colourless plates with a lustrous surface and blue fluorescence. It melts at  $213^\circ$  and boils at  $351^\circ$  and forms a compound with picric acid,  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{10}\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{OH}(\text{NO}_2)_3$ , which crystallises in bright red needles.

*Reaction.*—Dissolve picric acid and anthracene separately in about equal molecular proportions in glacial acetic acid and mix the hot solutions. Red crystals soon deposit and melt at  $138^\circ$ .

### PREPARATION 158.



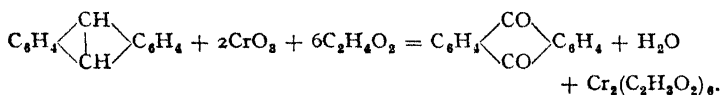
Graebe, Liebermann, *Annalen, Suppl.*, 1869, **7**, 284.

- 10 grams anthracene (pure)
- 120 c.c. glacial acetic acid
- 20 grams chromium trioxide dissolved in 15 c.c. water,  
and then 75 c.c. glacial acetic acid added.

The anthracene is dissolved in the acetic acid by boiling them together in a round flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) with upright condenser over wire-gauze. The solution of chromium trioxide is then dropped in from a tap-funnel pushed into the top end of the condenser whilst the liquid is kept boiling. The operation should last about an hour. The solution becomes a deep green. It is allowed to cool

and poured into water (500 c.c.), which precipitates the anthraquinone in the form of a brown powder. After standing an hour, it is filtered through a large fluted filter, washed with a little hot water, then with warm dilute caustic soda and water again. Yield, 10–12 grams.

**Sublimation.**—A portion of the dry substance may be purified by sublimation. It is placed (2–3 grams) on a large watch-glass, which is heated on the sand-bath over a very small flame. The watch-glass is covered with a sheet of filter paper, which is kept flat by a funnel placed above. After five minutes or so pale yellow, needle-shaped crystals of anthraquinone will have sublimed on to the filter paper.

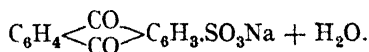


**Properties.**—Yellow needles: m.p.  $277^\circ$ ; sublimes at  $250^\circ$ ; b.p.  $382^\circ$ ; insoluble in water, soluble in acetic acid, less soluble in benzene and other organic solvents.

**Reaction.**—Add a little dilute caustic soda to a small quantity of anthraquinone, and then a little zinc dust. On heating to boiling, an intense red coloration is produced, which disappears on shaking. Sodium oxanthranolate,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{CO} \\ | \\ \diagdown \text{CH(ONa)} \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_4$ , is formed, which oxidises in the air to anthraquinone. See *Appendix*, p. 456.

#### PREPARATION 159.

##### Anthraquinone $\beta$ -monosulphonate of Sodium,



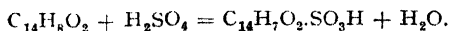
Graebe, Liebermann, *Annalen*, 1871, 160, 131; A. G. Perkin, Private communication.

30 grams anthraquinone.

30 „ fuming sulphuric acid (40 per cent.  $\text{SO}_3$ ).<sup>1</sup>

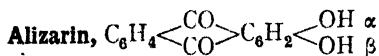
<sup>1</sup> As fuming sulphuric acid is difficult to keep in an ordinary stoppered bottle without absorbing moisture, it is advisable to coat the stopper with a layer of paraffin wax, and a substantial covering of plaster of Paris above this.

The 40 per cent. fuming sulphuric acid is removed from the bottle by cautiously melting it in a sand-bath, and it is then weighed out in a flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre). The anthraquinone is added, and the flask attached by a cork to an air-condenser. The mixture is heated in a paraffin or metal-bath to  $150-160^{\circ}$  for eight hours. The dark-coloured mass is poured *whilst hot* into a large basin containing about a litre of cold water, and boiled for an hour. The unattacked anthraquinone, which does not dissolve, is removed by filtration at the pump. The precipitate is then replaced in the basin and boiled up again with about  $\frac{1}{2}$  litre of water, filtered and finally washed once or twice with boiling water. The combined filtrate and washings, which have a deep brown colour, are evaporated with the addition of 0.2 gram of potassium chlorate until about  $\frac{1}{2}$  litre of liquid remains. It is now nearly neutralised with sodium carbonate solution (about 120 grams soda crystals) but not completely, as the sodium salt of the mono-sulphonic acid is less soluble in presence of acid. It is therefore convenient to pour out half a test-tube of the acid liquid, and proceed to neutralise the remainder. The small quantity of acid liquid is then replaced. The liquid is evaporated on the water-bath until a scum covers the surface, and it is then left to cool. The sodium salt of the sulphonic acid crystallises in pale yellow, silky crystals, and is separated at the pump. After being washed three or four times with a very little slightly acid water, it is dried on a porous plate. Yield, 20—25 grams. A further quantity of the salt may be obtained by evaporating the mother-liquor, but it is liable to contain sodium sulphate.



*Properties.*—The sodium salt of the sulphonic acid crystallises, when pure, in colourless leaflets, slightly soluble in cold water, insoluble in alcohol.

#### PREPARATION 160.



Graebe, Liebermann, *Annalen, Spl.*, 1869, 300; Perkin, *Engl. Patent*, 1869, No. 1948; A. G. Perkin, Private communication.

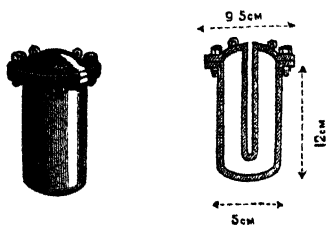
COHEN'S P. O. C.

U



- 20 grams anthraquinone monosulphonate of sodium  
 90 „ caustic soda  
 5 „ potassium chlorate.

The caustic soda is dissolved in about half its weight of water, and is added hot to the anthraquinone sulphonate of sodium, previously mixed into a paste with the potassium chlorate dissolved in about 50 c.c. of water. The mixture, which forms a stiff paste, is transferred at once to a small metal pressure tube of steel or phosphor-bronze of the shape and dimensions shown in Fig. 87. The mixture fills it about two-thirds full. A sheet



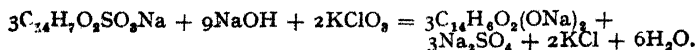
Thickness of metal 1 cm.

FIG. 87.

of asbestos cardboard is inserted between the body and the top of the vessel, and the metal top is then screwed firmly on. The pressure tube is heated for three hours in a paraffin or oil-bath, so that the thermometer inserted into the inner tube, which contains a little paraffin, registers 190—200°.

The dark violet-coloured

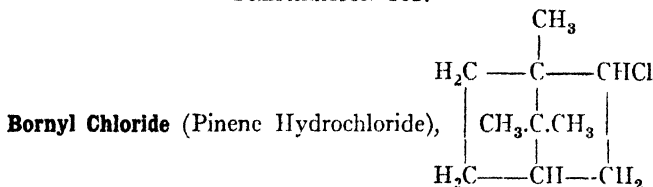
mass, after cooling, is scraped out and digested with boiling water for an hour. Milk of lime is added until the violet calcium alizarate is all precipitated. This can be ascertained in a small filtered sample by adding a little milk of lime, when no violet precipitate should be formed. The precipitate is filtered at the pump and washed with boiling water until the filtrate is no longer red. The red filtrate contains a little monohydroxyanthraquinone, which may be precipitated by hydrochloric acid. The calcium alizarate on the filter is suspended in a large quantity of hot water, and decomposed by adding hydrochloric acid. The alizarin, which separates as an orange, flocculent precipitate, is filtered cold, washed about eight times with cold water, and finally dried and crystallised from alcohol or preferably cumene. Yield, 10—15 grams.



**Properties.**—Orange needles; m.p. 289—290°; sublimes completely at 140° without decomposition; soluble in alkalis with a deep purple colour (sodium alizarate). It is reduced to anthracene on heating with dry zinc dust.

**Reaction.**—Make a small quantity of solution of alizarin in caustic soda, and pour into a beaker containing a strong solution of alum. The insoluble aluminium alizarate is precipitated as a red lake. See *Appendix*, p. 457.

#### PREPARATION 161.



Ullmann, *Org. chem. Prakt.*, p. 230.

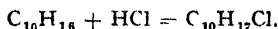
300 grams turpentine oil.

The turpentine oil mixed with 2—3 grams of clean sodium is distilled with a long fractionating column and a fraction collected at 154—160° which consists almost entirely of  $\alpha$ -pinene.<sup>1</sup> About 200 grams of the purified pinene are placed in a wide-mouthed flask or bottle provided with a rubber stopper carrying (1) an inlet tube reaching almost to the bottom of the vessel, (2) an outlet tube connected with a calcium chloride tube, (3) a stirrer with mercury seal and (4) a thermometer. The liquid is cooled in ice and salt to 5° and stirred, whilst dry hydrogen chloride, dried through two wash-bottles containing conc. sulphuric acid and one empty bottle, is passed into the oil. The gas is rapidly absorbed and the temperature, which rises, must be maintained below 15°. When no more gas is absorbed the mixture is cooled below 0° and filtered. The solid which separates is collected on a porous plate and left in a desiccator. The filtrate is again saturated with the gas, when a further quantity of solid is obtained. The

<sup>1</sup> The sodium remaining in the flask must be dissolved in spirit before being poured away.

two portions of the crude bornyl chloride, amounting to about 125 grams, are dissolved in about 80 c.c. of alcohol by warming on the water-bath and then cooled to  $-5^{\circ}$  and stirred. Colourless crystals of pure bornyl chloride are thus obtained, m.p.  $119-120^{\circ}$ . Yield, 95—100 grams.

See *Appendix*, p. 458.



#### PREPARATION 162.

##### Camphene from Bornyl Chloride, $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}$

Reychler, *Ber.*, 1896, **29**, 696; Ullmann, *Org. chem. Prakt.*, p. 232.

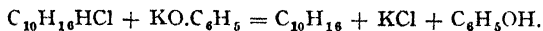
50 grams pinene hydrochloride

95 „ phenol

38 „ potassium hydroxide.

The phenol is melted in a 250 c.c. distilling flask and 38 grams of potassium hydroxide are added, the mixture being shaken and gently warmed until complete solution is obtained, a little water being added if necessary. The flask, fitted with a thermometer, is now connected with a condenser in the ordinary way and carefully heated on wire-gauze in order to remove water formed in the reaction. A small amount of phenol also distils. When the temperature reaches  $150^{\circ}$ , the water is run out of the condenser jacket and the distillation continued until the thermometer indicates  $180^{\circ}$ , that is, the boiling-point of the phenol. The residue, which consists of potassium phenate, is cooled somewhat and the flask attached to a reflux air condenser, the side-tube being plugged. Fifty grams of pinene hydrochloride are now added in three portions (the reaction being allowed to subside before the next addition) and the whole is carefully heated and kept boiling for three hours. It is then distilled, using an air-condenser and the distillate collected up to  $180^{\circ}$ . Camphene distils first at  $150-160^{\circ}$  and later phenol passes over, the distillation being stopped when the distillate dissolves completely in dilute sodium hydroxide. The distillate is shaken with dilute sodium hydroxide to remove phenol and cooled in ice, when the camphene solidifies. It is filtered through cloth, washed with water and the solid placed in a small flask. A little

oil that separates from the filtrate is also collected and mixed with the solid camphene. The camphene is melted on the water-bath, shaken with a few pieces of calcium chloride and left overnight. It is then melted and decanted into a small distilling flask and distilled with a short fractionating column and air condenser. The liquid distilling at 155—158° is nearly pure camphene and solidifies in the receiver. The yield is 25—30 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless crystalline mass; m.p. 51—52°; b.p. 160°. See *Appendix*, p. 458.

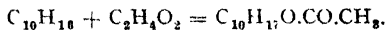
#### PREPARATION 163.

##### Isobornyl Acetate, $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{O.COCH}_3$ .

Bertram, Wallbaum, *J. für prakt. Chem.*, 1894, [2], **49**, 1; Ullmann, *Org. chem. Prakt.*, p. 233.

24 grams camphene  
63 c.c. glacial acetic acid.

The camphene and glacial acetic acid together with 1 c.c. conc. sulphuric acid and 1 c.c. water are heated together in a flask in a water-bath for three hours at 50—60° (thermometer in the mixture). The mixture, which must be frequently shaken, separates into two layers which, after heating, disappear. The red-coloured liquid is poured into a large beaker and the flask rinsed out with 50 c.c. of water, which is poured into the same beaker. The contents of the beaker are now neutralised with powdered sodium carbonate, the ester layer is separated, dried over calcium chloride and fractionated *in vacuo*. The portion boiling at 95—110° at 15 mm. is collected. Yield, 26—28 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p. 106—107° at 15 mm.

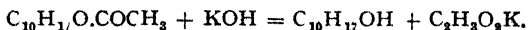
#### PREPARATION 164.

##### Isoborneol, $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{OH}$ .

Bertram, Walbaum, *J. für prakt. Chem.*, 1894, [2] **49**, 1.

26 grams isobornyl acetate  
10 „ potassium hydroxide (in 50 c.c. absolute alcohol).

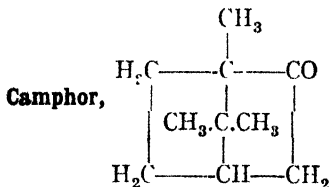
The isobornyl acetate is hydrolysed by boiling on the water-bath with the alcoholic potash solution. After heating for three hours the mixture is poured into about 500 c.c. of cold water. The isoborneol crystallises, is filtered, washed with water and dried on a porous plate. It melts at 200—202° and is pure enough for conversion into camphor. Yield, 19 grams.



*Properties.*—Isoborneol may be purified by crystallisation from petroleum ether. It forms colourless, hexagonal crystals; m.p. 212°.

See *Appendix*, p. 458.

#### PREPARATION 165.



Bertram, Walbaum, *J. für prakt. Chem.*, 1894, [2], **49**, 10.; Ullmann, *Org. chem. Prakt.*, p. 235.

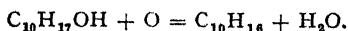
19 grams isoborneol

28 c.c. conc. nitric acid (sp. gr. 1·42)

5·3 c.c. fuming nitric acid (sp. gr. 1·5).

The two nitric acids are mixed together in a 200 c.c. flask and cooled to 20°. The isoborneol is then slowly added with constant shaking, whilst the temperature is kept below 20° by cooling. After all the isoborneol has been added, the mixture is stirred for half an hour and poured on to crushed ice, when the camphor separates in lumps. The crude product, which is contaminated with oxides of nitrogen, is filtered, washed with ice water and transferred to a ½-litre round distilling flask. To this is added a dilute solution containing 2 grams of sodium hydroxide and 3 grams of potassium permanganate and the mixture distilled in steam. To prevent the condenser being blocked by solid camphor, the water is run from the outer jacket and the receiver well cooled

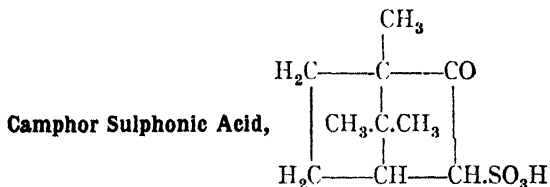
in running water. The camphor solidifies as it distils. It is filtered, washed with water and dried on a porous plate. It melts at  $172-173^{\circ}$ . Yield, 10 grams.



*Properties.*—Camphor crystallises in colourless, hexagonal prisms with a characteristic smell; it melts at  $178-179^{\circ}$  and sublimes on heating. It boils at  $209^{\circ}$ . The synthetic product is racemic and differs in this respect from Japan (dextro) and Matricaria (lævo) camphor, which have a specific rotation of  $\pm 44.2^{\circ}$  in alcohol solution. Camphor forms an oxime, m.p.  $119^{\circ}$ , a semicarbazone, m.p.  $238^{\circ}$ , and a bromophenylhydrazone, m.p.  $101^{\circ}$ .

See *Appendix*, p. 458.

#### PREPARATION 166.



Reychler, *Bull. Soc. chim.*, 1898, (3), **19**, 120.

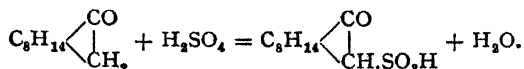
30 grams camphor

20 „ conc. sulphuric acid

40 „ acetic anhydride.

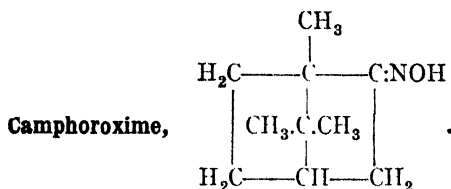
The sulphuric acid and acetic anhydride are carefully mixed and cooled in ice and the camphor is gradually added to the cold mixture and well shaken after each addition. The camphor dissolves, forming a pale yellow solution, which on being set aside for three to four days deposits crystals of camphor sulphonic acid. It is filtered at the pump through a layer of glass wool or asbestos, washed with ether and purified by crystallisation from ethyl

acetate. It forms colourless prisms, m.p.  $190-193^{\circ}$ . The yield is about 10 grams.



*Properties.*—The camphor sulphonic acid is easily soluble in water and alcohol. In aqueous solution its specific rotation is  $[\alpha]_{\text{D}} = +21^{\circ}$ .

#### PREPARATION 167.



Auwers, *Ber.*, 1889, **22**, 605.

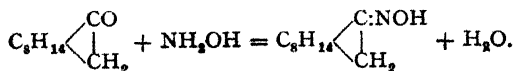
20 grams camphor.

300 „ (400 c.c.) spirit.

20 „ hydroxylamine hydrochloride (in concentrated aqueous solution).

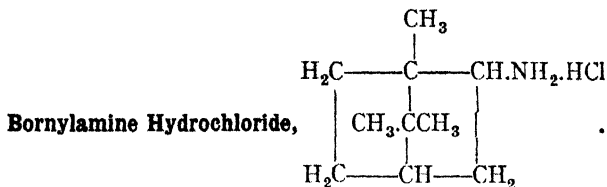
30 „ caustic soda (in concentrated aqueous solution).

The camphor is dissolved in the alcohol and the solutions of hydroxylamine hydrochloride and caustic soda are added, and the mixture is heated on the water-bath with reflux condenser for about an hour until a sample remains clear on the addition of water; a turbidity, if produced, is removed on adding a drop or two of caustic soda. The whole is now largely diluted with water, filtered if necessary and made faintly acid with acetic acid. The camphoroxime separates as a colourless crystalline mass, which may be recrystallised from dilute alcohol. The yield is 16 grams, m.p.  $119^{\circ}$ .



See *Appendix*, p. 459.

## PREPARATION 168.



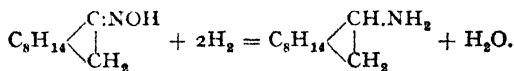
Forster, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1898, **73**, 390.

10 grams camphoroxime

150 c.c. amyl alcohol, b.p. 128—132°

10 grams sodium.

The camphoroxime is dissolved in the amyl alcohol in a round flask furnished with reflux condenser and placed over an air-bath. The sodium is added in portions of about 4 grams at a time and when the action becomes sluggish the mixture is boiled. When all the sodium has dissolved, the liquid is cooled to 60° and 100 c.c. of water are added. An equal volume (60 c.c.) of conc. hydrochloric acid is next added in small quantities and the mixture well shaken after each addition. The amyl alcohol is then removed by steam distillation. On cooling the contents of the flask, bornylamine hydrochloride crystallises, or, if not, the solution is concentrated on the water-bath until crystals appear in the liquid. The product consists of two isomers; the neo-bornylamine hydrochloride is the more soluble in water, and crystallisation from water will remove it. The yield of bornylamine hydrochloride is 7.5 grams.

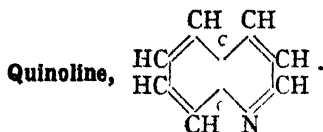


*Properties.*—The crystalline base melts at 159—160° and has a rotation in alcohol of  $[\alpha]_D = +45.5^\circ$ . The base dissolves readily in organic solvents, but is insoluble in water. The hydrochloride crystallises in colourless needles from water or alcohol. It has a specific rotation of  $[\alpha]_D = +22.7^\circ$ .

See *Appendix*, 459.



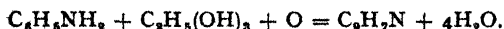
## PREPARATION 169.



Skraup, *Monatsh.*, 1880, **1**, 316; 1881, **2**, 141; Königs, *Ber.*, 1880, **13**, 911.

24	grams	nitrobenzene
38	„	aniline
120	„	glycerol
100	„	conc. sulphuric acid.

A large round flask (1½—2 litres) is attached to an upright condenser. The mixture of nitrobenzene, aniline, glycerol, and sulphuric acid is poured in and heated on the sand-bath until the reaction sets in (ten to fifteen minutes), *i.e.* until white vapours rise from the liquid. The flask is now raised from the sand-bath or the burner extinguished, and when the first reaction is over the contents are gently boiled for two to three hours. The dark-coloured product is diluted with water, and unchanged nitrobenzene driven over with steam. The residue is made strongly alkaline with caustic soda, and the oily layer (quinoline and aniline) distilled off with steam. In order to remove the aniline present, the distillate is acidified with sulphuric acid, and sodium nitrite added, until a sample of the liquid ceases to give the aniline reaction with sodium hypochlorite. It is then boiled, whereby the aniline is converted into phenol. The liquid is again made alkaline with caustic soda, and submitted to a third distillation with steam. The distillate is extracted with ether, dehydrated over solid caustic potash, and, after decanting and driving off the ether, the residue is distilled. Yield, 40 grams of a pale yellow oil.



*Properties.*—Colourless liquid; b.p. 237°; sp. gr. 1.108 at 0°; insoluble in water; soluble in alcohol and ether.

*Reactions.*—1. Dissolve a few drops of quinoline in a little

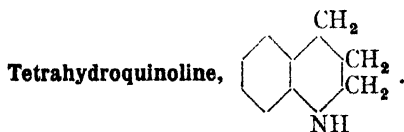
hydrochloric acid and add platinic chloride. Orange crystals of the chloroplatinate are deposited,  $(C_9H_7N)_2H_2PtCl_6 + H_2O$ .

2. Add to a solution of quinoline in acid, potassium chromate solution; the dichromate,  $(C_9H_7N)_2H_2Cr_2O_7$ , is precipitated.

3. Add to 1 c.c. of quinoline 1 c.c. of methyl iodide and warm. A reaction sets in, and on cooling, the quaternary ammonium iodide,  $C_9H_7N.CH_3I$ , crystallises in yellow crystals.

4. To a few drops of quinoline add a solution of bromine in chloroform. A crystalline compound,  $C_9H_7N.Br_2$ , is formed. See *Appendix*, p. 459.

#### PREPARATION 170.

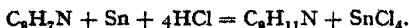


Hofmann, Königs, *Ber.*, 1883, **16**, 728.

10	grams	quinoline
300	„	conc. hydrochloric acid
35	„	granulated tin.

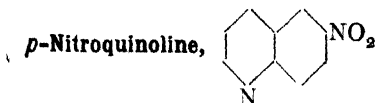
The quinoline is dissolved in the hydrochloric acid heated on the water-bath and the granulated tin added gradually. After heating for an hour the liquid is made alkaline with caustic soda and distilled in steam. An almost colourless oil, consisting of tetrahydroquinoline and unchanged quinoline distils, and is separated from the upper aqueous layer. The aqueous portion is acidified with hydrochloric acid, concentrated by evaporation, made alkaline and extracted with ether. After removing the ether the residual oil is mixed with the main portion, conc. hydrochloric acid added in excess and the solution evaporated, when the tetrahydroquinoline hydrochloride separates in silky needles. It is pressed on a porous plate to remove a small quantity of adhering oil. The hydrochloride is finally crystallised from hot alcohol, and forms colour-

less needles having a silky lustre and melting at  $181-182^{\circ}$ . Yield, 7-8 grams.



The free base is obtained from the hydrochloride as a colourless oil by adding alkali, extracting with ether and removing the ether by distillation. See *Appendix*, p. 459.

#### PREPARATION 171.



Knueppel, *Ber.*, 1896, **29**, 703.

28 grams *p*-nitraniline.

55 „ conc. sulphuric acid.

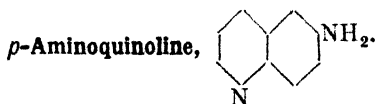
60 „ glycerol.

29 „ arsenic acid (anhydrous).

The glycerol is dehydrated by heating in an open dish to  $150^{\circ}$  and the arsenic acid by heating to  $110-120^{\circ}$  in the air oven for several hours and stirred. The thorough dehydration of the arsenic acid determines the yield. The *p*-nitraniline, glycerol and sulphuric acid are mixed and cooled before the addition of the arsenic acid. The mixture is then gently heated with reflux on the sand-bath until the reaction begins, *i.e.* until bubbles appear to rise in the liquid. The flame is then removed until the initial reaction is over, when gentle boiling is continued for two to three hours. The mixture is then cooled and diluted with about twice its volume of water and allowed to stand for several hours. It is filtered and carefully neutralised with caustic soda solution, any great rise of temperature being avoided. The grey precipitate of *p*-nitroquinoline is filtered, washed with water and dissolved in dilute hydrochloric acid. The solution is boiled for several hours with the addition of animal charcoal and filtered hot. The cooled filtrate is again neutralised with caustic soda, and the precipitated nitroquinoline, which should now be paler in colour, filtered, washed and dried. It is

then crystallised from hot alcohol with the addition of animal charcoal. A further quantity may be obtained from the mother-liquor. It crystallises in colourless needles, m.p. 150—151°. Yield, 16—18 grams. See *Appendix*, p. 460.

PREPARATION 172.

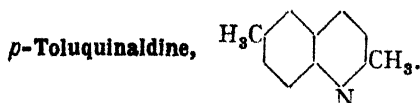


Knueppel, *Annalen*, 1900, **310**, 75.

7.5 grams *p*-nitroquinoline  
38 c.c. alcohol (70 per cent. by volume)  
0.6 gram calcium chloride  
12 grams iron powder.

The nitroquinoline, alcohol and calcium chloride are heated on the water-bath in a flask fitted with reflux and a rapidly rotating mechanical stirrer. An opening is made for introducing the iron powder, which should be previously passed through a fine sieve. The mixture is kept at a gentle boil whilst the iron powder is added in small quantities. The addition of the iron causes a rise of temperature, so that little or no heat may be necessary to keep the mixture boiling. The liquid becomes brown from the separation of ferric oxide. After the addition of the iron (half to three-quarters hour) the mixture is boiled and stirred for another half-hour and then filtered hot. The residue is washed with a little hot 70 per cent. alcohol. The filtrate on standing for several hours deposits a little azoquinoline, which is removed by filtration and the filtrate evaporated to dryness. A black oil remains which when kept in a vacuum desiccator solidifies. The black material is ground up and extracted with ether in a Soxhlet or other extraction apparatus. On distilling the ether, the aminoquinoline remains in the form of colourless crystals, m.p. 114—115°. Yield, about 4 grams. See *Appendix*, p. 460.

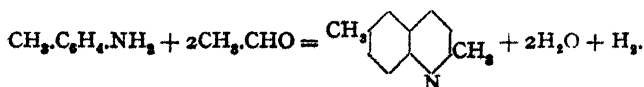
## PREPARATION 173.



Doebner, Miller, *Ber.*, 1883, **16**, 2465.

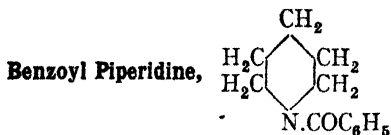
32 grams *p*-toluidine  
 35 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid  
 35 grams paraldehyde.

The *p*-toluidine is dissolved in the hydrochloric acid in a round flask fitted with a reflux condenser. The mixture is warmed gently on the water-bath until the reaction begins. If it becomes too vigorous, it must be moderated by cooling the flask in water. It is then heated on the water-bath for an hour and the product diluted with twice its volume of water. After standing overnight, the liquid is filtered into a large flask, caustic soda solution added until just alkaline and the mixture distilled in steam. The distillate is extracted with chloroform and the latter removed by distillation on the water-bath. A black, viscous mass remains, consisting of toluquinaldine and basic impurities. The product is dissolved in dilute sulphuric acid, cooled in a freezing mixture, sodium nitrite slowly added and the mixture well shaken after each addition until it gives a blue stain on potassium iodide-starch paper. The nitroso-compounds of the secondary bases are extracted with ether. The aqueous portion is then warmed on the water-bath to expel the ether and the heating continued until effervescence ceases. The liquid is made alkaline, distilled in steam and extracted with chloroform. After removing the chloroform, the residual oil is distilled with an air condenser. The toluquinaldine distils at 255–260° and solidifies in the receiver as a colourless mass. Yield, 16 grams.



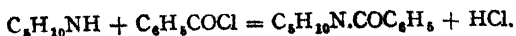
See *Appendix*, p. 460.

## PREPARATION 174.



50 grams piperidine  
 100 „ pyridine  
 90 „ benzoyl chloride.

The yield of this preparation depends mainly on the purity and dryness of the materials used. The pyridine should be distilled over caustic soda and the fraction boiling at 115—120° further dehydrated over phosphorus pentoxide. The benzoyl chloride should also be distilled and pure piperidine employed. The pyridine and piperidine are mixed and introduced into a 500 c.c., wide-necked, round flask, closed by a rubber stopper furnished with a sealed stirrer, a dropping funnel and thermometer and also a small reflux condenser protected by a calcium chloride tube. The flask is cooled in water; the stirrer set in motion and the benzoyl chloride added from the dropping funnel at such a rate that the temperature is maintained at 27—30°. When the benzoyl chloride has been added, the resulting orange-coloured emulsion is heated for an hour on the water-bath and poured whilst hot into 750 c.c. of ice and water. A dark, heavy oil separates, to which conc. hydrochloric acid (about 70 c.c.) is added with vigorous stirring until the liquid is acid to Congo-red paper. The pyridine is thereby converted into the hydrochloride, and the benzoyl piperidine can now be extracted with ether. The ether solution is washed with water, dried over calcium chloride, the ether removed and the residue fractionated *in vacuo*. Benzoyl piperidine forms a colourless syrup which solidifies on standing in prismatic crystals, m.p. 48°; b.p. 189—191° at 21 mm. Yield, 95 grams (86 per cent.). See *Appendix*, p. 460.



## PREPARATION 175.

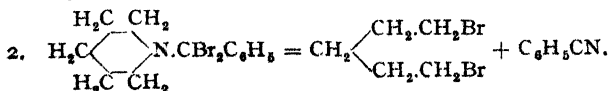
**Pentamethylene Dibromide,  $\text{BrCH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$ .**

Hamonet, *Bull. Soc. chim.*, 1905 (iii), **33**, 530; v. Braun, *Ber.*, 1904, **37**, 3210; 1905, **38**, 2339; Clarke, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1913, **103**, 1703.

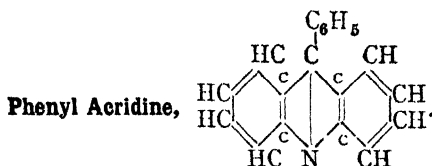
95 grams benzoyl piperidine

230 „ phosphorus pentabromide (see p. 364).

The benzoyl piperidine is placed in a 400 c.c. distilling flask in which the phosphorus pentabromide is then weighed. The flask is attached to a reflux condenser (the side-tube being temporarily stoppered) and heated slowly in an oil-bath to  $140^\circ$  and maintained at this temperature until the contents are completely liquefied. At this stage the first reaction is complete (see below). The product is now cautiously distilled under reduced pressure, when the second reaction takes place, and the distillate accordingly consists of a mixture of pentamethylene dibromide, benzonitrile and phosphorus oxybromide. Distillation is stopped when practically no more liquid passes over and when the excess of phosphorus pentabromide begins to sublime in quantity. The phosphorus oxybromide is decomposed by adding the mixture gradually to 300 c.c. of water contained in a tall beaker, surrounded by ice and vigorously stirred by a mechanical stirrer. The mixture must not become overheated, as the dibromide is volatile in steam. The residual mixture of pentamethylene dibromide and benzonitrile is dissolved in about 500 c.c. of ligroin and the solution washed first with strong sodium carbonate solution and then with water. The benzonitrile is removed by shaking repeatedly with small quantities of cold conc. sulphuric acid in a separating funnel until the acid is only slightly discoloured. The ligroin solution is washed with sodium carbonate solution and with water and dehydrated over calcium chloride. The ligroin is distilled, and the residue, which is pure pentamethylene dibromide, is distilled *in vacuo*; b.p.  $113^\circ$  at 23 mm. It forms a heavy, colourless liquid, b.p.  $204-206^\circ$ ; sp. gr. 1.702 at  $16.5^\circ$ . The yield is 69 grams (60 per cent.). See *Appendix*, p. 460.



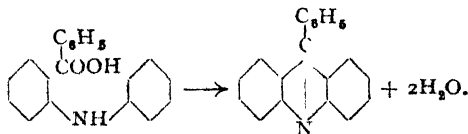
PREPARATION 176.



Bernthsen, *Annalen*, 1884, **224**, 13.

- 25 grams benzoic acid
- 35 „ diphenylamine
- 85 „ zinc chloride (anhydrous and coarsely powdered).

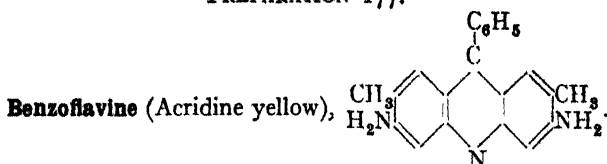
The mixture of benzoic acid, diphenylamine and zinc chloride is heated in an open, round flask in a metal bath at  $260^{\circ}$  for ten hours. The dark-brown solid mass is dissolved in spirit by warming on the water-bath and the solution poured into 100 c.c. of conc. ammonia. After standing for a time a litre of water is added and the precipitate filtered, washed with water and dried on a porous plate. It consists of phenylacridine, a small quantity of unchanged diphenylamine and zinc hydroxide. In order to separate the phenylacridine, the product is extracted by boiling with benzene until nothing but the colourless zinc hydroxide remains. The benzene extract is boiled with the addition of animal charcoal, filtered and the filtrate concentrated until phenylacridine crystallises. The crystals, which form yellow prisms, m.p.  $182-183^{\circ}$ , are filtered and dried. Yield, 16—17 grams.



See *Appendix*, p. 461.



## PREPARATION 177.



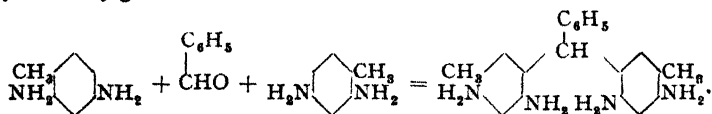
Meyer and Gross, *Ber.*, 1899, **32**, 2356.

9.8 grams *m*-toluylene diamine hydrochloride

6.1 „ „ *m*-toluylene diamine

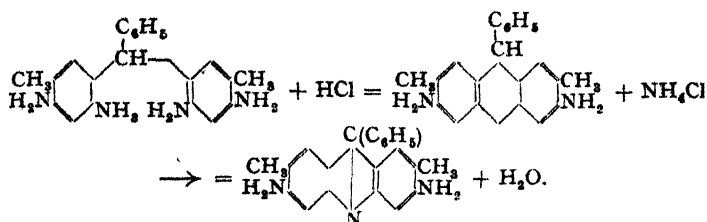
5.3 „ „ benzaldehyde (freshly distilled).

The toluylene diamine hydrochloride is prepared by dissolving 10 grams of the base in 20 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid, warming on the water-bath until dissolved and cooling quickly. The hydrochloride is filtered and dried on a porous plate. The above quantity of hydrochloride and free base are dissolved in the least quantity of hot alcohol and cooled to 60°, when the benzaldehyde is added. The solution changes in colour to red. It is heated on the water-bath with reflux for three hours, during which the condensation product separates as a light-brown powder. It is filtered on cooling, washed with a little spirit and dried. The yield is 19 grams.

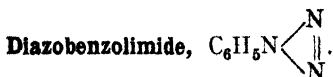


Five grams of the product (tetraminoditolyphenylmethane) are heated with 25 c.c. of 13 per cent. hydrochloric acid in a sealed tube at 160° for seven hours. The product is a solid cake consisting of red needles. It is washed into a basin with 200 c.c. of water and heated until dissolved. To complete the oxidation, the liquid is stirred mechanically and 75 c.c. of 20 per cent. ferric chloride solution gradually added. After standing several hours, it is filtered, washed with a little dilute hydrochloric acid and well pressed on the filter. It is crystallised by dissolving in glacial acetic acid and then adding a little conc. hydrochloric acid (about

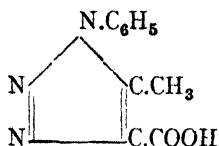
4 c.c.). On diluting somewhat with water and cooling the hydrochloride of benzoflavine separates in red crystals.



#### PREPARATION 178.



#### Phenylmethyltriazole carboxylic Acid,



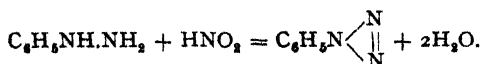
Dimroth, *Ber.*, 1902, **35**, 1029.

30 grams phenylhydrazine

45 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid (in 400 c.c. water)

24 grams sodium nitrite (in 50 c.c. water).

The phenylhydrazine and hydrochloric acid are mixed together, stirred mechanically and cooled with a few lumps of ice whilst the nitrite solution is added, until the test with starch-iodide paper shows that an excess is present. The hydrochloride dissolves, and diazobenzolimide separates out as an oil.

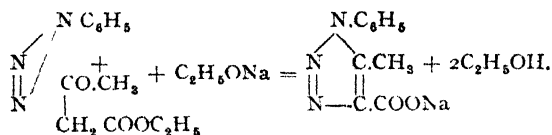


Part of the water is removed by a syphon and the oil is extracted with ether; after removing the ether, the diazobenzolimide is

purified by distillation in steam. It is again extracted and separated with ether as before. Yield, about 25 grams.

4 grams sodium  
68 c.c. absolute alcohol  
22 grams acetoacetic ester  
20 „ diazobenzolimide.

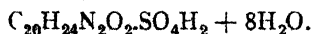
The sodium is dissolved in the alcohol, and to the cold solution a mixture of the acetoacetic ester and diazobenzolimide is added, and then warmed to boiling with reflux condenser. As soon as this occurs, the flask is removed and cooled, if the action becomes too violent. After the reaction is over, the mixture is heated for an hour on the water-bath with reflux condenser, when the contents of the flask become almost solid. The mass is dissolved in the smallest quantity of hot water, and the liquid, if neutral, made strongly alkaline and boiled again for an hour. About 350 c.c. hot water are added, and sufficient hydrochloric acid to precipitate the triazole carboxylic acid. It is filtered and washed with a little water, and is then nearly pure; m.p. 155°. Yield, about 27 grams.



See *Appendix*, p. 461.

#### PREPARATION 179.

##### Quinine Sulphate from Cinchona Bark,



Pelletier, Caventou, *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1820, (2), 15, 291.

100 grams cinchona bark (ground in a coffee mill)  
20 „ quicklime.

Slake the quicklime, and mix it into a thin cream with 200 c.c. water. Pour the liquid into a basin containing the powdered bark and stir up the mass well. Dry the mixture thoroughly

on the water-bath, taking care to powder up the lumps that ball together. When cold place the powder in a flask, pour over it 200 c.c. chloroform, and let the mixture stand overnight. Filter through a porcelain funnel and wash with a further 200 c.c. chloroform. The chloroform solution, which has now a faint yellow colour, is shaken up well with 50 c.c. and again with 25 c.c. dilute sulphuric acid, and then with water until the aqueous solution has no longer a blue fluorescence. The combined acid and aqueous extracts are carefully neutralised with ammonia and the liquid is concentrated on the water-bath until crystals of quinine sulphate begin to form on the surface. The liquid is allowed to cool and filtered. A further quantity of crystals may be obtained from the mother-liquor by evaporation, but the product is not so pure. The crystals are purified by recrystallisation from water. Yield, 1 to 2 grams, or more, according to the quality of the bark.

*Properties.*—The free base, which is precipitated with sodium carbonate from a solution of its salts, crystallises with  $3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The anhydrous base melts at  $277^\circ$ ; soluble in alcohol and ether.

*Reactions.*—Use a solution of the hydrochloride prepared by adding a few drops of hydrochloric acid to the sulphate mixed with water.

1. Add to a little of the solution a few drops of iodine solution; a brown amorphous precipitate is formed. This reaction is given by many of the alkaloids.

2. Add chlorine water and then ammonia in excess. An emerald-green coloration is produced.

3. Add sodium carbonate solution and then shake with ether. The free base is precipitated and dissolves in the ether. Decant the ether on to a watch-glass and let it evaporate. Crystals of the base remain.

4. Dissolve in a few drops of acetic acid and add a large volume of water. A blue fluorescent liquid is obtained. See *Appendix*, p. 462.



**SECTION III**  
**BIOCHEMICAL PREPARATIONS**



## PREPARATION 180.

### Palmitic Acid from Palm Oil.

Frémy, *Annalen*, 1840, 36, 44.

30 grams palm oil

24 „ caustic potash.

The caustic potash is dissolved in its own weight of water. The palm oil is melted in a large basin on the water-bath, and the potash solution added with constant stirring. The mixture is heated for half an hour. Half a litre of boiling water is poured in, and, after stirring well, 75 c.c. concentrated hydrochloric acid are gradually added, and the heating continued until the palmitic acid separates out as a transparent brown oil on the surface of the liquid. It is allowed to cool, and the cake of impure acid removed and pressed between filter-paper. The acid is now melted in a small basin on the water-bath and decanted, from any water which may have separated, into a retort (250 c.c.). It must be distilled *in vacuo*. The neck of the retort is fixed into a small filtering tube, which serves as receiver, as shown in Fig. 88. A few small pieces of unglazed pot are dropped into the retort, the tubulus of which is closed with a cork holding a thermometer. Before commencing the distillation the apparatus should be tested to see that it is air-tight. It is then evacuated with the water pump (see Fig. 59, p. 100), and the distillation commenced. During the distillation it is advisable to hold the Bunsen and to heat the retort with the bare flame. Under a pressure of 36 mm. the acid distils at  $245^{\circ}$ . The pale yellow oil which collects in the receiver is poured out into a basin whilst hot and allowed to cool. The cake of acid is spread on a porous

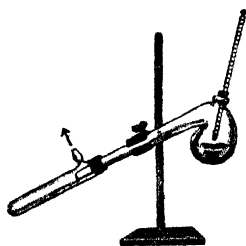
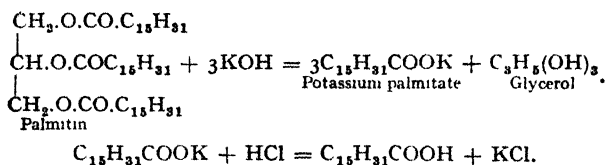


FIG. 88.



plate and left to drain, when it becomes nearly colourless, and, after one or two crystallisations from small quantities of spirit, is pure, and melts at  $62^{\circ}$ . Yield about 20 grams.

The aqueous portion from which the cake of acid is removed contains free hydrochloric acid, potassium chloride, and glycerol. The latter may be obtained by evaporating to dryness on the water-bath, and extracting the residue with small quantities of alcohol, which dissolves out the glycerol. On evaporating the alcohol impure glycerol is left.



*Properties.*—Crystallises in tufts of colourless needles; m. p.  $62^{\circ}$ ; soluble in alcohol and ether; insoluble in water.

*Reactions.*—1. Dissolve a small quantity of the acid in caustic soda solution and add salt. Sodium palmitate separates as a curdy white precipitate.

2. Boil another portion of the acid with caustic soda and let it cool. Pour off the liquid from the crust of sodium palmitate, which forms on the surface, wash once or twice with a little cold water, and dissolve the sodium salt in hot water. On cooling, a thick, gelatinous mass of sodium palmitate separates. See *Appendix*, p. 464.

**Analysis of Fats and Oils.**—The nature of these substances is ascertained from their physical constants, melting-point, refractive index, etc., and by certain chemical properties. The **saponification value** is the number of milligrams of potassium hydroxide required to hydrolyse 1 gram of the fat. The **iodine value** gives an estimate of the quantity of unsaturated acids present (for these substances like the olefines absorb iodine) and is the amount of iodine in grams absorbed by 100 grams of the substance. In addition to these values it is important to ascertain the amount of volatile acid (such as butyric acid from butter) known as the **Reichert-Meissl value**, which gives the number of c.c. of *N*/10-potassium hydroxide solution required to neutralise the volatile fatty acids from 5 grams

of fat, and the **acetyl value**, which, by forming an acetyl derivative, determines the amount of hydroxy-acid present, as in the acid of castor oil.

(a) **Saponification value.**—Dissolve about 20 grams of potassium hydroxide in about an equal weight of water in a 500 c.c. flask and make up to the mark with purified spirit (prepared by allowing ordinary spirit to stand for twenty-four hours over about 5 per cent. of coarsely powdered potassium hydroxide and then distilling. Titrate 25 c.c. of this solution (delivered from a pipette) against a normal or half-normal solution of hydrochloric acid using phenolphthalein as indicator. Weigh out 1 to 2 grams of lard into a  $\frac{1}{4}$  litre flask, add 25 c.c. of the alcoholic potash solution and heat on the water-bath for half an hour with reflux condenser. Cool and titrate the excess of alkali.

*Example.*—1.1589 grams of lard, after saponification with 25 c.c. of alcoholic potash (25 c.c. = 15.9 c.c. *N*-HCl), require 11.7 c.c. of *N*-HCl for neutralisation.

$$\frac{(15.9 - 11.7) \times .0561}{1.1589} = 0.197.$$

*i.e.* 0.197 gram in combination with 1 gram of the fatty acids. The saponification value is, therefore, 197.

(b) **The iodine value** is determined by estimating the amount of chloride of iodine absorbed by the oil or fat from a standard acetic acid solution of  $\text{ICl}$ , the absorption being due to the presence of unsaturated acid radicals.

The number represents the weight in grams of iodine required to combine with 100 grams of the substance.

The solution is prepared by dissolving 13 grams of iodine in 1 litre of glacial acetic acid and passing through the solution a slow current of chlorine until the deep red colour changes to orange. This change, which takes place suddenly, is due to the formation of the monochloride and is known as *Wij's solution*. A standard solution of sodium thiosulphate is prepared by dissolving about 24 grams of the solid in 1 litre of water and titrating against a standard iodine solution containing 10 grams in the litre, or, more simply, by using a solution of potassium dichromate containing 3.865 grams of salt in the litre, each c.c. of which liberates 0.01 gram of iodine from potassium iodide solution. Pour into a flask 10 c.c.

of a 10 per cent. solution of potassium iodide and add 5 c.c. of dilute hydrochloric acid. Run in from a burette 20 c.c. of the dichromate solution (= 0.2 gram of iodine) and titrate with the thiosulphate solution until the iodine colour changes to straw, when a little thin starch solution is added and the end point ascertained by the disappearance of the blue colour. Having ascertained the strength of the thiosulphate, weigh out 0.5 to 1 gram of lard into a  $\frac{1}{2}$  litre stoppered bottle, and 10 c.c. of carbon tetrachloride. When the lard is dissolved add 25 c.c. of the Wijs's solution from a pipette. The bottle is shaken, to mix the contents, and placed for half an hour in the dark. Meantime, the strength of the Wijs's solution is ascertained by running into a flask of about 250 c.c. capacity 10 c.c. of the solution, adding 10 c.c. of a 10 per cent. potassium iodide solution, diluting with 150 c.c. of water, and titrating with the standard thiosulphate solution as previously described. After the sample has stood in the dark for the requisite time, 15-20 c.c. of 10 per cent. potassium iodide solution are added. The mixture is well shaken, diluted with 400 c.c. of water and titrated with the standard thiosulphate solution, the bottle being well shaken meanwhile.

*Example.*—0.5098 gram of lard was dissolved in 10 c.c. of carbon tetrachloride and 25 c.c. of Wijs's solution added (25 c.c. = 54.25 c.c. of thiosulphate solution, 6.6 c.c. of which were equivalent to 0.2 gram of iodine). The excess of iodine required 28.4 c.c. of thiosulphate solution. Hence the absorbed iodine is  $54.25 - 28.4 = 25.8$  c.c. of thiosulphate solution, and the amount of iodine per 100 grams of lard is given by the following expression :

$$\frac{0.2 \times 25.8 \times 100}{10.6 \times 0.5098} = 60.9 \text{ grams.}$$

The iodine value of the lard is, therefore, 60.9.

(c) **The Reichert-Meissl value.**—Weigh out carefully 5 grams of melted butter into a 200 c.c. flask and add an alcoholic solution of sodium hydroxide (prepared by dissolving 2 grams of solid sodium hydroxide in 2 c.c. of water and adding 10 c.c. of pure alcohol). Heat the mixture with reflux condenser on the water-bath for fifteen minutes. Remove the condenser and boil off the alcohol on the water-bath. When the residue is dry, add 100 c.c. of distilled water, which has just been boiled to drive off

carbon dioxide and heat till a solution is obtained. Acidify with 40 c.c. of normal sulphuric acid and fit the flask with a bulb adapter and condenser, and distil 110 c.c. in the course of about half an hour. Cool the distillate, filter and titrate 100 c.c. with  $N/10$ -sodium hydroxide solution, using phenolphthalein as indicator. The number of c.c.'s of  $N/10$ -alkali multiplied by 1.1 is the Reichert-Meissl (or Reichert-Wollny) value (the multiplier 1.1 gives the correction for the 110 c.c. of distillate).

*Example.*—Five grams of butter required 25.2 c.c. of  $N/10$ -NaOH solution,  $25.2 \times 1.1 = 27.7$ , which is the Reichert-Meissl value.

The following table gives the constants for various fats and oils.

Oil or fat.	Saponification value.	Iodine value.	Reichert-Meissl value.
Palm-nut . . .	242-250	13-17	5-6.8
Cocoa-nut . . .	240-260	8-10	6.6-7.0
Linseed D. <sup>1</sup> . . .	192-195	173-201	0.0
Cotton-seed S.D. <sup>1</sup> . . .	193-195	108-110	—
Olive N.D. <sup>1</sup> . . .	185-190	79-88	0.6
Lard . . . . .	195	76-85	0.68
Tallow (mutton) . . .	192-195	35-46	0.5
Goose fat . . . . .	193	59-71	0.2-0.3
Butter fat . . . . .	220-233	26-50	26-33

**Estimation of Butter-fat in Milk.**—Purify 200 c.c. of ether by allowing it to stand overnight with 20 grams of coarsely powdered potassium hydroxide and then distilling from the water-bath. Cut a strip of filter-paper, about 36 cm. (14 in.) long and 8 cm. (3 in.) wide, so that when loosely rolled up it will slip easily into the extractor and not project above the syphon tube, and pin it horizontally at two ends to wooden blocks. Measure out 5 c.c. of fresh milk (stir it well beforehand) with a pipette and allow the milk to drop slowly from the pipette on to the paper in such a way that it spreads evenly over the surface. Warm the paper very cautiously from below with a small Bunsen flame so as to drive off

<sup>1</sup> The initials D., S.D., and N.D. stand for "drying," "semi-drying," and "non-drying." The term has reference to the hardening of the oil by oxidation and is due to its unsaturated character. This is manifested mainly in the high iodine value, which is greatest in the drying oils.

the water. When dry, or nearly so, roll it up and tie it round with a thread, and leave in a steam oven for half an hour. Fit up an apparatus as shown in Fig. 89.

It consists of a clean and dry 200 c.c. flask, A, which is carefully weighed together with a small piece of broken porous pot and is then about half filled with purified ether. The flask is surmounted by a Soxhlet extractor to which a condenser, C, is attached. The whole is placed on the water-bath. The ether distils and the vapour passes by the side-tube (on the left of the figure) into the condenser, whence the condensed ether drips on to the filter paper filling up the extractor to the top of the syphon tube (on the right of the figure) from which it runs into the flask carrying with it the dissolved fat. After the syphoning process has been repeated six or seven times the flask is cooled and the ether removed by distillation from the water-bath. The flask is placed in a steam-oven for fifteen minutes, a little air blown over the surface to drive off the remaining ether and the flask weighed.

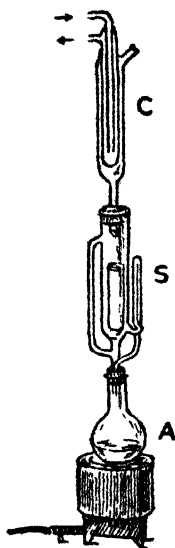


FIG. 89.

*Example:* Five c.c. of milk, when dried and extracted, gave the following weight of fat.

Flask + fat . . . . .	41.043 grams
Empty flask . . . . .	40.878 „

Weight of fat . . . . . 0.165 gram

The weight of fat in 100 c.c. of milk =  $0.165 \times 20 = 3.3$  grams.

#### PREPARATION 181.

##### Cholesterol (from gall-stones), $C_{27}H_{46}OH$ .

Powder a few grams of gall-stones, bring them on to a filter and wash them several times with hot water. Extract the residue with ten times its weight of alcohol by heating on the water-bath with a reflux condenser until only a small coloured residue remains undissolved. Filter quickly through a wide Buchner funnel to prevent the substance crystallising in the funnel. On cooling,

lustrous, white laminæ separate and are filtered and dried; m.p.  $148^{\circ}$ . The yield varies and may reach 90 per cent. of the gall-stones.

**Properties.**—It is soluble in most organic solvents, but not in water, and is consequently extracted with the fats and oils by ether.

**Reactions.**—1. Dissolve a minute quantity of cholesterol in chloroform and add strong sulphuric acid, the chloroform is coloured crimson, which changes to purple; the sulphuric acid at the same time has a green fluorescence. A drop of the purple chloroform solution exposed to the air changes to blue, green and ultimately yellow.

2. Dissolve the substance in acetic anhydride when, on adding strong sulphuric drop by drop, a violet pink colour is produced.

See *Appendix*, p. 464.

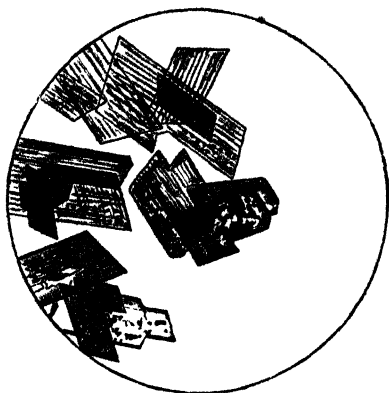
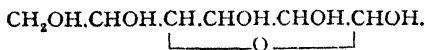


FIG. 90.—Cholesterol crystals (after Funke).

#### PREPARATION 182.

**d-Glucose.** (Grape-sugar, Dextrose) from Cane-sugar (Sucrose).

Soxhlet, *J. prakt. Chem.*, 1880, (2) **21**, 245.



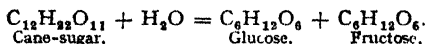
250 grams cane sugar

750 c.c. spirit

30 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid.

The spirit and acid are mixed and warmed to  $45-50^{\circ}$ , whilst the finely powdered cane-sugar is gradually added and stirred. When the sugar has dissolved the solution is cooled, and a few crystals of anhydrous grape-sugar added. On standing for a day or two the grape-sugar deposits in the form of fine crystals, which

continue to increase in quantity. When no further deposition is observed, the crystals are filtered and washed with spirit. The sugar may be purified by dissolving in a little water to a syrup, and adding hot methyl alcohol until a turbidity appears. On cooling, the grape-sugar crystallises out.



*Properties.*—Colourless crystals; m. p.  $146^\circ$ ; soluble in hot and cold water, insoluble in alcohol.

*Reactions.*—1. Add to a little of the solution of glucose a few drops of caustic soda, and warm. The colour changes from yellow to brown.

2. Add to 2 or 3 c.c. of the solution two or three drops of copper sulphate, and then caustic soda, until a clear blue solution is obtained and heat to boiling. Red cuprous oxide is precipitated.

3. Add a few drops of glucose solution to half a test-tube of ammonio-silver nitrate solution and place the test-tube in hot water. A mirror of metallic silver is formed.

4. Dissolve about 0.5 gram of glucose in 5 c.c. of water, and add a solution of phenylhydrazine acetate, made by dissolving 1 gram of phenylhydrazine in the same weight of glacial acetic acid, and diluting to 5 c.c. Mix the solutions and warm in the water-bath. In a few minutes the yellow crystalline phenylglucosazone (m. p.  $204-205^\circ$ ) is deposited. Examine the crystals under the microscope.

5. Mix a few drops of a glucose solution with a few drops of an alcoholic solution of  $\alpha$ -naphthol and pour slowly down the side of the test-tube a few drops of conc. sulphuric acid. A violet coloration is produced at the junction of the two layers (Molisch's reaction). See *Appendix*, p. 464.

(a) **Estimation of Glucose and Invert-sugar with Fehling's Solution.**—The Fehling solution is first prepared by making two solutions, one by dissolving 69.28 grams of pure, crystallised copper sulphate in 1 litre of water, and the other by dissolving 350 grams of Rochelle salt (sodium potassium tartrate) and 100 grams of sodium hydroxide in 1 litre of water. When equal volumes of each of the above solutions are mixed the resulting liquid is known as *Fehling's solution* and is reduced to cuprous

oxide by glucose. If 5 c.c. of each solution are taken, the 10 c.c. of the Fehling are exactly reduced by 0.05 gram of glucose. The process is carried out as follows. The sugar solution to be examined is introduced into a burette and a mixture of 5 c.c. of the two solutions placed in a porcelain basin to which 40 c.c. of water are added, and boiled gently over a small flame. The sugar solution is added to the hot liquid 1 to 2 c.c. at a time until (the precipitate of cuprous oxide being allowed to subside) the blue colour just vanishes. The process is repeated, adding the sugar solution more slowly towards the end (one drop at a time) in order to determine the exact point at which the precipitation is complete and no excess of sugar is present. Before testing a solution of glucose of unknown strength it is advisable to carry out an experiment with pure glucose or invert-sugar (see below) by making a solution of such a strength that 10 c.c. contains exactly 0.05 gram of the substance.

In case the preliminary examination of the solution to be tested requires a much larger or smaller volume than 10 c.c. to precipitate exactly the Fehling solution the original sugar solution must either be concentrated or diluted so that approximately 10 c.c. of sugar solution = 10 c.c. of the Fehling solution.

As the end-point of the reaction is difficult to determine owing to the presence of a precipitate *King's indicator* may be used. It consists of ferrous thiocyanate which in presence of cupric sulphate is oxidised to red ferric thiocyanate. It is prepared by dissolving 15 grams of ammonium thiocyanate and 10 gram of ferrous ammonium sulphate in 10 c.c. of water at about 40°, cooling and then adding 5 c.c. of conc. hydrochloric acid. If the solution has a reddish colour a little zinc dust will remove it. The testing of the end-point is made by means of the drop method, that is, by placing a series of drops of the indicator on a white tile and touching the drops in succession with a drop of the solution. The reduction is complete when no red colour is produced by the Fehling solution.

*Example*—The solution of **invert-sugar** was prepared as follows : 11.320 grams of cane-sugar were dissolved in water and made up to 500 c.c. Fifty c.c. of this solution were mixed with 10 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid in 50 c.c. of water and warmed to 65–70° for fifteen minutes, and then made up to 250 c.c.



10 c.c. Fehling solution = 10.5 c.c. of sugar solution (= 0.0475 gram of cane-sugar).

$$\frac{0.0475 \times 250}{10.5} = 1.131 \text{ grams of cane-sugar.}$$

(b) **Estimation of Glucose by Benedict's solution.**—Benedict's solution is prepared by dissolving 200 grams crystallised sodium carbonate, 200 grams sodium citrate and 125 grams of potassium thiocyanate in 800 c.c. of hot water, filtering and cooling. Copper sulphate (18 grams) is dissolved in about 100 c.c. of water and added with constant shaking to the first solution. To this 5 c.c. of 5 per cent. solution of potassium ferrocyanide are added, and the total volume is made up to a litre.

25 c.c. Benedict's solution = 0.05 gram of glucose.

The solution is standardised against a solution of pure glucose or invert-sugar of about 0.5 per cent. strength.

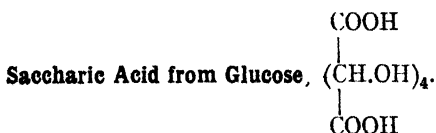
Sodium citrate replaces the less stable Rochelle salt of Fehling solution, potassium thiocyanate precipitates cuprous thiocyanate, whilst potassium ferrocyanide prevents the precipitation of cuprous oxide. The solution is stable, does not deteriorate on exposure to light and a small amount of protein does not affect the estimation.

Twenty-five c.c. of Benedict's solution and 3 grams of anhydrous sodium carbonate are placed in a small flask, which is fixed in a clamp and the contents are slowly brought to the boil over a small flame, a few pieces of porous pot being added to prevent bumping. The sugar solution, which should be of about 5 per cent. strength, is run in from a burette as rapidly as possible without interrupting the boiling. As soon as the white precipitate of  $\text{CuCNS}$  begins to appear, the sugar solution is added more slowly, thirty seconds being allowed to elapse between each addition. The end point is indicated by the disappearance of the blue colour of the copper.

*Example.*—Twenty-five c.c. of Benedict's solution required 10.5 c.c. of invert-sugar solution (= 0.0475 gram of cane-sugar).

$$\frac{0.0475 \times 250}{10.5} = 1.131 \text{ grams of cane-sugar.}$$

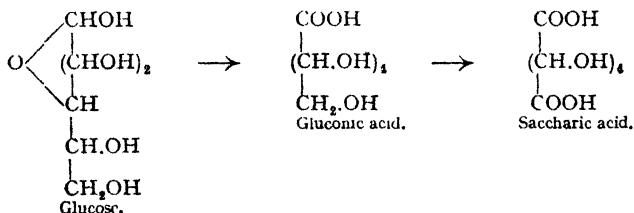
## PREPARATION 183.



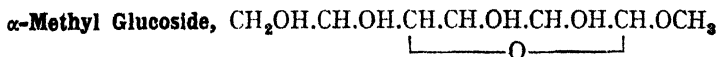
E. Fischer, *Anleitung zur Darstellung org. Präparate*, p. 80.

50 grams glucose  
350 „ nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.15, or 100 grams conc.  $\text{HNO}_3$   
diluted to 350 grams).

Heat in a basin on the water-bath, with constant stirring, 50 grams of anhydrous glucose with 350 grams of nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.15) until a syrupy residue remains. Dissolve it in a little water and again evaporate. The operation is stopped when the mass begins to turn brown. Dissolve it in 150 c.c. of water and neutralise the solution with a concentrated solution of potassium carbonate; add 25 c.c. of 50 per cent. acetic acid and concentrate to about 80 c.c. On standing in the cold or by rubbing, the acid potassium salt crystallises. Let stand for twelve hours, filter at the pump, wash with a little cold water and recrystallise from the least possible quantity of hot water with the addition of animal charcoal. The salt so obtained is colourless and should be free from oxalic acid. The yield is about 15 grams.



## PREPARATION 184.



E. Fischer, *Anleitung zur Darstellung org. Präparate*, p. 85.

100 grams methyl alcohol (containing 0.25 per cent. of  $\text{HCl}$ )  
25 „ anhydrous glucose.

Dehydrate methyl alcohol (free from acetone)<sup>1</sup> by leaving it over quicklime for several days. Place 10 c.c in a flask, which is weighed together with a delivery tube, well cooled, so that no evaporation takes place, and dry hydrogen chloride passed in for a short time. The increase in weight is ascertained and the methyl alcohol diluted with the same solvent until it contains 0.25 per cent. of hydrogen chloride. To 100 grams of this dilute solution add 25 grams of anhydrous and finely powdered glucose and boil with reflux condenser for three-quarters of an hour until the sugar is completely dissolved. The pale yellow liquid probably contains glucose dimethylacetal, which is converted into the glucoside on heating to 100°. Place the solution in a sealed tube and heat for fifty hours in boiling water. The solution is then evaporated to one-third of its volume and well cooled. The  $\alpha$ -methyl glucoside slowly deposits in small, colourless needles, which, after standing twelve hours, are filtered. The yield is about 45 per cent. of the glucose. It is purified by crystallisation from eighteen parts of ethyl alcohol. See *Appendix*, p. 466.

#### PREPARATION 185.

##### Glucosamine (from Crab or Lobster shell),



100 grams Crab or Lobster Shell.

Crab or lobster shell is carefully freed from soft tissue and soaked in dilute hydrochloric acid for twenty-four hours. The shell becomes soft and can be easily cut with scissors into small pieces. Place about 100 grams in a basin, cover with conc. hydrochloric acid, and boil gently on a sand-bath. Most of the shell rapidly dissolves and gives a brown solution. Dilute with a little water, filter from undissolved substance and evaporate the filtrate on the water-bath until crystals appear on the surface. Filter, wash with a little alcohol and, if necessary, recrystallise from hot water

<sup>1</sup> A simple way of removing acetone from commercial methyl alcohol is to pass a current of chlorine through the boiling liquid until saturated, letting it stand over quicklime to remove free chlorine and then fractionating with a column. The acetone is converted into a high boiling chloroacetone which remains in the distilling flask.

with the addition of a little charcoal. Glucosamine forms highly refractive, colourless crystals which reduce Fehling's solution, form ordinary glucosazone and are dextrorotatory.

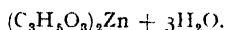
#### PREPARATION 186.

**Lactic Acid**,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{COOH}$ .

##### METHOD I (from Cane-sugar).

50 grams cane-sugar (in 250 c.c. water)  
50 c.c. sour milk  
5 grams St. Ivel cheese <sup>1</sup>  
15 „, zinc carbonate.

Dissolve 50 grams of cane-sugar in 250 c.c. of water, add 50 c.c. of sour milk, 5 grams of St. Ivel cheese, and 15 grams of zinc carbonate, and place in the incubator at 35° for eight to ten days, with occasional stirring. Filter the mixture through fine unstarched calico at the pump. Boil up the solid portion with 400 c.c. of water and filter hot, repeat the process with the undissolved residue, adding a further 100 c.c. of water, filter hot as before and add to the first filtrate. On cooling, a crystalline mass of colourless zinc lactate separates,



Evaporate the original filtrate with the mother liquor from the zinc lactate on the water-bath until crystals appear. Cool and filter. The zinc lactate obtained from this portion is usually coloured and should be recrystallised. A further quantity may be obtained by again concentrating the mother liquors. The total yield is 25—30 grams.

Lactic acid may be obtained from the zinc salt by adding dilute sulphuric acid sufficient to combine with the zinc present, and shaking out with ether, in which the lactic acid dissolves. On distilling the ether on the water-bath the lactic acid remains as a colourless, viscid liquid.

<sup>1</sup> Any other strongly flavoured cheese will do. In place of sour milk what is known in cheese-making as "starter," i.e., curdled milk containing the pure lactic ferment, is more efficient.

**METHOD II (from Milk).**

500 c.c. fresh milk.

Add to the milk 15 grams of St. Ivel cheese (or 30 c.c. of "starter") and 20 grams of zinc carbonate, and incubate for eight to ten days at  $35^{\circ}$  with occasional stirring. Filter through calico as above. Boil the filtrate with a little zinc carbonate for a time, cool and filter. The filtrate will now be clear. Boil the solid residue (consisting of casein, fat, unchanged zinc carbonate and zinc lactate) with 300 c.c. of water for some time, cool and let stand so that the fat solidifies. Filter.

Concentrate the combined filtrates on the water-bath until crystallisation begins. Filter the crystals of zinc lactate. Concentrate the mother liquors, when a further quantity of the salt will separate. The total yield is about 20 grams, which, assuming that a milk-sugar yields two molecules of lactic acid, will represent about 50 per cent. of the theoretical amount. See *Appendix*, p. 467.

**PREPARATION 187.****Casein and Lactose from Milk.**

250 c.c. fresh milk.

Dilute 250 c.c. of fresh milk with 1 litre of distilled water, and add so much acetic acid that the solution contains 0.1 per cent. of acid (1.25 grams). Wash the precipitate two or three times by decanting rapidly. Rub the precipitate in a mortar with the least possible quantity required for solution of dilute sodium hydroxide solution (0.1 per cent.), taking care that the final solution is neutral. Keep the washings. Filter through a cloth until the liquid is only faintly opalescent. The filtrate is again acidified with acetic acid as before and the precipitate again washed, and the process of solution and precipitation repeated. It is drained, made into a paste with 97 per cent. alcohol to remove water, filtered and washed with pure alcohol, and then with ether to remove fat, and dried in air or over sulphuric acid in a vacuum desiccator. It is a white, amorphous powder, soluble in the hydroxides,

carbonates, and phosphates of the alkalis, and also in lime and baryta water. The yield is about 6 grams.

The lactose is prepared from the filtrate from the casein. Boil the liquid to precipitate the soluble proteins, filter, neutralise with magnesium carbonate, and evaporate on the water-bath; extract with alcohol, dissolve the residue in water, filter, and concentrate to a syrup. On standing, crystals of lactose separate. It may be recrystallised from hot water. Prepare lactosazone as described on p. 320. It forms characteristic nests of hairy crystals which take much longer to separate than the glucosazone. It does not, like glucose, reduce Barfoed's reagent (1 part of cupric acetate in 15 parts of water; to 200 c.c. of this solution 5 c.c. of 38 per cent. acetic acid are added), but reduces Fehling's solution and ammonia-silver nitrate solution (see p. 320). On oxidation with nitric acid it forms mucic acid. See *Appendix*, p. 467.

**Mucic Acid.**—Evaporate 5 grams of lactose with 50 c.c. of nitric acid of sp. gr. 1.15 in a basin to 10 c.c., when a pasty mass of mucic acid crystals separates. Dilute with cold water, filter, and wash with a little water.

#### PREPARATION 188.

**Mannose from Ivory Nut,**  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}.\text{CHOH}.\text{CH}(\text{CHOH})_4.\text{CHOH}.\text{CHOH}$

Horton, *J. Ind. Eng. Chem.* 1921, **13**, 1040.

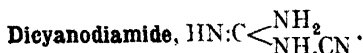
90 grams ivory-nut shavings

10 „ caustic soda (in 1 litre of water).

The caustic soda solution is heated to boiling and the ivory nut shavings added to the boiling liquid, which is stirred and the vessel at once removed from the flame. The stirring is continued for an hour and the deep brown extract is filtered through cloth spread on a porcelain funnel. The solid is washed with water on the funnel until the filtrate is colourless and neutral. The residue is dried in the oven at 60°. When thoroughly dry it is weighed and mixed with an equal weight of 75 per cent. sulphuric acid (1 part of water: 2.5 parts of conc. sulphuric acid by weight). The mixture is left overnight, then diluted to 750 c.c. with water

and boiled with reflux for eight hours. It is cooled to room temperature and fresh milk of lime (from 25 grams of quicklime) added slowly with vigorous agitation so that no portion is even temporarily alkaline. It is filtered through cloth on a porcelain funnel and the residue washed with water. The filtrate, which should be slightly acid, is heated to about 90° and decolourised with 5 to 10 grams of animal charcoal. The cooled liquid is neutralised with excess of calcium carbonate, filtered through cloth and washed with water. The filtrate and washings are evaporated *in vacuo* to a small bulk (about 100 c.c.). The whole of the syrupy residue which contains some insoluble inorganic matter is poured into an equal volume of purified spirit and again heated with about 4 grams of animal charcoal. The mixture is filtered hot and the residue washed with 70 per cent. spirit. The filtrate is now practically colourless. It is again evaporated under reduced pressure on the water-bath till nearly solid. The residue is dissolved in an equal volume of glacial acetic acid by warming and shaking, poured into a conical flask and left at room temperature. On seeding the solution on the following day with a crystal of mannose, and allowing the liquid to stand for a week, a good crop of crystals separates. They are filtered, washed with glacial acetic acid, alcohol and acetic acid, alcohol, alcohol and ether and finally with ether. The product is ground up in a mortar with ether; filtered and dried in an oven at 40°. Yield, 15 to 20 grams; m. p. 131—132°. It is a colourless, crystalline substance with a sweet taste. See *Appendix*, p. 468.

#### PREPARATION 189.



Hale and Vibrans, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1918, **40**, 1057.

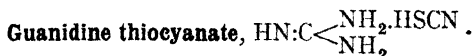
500 grams commercial calcium cyanamide in powder (*nitrolim*)  
1000 c.c. water.

The calcium cyanamide and water are heated together for an hour on the water-bath and the mixture is then filtered through a large porcelain funnel and washed with hot water. A few c.c.'s of conc. ammonia are added to the filtrate and the latter is con-

centrated by evaporation to about 200 c.c. On cooling and allowing the liquid to stand to the following day crystals of nearly pure dicyanodiamide separate of m.p. 204—205°. The yield is 75 grams. A further quantity but of the less pure substance is obtained on evaporation.



#### PREPARATION 190.



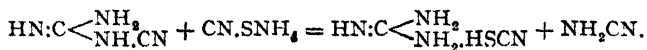
Werner and Bell, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1920, **119**, 1134; Ewan and Young, *J. Soc. Chem. Ind.*, 1921, **40**, T., 109; Blair and Braham, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1922, **44**, 2343.

14.5 grams dicyanodiamide

19 „ ammonium thiocyanate (dried at 105°).<sup>1</sup>

The two substances are intimately mixed in a tall, narrow beaker, which is partly immersed in a glycerin bath. It is loosely covered with a piece of cardboard through which a thermometer is introduced and serves as a stirrer. The mixture is then heated; it begins to melt at 80° and after half an hour, when the temperature reaches 105°, is completely liquefied. During the next half-hour the temperature is raised to 120° and maintained for three and a half hours.

To the viscous mass, whilst still hot, 60 c.c. of water are added, stirred up and left to cool. It is filtered and the filtrate concentrated on the water-bath until crystallisation begins. The crystals of impure guanidine thiocyanate (about 25 grams) are filtered, redissolved in 250 c.c. of water and again filtered from a small quantity of amorphous matter. The filtrate is evaporated on the steam-bath to a syrup and when cold seeded with a crystal of guanidine cyanate when the pure substance separates. Yield, 10—12 grams, m. p. 118—119°.



<sup>1</sup> Ammonium chloride may be used in place of the thiocyanate, when guanidine chloride is formed.



The guanidine remaining in the mother-liquor may be recovered as carbonate as follows: it is mixed with four times its volume of alcohol, the requisite amount of caustic potash added and carbon dioxide passed through the liquid when guanidine carbonate is precipitated. Yield, 4 grams. See *Appendix*, p. 468.

#### PREPARATION 191.

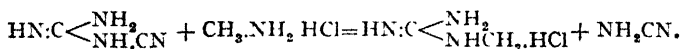
**Methylguanidine hydrochloride**,  $\text{HN:C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}\cdot\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{HCl} \end{smallmatrix}$ .

Werner and Bell, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1922, **121**, 1792.

8.4 grams dicyanodiamide

13.5 „ methylamine hydrochloride (see p. 93).

An intimate mixture of the above is heated in a wide-mouthed test-tube in a glycerin bath. The test-tube is loosely closed by a cork fitted with a thermometer. The mixture melts at 85–86° and is completely liquefied at 130°. The temperature is then raised to 180° and so maintained for three hours. The viscous product, whilst hot, is dissolved in 100 c.c. of absolute alcohol, which is filtered and evaporated to a syrup. On standing in a vacuum desiccator for a few days it crystallises. The dry salt is deliquescent. Yield, 15 to 20 grams.



The picrate is obtained by mixing aqueous solutions of the hydrochloride and picric acid. It forms yellow crystals which melt with decomposition at 285°. See *Appendix*, p. 468.

#### PREPARATION 192.

**Urea** (Carbamide),  $\text{CO} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ .

Wöhler, *Pogg. Ann.*, 1828, **12**, 253; Clemm, *Annalen*, 1848, **66**, 382.

50 grams potassium (or sodium) cyanide (98–99 per cent.)

140 „ red oxide of lead

25 „ ammonium sulphate.

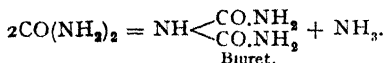
The potassium cyanide is heated in an iron dish over a large burner until it begins to fuse, when 140 grams of red oxide of lead are gradually added in small quantities and stirred in. The heat of the reaction causes the mass to melt and froth up. When it fuses quietly, the dark-coloured liquid mass is poured on to an iron plate and allowed to cool. It solidifies and is powdered and separated from the solid cake of metallic lead. 200 c.c. of cold water are poured on to the crude cyanate and, after standing an hour, filtered through a fluted filter and washed with a little cold water. A concentrated solution of 25 grams of ammonium sulphate is immediately added to the filtrate, which is evaporated to dryness on the water-bath, the mass being stirred occasionally to prevent the formation of a surface crust. The cooled residue is powdered and the urea extracted with alcohol by boiling on the water-bath, using a reflux condenser and adding successively small quantities of spirit until the extract leaves only a small residue on evaporation on a watch-glass. The greater part of the alcohol is distilled off on the water-bath, and the residue poured out into a beaker to crystallise. Yield, about 15 grams.

1.  $4\text{KCN} + \text{Pb}_3\text{O}_4 = 4\text{CONK} + 3\text{Pb}$
2.  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4 + 2\text{CONK} = 2\text{CON.NH}_4 + \text{K}_2\text{SO}_4$
3.  $\text{CON.NH}_4 = \text{CO}(\text{NH}_2)_2$

*Properties.*—Colourless prisms; m.p.  $132^\circ$ ; very soluble in water; soluble in hot alcohol.

*Reactions.*—1. Add to a strong solution of urea in water a drop of concentrated nitric acid, and to another portion a concentrated solution of oxalic acid; the crystalline nitrate,  $\text{CO}(\text{NH}_2)_2\text{HNO}_3$ , and oxalate,  $[\text{CO}(\text{NH}_2)_2]_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_2\text{O}_4$  are deposited.

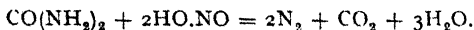
2. Melt a few crystals of urea over a small flame and heat gently for a minute, so that bubbles of gas are slowly evolved. Cool and add a few drops of water, then a drop of copper sulphate solution, and finally a few drops of caustic soda. A violet or pink coloration is produced, depending upon the quantity of *biuret* formed.



3. Add a few drops of sodium hypochlorite, or hypobromite,

to a solution of urea in water. Nitrogen is given off,  $\text{CO}(\text{NH}_2)_2 + 3\text{NaOCl} = \text{N}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} + 3\text{NaCl} + \text{CO}_2$  (which dissolves in the alkaline solution).

4. Add to a solution of urea a few drops of hydrochloric acid and a solution of sodium nitrite. Effervescence occurs and nitrogen and carbon dioxide are evolved.



5. Heat a little urea with soda-lime. Ammonia is evolved. See *Appendix*, p. 468.

#### PREPARATION 193.

**Thiocarbamide** (Thiourea),  $\text{SC} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ .

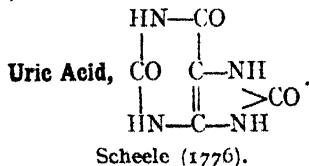
Reynolt, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1869, **22**, 1; Volhard, *J. prakt. Chem.*, 1874, (2), **9**, 10.

50 grams ammonium thiocyanate.

The ammonium thiocyanate is melted in a round flask in a paraffin-bath, and kept at a temperature at which the mass remains just liquid ( $140$ — $145^\circ$ ) for five to six hours. The cooled melt is powdered and ground with half its weight of cold water, which dissolves unchanged ammonium thiocyanate, but little of the thiourea. By dissolving the residue in a little hot water, pure thiourea is obtained, on cooling, in colourless, silky needles. Yield, 7—8 grams.



*Properties.*—Colourless, rhombic prisms (from dilute aqueous solution), long, silky needles (from concentrated solutions); m. p.  $172^\circ$ . Very slightly soluble in cold water (1 part of thiourea dissolves in about 11 parts of water at the ordinary temperature). See *Appendix*, p. 469.



Uric acid is a product of the metabolism of the animal organism. It is usually prepared from guano, which is treated first with dilute hydrochloric acid to remove phosphate of calcium. The uric acid is then dissolved out with hot caustic soda and the clear alkaline solution precipitated with acid.

*Properties.*—Uric acid forms microscopic crystals of a characteristic shape. It is insoluble in water, but dissolves in the presence of many organic substances. On dry distillation it yields ammonia, cyanuric acid, and urea.

*Reactions.*—Evaporate a little of the acid with a few c.c. of dilute nitric acid to dryness on the water-bath. An orange or red residue remains. On cooling, add ammonia. A fine purple colour is produced (murexide test); see also Reaction for alloxan (p. 335).

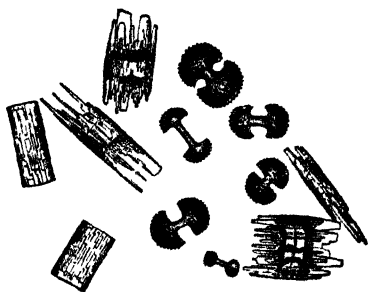


FIG. 91.—Crystals of uric acid (after Funke).

• **Estimation of Uric Acid.**—

Weigh out accurately about 0.5 gram of uric acid, wash it into a litre flask and add about 0.5 gram of potassium hydroxide, when a clear solution should be obtained. Make up to 1 litre. Prepare a *N*/20 solution of potassium permanganate (1.58 grams  $\text{KMnO}_4$  in 1 litre; 1 c.c. = 0.00375 gram of uric acid) and fill up the burette. Measure out 100 c.c. of the uric acid solution, add 20 c.c. of conc. sulphuric acid, shake up and immediately titrate with the permanganate solution, stirring or shaking gently during the process, until a drop of permanganate gives a pink colour which is diffused through the solution. The titration is then complete, though the colour may shortly disappear.

*Example.*—100 c.c. = 12.5 c.c. of permanganate solution.

$$\frac{12.5 \times 0.00375 \times 100}{0.05} = 93.7 \text{ per cent.}$$

## PREPARATION 194.

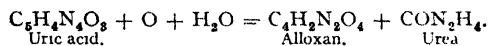
**Alloxantin**,  $C_8H_4N_4O_7 + 3H_2O$ .Liebig, Wöhler, *Annalen*, 1838, **26**, 262.

10 grams uric acid

20 „ (18 c.c.) conc. hydrochloric acid diluted with an equal weight of water

2.5 „ potassium chlorate.

The hydrochloric acid is poured over the uric acid. The mixture is heated to  $35^\circ$ , and the potassium chlorate, finely powdered, is added in small quantities at a time with constant shaking. When about two grams of the chlorate have been added, the uric acid will have nearly dissolved, and the liquid has a faint yellow colour. It is diluted with double its volume of water, allowed to stand for about an hour, and filtered. The filtrate is saturated with hydrogen sulphide, and yields, after being left for twelve hours, crystalline crusts, often of a reddish tint, of alloxantin mixed with sulphur. It is filtered and washed with cold water, and the alloxantin dissolved in a small quantity of hot water, and filtered from the residue of sulphur. On cooling the filtrate, colourless crystals separate out. Yield, 7—8 grams.



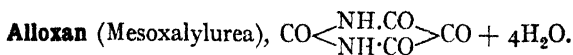
*Properties.*—Hard, colourless crystals, slightly soluble in cold, more readily soluble in hot water.

*Reactions.*—1. Add to the solution of alloxantin a little baryta water; a violet coloration is produced.

2. Add ammonio-silver nitrate solution and warm; metallic silver is deposited.

3. Boil the solution with mercuric oxide; a violet solution of murexide is formed. See *Appendix*, p. 469.

## PREPARATION 195



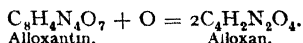
Liebig, Wöhler, *Annalen*, 1838, **26**, 256.

5 grams alloxantin

5 „ (3.5 c.c.) conc. nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.4)

10 „ (7 c.c.) fuming „ (sp. gr. 1.5).

The finely powdered alloxantin is added to a mixture of the strong and fuming nitric acid, and left to stand. Slight evolution of nitrous fumes occurs, and the alloxantin, which at first remains at the bottom of the vessel, slowly changes into the more bulky crystals of alloxan, which gradually fill the liquid. The reaction lasts about two days, and is complete when a sample dissolves readily and completely in cold water. The crystalline mass is spread upon a porous plate, thoroughly dried in the air, and freed from traces of nitric acid by heating in a basin on the water-bath until the smell of the acid disappears. Alloxan may be obtained in large crystals by dissolving the dry product in the smallest quantity of hot water, and allowing the solution to evaporate slowly in a desiccator over sulphuric acid. The crystals are liable to effloresce.



*Properties.*—Colourless crystals, containing 4 molecules of water of crystallisation.

*Reaction.*—A small quantity of the alloxan solution is evaporated to dryness on the water-bath in a porcelain basin. A reddish residue is left, which turns purple on the addition of ammonia (murexide). See *Appendix*, p. 470.

## PREPARATION 196.

**Allantoin from Uric Acid.**

5 grams uric acid

1 gram caustic soda (in 5 c.c. water)

3.2 grams potassium permanganate (in 150 c.c. water).

To 5 grams of uric acid contained in a flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) add enough

water to form a thin paste and about 1 gram of sodium hydroxide dissolved in a little water. Place the flask in ice-water and, whilst cooling, dissolve 3.2 grams of potassium permanganate in 150 c.c. of water. Add the cooled permanganate solution a few c.c. at a

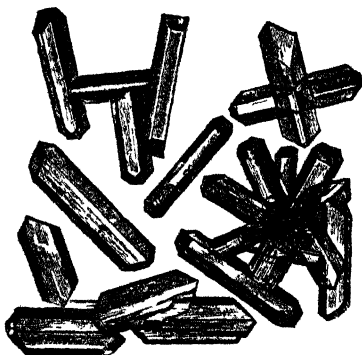
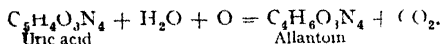


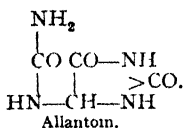
FIG 92—Crystals of allantoin prepared by the oxidation of uric acid (after Kuhne).

time to the uric acid, shake well and keep the temperature below  $10^{\circ}$ . The permanganate is quickly reduced and manganese dioxide is precipitated. When the whole of the permanganate has been added and the pink colour gone, pass in a current of sulphur dioxide, keeping the flask in the ice-water, and shake well until the precipitate of manganese dioxide is just dissolved. Filter from any unchanged uric acid, if necessary, and concentrate

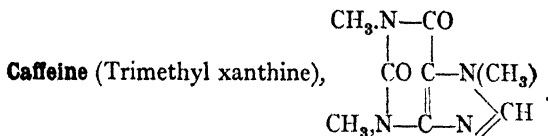
the solution to about half its bulk on the water-bath. Set aside and let it stand for about two days, when colourless, crystalline crusts of allantoin are deposited (Claus). The yield is theoretical. The substance may be recrystallised from hot water, and has the appearance shown in Fig. 92.



It crystallises in shining prisms with dome-shaped ends, and has the following structure :



## PREPARATION 197.



100 grams tea.

Digest the tea with 500 c.c. boiling water for a quarter of an hour, and filter through cloth into a basin placed over a ring burner (see p. 131), so that the liquid in the filter is kept hot. Moderately fine unsized cotton cloth is used, and is wetted and stretched on a wooden frame as shown in Fig. 93. Wash with a further 250 c.c. of boiling water. Add to the filtrate a solution of basic lead acetate (made by boiling acetate of lead solution with excess of litharge, and then filtering) until no more precipitate is formed. Filter hot through a large fluted filter from precipitated albumin, and wash with water. To the boiling filtrate add dilute sulphuric acid until the lead is precipitated as sulphate. Filter or decant from the sulphate of lead, and concentrate the solution with the addition of animal charcoal to 250—300 c.c. Filter and extract the filtrate three times with small quantities (50 c.c.) of chloroform. Distil off the chloroform on the water-bath, and dissolve the residue in a small quantity of hot water. On allowing the solution to evaporate very slowly, long silky needles of caffeine separate, which may have a slightly yellow tint, in which case they should be drained, redissolved in water, and boiled with the addition of animal charcoal. The needles contain one molecule of water, which they lose at 100°, and melt at 234·5°. Yield about 1·5 grams. See *Appendix*, p. 471.

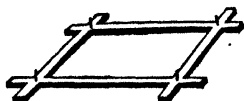
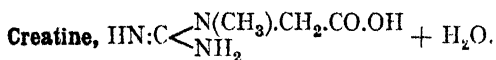


FIG. 93.



## PREPARATION 198.

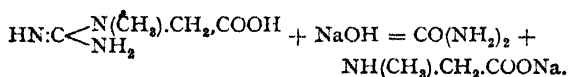


Neubauer, *Annalen*, 1861, **119**, 27.

500 grams meat.

The meat, separated as far as possible from fat, is put through a sausage machine, or finely chopped and digested with  $\frac{1}{2}$  litre of water at  $50-60^\circ$ , and well stirred from time to time. It is filtered through cloth (see Fig. 93, p. 337), and is then digested with a further 250 c.c. of water in the same way, filtered, and the cloth removed from the frame and squeezed out. The filtrate is heated to boiling to coagulate the albumin, and, on cooling, filtered. Basic acetate of lead is carefully added, just sufficient to precipitate the soluble albumin. The liquid is again filtered through a fluted filter, and the lead removed with hydrogen sulphide, which is passed into the warm liquid. The filtrate from the sulphide of lead is concentrated to a thin syrup on the water-bath and then transferred to a vacuum desiccator, where it is left over sulphuric acid. In a short time, especially on the addition of a crystal of creatine, needle-shaped crystals begin to separate, and when no further crystallisation is observed, the crystals, which have a brown colour, are brought on to a porcelain funnel, and washed with a little spirit. They are recrystallised from a little hot water, with the addition of animal charcoal. Yield about 1 gram. The filtrate from the creatine contains hypoxanthine and sarcosine, but the small quantities of these two constituents render them difficult to extract.

*Properties.*—Small rhombic prisms; with difficulty soluble in cold water, readily soluble in hot water. On warming with alkalis, it decomposes into urea and sarcosine,



PREPARATION 199.

**Tyrosine**,  $(\text{OH})\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\cdot\text{COOH}$ .

**Leucine**,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\cdot\text{COOH}$ .

Beyer, *Zeit*, 1867, 436, 1 Fischer, *Ber*, 1901, **34**, 433.

100 grams hoof or horn shavings (washed free from dirt)

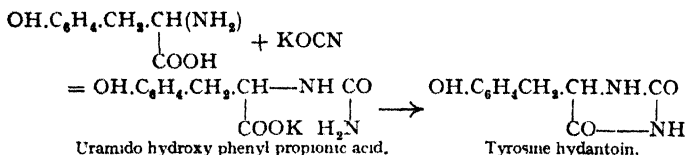
250 „ (136 c c) conc sulphuric acid (in 750 c c. water).

The shavings and acid are heated in a round flask (1½ litres) on the water-bath until the greater part is dissolved, and then boiled with reflux condenser over wire gauze for about twenty hours, until the solution no longer gives the biuret reaction (p 331) Add to a little of the liquid two drops of copper sulphate solution and make alkaline with caustic soda, if the coloration is violet or pink instead of blue, continue to boil After boiling, the dark-coloured liquid is poured into a large basin and neutralised whilst hot with slaked lime The hot liquid is filtered and the residual calcium sulphate replaced in the basin and extracted twice with 300 c c. of hot water The united filtrates are concentrated and made up to a litre The total quantity of oxalic acid (about 20 grams) required to precipitate the dissolved calcium salts is determined by a preliminary estimation with 50 c c of the solution. The liquid is boiled before adding the acid and filtered hot from the precipitated calcium oxalate. The precipitate is extracted twice with 250 c c. of water and concentrated (to about 250 c c) until crystals appear on the surface.

**Tyrosine.**—On cooling, a brown, crystalline crust of impure tyrosine separates It is filtered, dissolved in the least quantity of boiling water, boiled with a little animal charcoal and filtered. On cooling, long, white, silky needles of tyrosine are deposited. Yield, about 2 grams.

**Reaction.**—Warm a small quantity of the substance with a drop of strong nitric acid and add ammonia. A yellow solution is produced in the first case, which changes to deep orange with ammonia (xanthoproteic reaction). Warm with a solution of mercury in strong nitric acid (Millon's reagent). The liquid turns red, and a red precipitate is then formed.

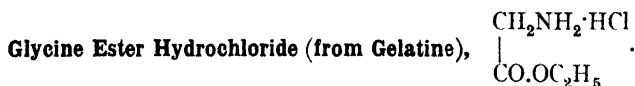
**Tyrosine Hydantoin.**—Suspend 1 gram of tyrosine in 5 c.c. of boiling water and add about 0.5 gram of potassium cyanate until a clear solution is obtained. Then boil for a quarter of an hour with 10 c.c. of hydrochloric acid (1 con. HCl : 2H<sub>2</sub>O), when a colourless, crystalline mass separates consisting of the hydantoin compound (Dakin).



**Leucine.**—The filtrate from the tyrosine is further concentrated on the water-bath to a small bulk, when on cooling a quantity (about 20 grams) of crude leucine in the form of a brown, crystalline crust separates, and is collected on a filter and dried on a porous plate. It is converted into the ester hydrochloride as follows: the dry material is dissolved in 120 c.c. absolute alcohol and saturated with hydrogen chloride (p. 362). The alcohol is removed by distilling under reduced pressure at a temperature not exceeding 40° in the apparatus shown in Fig. 94 (p. 342). The same quantity of alcohol is added, saturated with hydrogen chloride, and removed as before. The residue, which consists of the ester hydrochloride of leucine and small quantities of other amino-acids, is converted into the free ester in the following way: it is dissolved in about one-quarter its volume of water, to which an equal volume of purified ether is then added. The liquid is well cooled in a freezing mixture and a cooled 33 per cent. solution of caustic soda is slowly added until the liquid is just alkaline, and then an equal volume of a saturated solution of potassium carbonate. The mass is now well shaken and the ether decanted. In this way the ester, which is rapidly hydrolysed by alkali at the ordinary temperature, is liberated from the hydrochloride without decomposition and dissolves in the ether. The residue is kept in the freezing mixture, a fresh quantity of ether, more caustic soda solution, and sufficient solid potassium carbonate to form a pasty mass are added in succession, shaken up thoroughly and the ether decanted. The residue is extracted two or three times with fresh ether, and the united extract, freed as far as possible

from water, is shaken up for a minute with solid potassium carbonate and then dehydrated overnight with anhydrous sodium sulphate. The ether is removed on the water-bath and the residue distilled at a pressure not exceeding 15 mm. The colourless liquid, which distils at 80—100°, has an ammoniacal smell and is nearly pure leucine ester. Yield, 10—15 grams. The ester is readily hydrolysed by boiling with five times its weight of water with reflux condenser until the alkaline reaction disappears (about an hour). The liquid is then concentrated on the water-bath, until crystals separate on the surface, and cooled. The leucine may be recrystallised from dilute alcohol or dissolved in the smallest quantity of hot water and alcohol added until a turbidity appears. It forms small glistening plates, which melt and sublime at 170°. See *Appendix*, p. 472.

#### PREPARATION 200.



Mix 100 grams commercial gelatine or size with 300 c.c. concentrated hydrochloric acid and shake until the gelatine is nearly dissolved; then add a few fragments of porous pot and boil over wire-gauze with reflux condenser for four hours. The dark-coloured product is now evaporated on the water-bath under diminished pressure in the apparatus shown in Fig. 94.

It consists of two distilling flasks (1 litre) fitted together by rubber corks, the one acting as distilling flask and the other as receiver. The receiver, which is cooled by a stream of water, is attached to a water-jet aspirator. A long capillary, which nearly touches the bottom of the flask, is inserted through the cork of the distilling vessel. It serves to agitate the liquid by introducing a stream of fine air-bubbles which keep it in constant motion. When the water is removed as far as possible, the residue, which forms, on cooling, a thick viscid mass, is mixed with 500 c.c. absolute alcohol. It is heated on the water-bath with reflux condenser for a short time with the addition of a little animal charcoal and filtered. The alcoholic solution is cooled in ice and saturated with dry hydrogen

chloride (see p. 362). The liquid is then boiled for half an hour on the water-bath, cooled, and, after dropping in a crystal of the substance, left overnight. Glycine ester hydrochloride crystallises in colourless needles (m. p.  $144^{\circ}$ ) and is filtered and washed with a little alcohol. Yield, 10–15 grams.

**Uramidoacetic ester.**—Dissolve 1 gram of the glycine ester hydrochloride in 1 c.c. of water and 0.7 gram of potassium cyanate in 1 c.c.

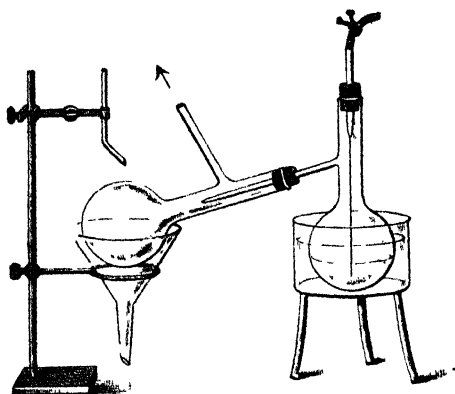
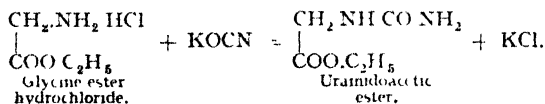
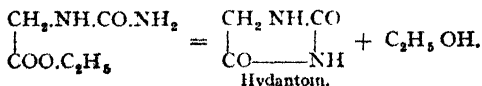


FIG 94

of water, mix the two solutions and concentrate on the water-bath till crystals begin to appear. On cooling, uramidoacetic ester separates in octahedra or prisms. It may be recrystallised from alcohol; m.p.  $135^{\circ}$ .



**Hydantoin.**—On heating on the water-bath with 25 per cent. hydrochloric acid for a quarter of an hour uramidoacetic ester is converted into hydantoin, which crystallises on cooling; m.p.  $217\text{--}219^{\circ}$ . (Harries and Weiss).



If the heating is continued, hydantoin is hydrolysed and gives glycine hydrochloride.

Other hydantoins may be obtained in the same way from the amino-acid ester hydrochloride or the amino-acid (p. 340).

#### PREPARATION 201.

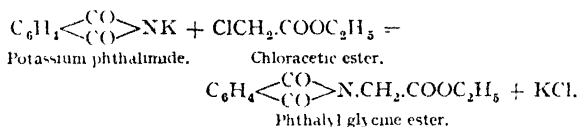
**Glycine (from Potassium phthalimide),**  $\text{CH}_2(\text{NH}_2).\text{COOH}$ .

Gabriel, Kroseberg, *Ber.*, 1889, **22**, 426.

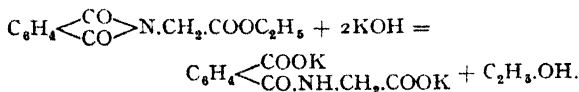
10 grams potassium phthalimide <sup>1</sup>

6.5 „ monochloroacetic ester.

Heat together in the oil-bath at  $150^\circ$  and with reflux condenser 10 grams of potassium phthalimide and 6.5 grams of chloroacetic ester, and stir occasionally with a glass rod to thoroughly mix the material. After half an hour the mass becomes pasty, and on cooling is dissolved in hot 50 per cent. alcohol. Filter the product, when cold, and wash first with cold 50 per cent. alcohol and then with water to remove potassium chloride. The yield is 6–8 grams. After crystallisation from dilute alcohol, it melts at  $112\text{--}113^\circ$ .

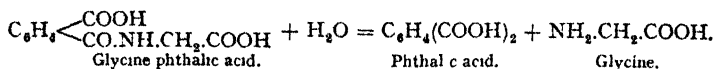


In order to hydrolyse the phthalyl glycine ester, 2.5 grams are boiled with reflux for a short time with 1.2 grams of potassium hydroxide in 12 c.c. of water. The ester passes into solution. Cool and add 2.2 c.c. of conc. hydrochloric acid. On standing a short time, colourless crystals of glycine phthalic acid separate. Filter and wash with ice-cold water until the filtrate no longer gives the reaction for chlorine.



<sup>1</sup> See p. 271. The potassium salt is prepared by dissolving 10 parts of the powdered phthalimide in thirty times its weight of spirit, and adding 7 parts of potassium hydroxide in 40 c.c. of alcohol and cooling. Wash with alcohol and dry over sulphuric acid in a desiccator.

Add now double the weight of 20 per cent. hydrochloric acid and boil in a reflux condenser with occasional shaking until a clear solution is obtained. The phthalic acid separates after two hours. Cool, dilute and evaporate the filtrate on the water-bath. Add a little cold water, filter from phthalic acid, and evaporate the filtrate. The glycine, which remains, is washed with a little alcohol and dried (Gabriel). See *Appendix*, p. 472.



#### PREPARATION 202.

**Hippuric Acid (from Urine and from Glycine),**  $\text{H}_2\text{C} \begin{matrix} \text{NH.COC}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{COOH} \end{matrix}$ .

**Preparation of Hippuric acid from Urine.**—To 20–30 c.c. of the urine of a herbivorous animal add milk of lime until on boiling it



FIG. 95.—Hippuric acid crystals (after Funke).

remains alkaline. Filter from the white, flocculent precipitate and then concentrate the solution to about one-third of its original volume. On the addition of a little conc. hydrochloric acid to the cooled liquid, colourless needles of hippuric acid separate. After standing for a short time the crystals are filtered and may be purified by recrystallisation from a little hot water. They retain colouring

matter, which is difficult to remove. The yield from 30 c.c. of goat's urine is about half a gram; m.p. 187—188°.

**Synthesis of Hippuric acid from Glycine.**—Glycine, obtained as described above, may be used. Dissolve 0.75 gram of glycine in 5 c.c. of water, add 1.25 grams of benzoyl chloride. Keep alkaline by occasionally adding a little sodium hydroxide solution, warm gently, and shake well until the smell of benzoyl chloride has disappeared. Add conc. hydrochloric acid until acid, and let stand a few hours. Filter and recrystallise from hot water. The yield is 1 gram; m.p. 187—188°.

#### PREPARATION 203.

##### **Phenylalanine, $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(NH_2) \cdot COOH$ .**

Fischer, *Anleitung zur Darstellung org. Präparate*, p. 87.

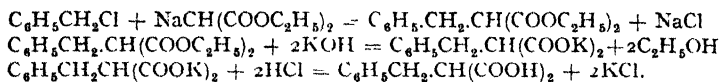
##### METHOD I (from Malonic ester).

4.6 grams sodium  
60 c.c. absolute alcohol  
32 grams malonic ester  
25 „ benzyl chloride.

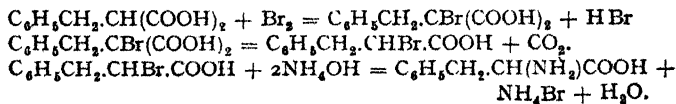
Dissolve 4.6 grams of metallic sodium in 60 c.c. of pure alcohol, and, whilst warm, add 32 grams of malonic ester. Cool to the ordinary temperature and add 25 grams of benzyl chloride in small portions and shake so that the mixture gradually becomes hot. Heat the mixture for twelve hours on a water-bath. Test the product, which should be neutral to litmus, by withdrawing a small sample, and adding water. Remove as much alcohol as possible on the water-bath, add a little water until the solid is dissolved and extract with ether. Dehydrate the ether solution with fused calcium chloride, remove the ether and distil the ester *in vacuo*. The yield of crude ester is about 36 grams. At about 20 mm. it boils at 185—190°. The yield is about 25 grams. To saponify the ester, heat it on the water-bath with a solution of potassium hydroxide (made by dissolving 12 grams of the hydroxide in 12 c.c. of water, and adding enough alcohol to give a clear solution). Heat on the water-bath for several hours, when saponification should be complete. This is determined by withdrawing a sample, and adding water, when a clear solution should be obtained. To remove



any unchanged ester add water and shake out once or twice with ether. Add sufficient conc. hydrochloric acid until acid to Congo-red paper and cool, and extract the benzylmalonic acid several times with small quantities of ether. Dehydrate the ether over fused sodium sulphate, distil off most of the ether, pour out the residue into a basin and remove the remainder of the ether on the water-bath. On standing, the substance crystallises in glistening crystals; m.p.  $118^{\circ}$ . Recrystallise from benzene. The yield is 9 to 10 grams.



Ten grams of benzylmalonic acid are dissolved in 60 c.c. of dry ether and 10 grams (3.3 c.c.) of bromine gradually added. Exposed to daylight, the bromine disappears rapidly at first and hydrogen bromide is evolved. Towards the end of the reaction the liquid retains the brown colour of the bromine. After standing half an hour, the ether solution, with the addition of a small quantity of water, is treated gradually with sulphur dioxide until, on shaking, the colour disappears; the ether layer is then removed, washed with a little water, and then carefully evaporated, and the solid residue (16 to 18 grams) crystallised from hot benzene. The yield is about 12 grams; m.p. of the anhydrous acid  $137^{\circ}$ . The moist benzylbromomalonic acid is now heated in the oil-bath to  $125-130^{\circ}$ , whereby carbon dioxide and a little hydrogen bromide are evolved. After three-quarters of an hour the reaction is complete, and the residual yellow oil is washed with water, dissolved in ether, and after dehydrating over anhydrous sodium sulphate, the ether is removed. The residual, mobile and nearly colourless oil is dissolved in five times its weight of 25 per cent. aqueous ammonia, and left for three to four days at the ordinary temperature. On evaporation, the residue consists of ammonium bromide and phenylalanine. On extracting with boiling alcohol, the amino-acid remains undissolved. One crystallisation from hot water yields a pure product. The yield is about 4—5 grams (Fischer).

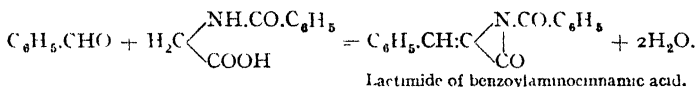


METHOD II (from Benzaldehyde).

Erlenmeyer, jun. *Annalen*, 1893, **275**, 1; 1899, **307**, 70, 163.

16.5	grams	hippuric acid
8.2	„	sodium acetate (fused)
10.6	„	benzaldehyde
31	„	acetic anhydride.

Heat on the water-bath 16.5 grams of hippuric acid, 8.2 grams of fused sodium acetate, 10.6 grams of benzaldehyde, and 31 grams of acetic anhydride. The thick mass turns yellow and partly liquefies before again becoming semi-solid. Heat for three-quarters of an hour, cool, wash with a little cold water and filter; then rub with alcohol and again filter. Transfer to a basin, heat with a little hot water to remove sodium acetate, and filter and wash at the pump with hot water. The yield is 16 grams; m.p. 166—167°. This is the lactimide of benzoylaminocinnamic acid

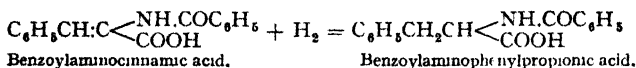


To convert it into acid, suspend 15 grams of the lactimide in 1500 c.c. of water, add 3 grams of sodium hydroxide in 30 c.c. of water, and heat on the water-bath until the whole of the substance has dissolved. The process may last an hour or more. Acidify the *hot* solution with hydrochloric acid, which precipitates the benzylaminocinnamic acid in colourless prisms, which, after recrystallisation from alcohol, melt slowly at about 210°. The yield is 14 grams. To reduce the acid, suspend the finely powdered substance in ten times its weight of water and add gradually rather more than the calculated amount of 2 per cent. sodium amalgam (1 gram of acid = 9 grams of amalgam). When the amalgam has completely decomposed, filter from the mercury, heat the reduced product, which is in solution as the sodium salt, on the water-bath, and fractionally precipitate with hydrochloric acid in approximately three fractions. The first fraction, which contains the bulk of the reduced acid, melts below 180°. The fraction of higher melting point contains more of the unreduced acid and may be

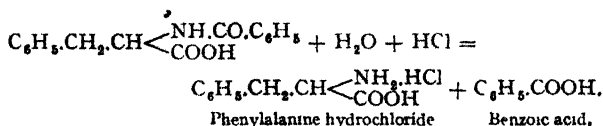
further treated with sodium amalgam; but an excess should be avoided, as uncrystallisable by-products are formed.

The reduced acid is separated from the unreduced portion by converting the latter into the lactimide with acetic anhydride, the lactimide being insoluble in sodium carbonate.

Dissolve the dry, powdered product in a little acetic anhydride by heating on the water-bath. On cooling and adding water, the acetic anhydride goes slowly into solution and the yellow lactimide, mixed with the colourless reduced acid, solidifies and is filtered and washed with water. Warm the precipitate on the water-bath with sodium carbonate solution. The acid dissolves completely, leaving the lactimide. Filter and precipitate the filtrate with hydrochloric acid. Filter and wash well with cold water to remove the acid and crystallise from alcohol. The yield from 10 grams is about 6 grams of pure acid; m.p. 184—185° (corr. 186—187°).



To hydrolyse the benzoylamminopropionic acid, boil with 125 times its weight of 10 per cent. hydrochloric acid for eight hours, when the organic acid passes gradually into solution. Some benzoic acid crystallises on cooling and is removed by filtration. The filtrate is concentrated and the remainder of the benzoic acid extracted with ether. The solution is then evaporated to dryness on the water-bath. The residue is phenylalanine hydrochloride. To separate the phenylalanine, dissolve the dry hydrochloride in a little ammonia, and drive off the excess of ammonia on the water-bath. On concentrating the solution, the phenylalanine crystallises, on standing, in colourless plates. The yield is nearly theoretical (Erlenmeyer).



## PREPARATION 204.

**Leucine (from Isoamyl alcohol),**  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{COOH}$ .

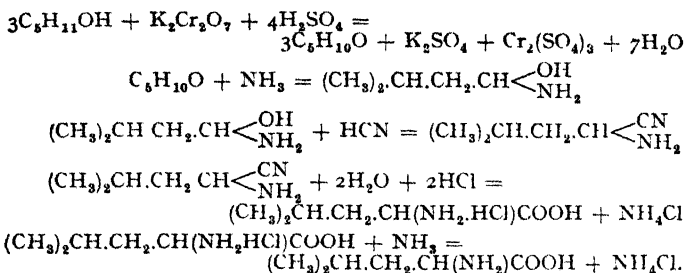
Fischer, *Anleitung zur Darstellung org. Präparate*, p. 86.

80 grams isoamyl alcohol  
100 „ potassium (or sodium) dichromate  
1000 c.c. water  
72 „ conc. sulphuric acid.

Mix together in a round flask (2 litres) attached to a reflux condenser 100 grams of potassium dichromate, 1 litre of water, and 72 c.c. of conc. sulphuric acid, warm to  $90^\circ$  on the water-bath and drop in gradually 80 grams of isoamyl alcohol. The product is then distilled, and the isovaleric aldehyde shaken in a tap-funnel with dilute sodium hydroxide solution, and, after removing the alkaline solution, with conc. sodium bisulphite solution. The crystalline mass is filtered and pressed and then distilled with sodium carbonate solution, whereby the valeric aldehyde distils. Add to the valeric aldehyde strong ammonia and shake well. Valeric aldehyde-ammonia separates in crystals. These are filtered and washed with water, and about 30 grams of the crystals are suspended in about their own weight of water, cooled and 14 c.c. of 50 per cent. hydrocyanic acid<sup>1</sup> gradually added. After standing for eight hours, with frequent shaking, add a mixture of 160 c.c. of conc. hydrochloric acid and 80 c.c. of water, whereby a precipitate is formed. On long boiling, the precipitate dissolves. Add a further 80 c.c. of water and boil again. Evaporate on the water-bath to remove hydrochloric acid and add 25 c.c. of water. Saturate with ammonia and after cooling filter the leucine and wash with cold water to dissolve out the ammonium chloride. The yield is about 10 grams. To remove colouring matter it may be dissolved in a

<sup>1</sup> This is prepared by distilling, in a good draught chamber and with great caution, 100 grams of coarsely powdered potassium ferrocyanide with a mixture of 40 c.c. conc. sulphuric acid and 140 c.c. water. A long, well-cooled condenser should be used, the end of which is attached air-tight to a receiver with a double tubulus, the second tubulus being provided with a long glass tube reaching to the flue opening. The receiver should be placed in ice. About 15 c.c. of hydrocyanic acid which distils will be of approximately 50 per cent. strength.

large amount of hot water, boiled with animal charcoal, and filtered. It melts at  $170^{\circ}$  and sublimes.



*Properties.*—Inactive leucine prepared synthetically dissolves in 106 parts of water at  $15^{\circ}$  and is converted with nitrous acid into an hydroxycaproic acid, m.p.  $54.5^{\circ}$ .

#### PREPARATION 205.

##### Glutamic Acid (Aminoglutaric Acid) (from Gluten), $\text{COOH}.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{COOH}.$

Ritthausen, *J. prakt. Chem.*, 1866, **99**, 6, 454.

100 grams gluten

300 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid.

Knead in a large basin under a slow-running stream of water 400—500 grams of flour. The starch is gradually removed and a sticky, yellowish mass of gluten remains. The process of kneading is continued as long as the water appears milky and the gluten contains lumps. Dry the gluten as far as possible on the water-bath, after squeezing out most of the water.

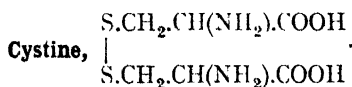
The gluten and hydrochloric acid are mixed in a 1 litre round flask and warmed on the water-bath until the gluten is dissolved. The solution is then boiled over wire-gauze with reflux for five to six hours. It is diluted with an equal volume of hot water, filtered and the black residue (humus) washed with hot water until the filtrate is nearly colourless. The filtrate and washings are decolorised by warming on the water-bath with

about 20 grams of animal charcoal and again filtered. The filtrate is now evaporated on the water-bath under diminished pressure (see p. 342) to 150—200 c.c. The concentrated solution is saturated with hydrochloric acid gas and left in the ice chest for a day. A solid mass of glutamic acid hydrochloride crystals separates, mixed with ammonium chloride. An equal volume of cold spirit is added and the crystals are filtered, washed with ice-cold absolute alcohol and dried on a porous plate in a desiccator over solid caustic soda. Yield, 35 to 40 grams.

To purify the crude product it is dissolved in the minimum quantity of water, cooled in ice and saturated with hydrochloric acid gas. After standing for some hours in the ice-chest, cold alcohol is added and the crystals are filtered. They are washed and dried as before. Yield, 16—20 grams. They form triclinic plates, m.p. 193—194°.

In order to prepare the free glutamic acid the hydrochloride is dissolved in the least quantity of water, and for each gram of the salt, 5.5 c.c. of normal caustic soda solution are added. The solution is evaporated at 40—50° under diminished pressure to a small volume (about 75 c.c. for 15—20 grams of salt) and left in the ice-chest to crystallise. The crystals are filtered and washed with a little cold water. Glutamic acid crystallises in rhombic tetrahedra, m.p. 212—213°. The yield is about 10 grams.

#### PREPARATION 206.



Morner, *Zeit. physiol. Chem.*, 1899, **28**, 599; 1901, **34**, 207; 1904, **42**, 347.

250 grams hair<sup>1</sup> (or wool free from grease)  
500 c.c. conc. hydrochloric acid.

The acid is placed in a litre round flask and heated on the water-bath,\* the hair or wool being added in portions of 50 grams and

<sup>1</sup> Human hair can be obtained from the sweepings of a hairdresser's shop and is preferable to wool.

well shaken after each addition. The mixture is then boiled with reflux condenser for five to six hours or until it no longer gives the biuret test. Whilst still hot it is partly neutralised with caustic soda solution and finally excess of sodium acetate is added to remove the free hydrochloric acid, Congo-red paper being used as indicator. It is allowed to stand overnight and the brown precipitate filtered through a porcelain funnel. This precipitate, which consists of cystine together with solid impurities, is transferred to a

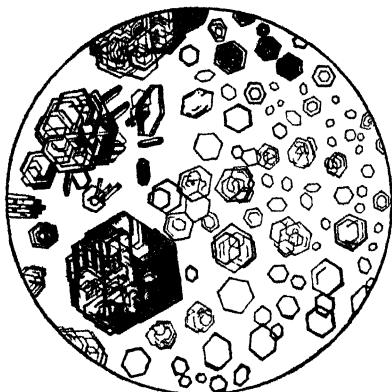
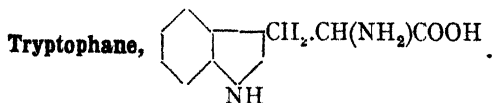


FIG. 96—Cystine crystals (after Funke).

porcelain basin and boiled with 150 c.c. of 20 per cent. hydrochloric acid and filtered. The process is repeated with another 100 c.c. of acid. The combined filtrates are boiled with 10—15 grams of purified animal charcoal and filtered. The clear and almost colourless filtrate is mixed with a hot concentrated solution of sodium acetate and left till quite cold. The cystine which separates is filtered, washed with cold water, then with spirit and dried on a porous plate. The yield is 15—18 grams. It may be purified by crystallisation from hot water, and forms colourless, hexagonal plates.

Cystine is readily soluble in mineral acids but insoluble in acetic acid. It also dissolves in dilute alkalis and ammonia. It is decomposed on boiling with lead acetate, lead sulphide being precipitated.

## PREPARATION 207.



F. G. Hopkins and E. C. Grey (Private Communication).

Rub up 200 grams of casein powder with a portion of 2 litres of water and wash the mixture with the remainder into a Winchester quart bottle or large jar. Add 16 grams of anhydrous sodium carbonate in small quantities or 100 c.c. of *N*-caustic soda and shake up, and finally add 40 grams of fresh, minced pigs' pancreas and 15 c.c. of toluene and fill up the bottle nearly to the neck. Cork the bottle and place it either in a water-bath or an incubator maintained constantly at 37°. After twelve hours, remove the cork for a moment and then shake to ensure thorough mixing. In twenty-four hours the whole of the casein will be dissolved. Another 10 grams of minced pancreas are added and the digestion is continued for five days in all. The digest, to which bromine water is added, should now give an intense purple colour if the decomposition has proceeded normally. Otherwise it is useless to continue. The liquid is now poured into a large basin and heated rapidly to 80°, but not above that temperature, whilst 100 grams of kieselguhr are stirred into the mixture. As soon as the digest has reached 80° the heating is stopped and the solution rapidly filtered through a porcelain funnel with filter paper covered with a thin layer of kieselguhr. The filtrate is immediately poured on to ice, so as to lower the temperature to 5°. Meantime the following solutions should be prepared :

1. 30 grams of mercuric sulphate in 50 c.c. of conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and 500 c.c. of water.

2. 50 c.c. of conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  diluted with 200 c.c. of water.

As the mercuric sulphate dissolves with difficulty it will be found necessary to heat the solution and to add the conc. sulphuric in three times its volume of water to begin with and then to add the remaining 350 c.c. of water. It is essential that the solution should be clear.

COHEN'S P. O. C.

A A



The solutions (1) and (2) being well cooled, (2) is added to the filtered liquid, which should still contain ice, and immediately afterwards (1) is added and ice should be present until the mercury precipitate has settled. The operation, from heating the digest to precipitation of the mercury compound, should not exceed half an hour and should be carried out the last thing at night, the object being to avoid the action of the acid on the free tryptophane (which it rapidly decomposes at room temperature) prior to precipitation.

The next steps must be carried out in the course of one day, the following materials being required: about 50 c.c. of alcohol distilled over barium oxide, a good vacuum distilling apparatus with an inlet capillary for introducing alcohol during the distillation (see Fig. 94, p. 342), a saturated solution of barium hydrate, porcelain funnels with kieselguhr filter and 50 c.c. of 10 per cent. sulphuric acid.

The mercury precipitate, after decanting the supernatant liquid, is transferred to a porcelain funnel and any cracks which form in the precipitate on the funnel are smoothed over. The mass is washed with five portions of 10 c.c. of dilute  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and then with five washings of 10 c.c. of distilled water as rapidly as possible. This should be completed in a quarter of an hour. The precipitate is quickly removed to a basin and rubbed into a thorough emulsion with water. The saturated baryta solution is added until the emulsion gives an alkaline reaction to litmus, and then transferred to a flask and treated with a rapid stream of  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$ . The volume of fluid will be about 400 c.c. After an hour it may be necessary to add more baryta to keep the solution alkaline (a large excess is to be avoided). At the end of two hours, the solution is filtered from the black precipitate, which is again emulsified with water and the  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$  again passed through for another hour. Meanwhile, the first filtrate is evaporated *in vacuo*; but before doing so the liquid must be completely freed from baryta and sulphuric acid. This is carried out as follows: a series of test-tubes is prepared containing a minute quantity of kieselguhr and a further series each containing a small funnel and filter-paper. To the solution, which is probably acid to litmus, baryta solution is added until the yellow colour changes to a green tint. At this point the solution contains a trace of baryta. A little sulphuric acid is added so that

the solution is just acid, and then a little baryta until alkaline, and so on, each addition being smaller than the preceding one. To test the solution after each addition, a few c.c. are added to one of the kieselguhr tubes, shaken up and filtered. The filtrate is divided into two portions, barium chloride added to one and sulphuric acid to the other, when no cloudiness should be apparent on standing for a few minutes. The liquid is now distilled in a good vacuum, a little alcohol being run in through the capillary, the object of which is partly to prevent bumping and partly to preserve the tryptophane. The tryptophane which separates is at first colourless, but as the solution becomes concentrated the tryptophane acquires a straw colour. The solution is taken almost to dryness when the flask is removed, and heated for a few minutes on the water-bath at  $100^{\circ}$  with the addition of 10—20 c.c. of water and 2—3 c.c. of alcohol. The whole should not be allowed to dissolve, but when only a small quantity of solid remains, poured into a dish, when the tryptophane crystallises. After standing for a short time, it is filtered and dried *in vacuo*. The yield is about 2 grams. If at the above stage the substance is completely dissolved or too much alcohol is used, a syrup may result which does not crystallise. In that case it must be evaporated to dryness *in vacuo* and the process repeated. The impure tryptophane, which still contains a little tyrosine and cystine, is shaken with water in excess of that required to dissolve the tryptophane, when the two latter separate as a grey powder. The filtered solution is mixed with one-third its volume of pure alcohol and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue crystallises in fine needles or in plates. The yield of purified product is about 1 gram.

## PREPARATION 208.

**Tyramine Hydrochloride** (*p*-Hydroxyphenylethylamine hydrochloride),  $\text{HO}-\text{C}_6\text{H}_4-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2\text{HCl}$ .

I. *p*-Nitrobenzyl cyanide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2\text{CN} \\ \text{NO}_2 \end{matrix}$   $\begin{matrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{matrix}$

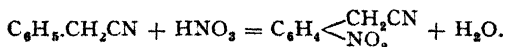
Salkowski, *Ber.*, 1884, 17, 505; Robertson, Stieglitz, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1921, 43, 180.

## PRACTICAL ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

---

50 grams benzyl cyanide (see p. 230)  
 137 c.c. conc. nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.42)  
 137 „ conc. sulphuric acid (sp. gr. 1.84).

The two acids are mixed together in a 1 litre round flask, fitted with a dropping funnel, stirrer and thermometer and cooled in ice. The stirrer is put into action, and when the temperature is below 10°, the benzyl cyanide is run in drop by drop so that the temperature does not rise above 20°. At the end of an hour the benzyl cyanide should have been added, when the ice-bath is removed; but the stirring is continued for another hour. The product is then poured on to about 500 grams of crushed ice, when a pasty mass separates. It is drained at the pump and well pressed to remove adhering oil. The solid is crystallised three times from boiling purified spirit in order to obtain the pure nitro-compound which melts at 116—117°. The yield is 34 grams (70 per cent.) The oily portion consists of a mixture of ortho, meta and para isomers.



*Properties.*—*p*-Nitrobenzyl cyanide is a pale yellow solid, which crystallises from alcohol in needles, m.p. 116—117°.



Friedländer, *Ber.*, 1884, 17, 237; Pschorr, Wolfes, Buckow, *Ber.*, 1900, 33, 170

16 grams *p*-nitrobenzyl cyanide  
 22 „ granulated tin  
 200 c.c. absolute alcohol.

The above substances are mixed in a litre round flask and stirred mechanically whilst 100 c.c. of conc. hydrochloric acid are dropped in at such a rate that the temperature does not rise above 25°. When most of the tin has dissolved, the temperature is raised to 50° by warming on the water-bath (the stirring being continued) until a test portion gives a pale yellow solution on the addition of caustic soda solution. The alcohol is then distilled from the water-

bath under reduced pressure, when the chlorostannate of the base separates. It is dissolved in a little water, and caustic soda solution added until the stannic hydrate redissolves, leaving a thick emulsion of the amino-compound. The latter is extracted with ether, the ether removed and the residue crystallised from spirit. It crystallises in colourless plates, m.p. 45—46°. Yield, 9—10 grams.



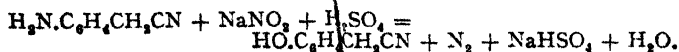
*Properties.*—*p*-Aminobenzyl cyanide is soluble in the ordinary organic solvents and also in hot water.

III. *p*-Hydroxybenzyl cyanide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2\text{CN} \\ \text{OH} \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{matrix}$

Salkowski, *Ber.*, 1884, **17**, 506; 1889, **22**, 2139; Pschorr, Wolfes, Burkow, *Ber.*, 1900, **33**, 170.

10 grams *p*-aminobenzyl cyanide  
6 „ sodium nitrite (in 50 c.c. of water)  
30 c.c. conc. sulphuric acid  
300 „ water.

The water and acid are mixed and heated in a litre round flask, provided with a thermometer and dropping funnel, both of which reach almost to the bottom of the vessel, which also has an outlet tube. When the liquid is almost boiling, the amino-compound is added. At first the solid sulphate of the base separates, which then redissolves. The nitrite solution is then gradually added, with occasional shaking, through the funnel in the course of fifteen minutes, whilst the temperature is maintained at 95—100°. Fifty c.c. of water are then added and the dark-coloured liquid is decolourised by boiling with 5 to 10 grams of animal charcoal. The filtrate is cooled and extracted twice with ether. The ether extract is washed with 30 to 40 c.c. of a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and then with an equal volume of water. It is then distilled, first on the water-bath to remove the solvent, and finally over the flame under reduced pressure without condenser. The product boils at 190—197° at 15 mm. and solidifies to a light brown, crystalline solid. The yield is 4 to 5 grams; m.p. 68—71°.



**IV. Tyramine Hydrochloride,  $(\text{HO})\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{NH}_2\cdot\text{HCl}$ .**

Fourneau, *Préparation des médicaments organiques*, p. 318.

3 grams *p*-hydroxybenzyl cyanide  
6 „ sodium  
54 c.c. absolute alcohol.

The hydroxy-compound is mixed with 30 c.c. of the alcohol in a 500 c.c. round flask connected to a reflux condenser, and the mixture boiled on the water-bath. The sodium is then added in small pieces, allowing an interval of about five minutes between each addition. The mixture is then heated for another half-hour and 12 c.c. more alcohol are added to aid the solution of the sodium. After further heating for fifteen minutes, the remainder of the alcohol (12 c.c.) is added. When the sodium is completely dissolved, forming a brown solution, part of the solvent is distilled under reduced pressure, and the residue (30—40 c.c.) when cold mixed with dilute hydrochloric acid until acid to litmus. It is extracted with ether (100—120 c.c.) to remove any cresol which may be formed, and the aqueous layer is then rendered alkaline with sodium carbonate and extracted twice with amyl alcohol (90 c.c. each time). The alcoholic extract is washed three times with normal hydrochloric acid (using 60 c.c. each time), and finally with 60 c.c. of water. The acid and aqueous extracts (containing the tyramine hydrochloride) are evaporated almost to dryness under reduced pressure on the water-bath. The residue is treated with 15 c.c. of absolute alcohol and 1 c.c. of conc. hydrochloric acid, warmed to dissolve it and filtered hot. The filtrate is boiled with animal charcoal and again filtered. On cooling, colourless microscopic needles of tyramine hydrochloride are obtained. Yield, 1 gram; m.p. 260—270°.

**SECTION IV**  
**PREPARATION OF REAGENTS**



## PREPARATION OF REAGENTS

**Aluminium Chloride.**—The aluminium chloride which has been kept for a time usually contains more or less hydroxide, due to the action of moisture, and unless recently prepared should be sublimed in a current of hydrochloric acid gas dried through a wash-bottle of sulphuric acid. The aluminium chloride is placed in a wide combustion tube, which is attached at one end to the hydrochloric acid inlet tube and at the other to a wide-necked bottle furnished with a double-bored stopper. Through one hole in the

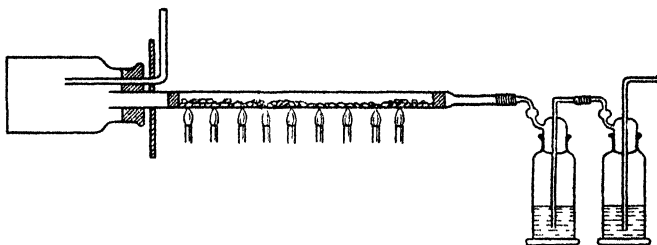


FIG. 97.

stopper the end of the combustion tube is inserted whilst the other is furnished with an outlet tube fitted with a calcium chloride tube for conducting away the excess of acid gas to the flue of the fume cupboard. The apparatus is placed in an ordinary combustion furnace as shown in Fig. 97.

A fairly rapid current of hydrochloric acid gas is passed through the tube, which is gently heated. The stopper of the bottle is protected from the burners by a sheet of asbestos; at the same time, it should be pushed as near as possible to the furnace so that the aluminium chloride sublimes into the bottle and does not block the tube (Gattermann, "Practical Methods of Organic Chemistry").



**Dimethyl Sulphate.**—Two hundred grams of chlorosulphonic acid are placed in a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -litre distilling flask closed with a cork furnished with a thermometer and dropping funnel. Both the thermometer and the end of the funnel (drawn out into a capillary) must reach below the surface of the liquid. The side-tube of the flask is attached to a calcium chloride tube. The liquid in the flask is cooled in a freezing mixture below  $0^{\circ}$  and 54 grams of pure methyl alcohol are gradually added from the tap-funnel with frequent shaking, the temperature being maintained below  $5^{\circ}$ . The hydrochloric acid gas which is evolved is absorbed in water in such a way that the water does not run back into the flask (see p. 110). When the alcohol has been added the mixture is left overnight. It is then distilled *in vacuo* (15–20 mm.) from an oil-bath at about  $150$ – $160^{\circ}$ . The receiver is cooled in ice-water and the distillate collected until the thermometer indicates  $140^{\circ}$ . The distillate is shaken with ice-cold water, then with very dilute sodium carbonate and finally with ice-cold water. It is dried over calcium chloride. The yield is about 80 grams. It boils at the ordinary pressure at  $180^{\circ}$  with slight decomposition and at  $95^{\circ}$  at 15 mm. Dimethyl sulphate is extremely poisonous, and great care should be exercised in its use, especially in breathing the vapour (Ullmann, *Annalen*, 1903, 327 106; *Org. chem. Prakt.*, p. 157).

**Hydrogen Chloride** (Hydrochloric Acid gas).—A filter flask ( $\frac{1}{2}$  litre) is fitted with a rubber cork, through which a tap-funnel is inserted. The flask is filled one-third full of concentrated hydrochloric acid and is attached to a wash-bottle containing a little concentrated sulphuric acid. A delivery tube is attached to the wash-bottle. The hydrogen chloride is generated by dropping concentrated sulphuric acid from the tap-funnel into the flask containing the hydrochloric acid. As the gas is often rapidly absorbed by the liquid, which may in consequence run back into the wash-bottle, it is advisable to run in the acid rather more quickly at the beginning than is necessary later on and to generate the gas for a short time before passing it into the liquid, or preferably to use a wash-bottle with safety tube, as shown at *a*. The apparatus is shown in Fig. 98.

**Hydrobromic Acid.**—Mix together 27 c.c. of bromine, 100 c.c. of

water and add 300 grams of broken ice. Pass in sulphur dioxide from a syphon until the liquid assumes a homogeneous light yellow colour. This is distilled and the portion boiling at  $125-126^{\circ}$  collected. The yield is about 480 grams. It contains 47 per cent. of HBr and has a sp. gr. of 1.49 at  $15^{\circ}$ .

**Hydriodic Acid** is conveniently prepared, according to Gattermann, as follows: A small round flask (100 c.c.) is provided with a tap-funnel and delivery-tube, the latter being attached to a U-tube as shown in Fig. 99. The U-tube is filled with broken glass or pot, which has been

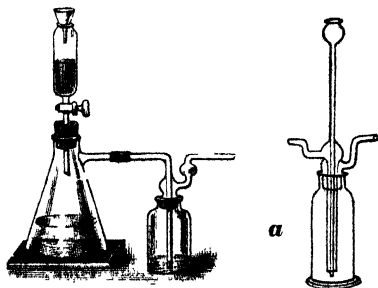


FIG. 98.

coated with amorphous phosphorus by rubbing it in the phosphorus slightly moistened with water. The flask is first detached from the U-tube and funnel, and 44 grams of iodine introduced.\* Four grams of yellow phosphorus, cut in small pieces, are then added. The phosphorus must be cut under water, brought on to filter-paper with crucible tongs, pressed for a moment, and transferred with tongs to the flask. Each piece of phosphorus as it drops in produces a flash. When the phosphorus has been added a dark-coloured liquid is obtained, which solidifies on cooling, and consists of  $PI_3$ . The flask, when cold, is closed with its cork, and the delivery tube from the U-tube is inserted loosely into the neck of a small flask containing 50 c.c. of water, so that the open end of the delivery-tube is above the surface of the water. It is kept in position by a wedge of cork fixed in the neck. Ten c.c. of water are now added gradually from the tap-funnel. Hydriodic acid is evolved, and after being freed from iodine in the U-tube is

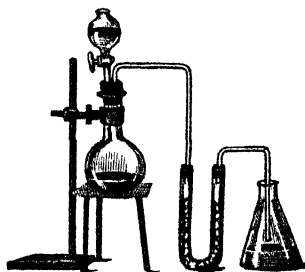


FIG. 99.

absorbed by water. When the water has been added the liquid is gently heated over a small flame until no more fumes issue from the delivery tube. The aqueous solution of hydriodic acid is distilled with a thermometer and the portion boiling at  $125^{\circ}$  and above is collected separately. It consists of strong hydriodic acid solution containing 57 per cent. of HI. A stronger solution may be obtained by passing the gas into ice-cold water until saturated.

**Phosphorus pentabromide.**—A wide-mouthed glass jar of about a litre capacity is fitted with a rubber stopper carrying a sealed stirrer, a dropping funnel, a thermometer and a reflux condenser, protected by a calcium chloride tube. Yellow phosphorus (15.5 grams) is weighed out directly into a flask containing 200 c.c. of dry carbon bisulphide (previously distilled over solid caustic potash), each piece of phosphorus (held by crucible tongs) being dried rapidly with filter paper before being dropped in. The phosphorus dissolves on shaking, and the solution, filtered from impurities, is introduced into the reaction vessel through the dropping funnel, which is immediately washed through with a further 50 c.c. of dry carbon bisulphide. The greatest care must be observed in keeping all burners away from the neighbourhood of the carbon bisulphide, the vapour of which readily catches fire, and especially in handling the phosphorus solution, a drop of which, on evaporation of the carbon bisulphide, ignites spontaneously. Vessels containing it must be filled with water as soon as they are emptied, and the paper through which it is filtered must be immersed in water *immediately* after use. The reaction vessel must be filled with carbon dioxide surrounded by a freezing mixture, and the solution vigorously stirred. When the temperature has fallen to  $0^{\circ}$ , 200 grams (67 c.c.) of bromine dissolved in 250 c.c. dry carbon bisulphide are added very cautiously from the dropping funnel at such a rate as to keep the temperature at  $15-20^{\circ}$ . Phosphorus tribromide is first formed; later, a clear solution is obtained, and when about three-fifths of the bromine has been added, a yellow precipitate of the pentabromide appears. By rapid stirring, caking of the precipitate is avoided. Stirring is continued for a short time after all the bromine has been added, the heavy precipitate is then allowed to settle and the supernatant liquid decanted. The last traces of carbon bisulphide are removed at the ordinary tem-

perature by lowering the pressure in the vessel to about 150 mm. and admitting a stream of dry air through a capillary to carry off the vapour. This process is continued until there is no further loss in weight. Any attempt at distilling the carbon bisulphide results in the decomposition of the pentabromide. Phosphorus pentabromide is obtained by this method as a perfectly dry lemon-yellow powder, having a great avidity for moisture. It is best kept in the bottle in which it is made, and closed by a rubber stopper secured by wire. The yield is practically theoretical.

**Phosphorus Tri-iodide.**—10·3 grams of yellow phosphorus dissolved in 150 c.c. of dry carbon bisulphide (distilled over solid caustic potash) are filtered into a 500 c.c. round flask, with the precautions described under the preparation of phosphorus pentabromide. The 127 grams of iodine are added to this solution a few grams at a time shaking after each addition until the iodine has completely dissolved and the colour of the solution has faded to a reddish tint. When all the iodine has been added, the carbon bisulphide is removed at the ordinary temperature under reduced pressure as described in the previous preparation. Phosphorus tri-iodide is thus obtained in the form of red crystals in theoretical yield. The carbon bisulphide recovered in this preparation may be freed from iodine by distillation over solid caustic potash.

**Phosphorus Pentasulphide,  $P_2S_5$ .**—Mix well together by means of a spatula dry red phosphorus and the calculated amount of flowers of sulphur, and introduce the mixture into a flask (previously filled with carbon dioxide) so that the latter is filled to the lower part of the neck. Close the mouth loosely with a cork and immerse the flask up to the neck in a metal bath filled with sand. Place the bath on a tripod in a fume cupboard and heat it over a Bunsen burner. When the contents of the flask reach a certain temperature a sudden and vigorous reaction occurs and the cork is usually driven out; but the reaction is momentary, and the flask after cooling is removed, and will be found to contain the fused sulphide as a dark greyish mass, which should be broken up and kept in a stoppered bottle.

**Thionyl Chloride,  $SOCl_2$ ,** is prepared by passing dry sulphur dioxide into phosphorus pentachloride contained in a flask fitted with inlet and outlet tubes, the latter being attached to a calcium

chloride tube. As the reaction is accompanied by a considerable rise of temperature, the flask is immersed in ice-water. When all the phosphorus pentachloride has disappeared and a homogeneous liquid, consisting of thionyl chloride and phosphorus oxychloride, is obtained, the liquid is submitted to fractional distillation with column and the portion distilling at  $76-80^{\circ}$  collected. This is nearly pure thionyl chloride. The yield is about the weight of the phosphorus pentachloride taken. Pure thionyl chloride is a colourless liquid, b.p.  $78^{\circ}$ . It is decomposed in moist air into hydrochloric acid and sulphur dioxide, and must be kept in a well-stoppered bottle.

## SECTION V

### APPENDIX

#### NOTES ON THE PREPARATIONS

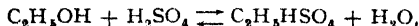


# NOTES ON THE PREPARATIONS

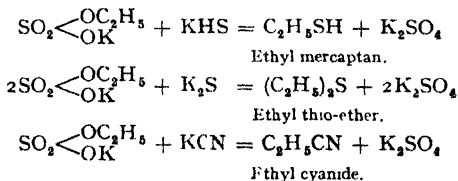
## SECTION II

### PREPARATION I.

**Ethyl Potassium Sulphate.**—The combination between alcohol and sulphuric acid is not complete, a condition of equilibrium being reached before either constituent is completely converted. The reaction is known as a *reversible* one and may be represented thus :



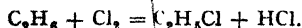
which implies that the alkyl sulphate reacts with water, regenerating alcohol and sulphuric acid. The free alkyl acid sulphates are, as a rule, viscid liquids, which cannot be distilled without yielding the olefine. On boiling with water, the alcohol is regenerated. The salts are used for preparing various alkyl derivatives, such as mercaptans, thio-ethers and cyanides.



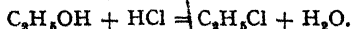
Compare the action of sulphuric acid on phenol (see Prep. 97, p. 214).

### PREPARATION 2.

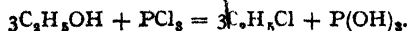
**Ethyl Bromide.**—The replacement of the hydrogen by halogen (Cl, Br) may be effected by the direct action of the halogen on the paraffin.



A simpler method is to replace the alcohol *hydroxyl* by halogen by the action of hydric acid (HCl, HBr, HI),

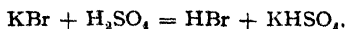


Or by that of the phosphorus compound (PCl<sub>3</sub>, PBr<sub>3</sub>, PI<sub>3</sub>),

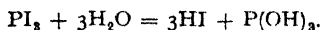




The preparation of ethyl bromide may be taken as an example of the first method, in which the hydracid is liberated by the reaction.



A further example is that of methyl and ethyl iodides (Preps. 3, 7, pp. 64, 75), in which phosphorus iodide acts directly on the alcohol, butyl bromide (Prep. 8, p. 76), in which hydrobromic acid is used, and isopropyl iodide (Prep. 49, p. 134), in which the hydriodic acid is obtained by the action of water on phosphorus iodide,



The action of HCl is much more sluggish than that of HBr or HI, and in the preparation of ethyl chloride a dehydrating agent ( $\text{ZnCl}_2$ ) is usually added to the alcohol, which is kept boiling whilst the HCl gas is passed in. In the case of polyhydric alcohols, all the hydroxyl groups cannot be replaced by Cl by the action of HCl. Glycol gives ethylene chlorhydrin and glycerol yields the dichlorhydrin (see Prep. 50, p. 135). The use of  $\text{PBr}_3$ ,  $\text{PI}_3$  does not necessitate the previous preparation of these substances. Amorphous phosphorus is mixed with the alcohol, and bromine or iodine added as in the preparation of methyl iodide (see Prep. 7, p. 75).  $\text{PCl}_5$  or  $\text{PCl}_3$  will always replace OH by chlorine in all hydroxy-compounds, including phenols, on which HCl does not act.

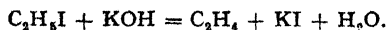
The monohalogen derivatives of the paraffins are mostly colourless liquids, a few of the lowest members being gases at the ordinary temperature. The bromine and especially the iodine derivatives become discoloured on exposure to light, owing to the separation of bromine and iodine, which can, however, be removed by shaking with a drop of mercury. They are insoluble in water and specifically heavier, but soluble in most of the common organic solvents. The chlorides have the lowest, the iodides the highest, boiling points.

The alkyl halides are utilised in a variety of reactions, examples of which are given, ethyl iodide being taken as the type.

1. *Aqueous* potash or water with metallic oxide ( $\text{Ag}_2\text{O}$ ,  $\text{PbO}$ ) yields the alcohol (see Prep. 110, p. 229),



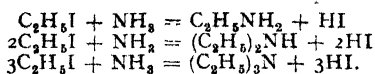
2. *Alcoholic* potash gives an olefine,



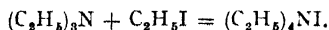
3. Sodium alcoholate gives an ether,



4. Alcoholic ammonia forms a mixture of primary, secondary and tertiary amines,



The tertiary amines unite with the alkyl iodide to form the quaternary ammonium iodide, which is produced at the same time as the other products.



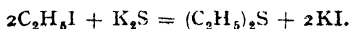
5. Potassium cyanide forms alkyl cyanide,



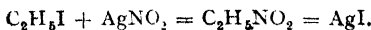
6. Potassium hydrosulphide gives the mercaptan,



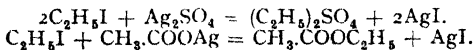
7. Potassium sulphide forms the thio-ether.



8. Silver nitrite gives the nitro-paraffin.

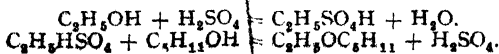


9. Silver salts of organic or inorganic acids yield the alkyl esters,



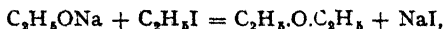
#### PREPARATION 4.

**Ethyl Ether.**—This reaction is of a general character. By using a different alcohol in the reservoir from that in the flask, a *mixed* ether may be obtained. Thus, ethyl alcohol and amyl alcohol may be combined to form ethyl amyl ether,



That the sulphuric acid acts in the above manner and not merely as a dehydrating agent appears not only from the formation of mixed ethers, but also from the fact that the sulphuric acid may be replaced by phosphoric, arsenic and benzene sulphonic acids.

The ethers are also formed by the action of sodium alcoholate on the alkyl iodide (Williamson),

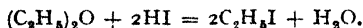


and by this method mixed ethers may also be prepared.

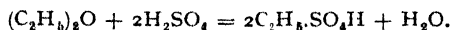
The inertness of the ethers arises probably from the fact that the whole of the hydrogen present is united to carbon. Note the action of sodium and  $\text{PCl}_5$  on alcohol and on ether. The ethers are not decomposed with  $\text{PCl}_5$  except on heating, when they give the alkyl chlorides,



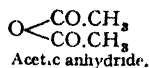
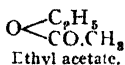
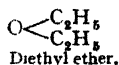
Hydracids, especially HI, have a similar action—



Hot, strong sulphuric acid breaks up ether into ethyl sulphuric acid and water,

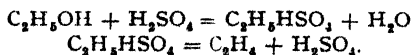


Compare the action of caustic alkalis on ethers, esters and anhydrides.



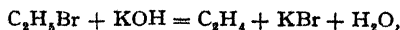
### PREPARATION 5.

**Ethylene Bromide.**—The formation of olefines by the action of conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and other dehydrating agents such as phosphoric acid on the alcohols is a very general reaction. With sulphuric acid the reaction takes place as follows :—

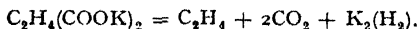


A similar process, no doubt, occurs with phosphoric acid. Among the higher alcohols the action of heat alone suffices; cetyl alcohol,  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{34}\text{O}$ , gives cetylene,  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{32}$ , on heating. The olefines are also

obtained by the action of alcoholic potash on the alkyl bromides and iodides,

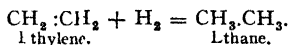


and by the electrolysis of the dibasic salts; potassium succinate gives ethylene,

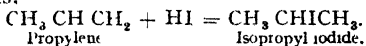


The first four members of the olefines are gases which burn with a luminous flame. The other members are liquids and solids. They are all colourless substances, insoluble in water and specifically lighter than water, in which respects they resemble the paraffins. The olefines combine with:

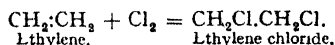
(1) Hydrogen in presence of platinum black, or finely divided nickel (see Prep. 94, p. 209).



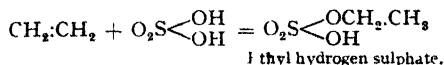
(2) The hydracids (HCl, HBr, HI), in which case the halogen attaches itself mainly to the carbon with the least number of hydrogen atoms.



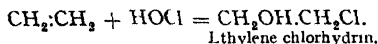
(3) The halogens (Cl, Br, I).



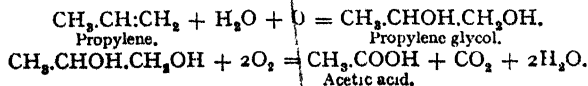
(4) Conc. sulphuric acid,



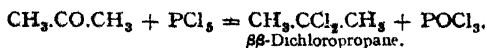
(5) Hypochlorous acid,



Potassium permanganate oxidises the olefine, forming in the first stage the corresponding glycol. By further oxidation the molecule is decomposed by the parting of the carbon atoms at the original double link,

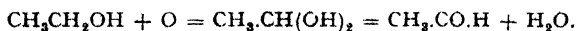


Alkylene chlorides and bromides with both halogen atoms attached to the same carbon are obtained by the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$  and  $\text{PBr}_5$  on aldehydes and ketones.

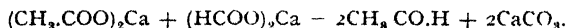


#### PREPARATION 6.

**Acetaldehyde.**—The formation of aldehyde from alcohol probably occurs by the addition of oxygen and subsequent elimination of water,

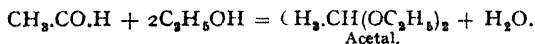


The aldehydes may also be obtained by the reduction of acid chlorides and of anhydrides in some cases, but the method is rarely adopted. Aldehydes can only be obtained directly from the fatty acids by distilling the calcium salt with calcium formate; but in no case by direct reduction, unless in the form of lactones,

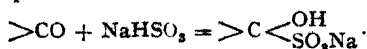


Formaldehyde is best prepared by passing the vapour of methyl alcohol mixed with air over a spiral of copper or platinised asbestos which act as catalysts and become red hot in the process of oxidation.

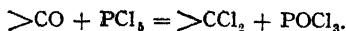
The aldehydes are readily reduced to the alcohols. Characteristic properties of the aldehydes are the formation of aldehyde ammonias, Schiff's reaction, the reduction of metallic salts and the production of *acetals* by the action of alcohol in presence of hydrochloric acid gas (F. Fischer).



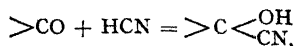
They also polymerise readily. These reactions should be compared with those of benzaldehyde (Prep. 113, p. 231). There are many reactions which are common to both aldehydes and ketones, *i.e.*, to all substances which contain a ketone CO group. Such, for example, are: (1) The formation of an additive compound with sodium bisulphite.



(2) The action of  $\text{PCl}_5$ , which replaces oxygen by chlorine,

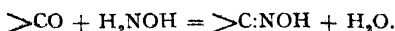


(3) The formation of a cyanhydrin with hydrocyanic acid,

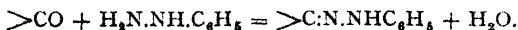


which on hydrolysis yields a hydroxy-acid.

(4) The formation of an oxime with hydroxylamine (see Preps. 14, p. 118, and 82, p. 239).



(5) The formation of a phenylhydrazone with phenylhydrazine (see Prep. 113, p. 234).

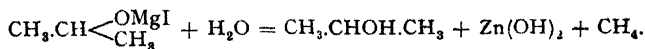
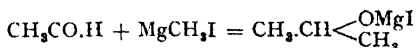
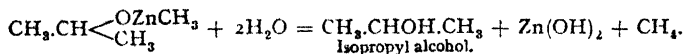
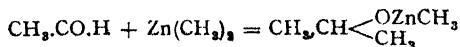


(6) The formation of a semicarbazone with semicarbazide (see Prep. 135, p. 258).

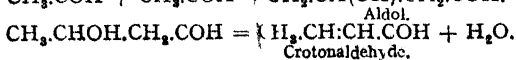
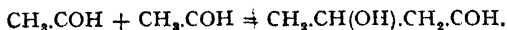


Both aldehydes and ketones readily undergo *condensation*, and a great variety of syntheses have been effected in this way (see Preps. 119, p. 240, and 135, p. 259).

The aldehydes unite with zinc alkyl (Wagner) and magnesium alkyl halide (Grignard, see p. 252) to form additive compounds, which decompose with water, yielding secondary alcohols.



Acetaldehyde, in presence of  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$ , polymerises, forming aldol. With zinc chloride the reaction goes a step further and crotonaldehyde is formed,

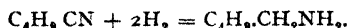


## PREPARATION 7.

**Methyl Iodide.**—Read notes on Prep. 2, p. 369.

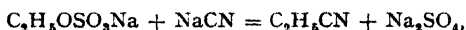
## PREPARATIONS 8—10.

**Butyl Bromide, Cyanide and Valeric Acid.**—This series of three preparations illustrates a general process by which an alcohol can be converted into an acid containing an additional carbon atom, introduced as the cyanogen group. The conversion of a cyanogen into a carboxyl group is characteristic of the cyanogen group (see p. 251). Another general property of the group is its behaviour on reduction, when a primary amine is formed. Butyl cyanide, for example, when reduced with sodium in alcoholic solution, yields amylamine.

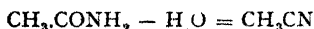


Further properties of the cyanides are given on p. 91.

Other methods of preparing cyanides are by the action of sodium cyanide on the sodium alkyl sulphate at a high temperature,



and by the action of phosphorus pentoxide on an amide (see p. 91).



The alkyl cyanides are colourless and for the most part liquids which have a not unpleasant smell and distil undecomposed. The lower members dissolve to some extent in water; but the solubility diminishes with increasing molecular weight. The alkyl cyanides are often denoted as nitriles of the acid which they yield on hydrolysis. The hydrolysis actually occurs in two steps, the intermediate amide being formed.

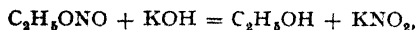


## PREPARATION 11.

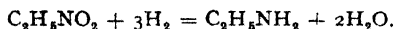
**Ethyl Valerate.**—Read notes on Prep. 25, p. 384.

## PREPARATION 12.

**Amyl Nitrite.**—The nitrites of the general formula  $R'.O.NO$  are isomeric with the nitro-paraffins  $R'NO_2$ . Whereas the nitrites are hydrolysed with  $KOH$  like other esters into the alcohol and the acid,



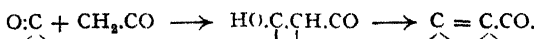
and are decomposed by reducing agents into the alcohol and ammonia (and in some cases hydroxylamine), the primary nitro-paraffins are not hydrolysed by potash, but dissolve, forming the soluble potassium salt, and on reduction give the primary amine,



Amyl nitrite is used in the preparation of diazo-salts (see Prep. 76, p. 182).

## PREPARATION 15.

**Mesityl Oxide, Phorone.**—The formation of these two substances is a typical case of *condensation* which may be defined as the union of two or more molecules of the same or different substances or parts of the same molecule with or without elimination of water or other compounds in which the new union is formed between carbon atoms. This union is one of great stability, so that disruption into the original substances is not as a rule possible, or, in other words, it represents generally a non-reversible reaction. There are many reactions of this type, which may be expressed by the general form



Two points will be noticed. First, that the  $CH_2$  group is and must be accompanied by what is sometimes termed a negative group, which may be  $CO$ ,  $CN$ ,  $NO_2$ ,  $C_6H_5$ , etc., and, secondly, that there is an intermediate step in the linking of the two molecules before the molecule of water is actually eliminated, as in the examples given. For further examples of condensation, see Preps. 119, 135, pp. 240, 257.



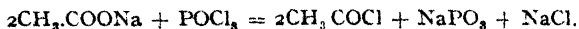
## PREPARATION 16.

**Diacetonamine.**—Although ammonia does not unite with the simple olefines, the presence of an adjoining CO group enables the ammonia to form an additive compound with the unsaturated group. Diacetonamine is of importance in the preparation of the local anæsthetics, *Eucaïne-α* and *-β*, which are used as substitutes for cocaine.

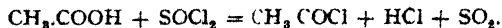
## PREPARATION 17.

**Acetyl Chloride.**—Either  $\text{PCl}_3$ ,  $\text{PCl}_5$  or  $\text{SOCl}_2$  is almost invariably used in the preparation of acid chlorides. In the case of  $\text{PCl}_3$  only a portion of the chlorine of the reagent is utilised (see Prep. 133, p. 254),  $\text{POCl}_3$  being produced in the reaction. The use of one or other reagent is determined by the nature of the product. If the latter has a low boiling point the trichloride is preferred, if a high boiling-point, the pentachloride may be used and the oxychloride expelled by distilling *in vacuo* from a water-bath (see Prep. 133, p. 254). The pentachloride is more frequently used in the preparation of aromatic acid chlorides, but there are occasions, which only experience can determine, when the trichloride is preferable.

Phosphorus oxychloride and the sodium salt of the acid can also be used.



Also thionyl chloride,  $\text{SOCl}_2$ , may often be employed with advantage in place of the chlorides of phosphorus (see Prep. 133, p. 254), as the by-products of the reaction are gases.

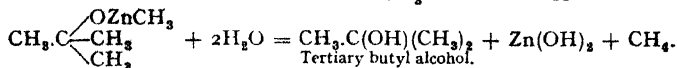
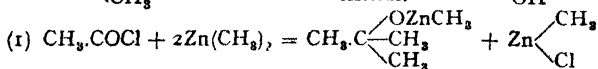
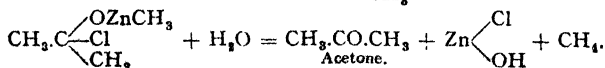
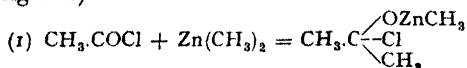


Acid chlorides react with alcohols and phenols, and in general with substances containing a "hydroxyl" (OH) group. Acid anhydrides have a similar behaviour, and both substances may be used in determining the number of such groups in a compound. Thus glycerol forms a triacetyl derivative, whilst glucose yields a pentacetyl compound. By hydrolysing the acetyl derivative with

alkali, and then estimating the amount of alkali neutralised by titration, the number of acetyl groups can be estimated (see p. 284).

The presence of the "amino" ( $\text{NH}_2$ ) group is determined by a similar reaction.

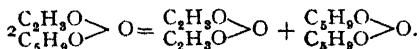
The synthesis of aromatic ketones may be effected with the acid chlorides, using the Friedel-Crafts reaction (see Prep. 135, p. 257), also of aliphatic ketones and tertiary alcohols with zinc methyl and ethyl, &c. (Butlerow), or magnesium alkyl halide (Grignard).



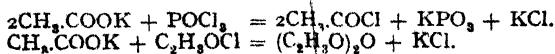
An additive compound with zinc methyl is formed, in the first reaction with one molecule, in the second with two molecules, and the product in each case is then decomposed with water. The reaction with magnesium methyl iodide is similar (p. 446).

#### PREPARATION 18.

**Acetic Anhydride.**—The anhydrides may be regarded as oxides of the acid radicals, just as ethers are the oxides of the alcohol radicals, and, like the ethers, both simple and mixed anhydrides may be prepared. The latter, however, on distillation decompose, giving a mixture of the simple anhydrides.

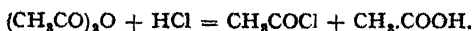


Anhydrides may also be prepared by the action of  $\text{POCl}_3$  on the potassium salt of the acid in presence of excess of the latter, the reaction occurring in two phases:

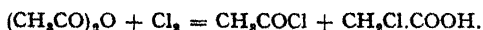


In addition to the reactions described under the Preparation, the anhydrides undergo the following changes :

1. With HCl, HBr, and HI they give, on heating, the acid chloride and free acid,



2. With Cl they form acid chloride and chlorinated acid,

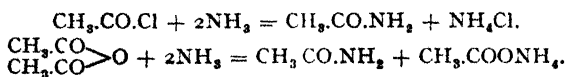


3. With Na amalgam or colloidal Pd they are reduced to aldehydes.

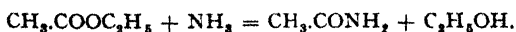
### PREPARATION 19.

**Acetamide.**—The acid amides, or simply amides, correspond to the amines, being ammonia in which hydrogen is replaced by acid radicals, and, like the amines, exist in the form of primary, secondary and tertiary amides. The following methods are used for obtaining the amides, in addition to that described under the preparation :

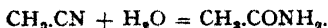
1. The action of ammonia on the acid chlorides or anhydrides (see Prep. 133, p. 254).



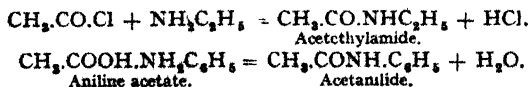
2. The action of ammonia on the esters (see Prep. 43, p. 124).



3. Partial hydrolysis of the cyanides by conc. hydrochloric or sulphuric acid,



The alkyl amides or substituted ammonias, with both acid and alkyl radicals, also exist, and are formed by the first two of the above reactions, and by heating the salt of the amine (see Prep. 66, p. 169).



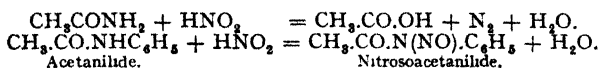
With the exception of formamide, which is a viscid liquid, the majority of these compounds are crystalline solids. The lower

members are soluble in water, and they all dissolve in alcohol or ether. Many of them distil without decomposition. They are neutral substances uniting with both mineral acids and a few of them with caustic alkalis and alkaline alcoholates to form compounds which are rapidly decomposed by water.

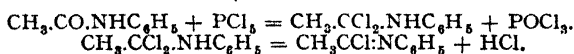
The hydrogen of the amido-group is also replaceable by metals, and derivatives of acetamide of the following formulæ are known :



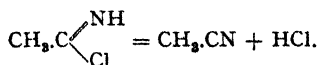
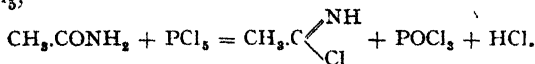
They are converted by nitrous acid into the organic acid, and, in the case of substituted amides, into nitrosamides.



With the latter class of substituted amides,  $\text{PCl}_5$  forms the iminochlorides, a reaction which is usually formulated in two steps,



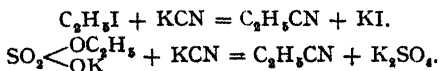
The substituted amides give both iminochloride and the cyanide, with  $\text{PCl}_5$ ,



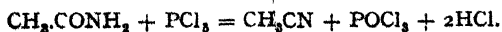
#### PREPARATION 20.

**Acetonitrile.**—The various reactions by which the nitriles or alkyl cyanides are obtained have already been mentioned in one or other of the previous notes, but they may be recapitulated.

1. By the action of KCN on the alkyl iodide or alkyl potassium sulphate,



2. By the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$  (as well as  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ ) on the amide,



3. By heating the aldoxime with acetic anhydride,



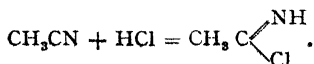
They are compounds which are, for the most part, insoluble in water, possess an ethereal smell, have a neutral reaction, and may be distilled.

The fact that they are eminently unsaturated compounds is evidenced by their general behaviour towards a great variety of reagents.

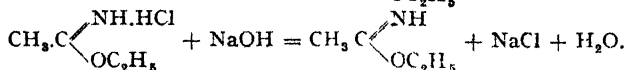
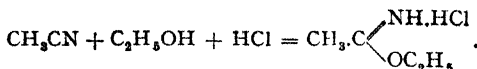
1. On reduction they give the primary amine (Mendius),



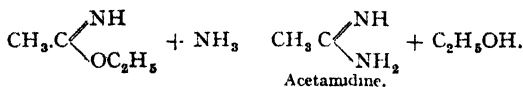
2. With HCl, HBr, and HI they form iminohalides (Wallach),



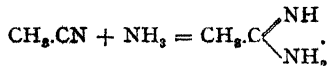
3. With alcohol and HCl they form the hydrochloride of the iminoethers, from which caustic alkali liberates the base (Pinner),



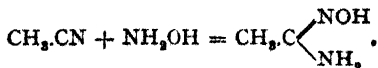
These iminoethers unite with ammonia and amines and form the amidines,



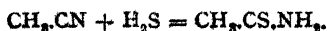
4. The latter are also formed by the direct action of ammonia on the cyanide,



5. Hydroxylamine unites with the cyanides, forming amidoximes,



6. With  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$  the thiamides are formed,

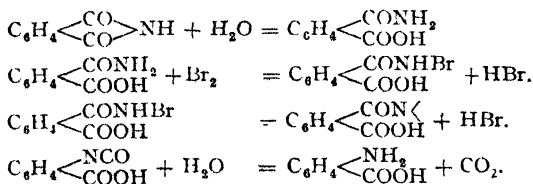


## PREPARATION 21.

**Methyl Acetyl Urea.**—This compound represents an intermediate stage in the formation of methylamine described in the succeeding preparation; but as only half the bromine is used for converting the acetamide into acetobromamide (and by the action of alkali into methyl isocyanate) the methyl isocyanate reacts with the unchanged acetamide to form methyl acetyl urea.

## PREPARATION 22.

**Methylamine Hydrochloride.**—This reaction, which yields the primary amine, is applicable, not only to the aliphatic, but also to the aromatic amides. The formation of anthranilic acid from phthalimide is a process of technical importance (see p. 272). By the action of bromine and caustic potash, phthalaminic acid is first formed, which then yields the amino-acid,

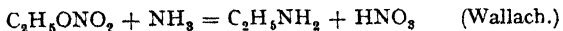


The primary amines may also be obtained by the following reactions :

1. Action of alcoholic ammonia on the alkyl iodides and nitrates,

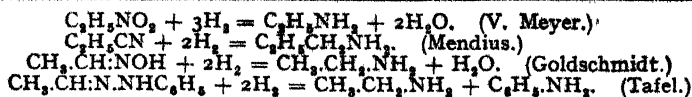


Secondary and tertiary amines are also formed (see p. 371),

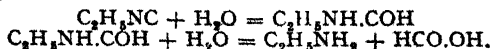


2. Reduction of the following classes of compounds :

nitro-compounds  
cyanides  
oximes  
phenylhydrazones.

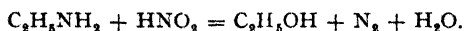


3. Hydrolysis of the isocyanides with conc. HCl, which occurs in two steps :

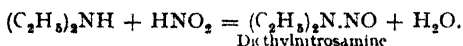


#### PREPARATIONS 23, 24.

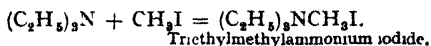
**Dimethylamine Hydrochloride, Dimethylnitrosoamine.**—The three classes of aliphatic amines (primary, secondary, and tertiary) may be distinguished by their behaviour with nitrous acid and alkyl iodide. The primary amine is decomposed with  $\text{HNO}_2$ , forming the alcohol, and nitrogen is evolved,



The secondary amine forms the nitrosamine, insoluble in water,

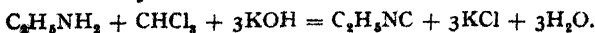


The tertiary amine is unacted on by nitrous acid, but, unlike the other two, unites with an alkyl iodide and forms the quaternary ammonium iodide (Hofmann),



The behaviour of nitrous acid with the aromatic amines is somewhat different (See Preps. 76, p. 182, and 73, p. 177).

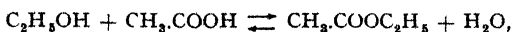
The primary amines may also be distinguished from secondary and tertiary amines by the isocyanide reaction (p. 166), which consists in heating the amine with a little chloroform and alcoholic potash solution. An intolerable odour of isocyanide is emitted,



#### PREPARATION 25.

**Methyl Acetate.**—Esters may be obtained by the direct action of the alcohol on the acid as in the case of methyl oxalate (Prep. 43

p. 124). A certain quantity of ethyl acetate is also obtained from ethyl alcohol and acetic acid, but the action, which is a *reversible* one, stops when a certain proportion of the constituents have combined (p. 369). It is represented thus :

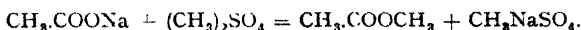


which signifies that the ester and water react and regenerate alcohol and acid whilst the reverse process is in operation. By removing the water as it is formed by means of sulphuric acid or by distillation, this condition of equilibrium is disturbed and the reaction is completed. This does not, however, explain the fact, first discovered by Scheele and afterwards investigated by Fischer and Speier (see Prep. 134, p. 255), that a very limited quantity of conc. sulphuric or hydrochloric acid will produce the same result.

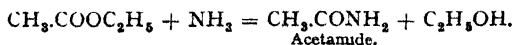
Other methods for the preparation of esters are by the action of alcohol on the acid chloride or anhydride (see Reactions, p. 88), or by boiling up the dry powdered silver salt of the acid with the alkyl iodide,



Also by the action of the alkyl sulphate on the alkaline solution of the acid.



The esters are, for the most part, colourless liquids or solids of low m.p., with a fruity smell and insoluble in water. They are hydrolysed slowly by water, more readily by aqueous potash, most readily with alcoholic potash. With ammonia they give amides. (See Reaction, 2, p. 124).



#### PREPARATIONS 26, 27.

**Ethyl Acetoacetate.**—The explanation of the manner in which this substance is produced has been given in the account of the preparation. The result was arrived at, not by the isolation of the intermediate compound formed by the union of ethyl acetate

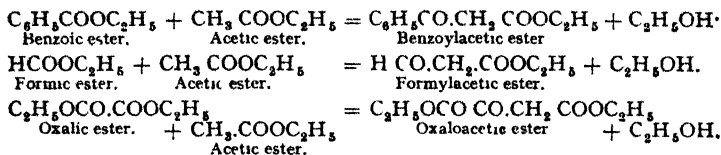
COHEN'S P. O. C. C C



with sodium ethylate, but by analogy with the behaviour of benzoic methyl ester with sodium benzyolate, which gave the same additive product as that obtained by combining benzoic benzyl ester with sodium methylate, showing that such combinations could occur,



Also by the fact that sodium only attacks ethyl acetate in presence of ethyl alcohol, although the quantity of the latter may be very minute when the reaction begins. Similar reactions have been effected with either metallic sodium or sodium ethylate by Claisen, W. Wislicenus and others, of which the following examples must suffice (see p. 126).

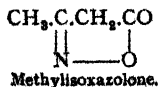
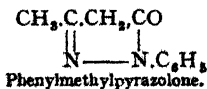


From this it would appear that *condensation* might always be effected between an ester on the one hand and a compound containing the group  $\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}$  on the other. This seems very generally to be the case, and Claisen has succeeded in producing condensation products between esters and ketones or aldehydes containing this group. (See Prep. 135, p. 259.)

The formula for ethyl acetoacetate would imply the properties of a ketone, a view which is borne out by its reduction to a hydroxy-acid,



and by its behaviour with phenylhydrazine and hydroxylamine. The latter reactions give rise to the formation of the usual phenylhydrazone and oxime, whilst a molecule of alcohol is also removed, resulting in a closed chain, in the former case phenylmethylpyrazolone, and in the latter methylisoxazolone being formed,



The "methylene" group ( $\text{CH}_2$ ) standing between two CO groups, such as occurs in acetoacetic ester, is characterised by certain properties, which are shared by all compounds of similar structure, viz., by their behaviour towards nitrous acid, diazo-benzene salts, and metallic sodium or sodium alcoholate.

The first reaction leads to the formation of isonitrosoacetone,  

$$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{HNO}_2 = \text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}\cdot\text{NOH} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}.$$

The second yields, in acetic acid solution, *formazyl* derivatives,  

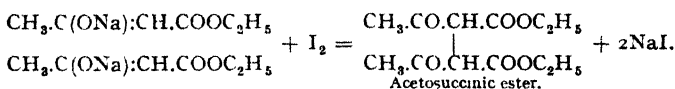
$$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{Cl} = \text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}\cdot\text{N}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{CO}_2 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + \text{HCl}.$$

$$+ \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

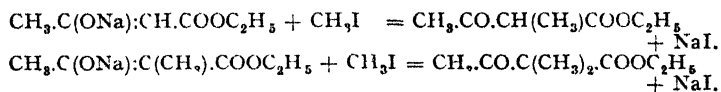
$$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}\cdot\text{N}\cdot\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{Cl} = \text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{N}\cdot\text{N}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \searrow \text{N}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array} + \text{HCl}.$$
  
 Acetyl diphenyl formazyl.

The third is capable of the utmost variety, since the sodium in the sodium compound may be removed by the action of:

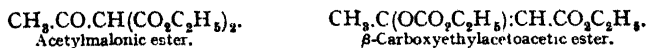
1. Iodine, which leads to the formation of acetosuccinic ester,



2. Alkyl iodide, whereby two atoms of hydrogen may be *successively* replaced by the same or different radicals,



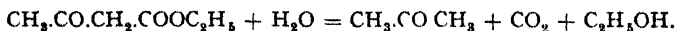
3. Acid chloride, which is of similar character to the foregoing process, but gives rise in some cases to the simultaneous formation of two isomeric compounds, a fact which at one time threw considerable doubt on the ketonic character of acetoacetic ester. Thus chloroformic ester and sodium acetoacetic ester produce the following two derivatives, of which the second predominates:



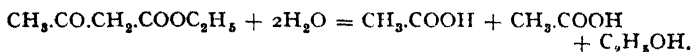
The synthetic capabilities of this compound are not yet exhausted. Acetoacetic ester and its alkyl derivatives undergo decomposition

in two ways, according to whether dilute alkalis and acids or, on the other hand, strong alkalis are employed.

1. With *dilute* aqueous or alcoholic caustic alkalis, or baryta, or sulphuric acid, a ketone is formed (ketonic decomposition),



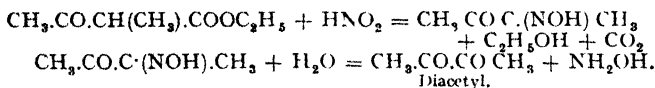
2. Concentrated alcoholic potash decomposes the ester into two molecules of acid (acid decomposition).



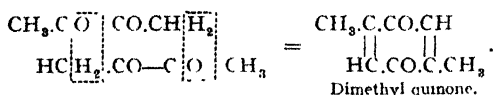
If the alkyl derivatives of the ester are employed, it is possible to effect the synthesis of a series of ketones and saturated aliphatic acids, according to whether the one or other reaction is used.

Of the other synthetic processes which have been studied in connection with this substance, the following may be mentioned:

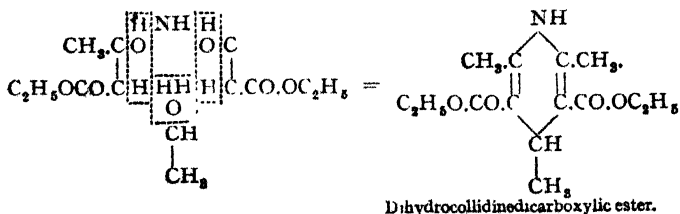
1. The monoalkyl derivatives yield with nitrous acid the isonitroso-derivative, from which the ortho-diketone may be obtained (v. Pechmann),



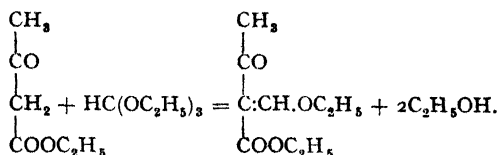
These compounds readily condense, forming derivatives of quinone,



2. Aldehyde-ammonias and acetoacetic ester yield pyridine derivatives (Hantzsch).

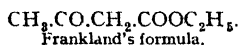
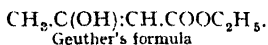


3. Orthoformic ester and acetoacetic ester in presence of acetic anhydride form a hydroxymethylene ester (Claisen),



4. The derivatives of acetosuccinic ester are very numerous, the compound lending itself readily to the formation of *heterocyclic* compounds (pyrrole, furfurane, thiophene, pyridine, &c., derivatives).

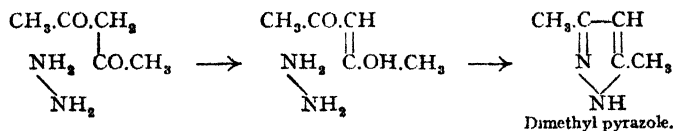
The impartial way in which acetoacetic ester was found to behave, sometimes playing the part of a hydroxy-compound, sometimes that of a ketone, has led to much discussion on the merits of the formulæ proposed by Geuther and Frankland,



That the liquid is a mixture of both compounds, the proportion of each being determined by temperature and other conditions has recently been demonstrated by separating the two constituents by fractional crystallisation at low temperatures and by fractional distillation. It is a typical example of *tautomerism*.<sup>1</sup>

#### PREPARATION 28.

**Acetylacetone.**—The formation of acetylacetone is another example of condensation of the type described under mesityl oxide (Prep. 15, p. 84) and acetoacetic ester. Like the majority of 1:3-diketones (having the group  $-\text{CO.CH}_2\text{CO}-$ ), acetylacetone reacts in its tautomeric form, with hydrazine and its derivatives to form pyrazole compounds,



<sup>1</sup> For a full discussion of the subject of tautomerism, see the author's *Organic Chemistry for Advanced Students*, E. Arnold, London.

## PREPARATIONS 29, 33.

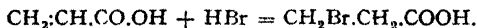
**Monochloroacetic Acid and Monobromoacetic Acid.**—The action of chlorine on the aliphatic acids takes place in presence of sunlight, also on the addition of small quantities of the "halogen-carriers," iodine, sulphur, and red phosphorus. By the action of iodine, ICl is formed, which decomposes more readily than the molecule of chlorine, and hydriodic acid is liberated,



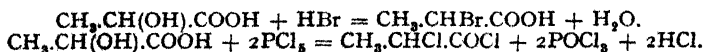
The hydriodic acid is then decomposed by chlorine, and ICl regenerated. Phosphorus acts by forming the chloride of phosphorus from which the acid chloride is produced, which is more readily attacked by chlorine than the acid. Sulphur behaves in a similar fashion, sulphur chloride converting the acid into the acid chloride. Bromine in presence of phosphorus forms in the same way, first, the acid bromide, and in the second stage of the reaction, the bromine substitution product. The bromine in all cases attaches itself to the  $\alpha$ -carbon (*i.e.*, next the carboxyl). Where no free hydrogen exists in this position, as in trimethylacetic acid, no substitution occurs. Iodine can be introduced by the action of KI on the bromine derivative,



Monohalogen derivatives may also be obtained from the unsaturated acids by the action of the hydracids (HCl, HBr, HI). In this case the halogen attaches itself to the carbon farthest from the carboxyl. Thus acrylic acid gives with HBr the  $\beta$ -bromopropionic acid,



The action of the hydracids,  $\text{PCl}_5$  and  $\text{PBr}_5$ , on the hydroxyacids also yields the halogen derivatives,



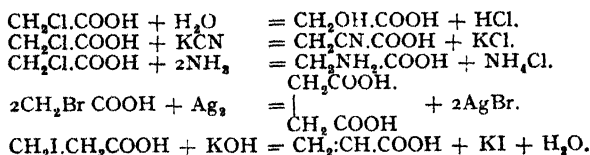
In the latter case the acid chloride must be subsequently decomposed by water to obtain the acid.

The increase in the number of halogen atoms in the acid raises

the boiling point as well as the strength of the acid as determined by its dissociation constant K.

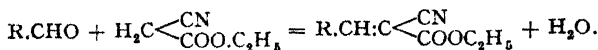
	B.P.	K.
Acetic acid . . . . .	118°	·0018
Monochloroacetic acid . . . .	185°	·155
Dichloroacetic acid . . . . .	190°	5·14
Trichloroacetic acid . . . . .	195°	121

Some of the transformations of monohalogen acids are illustrated by the following equations :

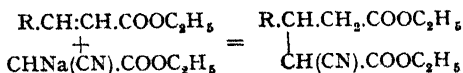


#### PREPARATION 31.

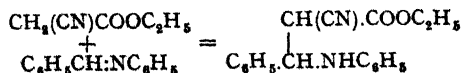
**Cyanoacetic Ester.**—The presence of the cyanogen group has a similar effect on the adjoining methylene group as the ketone group in acetoacetic ester or acetylacetone, that is to say, the two hydrogen atoms are replaceable by alkyl groups by the action of sodium ethoxide and an alkyl iodide. Moreover, the  $\text{CH}_2$  group undergoes, like acetyl acetone, &c., condensation with aldehydes and ketones in presence of ammonia, diethylamine or piperidine.



Moreover, like malonic ester, the sodium derivative forms additive compounds with those containing unsaturated groups

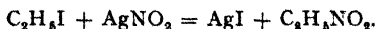


and also in presence of organic bases (diethylamine, piperidine) unites with such compounds as benzalaniline.



## PREPARATION 32.

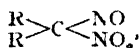
**Nitromethane** is the lowest member of the group of nitroparaffins. The general method of preparation is to act on silver nitrite with the alkyl iodide. A considerable evolution of heat occurs and on heating the nitroparaffin distils.



They are distinguished from the isomeric alkyl nitrites  $\text{R.O.NO}$  by their behaviour on reduction when amines are formed, whereas the nitrite yields ammonia or hydroxylamine and alcohol (see p. 383).



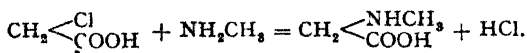
The nitroparaffins are colourless liquids, of a pleasant smell, which do not dissolve in water and distil without decomposition. The primary, secondary and tertiary nitroparaffins may be distinguished by their behaviour with nitrous acid. The primary compounds give *nitrolic acids* which form, as we have seen, red salts, whilst the secondary compounds yield, under similar conditions, insoluble blue *pseudonitrols* of the formula



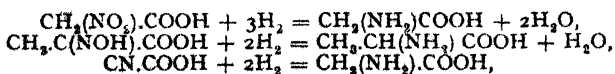
whereas the tertiary nitroparaffins are unaffected by nitrous acid.

## PREPARATIONS 34, 35.

**Glycine.**—By the action of primary and secondary amines, corresponding amino-acids are formed. Chloracetic acid and methylamine yield sarcosine,

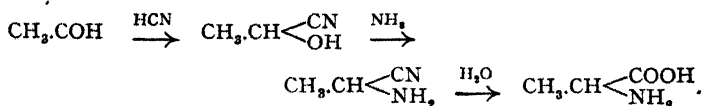


The amino-acids are further obtained by the reduction ( $\text{Zn}$  and  $\text{HCl}$ ) of nitro-, oximino- and cyano-acids, thus:

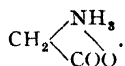


and by the action of  $\text{NH}_3$  on the cyanhydrin of aldehydes and

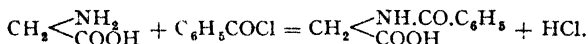
ketones, or simply of ammonium cyanide. The product is then hydrolysed with HCl (see Prep. 131, p. 251),



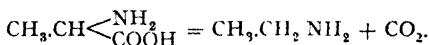
The amino-acids are crystalline compounds usually of a sweet taste and soluble in water. They are neutral compounds, from which it may be assumed that an inner ammonium salt is formed :



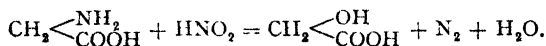
By the action of an acid chloride on the amino-acid, the hydrogen of the amino-group may be replaced by an acid radical. Hippuric acid has been synthesised in this way (p. 345).



The amino-acids are not acted on by a hot solution of caustic alkali, but on fusion with caustic soda or potash yield the amine and  $\text{CO}_2$ ,



With nitrous acid the hydroxy-acid is formed,

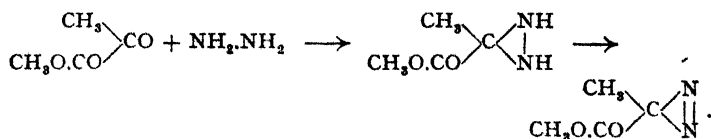


#### PREPARATION 36.

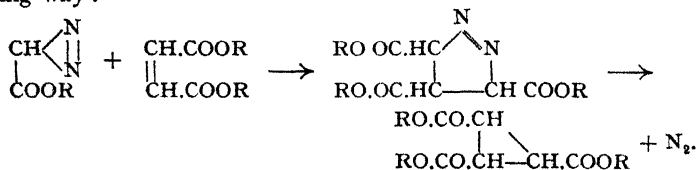
**Diazoacetic Ester.**—The primary amines of the aliphatic series differ from those of the aromatic group in the fact that the former yield no diazo-compounds with nitrous acid. It is otherwise with the amino-esters, the ester group probably furnishing the acid character (represented by the nucleus in the aromatic series) necessary to give stability to the compound. It should be pointed out that the two classes of compounds have not an identical structure. The formation of diazoacetic ester from pyruvic ester and



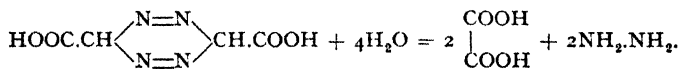
hydrazine and subsequent oxidation with mercuric oxide appears to indicate that both nitrogen atoms are attached to carbon.



In addition to the reactions described in the preparation, diazoacetic ester unites with unsaturated acids and forms cyclic compounds. Fumaric ester, for example, combines in the following way:—

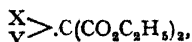


When bisdiazooacetic ester is heated with water or dilute acid it breaks up into hydrazine and oxalic acid,



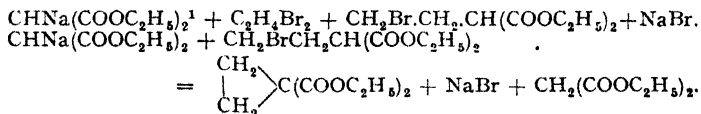
#### PREPARATIONS 37, 38.

**Diethyl Malonate, Ethylmalonic Acid.**—Like acetoacetic ester (see p. 98), diethylmalonate contains the group  $\text{CO.CH}_2\text{CO}$ . By the action of sodium or sodium alcoholate, the hydrogen atoms of the methylene group are successively replaceable by sodium. The sodium atoms are in turn replaceable by alkyl or acyl groups. Thus, in the present preparation, ethyl malonic ester is obtained by the action of ethyl iodide on the monosodium compound. If this substance be treated with a second molecule of sodium alcoholate and a second molecule of alkyl iodide, a second radical would be introduced, and a compound formed of the general formula



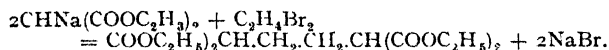
in which X and Y denote the same or different radicals.

These compounds yield, on hydrolysis, the free acids, which, like all acids containing two carboxyl groups attached to the same carbon atom, lose  $\text{CO}_2$  on heating. Thus, ethyl malonic acid yields butyric acid. In this way the synthesis of monobasic acids may be readily effected. Malonic ester, moreover, may be used in the preparation of cyclic compounds as well as of tetrabasic and also dibasic acids of the malonic acid series (Perkin). To give one illustration: malonic ester, and ethylene bromide in presence of sodium alcoholate, yield trimethylene dicarboxylic ester and tetramethylene tetracarboxylic ester. The first reaction takes place in two steps,

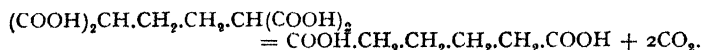


In the second step a second molecule of sodium malonic ester exchanges its sodium with the substituted malonic ester, and a second molecule of  $\text{NaBr}$  is then removed.

The formation of the tetracarboxylic ester occurs simultaneously,

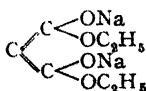
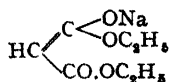


The free acid derived from the ester by hydrolysis loses two molecules of  $\text{CO}_2$  on heating, and gives adipic acid,



Cyanacetic ester has similar properties to malonic ester, inasmuch as the methylene hydrogen is replaceable by sodium and thus by alkyl groups (see p. 117).

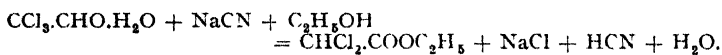
<sup>1</sup> The structure of the sodium compounds is probably more correctly represented by



(see Acetoacetic ester, p. 98).

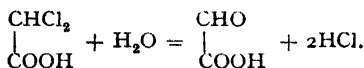
## PREPARATION 40.

**Dichloroacetic Acid.**—This acid was originally prepared by the action of chlorine on acetic acid, but the present method is preferable. By a modification of the same reaction the ester may be obtained. The chloral hydrate, dissolved in a large excess of ethyl alcohol, is allowed to flow slowly from the top of a condenser on to the calculated weight of pure sodium cyanide in powder contained in a flask.



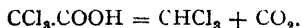
The product is shaken with water, the ester removed with ether, dehydrated and distilled.

On boiling with water dichloroacetic acid is converted into glyoxalic acid,



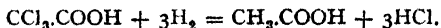
## PREPARATION 41.

**Trichloroacetic Acid.**—This acid may also be obtained by direct substitution of acetic acid by chlorine (Dumas) (see Prep. 29, p. 106). The oxidation of the corresponding aldehyde is, however, the more convenient method. Trichloroacetic acid decomposes with alkalis on heating into carbon dioxide and chloroform,



The reaction resembles the formation of methane from sodium acetate when heated with soda-lime.

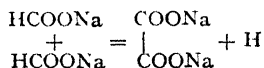
On reduction with sodium or potassium amalgam, trichloroacetic acid is converted into acetic acid (Melsens),



Whereas mono- and tri-chloroacetic acid are solid, dichloroacetic acid is a liquid at the ordinary temperature.

## PREPARATION 42.

**Oxalic Acid.**—The preparation of oxalic acid by the action of nitric acid on sugar was introduced by Scheele, and was used for some time as a technical process. The vanadium pentoxide acts as carrier of oxygen, being alternately reduced to tetroxide and re-oxidised. The small yield is accounted for by the simultaneous formation of mesoxalic acid,  $\text{HO.CO.CO.CO.OH}$ , which remains in solution (Chattaway). The present commercial method is to heat sawdust with a mixture of caustic potash and soda on iron plates to  $200\text{--}220^\circ$ , and to lixiviate the product with water. The acid is precipitated as the calcium salt, which is then decomposed with sulphuric acid. A more recent method is to convert sodium formate into sodium oxalate by heating, when hydrogen is evolved,



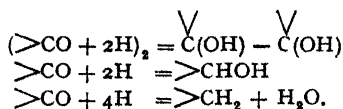
## PREPARATION 45.

**Oxaloacetic Ester** is another example of the acetoacetic ester synthesis (see Prep. 26, p. 98).

## PREPARATION 46.

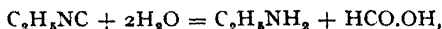
**Glyoxalic and Glycollic Acids.**—The process of electrolytic reduction has been applied successfully to a large number of organic compounds, and has not only been found to have definite practical advantages in many cases over other methods, but, on account of the ease with which it may be controlled, has elucidated the various stages in the mechanism of some of the more complex changes. The reduction of nitro-compounds is illustrated in Preps. 61 and 62. The reduction of organic acids, ketones and carbonyl compounds generally has been developed by Tafel and others, and in these cases it is found advantageous to use a mercury or lead electrode. An essential feature of the process is a clean metallic

surface at the cathode and the absence of foreign metallic impurities. The reduction of the carbonyl group proceeds in three steps :

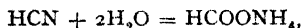


#### PREPARATION 47.

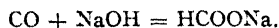
**Formic Acid.**—In addition to the method described, the acid is formed in the decomposition of chloral (see p. 121), chloroform (see Prep. 13, p. 80), by the action of conc. HCl on the isocyanides,



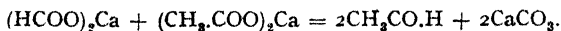
by the decomposition of aqueous hydrocyanic acid, which yields the ammonium salt,



and by the oxidation of methyl alcohol with potassium dichromate and sulphuric acid. It is present in the sting of ants and nettles, and is also occasionally found among the products of bacterial fermentation of polyhydric alcohols and carbohydrates. The commercial method is to act on solid NaOH with CO under pressure and at a temperature of about 160° :



The calcium salt is used in the preparation of aldehydes by heating it with the calcium salt of a higher aliphatic acid,

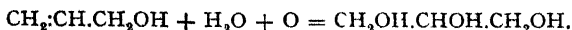


The reducing action of formic acid and formates on metallic oxides and salts may be ascribed to the presence of the aldehyde group (OH)CH:O in the acid.

#### PREPARATION 48.

**Allyl Alcohol.**—Note the difference produced by the change in the relative quantities of glycerol and oxalic acid, and the temperature at which the reaction is brought about. In the case of formic

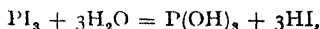
acid, it is the oxalic acid alone which undergoes decomposition, and theoretically a small quantity of glycerol will effect the decomposition of an unlimited amount of oxalic acid. But at the higher temperature it is the glycerol which yields the main product. Allyl alcohol, being an unsaturated compound, forms additive compounds with halogens and halogen acids. With permanganate solution it may be converted into glycerol,



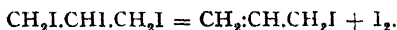
On oxidation with silver oxide it yields the corresponding aldehyde (acrolein) and the acid (acrylic acid).

#### PREPARATION 49.

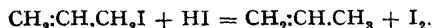
**Isopropyl Iodide.**—The replacement of hydroxyl by iodine in the action of phosphorus and iodine on alcohols has already been described (see Prep. 3, p. 64), but here the presence of an excess of hydriodic acid, which is due to the action of water on the phosphorus iodide,



exerts in addition a reducing action on certain of the hydroxyl groups. By diminishing the proportion of phosphorus and iodine to glycerol, the reaction may be interrupted at an earlier stage, when allyl iodide is formed. This is probably due to the splitting off of iodine from propenyl tri-iodide,



On the other hand, a larger proportion of phosphorus and iodine or conc. hydriodic acid will reduce allyl iodide to propylene,

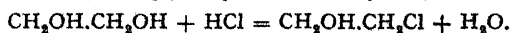


The action of hydriodic acid on glycerol is typical of the polyhydric alcohols. Hydriodic acid converts erythritol into secondary butyl iodide, and mannitol into secondary hexyl iodide. The normal iodides are never formed.

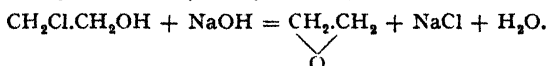
#### PREPARATION 50.

**Epichlorhydrin.**—It is a noteworthy fact that although hydrochloric acid can replace hydroxyl by chlorine in the case of the monohydric alcohols, the number of hydroxyl groups which are

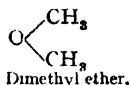
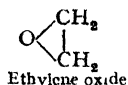
substituted in the case of polyhydric alcohols is strictly limited. Like glycerol, ethylene glycol gives a chlorhydrin,



The remaining hydroxyls can always be replaced by chlorine by the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$ . The chlorhydrins may also be obtained by the action of  $\text{HOCl}$  on the olefines. It is a general property of these compounds to form the oxide when heated with caustic alkalis. Ethylene chlorhydrin gives ethylene oxide in this way,



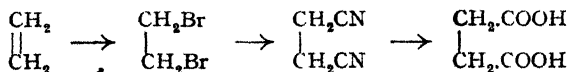
Compounds like ethylene oxide and epichlorhydrin may be regarded as inner ethers,



These oxides are easily decomposed. With water, ethylene oxide forms glycol; with hydrochloric acid, the chlorhydrin; with hydrocyanic acid, the cyanhydrin. Epichlorhydrin behaves similarly.

#### PREPARATION 51.

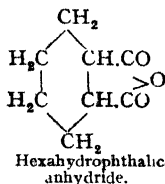
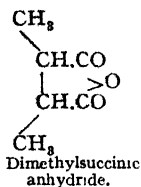
**Succinic Acid.**—Tartaric acid, like malic acid, is converted into succinic acid on reduction with  $\text{HI}$ , and the relationship of these three acids is thereby established. The constitution of succinic acid itself has been determined by its synthesis from ethylene (Maxwell Simpson). Ethylene unites with bromine, forming ethylene bromide, which yields ethylene cyanide with potassium cyanide. The latter is then hydrolysed.



It is an interesting fact, not yet fully explained, that the alkyl succinic acids give anhydrides more readily than succinic acid, and the greater the number of alkyl groups, the more readily is the anhydride produced. Thus the anhydride of tetramethyl succinic acid is so stable that it is not decomposed by water.

The symmetrical dialkyl succinic acids exist in two forms, each

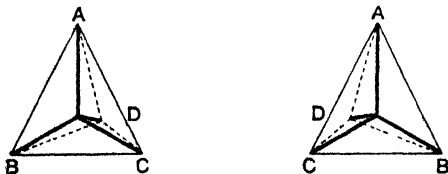
yielding a separate anhydride. From their similarity to the anhydrides of hexahydrophthalic acid, they are distinguished as *cis*- and *trans*-compounds (see Notes on Prep. 55, p. 404).



#### PREPARATION 52.

**Ethyl Tartrate.**—The speculations of Pasteur (1860) on the cause of the optical activity and hemihedry of tartaric acid and its salts, and of Wislicenus (1873) on the existence of three lactic acids, have developed in the hands of Van't Hoff and Le Bel (1874) into the present theory of stereo-chemistry or atomic space arrangement. Optical activity is found to be invariably associated with the presence in the substance of an *asymmetric* atom, *i.e.*, one linked to four different groups. Now every asymmetric (unsymmetrical) object like a hand or foot has its fellow; but the two do not precisely overlap, and every substance containing an asymmetric carbon atom, round which the four groups are distributed—not, as usually represented, in one plane, but in space of three dimensions—is capable of existing in two forms, which correspond to a left and right hand, or to an object and its reflected image.

This is represented by making the carbon atom the centre of a tetrahedron and attaching the four different groups to the four

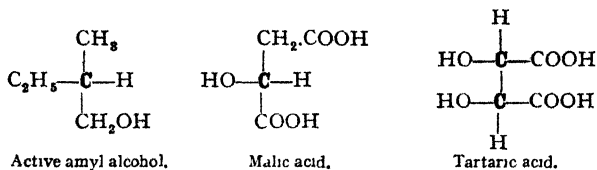


solid angles. The two forms will then appear as in the Fig., in which ABCD represent four different groups. When using actual  
COHEN'S P. O. C. D D

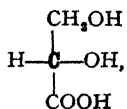


models, it will be found that they cannot be turned so as to coincide until two of the groups in one model have been interchanged.

The main difference between two such substances lies in their action on polarised light, the one turning it to the right (dextro-rotatory) and the other to the left (laevo-rotatory), when in the liquid or dissolved state. Although every optically active substance contains at least one asymmetric carbon atom like amyl alcohol and malic acid, or two like tartaric acid (the asymmetric carbon is represented in heavy type),



the converse does not always hold; for there are many compounds which possess an asymmetric carbon atom and show no rotation. The cause of this may be, either that the substance is a mixture of equal quantities of the two forms, which by having opposite rotations neutralise each other's effect, as in the case of racemic acid, which consists of equal quantities of dextro- and laevo-tartaric acid and produces what is termed "external compensation," or the two similar asymmetric carbon atoms exist within the same molecule and neutralise each other's effect by "internal compensation," as in the case of mesotartaric acid. External compensation is generally exhibited by artificially prepared compounds as distinguished from natural products. Thus glyceric acid from glycerol is inactive, though it contains an asymmetric carbon atom,



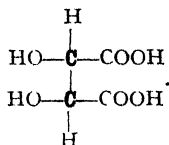
because it consists of a mixture of dextro- and laevo-glyceric acid in equal quantities, whereas tartaric acid, which occurs in grapes, malic acid, which is obtained from mountain ash berries, and also the sugars, terpenes, alkaloids, and a number of other natural products are all active. One of the great achievements of Pasteur

in this line of research was the separation of inactive "externally compensated" compounds into their active components or "optical antipodes" or "enantiomorphs." One method of separation is described in Prep. 53. For details of other methods a book on stereo-chemistry must be consulted.

On the formation of ethyl tartrate, see notes on Prep. 25, p. 284. Ethyl tartrate may also be obtained by the method described in Prep. 134, which rather curtails the operation and does not necessitate the use of more than half the quantity of ethyl alcohol required by the earlier process.

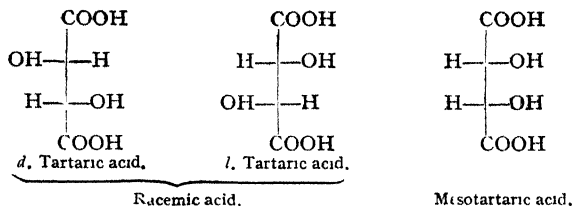
#### PREPARATION 53.

**Racemic and Mesotartaric Acids.**—These two acids represent two inactive types of compounds containing *asymmetric* carbon atoms (see above). Apart from certain well-marked differences in physical properties they also differ in one important feature; racemic acid can be resolved into its optical enantiomorphs, whereas mesotartaric acid cannot. The latter belongs to what is termed the inactive indivisible type. If we examine the structural formula of tartaric acid it will be seen that it possesses two asymmetric carbon atoms, denoted in the formula by thick type.



Each asymmetric carbon atom is attached to similar groups. Let us suppose that each asymmetric carbon with its associated groups produces a certain rotation in a given direction. We may imagine the following combinations of two similar asymmetric groups. Both produce dextro-rotation, or both produce laevo-rotation. They will represent the dextro and laevo enantiomorphs, and the mixture of the two will produce inactive racemic acid. Racemic acid is said to be inactive by *external compensation*. Suppose, finally, that the two asymmetric groups produce rotation in opposite directions. They will neutralise one another. The

resulting compound will be inactive by *internal compensation*. Such a compound cannot be resolved by any process into its active components. The above compounds may be represented by the following projection formulæ, in which the groups must be assumed to occupy three-dimensional space (the asymmetric carbon atoms being denoted by cross-lines),

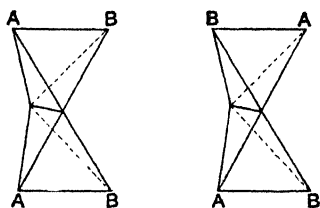


The conversion of active tartaric acid into the inactive forms is known as *racemisation*, and according to Winther is effected by the interchange of the groups round each asymmetric carbon atom successively, so that part of the active acid is first converted into mesotartaric acid, which then passes into the laevo variety.

#### PREPARATION 55.

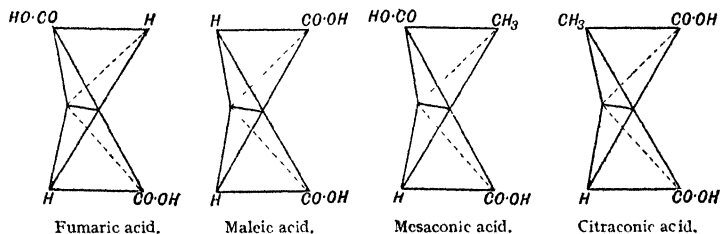
**Citraconic and Mesaconic Acid.**—The theory of Le Bel and Van't Hoff has been extended to unsaturated compounds like fumaric and maleic and the above two acids, which form isomeric pairs. These two pairs of acids bear a close resemblance. It has already been observed in the course of the preparation that citraconic is readily converted into mesaconic acid. Moreover, they both yield pyrotartaric acid on reduction, but only one, citraconic acid, forms an anhydride. Maleic acid in the same way is easily converted into fumaric acid by bromine, both maleic and fumaric acid yield succinic acid on reduction, but only maleic acid forms an anhydride. The explanation is as follows: in each pair of compounds there exist two carbon atoms linked to one another by a double bond and each attached to two different groups. Van't Hoff refers the isomerism of each pair to a space arrangement, which may be represented by supposing two tetrahedra to be joined by a common edge. As the centre of each tetrahedron is occupied

by a carbon atom, and the four bonds are directed towards the four corners of the tetrahedron, this space arrangement will correspond to a doubly-linked carbon. If the two spare corners of each tetrahedron are now occupied by different groups, it is possible to



produce two forms by transposing one pair of groups. Supposing A and B to represent two different groups, the above forms will result.

The two pairs of acids will be represented as follows :—



Isomerism in this case is not characterised by optical activity, as the groups lie in one plane and no structural asymmetry is possible; but is exhibited by such physical differences as solubility, melting-point, electrical conductivity, and by the fact that in the case of dibasic acids only one of the pair yields an anhydride. Maleic and citraconic acids form anhydrides, but fumaric and mesaconic acids do not. In the case of the acids which form anhydrides, the carboxyl groups are supposed to be nearer together, *i.e.* on the same side (*cis*) of the molecule, in the other case on opposite sides (*trans*) of the molecule. Maleic and citraconic are “*cis*” acids, fumaric and mesaconic are “*trans*” acids. The following

table gives the various physical properties, solubility, melting-point, and dissociation constant  $K$  of the two pairs of acids.

	S.	M. p.	K.
Maleic . . .	Very soluble.	130°	1·17
Fumaric . . .	Much less soluble.	Sublimes at 200°	·093
Citraconic . .	Very soluble.	80°	·340
Mesaconic . .	Much less soluble.	202°	·079

#### PREPARATION 56.

**Acetone dicarboxylic Acid and Ester.**—Like acetoacetic ester, the hydrogen atoms of the  $\text{CH}_2$  groups may be replaced by alkyl groups by the combined action of sodium ethoxide and an alkyl iodide. Both  $\text{CH}_2$  groups are affected in the same way, and thus four alkyl groups (R) may be introduced.



#### PREPARATIONS 57, 58.

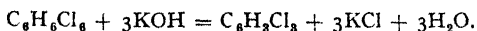
**Chloro- and Bromo-benzene.**—The replacement of hydrogen by the halogens Cl and Br, in the nucleus of aromatic hydrocarbons, is assisted by the presence of a "halogen carrier," the action of which has been referred to in the Note on the preparations of chlor- and brom-acetic acids, p. 390. Iodine, iron, iron and aluminium chlorides and bromides, the aluminium-mercury couple, and pyridine all behave in this way. The action of iodine has already been explained on p. 390. Iron and its salts are supposed to act by alternately passing from the ferrous to the ferric state, the ferric salt delivering up its halogen in the nascent state,



The action of aluminium and its compounds is not fully understood. Pyridine probably acts by the intermediate formation of the perbromide, as explained.

Unless a large excess of the hydrocarbon is present, the action of the halogen will effect the substitution of a second atom of hydrogen. By increasing the proportion of halogen, all the hydrogen may be ultimately replaced by chlorine or bromine. The second

halogen atom enters the ortho- and para-positions, rarely the meta-. Another kind of compound is obtained if the halogen is allowed to act in presence of sunlight. In the case of benzene, the additive compounds, benzene hexachloride and hexabromide, are then formed. They are very unstable compounds, and readily give off hydrochloric and hydrobromic acid. If boiled with alcoholic potash they are decomposed, forming trichloro- and tribromobenzene,



If chlorine and bromine are allowed to act upon an aromatic hydrocarbon like toluene, which has a side-chain, substitution may occur in the nucleus or the side-chain, according to the conditions. Generally speaking, in the cold and in presence of a "halogen carrier," nuclear substitution occurs, but at a high temperature the halogen passes into the side-chain (see Prep. 109, p. 228).

The halogen derivatives of the aromatic hydrocarbons, like those of the aliphatic series, are colourless liquids or solids, denser than water, and possessing an agreeable smell, unless the side-chain is substituted. The latter substances can often be distinguished by their irritating action on the eyes and mucous membrane of the nose (see Prep. 109, p. 228).

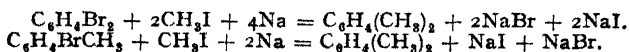
The halogen in the aromatic nucleus is much more firmly fixed than in the case of the aliphatic compounds, *e.g.*, bromo-benzene is quite unaffected by most of the reagents which act upon ethyl bromide. The presence of *nitro*-groups, however, disturbs this stability, and the halogen in a substance like dinitrochlorobenzene is readily replaced by hydroxyl with potash, or by  $\text{NH}_2$  with ammonia (see Prep. 99, p. 216). When the halogen is in the side-chain, the substance behaves like an aliphatic compound.

#### PREPARATION 59.

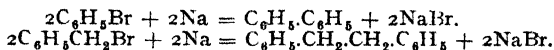
**Ethyl Benzene.**—"Fittig's reaction," so called from its discoverer, is analogous to the synthetical method employed by Wurtz for the preparation of the aliphatic hydrocarbons, as in the formation of butane from ethyl bromide,



In the case of the aromatic hydrocarbons, a second side-chain may be introduced from a dibromo-derivative either simultaneously with the first, or subsequently by a repetition of the process. Both dibromobenzene and monobromotoluene may be converted into xylene.



The action also takes place between aromatic hydrocarbons substituted either in the nucleus or side-chain. Bromobenzene yields diphenyl, whereas benzyl bromide yields dibenzyl,



This reaction does not, however, occur with the same readiness in all cases, nor does it always yield exclusively the anticipated product. Para-bromotoluene and sodium give tolyl phenyl methane and dibenzyl as well as ditolyl (Weiler). Again, *p*-bromotoluene gives a good yield of *p*-xylene; the ortho-compound reacts sluggishly, whilst the meta-derivative gives no xylene. Occasionally the action is vigorous, and has to be moderated by dilution with an indifferent solvent. At other times it is sluggish and has to be promoted by raising the temperature. Often the addition of a little ethyl acetate will start the decomposition. For the synthesis of some of the aromatic hydrocarbons, it is preferable to use the Friedel-Crafts reaction (see Prep. 135, p. 257).

#### PREPARATION 60.

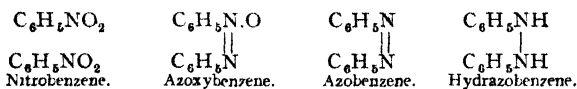
**Nitrobenzene.**—The formation of nitro-compounds, by the action of strong nitric acid on the hydrocarbon, is a distinctive property of aromatic compounds, although recent researches have shown that dilute nitric acid under pressure will convert some of the paraffins, especially the tertiary hydrocarbons, into mono- and di-nitro-derivatives. The production of nitro-compounds is usually effected by strong or fuming nitric acid, or solid potassium nitrate, in presence of conc. sulphuric acid. Where the action is vigorous, as in the case of the phenols, it is necessary to use moderately dilute acid. The number of hydrogen atoms replaceable by the nitro-

group ( $\text{NO}_2$ ) is limited. In benzene the first nitro-group is introduced with great ease, the second less readily, and the third with some difficulty. The position taken up by the nitro-groups may be briefly stated as follows: When a negative group (nitro, carboxyl, cyanogen, aldehyde) is already present, the nitro-group enters the meta-position to the first group. In the presence of other groups (alkyl, hydroxyl, halogen, amino), the nitro-group attaches itself to both ortho- and para-positions. Benzoic acid and benzaldehyde give, on nitration, mainly meta-compounds, whereas toluene, phenol, and aniline form simultaneously ortho- and para-derivatives.

Nitro-compounds have often a yellow or red colour, are with difficulty or not at all volatile, possess a much higher boiling-point than the corresponding halogen derivatives, and are denser than water, and insoluble in that liquid.

#### PREPARATIONS 61—63.

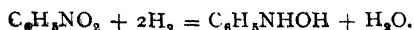
**Azoxybenzene, Azobenzene, Hydrazobenzene.**—Nitro-compounds yield a series of reduction products according to the nature of the reducing agent. Alkaline reducing agents: sodium methylate, zinc dust and caustic soda, stannous chloride and caustic soda, produce successively azoxy-, azo- and hydrazo-compounds.



The sodium methylate acts as a reducing agent by taking up oxygen and giving up hydrogen and so forming sodium formate.

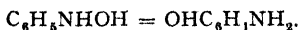
In the preparations, the nitrobenzene is converted by successive steps into azoxy-, azo- and hydrazo-benzene; but, by suitably modifying the conditions, the intermediate steps may be omitted. Thus, nitrobenzene may be converted with alcoholic caustic soda and zinc dust directly into hydrazobenzene.

If the reduction of nitrobenzene takes place in neutral solution with zinc dust and water in presence of a little calcium or ammonium chloride, or with aluminium-mercury couple and water,  $\beta$ -phenyl-hydroxylamine is formed (see Prep. 64, p. 164).

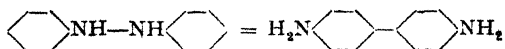




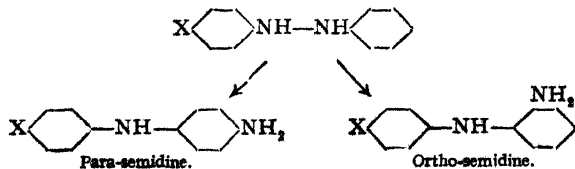
Reduction in acid solution produces an amine (see Prep. 65, p. 165). The mechanism of the change, although giving rise to such different products when carried out in alkaline, neutral, or acid solution, is not essentially different in the three cases. The first reduction product is nitrosobenzene,  $C_6H_5NO$ , followed by that of  $\beta$ -phenylhydroxylamine. In alkaline solution the two compounds unite with elimination of water to form azoxybenzene, which may undergo further reduction in a normal fashion, giving rise to azo- and hydrazo-benzene. In acid solution, on the other hand, phenylhydroxylamine does not combine with nitrosobenzene and can then undergo further reduction. The reduction of nitrobenzene in alkaline and neutral solution is also effected, as already described, by electrolysis of the liquid in contact with the negative electrode. If the process is conducted in presence of concentrated sulphuric acid *p*-aminophenol is obtained (Gattermann). The latter is produced by intramolecular change from phenylhydroxylamine, which is first formed,



Azobenzene, though not a colouring matter, may be regarded as the parent substance of the large family of azo-colours which are, however, prepared by a totally distinct method, viz., by the action of a diazo-salt on a phenol or base (see Prep. 89, p. 202). The intramolecular change from hydrazobenzene to benzidine is one of great technical importance. The change occurs by the transfer of the link between the two nitrogen atoms to the two carbon atoms in the *para*-position,



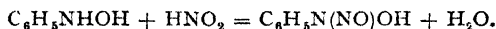
If one of the nuclei of hydrazobenzene is already substituted in the *para*-position, the reaction may give rise to diphenylamine derivatives, which are known as *ortho*- or *para*-semidines (Jacobson),



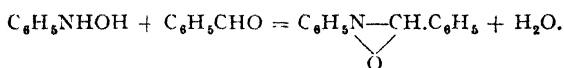
Benzidine and its homologues are used in the manufacture of valuable azo-colours, *Congo-red*, *benzopurpurin*, &c. (see p. 425).

#### PREPARATION 64.

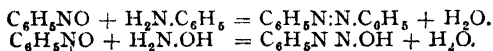
**Phenylhydroxylamine.**—The necessity for conducting the reduction of nitrobenzene in neutral solution has been explained in the previous note. In addition to the reagent named in the preparation, the aluminium-mercury couple in presence of water or ammonium sulphide in alcoholic solution may be also used. The conversion of nitrobenzene into *p*-aminophenol on electrolysis in acid solution will also be evident from the fact that phenylhydroxylamine readily undergoes isomeric change. Phenylhydroxylamine reacts with nitrous acid, forming a nitroso-derivative,



It also condenses with aldehydes in the following way :



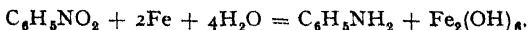
Nitrosobenzene, which shares the general character of nitroso-compounds in giving rise to a green vapour or solution, is readily reduced to phenylhydroxylamine and aniline. It condenses with amino-compounds, yielding azo- or diazo-derivatives.



#### PREPARATION 65.

**Aniline.**—The reduction of a nitro-compound in an acid solution is a very general method for preparing primary amines. For laboratory purposes it is customary to use tin and hydrochloric acid or a solution of stannous chloride crystals ( $\text{SnCl}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) in conc. hydrochloric acid or zinc dust and acetic acid. The manufacture of aniline on the industrial scale is effected by means of iron borings and hydrochloric acid; but of the latter only a fraction of the

theoretical quantity, required by the equation  $\text{Fe} + 2\text{HCl} = \text{FeCl}_2 + \text{H}_2$ , is employed. The main reaction is probably represented by the following equation :



When the base is volatile in steam, as in the present case, the simplest method of separation is to add an excess of alkali and to distil in steam. Otherwise the base may be separated by shaking out with ether, or the tin may be precipitated in the warm solution by  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$  and the filtrate evaporated to dryness. If the compound contains more than one nitro-group, the reduction is carried out with one of the above reducing agents in the manner described, but if it is necessary to reduce only one of the nitro-groups, it is effected by the action of  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$  in presence of ammonia (see Prep. 71, p. 175). Another method, which may also be used for determining the number of nitro-groups, is to prepare an alcoholic solution of the nitro-compound, and to add an alcoholic solution of the calculated quantity of stannous chloride. In this way the reduction of the groups may be carried out in succession and estimated.

The aromatic amines are colourless liquids or solids, which may be distilled without decomposition. Although they form salts with acids, they are much weaker bases than the aliphatic amines owing to the negative character of the phenyl group. The salts have an acid reaction to litmus, whilst the free bases are neutral. The *neutralisation* of an aromatic base by acid is usually determined by the use of methyl violet, magenta, or Congo-red paper. The first is turned green, the second colourless, and the third blue by free acid. Aromatic amines, containing the amino-group in the side-chain, have the basic character and properties of aliphatic amines.

#### PREPARATIONS 66, 67.

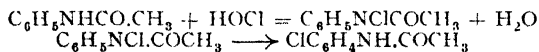
##### **Acetanilide, Acetylchloranilide, Chloracetanilide, Bromacetanilide.—**

Primary and secondary bases form acetyl derivatives with acetic acid, acetyl chloride or acetic anhydride (see Reactions, pp. 88, 89). Tertiary bases are unacted on in this way. As the acetyl derivatives are much less volatile than the original bases, the

method is frequently used for separating a tertiary base from mixtures containing the other two (see Prep. 72, p. 176). The anilides are very stable compounds; they can be distilled, as a rule, without decomposition, and may be directly brominated, chlorinated and nitrated. In these reactions, either the ortho- or para- or both derivatives are formed. The remaining hydrogen atom of the amino-group may be replaced by (1) a second acid radical, by the action of acetic anhydride, (2) sodium, by the action of the metal, (3) a nitroso-group, with nitrous acid, and (4) chlorine or bromine, by the action of hypochlorous or hypobromous acid.

$C_6H_5N(CO.CH_3)_2$	Diacetanilide
$C_6H_5NNa.CO.CH_3$	Sodium acetanilide
$C_6H_5N(NO)CO.CH_3$	Nitrosoacetanilide
$C_6H_5NCl.CO.CH_3$	Acetylchloranilide.

The mechanism of the change effected in producing substitution products by halogens may possibly occur in two steps as follows



The halogen enters the para-position if it is free, otherwise the ortho-position, but never the meta-position.

All the anilides are hydrolysed by strong mineral acids or alkalis and the acid radical removed (see also Beckmann's reaction, Prep. 135, p. 258).

Formanilide is a *tautomeric* compound, *i.e.*, it reacts as though it possessed the alternative formulæ,



for it yields two isomeric ethers, the one by the action of methyl iodide on the silver salt, and the other by the action of methyl iodide on the sodium compound (Comstock). Acetanilide is known in pharmacy as *antifebrin*, and is used as an antipyretic.

## PREPARATIONS 70, 71.

***m*-Dinitrobenzene.**—In the Notes on Prep. 60, p. 408, it is mentioned that the second nitro-group enters the meta-position to the first. This is usually the case where two acid groups are successively introduced into the hydrocarbon. Thus, benzene disulphonic acid, obtained by heating benzene sulphonic acid (see Prep. 90, p. 203) with fuming sulphuric acid, is a meta-compound.

***m*-Nitraniiline.**—The reduction product of *m*-dinitrobenzene is naturally *m*-nitraniiline. The *o*- and *p*-nitraniilines can be obtained by acting upon aniline or, preferably, acetanilide, with fuming nitric acid (see pp. 171—173).

Whereas the first nitro-group of a tri- or di-nitro derivative is rapidly and completely reduced by ammonium sulphide, the second is very slowly attacked. The rate of change appears to be determined mainly by the acidic nature of the molecule as a whole, the halogens and carboxyl playing a similar rôle to that of the nitro-group. In all these cases hydroxylamine compounds are produced as intermediate products.

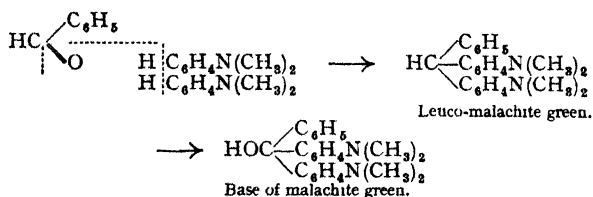
## PREPARATION 72.

**Dimethylaniline.**—It is a well-known fact that the alkyl halides convert the primary amines into secondary and tertiary bases (Hofmann). The formation of dimethylaniline is probably due to the action of  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ , which is formed, as an intermediate product, by the action of hydrochloric acid on the methyl alcohol. There is always a small quantity of mono-methylaniline,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NHCH}_3$ , produced at the same time. The three bases cannot well be separated by fractional distillation, as their boiling points lie too near together, •

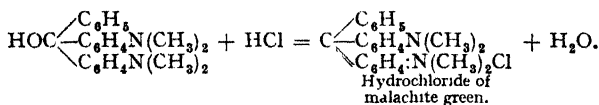
Aniline	. . . . .	183°
Methylaniline	. . . . .	192°
Dimethylaniline	. . . . .	193°.

It is for this reason that the action of acetic anhydride is utilised, which only unites with the primary and secondary base. Dimethylaniline is a weak base, which, like aniline, is neutral to litmus, but

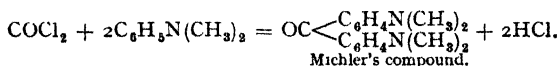
gives no stable salts. It is used in the preparation of malachite green (benzaldehyde green) by heating together dimethylaniline, benzaldehyde, and solid zinc chloride. The product (leuco-malachite green) is then oxidised with lead peroxide and hydrochloric acid (see p. 266),



The latter, in presence of the hydrochloric acid, is converted into the hydrochloride,



Dimethylaniline is also used for the preparation of tetramethyl-diaminobenzophenone (Michler's compound), which forms the basis of many colouring matters, and is obtained by acting upon dimethylaniline with phosgene,



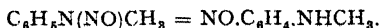
### PREPARATION 73.

**Nitrosodimethylaniline.**—It is a peculiarity of the tertiary aromatic amines, which distinguishes them from the corresponding aliphatic compounds, that they are capable of reacting with nitrous acid. Here the nitroso-group replaces hydrogen in the para-position to the dimethylamino-group.

The substances, thus formed, are bases, and form salts with acids, which dissolve in water with a yellow colour. The solubility of the hydrochloride of the nitroso-bases in water distinguishes them from the nitrosamines of the secondary bases, which are insoluble.

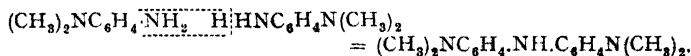
Nitrosodimethylaniline is readily oxidised to nitrodimethylaniline.

It is an interesting fact that the nitrosamines of the secondary bases undergo molecular change when acted on with alcoholic hydrochloric acid. The nitroso-group is thereby transferred to the para-position in the nucleus (O. Fischer).

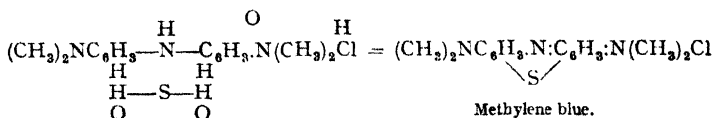


The para-nitroso derivatives of both secondary and tertiary amines are decomposed with caustic soda into nitrosophenol and alkylamine.

The formation of methylene blue may be explained as follows: By the action of ammonium sulphide on nitrosodimethylaniline, the nitroso-group is reduced to an amino-group. Two molecules of *p*-aminodimethylaniline then combine with the elimination of ammonia to form a diphenylamine derivative,

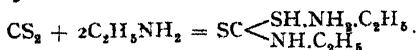


The sulphur of the hydrogen sulphide then enters the molecule under the oxidising influence of the ferric chloride, forming a thiodiphenylamine derivative,

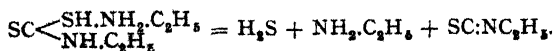


#### PREPARATION 75.

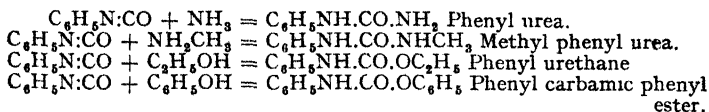
**Thiocarbanilide, Thiocarbimide, Triphenylguanidine.**—Whereas carbon bisulphide reacts with aromatic amino-compounds, yielding a thiocarbanilide, with primary aliphatic amines the reaction takes a different course and thiocarbamates are produced,



The product can, however, be converted into the mustard oil by treatment with a metallic salt which removes hydrogen sulphide.



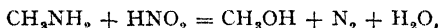
Among the reactions appended to this preparation, the formation of phenylcarbimide from phenyl mustard oil is described. It should be noted that phenyl carbimide, like the thiocarbimide, unites with ammonia, amines, and more especially with alcohols and phenols. The bases yield urea derivatives; the alcohols and phenols form urethanes (see pp. 55, 75 and 167).



The latter two reactions are frequently used for detecting the presence of a hydroxyl group (Goldschmidt).

#### PREPARATION 76.

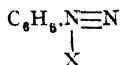
**Diazobenzene Sulphate.**—Whereas nitrous acid immediately decomposes the primary aliphatic amines with evolution of nitrogen,



no nitrogen is evolved if nitrous acid is allowed to act upon a salt of a primary aromatic amine *in the cold*. The solution then contains a diazo-salt, which is readily soluble in water. It may already have been observed that in the salts of diazobenzene, the radical, diazobenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2$ , plays the part of ammonium,  $\text{NH}_4$ , in the ammonium salts. Diazobenzene chloride, nitrate, sulphate, &c., correspond to ammonium chloride, nitrate, and sulphate.



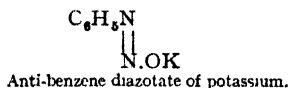
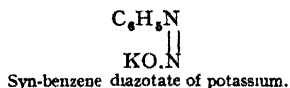
The hydrate of diazobenzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{OH}$ , which would be analogous to  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ , is also known as an unstable oil. Considerations of this kind have suggested the alternative formula.



in which X stands for the acid radical (Blomstrand). The nitrogen



which combines with the acid radical is thereby quinquevalent, as in the ammonium salts. On the other hand, diazobenzene hydrate forms two isomeric potassium salts, one of which is obtained by adding caustic potash to diazobenzene chloride. This compound is unstable, and unites in the ordinary way with phenols to form hydroxyazobenzene derivatives (see Reaction 6, p. 184). The second one, which is obtained by heating the first to  $130^{\circ}$  with caustic potash, is very stable, and does not combine directly with phenols (Schraube and Schmidt). Other derivatives of diazobenzene exist in two forms, such as the cyanide and sulphonate. The difference has been explained as follows: According to this theory, the two potassium compounds represent two different space configurations similar to that of citraconic and mesaconic acid (see p. 404) and the oximes (see p. 437), and are distinguished by the terms 'syn' and 'anti' (Hantzsch).



It is now generally admitted that the diazo-salts of the stronger acids, which have only one representative, are most satisfactorily represented by the "diazonium," or Blomstrand formula, and the salts are known as diazonium salts.

A few of the numerous changes which the diazonium salts undergo are illustrated in the series of reactions which follow the preparation, and are among the most important in organic chemistry. Some of these reactions are carried out on a larger scale in Preps. 77—83. It will there be noticed that it is unnecessary, as a rule, to isolate the diazonium salt, but that the substance is prepared in solution, and is decomposed by the specific reagent.

With few exceptions, all aromatic compounds which contain a nuclear amino-group may be diazotised. At the same time there are notable differences in the ease with which the process is effected.

## PREPARATION 77.

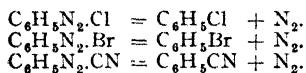
**Toluene from 'Toluidine.**—It is often desirable to obtain the hydrocarbon from the base. The process of diazotisation offers the only convenient method. The diazonium salt may be reduced by alcohol (Reaction 1, p. 183) or, as in the present instance, by sodium stannite. Less direct methods are the conversion of the diazonium compound into (1) the hydrazine (see p. 197), (2) the acid and distillation with lime (p. 242), (3) the halogen derivative and reduction with sodium amalgam, or, finally, (4) the phenol and distillation with zinc dust.

## PREPARATION 78.

***p*-Cresol.**—This reaction resembles that of nitrous acid on an aliphatic primary amine; but the liquid requires to be warmed.

## PREPARATIONS 79, 80.

***p*-Chlorotoluene, *p*-Bromotoluene.**—The action of cuprous chloride, bromide, and cyanide on diazonium chlorides was discovered by Sandmeyer, and is known as 'Sandmeyer's reaction.'

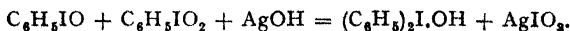


Some of the cuprous chloride compounds of the diazonium salts have been isolated and analysed, and correspond to the formula  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_2\text{Cl.Cu}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (Hantzsch). The formation of a crystalline copper compound is rendered very evident in the present preparation. A modification of Sandmeyer's reaction is the introduction of precipitated metallic copper in place of the cuprous salt (Gattermann).

The oxidation of a side-chain by means of permanganate solution is one which is commonly employed where the acid is required. The monohalogen derivatives are readily oxidised in this way, but greater difficulty is experienced if two halogen atoms or other acid groups are present. The dichlorotoluenes, for example, are only slowly attacked.

## PREPARATION 81.

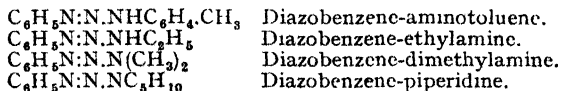
**Iodosotoluene.**—The most interesting of the compounds belonging to this group, which were carefully investigated by V. Meyer, is the substance prepared by shaking a mixture of iodosobenzene and iodoxybenzene (obtained by the oxidation of the iodoso-compound) with moist silver oxide. Diphenyliodonium hydroxide is thus produced, which in basic properties resembles ammonium hydrate,



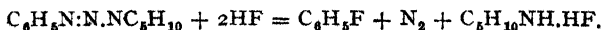
With hydriodic acid it forms the iodide,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{I.I.}$

## PREPARATION 83.

**Diazoaminobenzene.**—Diazoamino-compounds are also formed by the action of diazonium salts on primary and secondary amines of both the aliphatic and aromatic series. The method given in the preparation must then be modified. The diazonium salt is first prepared, and the amine stirred in with the addition of sodium acetate. The sodium combines with the mineral acid, liberating the weaker acetic acid, which thereby assists the separation of the diazoamino-compound. Compounds of the following formulæ have been prepared in this way:—



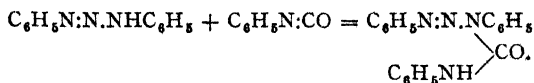
The last compound has been utilised for the preparation of fluorobenzene, and its congeners by the action of conc. hydrofluoric acid,



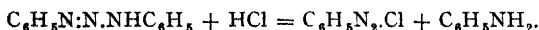
Diazoaminobenzene undergoes the following reactions:—

1. The hydrogen of the imino-group may be replaced by acid and alkyl radicals. In the latter case the sodium compound is treated with an alkyl iodide.

## 2. Phenyl carbimide forms a urea derivative,



3. With strong hydrochloric acid, decomposition into diazonium salt and amine takes place,



If nitrous acid is added, the second molecule of base is also converted into diazobenzene chloride. In presence of cuprous chloride, chlorobenzene is formed.

4. On boiling with water, diazoaminobenzene decomposes into phenol and base,

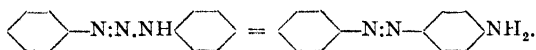


5. On reduction, it splits up into phenylhydrazine and aniline,

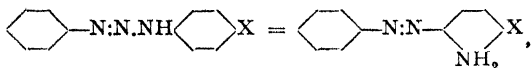


## PREPARATION 84.

**Aminoazobenzene.**—The conversion of diazoaminobenzene into aminoazobenzene resembles the formation of benzidine from hydrazobenzene (see p. 163). The diazo-nitrogen seizes on the carbon of the nucleus in the para-position to the amino-group,

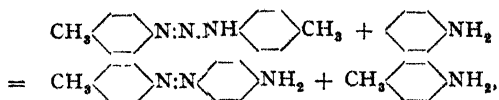


If the para-position is already occupied, the nitrogen takes the ortho-position to the amino-group,

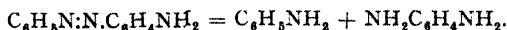


but the reaction only takes place readily where the para-position is free. The manner in which the change is brought about has not been satisfactorily explained, although from the fact that *p*-diazo-

aminotoluene yields, on warming with aniline hydrochloride, *p*-toluene azoaminobenzene and *p*-toluidine,

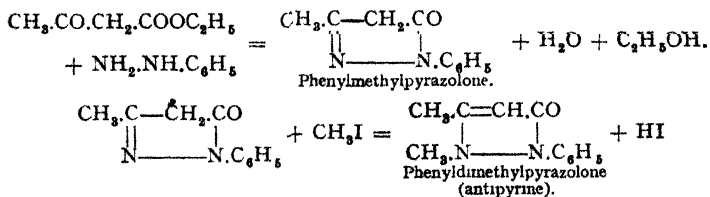


it would appear as if the hydrochloride of the base were the chief factor in the decomposition, and that the change was rather *inter*- than *intra*-molecular. Aminoazobenzene, under the name of *aniline yellow*, has been used as a colouring matter. Its chief technical application at present is in the manufacture of a class of dark blue colours, known as *indulines*. On reduction with tin and hydrochloric acid, it decomposes into two molecules of base, aniline and *p*-phenylenediamine, a reaction which is shared by most of the azo-compounds (see p. 201),



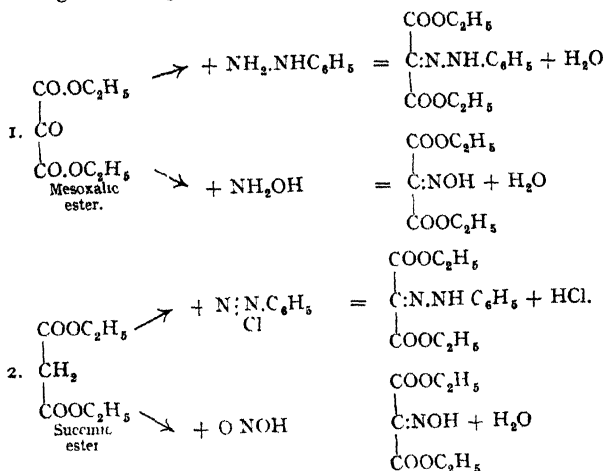
#### PREPARATION 85.

**Phenylhydrazine, Phenylmethylpyrazolone.**—The use of phenylhydrazine or, in some cases, *p*-bromo- or *p*-nitro-phenylhydrazine, as a reagent for the detection of aldehydes and ketones, has been illustrated in the reactions on p. 234. One of its most important technical uses is in the preparation of antipyrine, in which the product, obtained by the action of phenylhydrazine on ethyl acetoacetate, is acted upon with methyl iodide. The two reactions are represented as follows:—

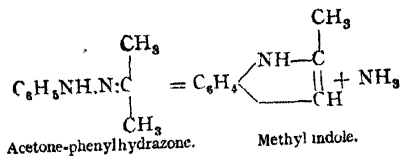


The variety of syntheses into which phenylhydrazine enters cannot be described here; but reference must be made to the next-book.

It should be noted that the action of phenylhydrazine on the ketone group, and of diazobenzene salts on the methylene group situated between two CO groups, are analogous to that of hydroxylamine and nitrous acid upon these two groups, of which the following are examples :—



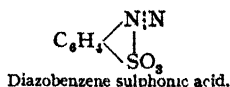
Phenylhydrazine has been used in the synthesis of indole derivatives. The hydrazones of aldehydes and ketones containing a methyl group are decomposed on heating with zinc chloride, indoles being formed with elimination of ammonia (E. Fischer).



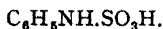
#### PREPARATION 87.

**Sulphanilic Acid.**—The acid characters of this substance, which is both base and acid, are more prominently developed than the basic character. Nevertheless it reacts with nitrous acid like

primary amine, and forms a diazonium salt, which has the following constitution :—



The formation of sulphanilic acid is probably preceded by the sulphonation of the amino-group.

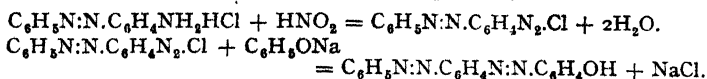


A compound of this character has been obtained which decomposes with acids into *o*- and *p*-aminosulphonic acid by a process of intramolecular change (Bamberger). The fact of the para-compound being exclusively formed at the higher temperature may account for the production of this substance in the present preparation.

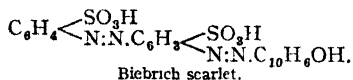
#### PREPARATIONS 88, 89.

**Methyl Orange, Naphthol Orange.**—The first point to notice in this reaction is that the diazonium salt forms no diazoamino-compound with the dimethylaniline, but at once produces an azo-compound. This is always the case with tertiary amines, some secondary amines like diphenylamine and the phenols. The reaction may be regarded as typical of the formation of all azo-colouring matters. At least two substances are requisite in this process; on the one hand, an aromatic compound containing an amino-group in the nucleus, and, on the other, a base or phenol. The first is diazotised and combined or coupled with the second. The coupling takes place, in the case of amines, in a faintly acid or neutral solution, in the case of phenols in an alkaline solution (see Reaction 6, p. 184). In all cases the diazo-group seizes upon the carbon in the para-position to the amino- or hydroxyl-group of the coupled nucleus. When the para-position is already appropriated, the ortho-position serves as a link, but no coupling ever occurs in the meta-position. The sulphonic acid derivatives of the base or phenol are frequently preferable to the unsubstituted compound. The dyes formed have in consequence of the presence of the  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}$  group an acid character, which renders them capable of forming soluble sodium

salts, and adapts them better for dyeing purposes. When an azo-compound is formed by coupling the diazo-compound with a primary amine, the new product is capable of being diazotised and coupled a second time. Thus a tetrazo-compound is formed containing a double diazo-group  $-N:N-$ . Aminoazobenzene, when diazotised, forms diazo-azobenzene with nitrous acid, which, like a simple diazo-compound, reacts with the phenols,

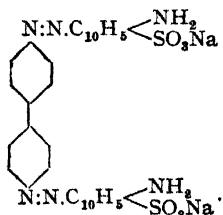


If aminoazobenzene is sulphonated with fuming sulphuric acid, and the product again diazotised and coupled with  $\beta$ -naphthol, *Biebrich scarlet* is formed,



If in the last phase the different sulphonic acids of  $\beta$ -naphthol are employed, various shades of red, known as *Croceins*, are produced. Thus it appears that the colour deepens from orange to red with the introduction of a second azo-group.

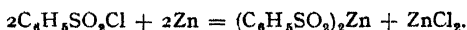
This is not the only method of forming tetrazo-compounds. Each amino-group of a diamine may be diazotised and coupled. Benzidine and its homologues, which have been utilised in this way, have a special value for the cotton dyer, as the shades produced are not only very brilliant, but, unlike the majority of colouring matters, are *substantive colours*, i.e., possess the property of attaching themselves to the cotton fibre without the aid of a mordant. *Congo reds* and *benzopurpurins* are combinations of benzidine and its homologues with the sulphonic acids of naphthol and naphthylamine. The following is the constitution of Congo red, the simplest of these compounds, which is used in the form of its sodium salt :—





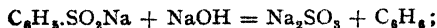
The behaviour of primary, secondary, and tertiary amines has been suggested as a basis of separation of these three classes of compounds. The primary amines usually form compounds with the sulphonic chloride, which dissolve in caustic soda; the derivatives of the secondary amine are insoluble, whereas the tertiary amines do not react with the sulphonic chloride (Hinsberg). The method cannot always be employed.

On reduction of the sulphonic chloride with zinc dust and water, the zinc salt of the sulphinic acid is formed,

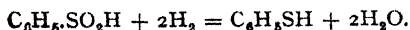


The acid is separated from the zinc salt by boiling with sodium carbonate, filtering from zinc carbonate, and decomposing the soluble sodium salt with sulphuric acid, which precipitates the sulphinic acid.

The sulphinic acids are unstable compounds. They are readily oxidised to sulphonic acids; on fusion with alkalis they are converted into the hydrocarbon and alkaline sulphite,



on reduction they form thiophenols,



#### PREPARATION 92.

**Phenol.**—Fusion of the alkali salt of the sulphonic acid with caustic soda or potash is a common method for preparing phenols (see Prep. 156, p. 280). Phenols correspond in constitution to the tertiary alcohols of the aliphatic series, but differ in their more negative character. The phenols dissolve in caustic alkalis, forming *alkaline phenates*, which are, however, decomposed by carbon dioxide. In this way a phenol may be separated from an acid. The solution in caustic soda is saturated with carbon dioxide, and the phenol is then extracted with ether or filtered off. The entrance of nitro-groups into the nucleus converts phenols into strong acids (see Preps. 97 and 99).

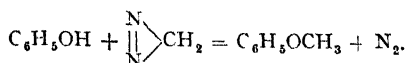
The various reactions which the phenols undergo are illustrated in Preps. 93—104.

The technical method for obtaining phenol is by shaking out with caustic soda the "middle oil" of the coal-tar distillate, after some of the naphthalene has crystallised out. The phenol dissolves in the alkali, and is then removed from insoluble oils. The alkaline liquid is acidified, the phenol separated, distilled, and finally purified by freezing.

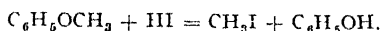
#### PREPARATION 93.

**Anisole.**—The preparation of anisole from phenol is analogous to Williamson's synthesis of the ethers (see p. 372), but the ethers of phenol cannot be obtained by the action of the alcohol on the phenol in presence of sulphuric acid. This reaction can, however, be effected in the case of the naphthols (see p. 455).

Another method of replacing hydrogen by methyl, in addition to the use of alkyl halide and alkyl sulphate, is by the action of diazomethane on the phenol:



The methyl group in anisole can be split off, and the phenol regenerated by heating with  $\text{HCl}$  or  $\text{HI}$ ,



The latter reaction has been made the basis of a quantitative method for determining the number of methoxyl groups ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ) present in a compound (Zeisel, see p. 281).

#### PREPARATION 94.

**Hexahydrophenol.**—The method of Sabatier and Senderens for the reduction of organic compounds is very generally applicable. It consists in passing the vapour of the organic compound mixed with hydrogen over finely divided metals, especially nickel, as in the example given. Aldehydes and ketones are reduced to

alcohols, olefines to paraffins, and, in the aromatic series, hydrogen is taken up in the nucleus and hydrocyclic compounds result. The hydrocarbons form cycloparaffins; the phenols, cyclic alcohols; the bases, cyclic amines, &c.

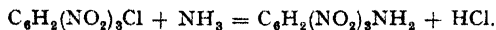
#### PREPARATION 95.

***o*- and *p*-Nitrophenol.**—The action of nitric acid on phenol is much more energetic than it is in the case of benzene. To obtain the mono-derivatives, the acid has, in consequence, to be diluted,

The entrance of the nitro-group renders the phenol more strongly acid, so that the nitrophenols, unlike the phenols, form stable salts with alkaline carbonates. It should be noted that the nitro-group enters the ortho- and para-position, but not the meta-position to the OH group, according to the general rule explained on p. 409. Moreover, the ortho-compound is more volatile than the para-compound. Compare *o*- and *p*-hydroxybenzaldehyde (Prep. 103, p. 219).

#### PREPARATION 97.

**Picric Acid (Method I).**—The presence of three nitro-groups converts the phenol into a strong acid. Picryl chloride, which is formed by the action of  $\text{PCl}_5$  on the acid, behaves like an acid chloride, is decomposed by water and alkalis and forms picramide or trinitraniline with ammonia,



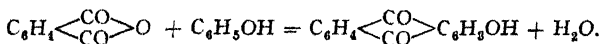
Note that the three nitro-groups occupy meta-positions in regard to one another; ortho- or para-positions in reference to the hydroxyl group.

#### PREPARATION 98.

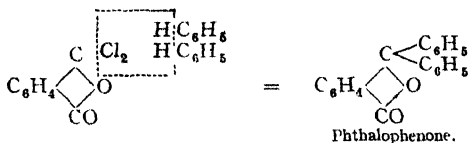
**2 : 4-Dinitrochlorobenzene.**—The presence of the two nitro-groups in the nucleus loosens the attachment of the chlorine atom, which can be replaced, as in the present case, by hydroxyl under the action of alkalis and also by amino-groups by the action of ammonia and amines, in which respect it behaves like picryl chloride (see Prep. 99).

## PREPARATIONS 101, 102.

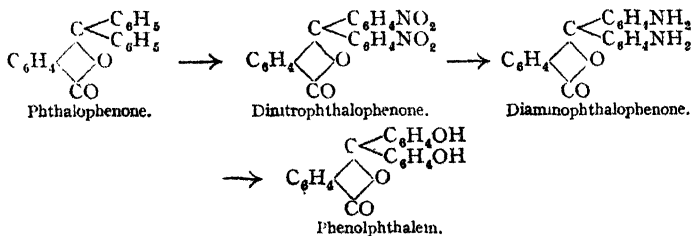
**Phenolphthalein.**—The action of phthalic anhydride on phenol takes place in two ways. When equal molecules of the substance react in presence of conc. sulphuric acid, hydroxyanthraquinone is formed (Baeyer),



It is by a similar process that alizarin has been synthesised with the object of ascertaining its constitution (see Notes on Prep. 160, p. 456). When two molecules of phenol and one molecule of phthalic anhydride are heated together with conc. sulphuric acid, then phenolphthalein is formed (Baeyer). Its constitution has been determined by its synthesis from phthalyl chloride and benzene by means of the "Friedel-Crafts reaction" (see Notes on Prep. 135, p. 447). Phthalyl chloride and benzene yield in presence of  $\text{AlCl}_3$  phthalophenone,

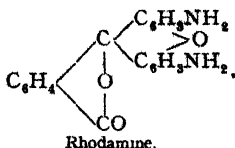


Phthalophenone is then converted successively into dinitro-, diamino-, and, finally, by the action of nitrous acid, into dihydrophtalophenone or phenolphthalein,



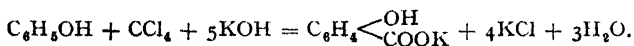
An important group of colouring matters, known as the "rhone amines," is obtained from phthalic anhydride and *m*-aminophenol

and its derivatives. They have a constitution similar to that of fluorescein. The simplest of these compounds is represented by the following formula :—



#### PREPARATION 102.

**Salicylaldehyde, *p*-Hydroxybenzaldehyde.**—"Reimer's reaction" for the preparation of hydroxyaldehydes from phenols is applicable to a very large number of monohydric and polyhydric phenols. The substitution of two H atoms by two aldehyde groups sometimes occurs, as in the case of resorcinol. An analogous reaction is that of caustic potash and carbon tetrachloride on phenol, which yields chiefly *p*-hydroxybenzoic acid,



#### PREPARATIONS 104, 105.

**Coumarin, *cis*- and *trans*-*o*-Methoxy-cinnamic Ester.**—The reaction by which coumarin is prepared is known as *Perkin's reaction* and is again illustrated in Prep. 127, p. 278. The introduction of the small quantity of iodine increases the yield; but the nature of its action is unknown. The existence of *cis* and *trans* forms of the methoxycinnamic esters is explained in the same manner as that of citraconic and mesaconic acids (p. 405).

#### PREPARATION 106.

**Salicylic Acid.**—The reaction was discovered by Kolbe, and is known as "Kolbe's synthesis." It will have been observed that it takes place in two steps. Sodium phenylcarbonate is first formed, which then undergoes intramolecular change with the production

of sodium salicylate (Schmidt). The technical process is carried out in autoclaves, in which carbon dioxide is passed into the sodium phenate under pressure at 120—130°. It is a curious fact that the use of potassium phenate yields, especially at a high temperature (220°), almost exclusively the *p*-hydroxybenzoate of potassium.

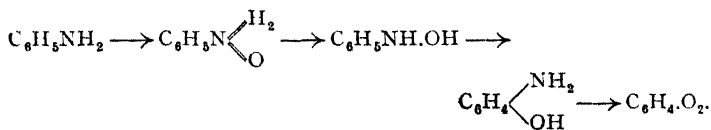
The above reaction may be applied in the case of other phenols.

#### PREPARATION 107.

**Acetylsalicylic Acid (Aspirin).**—The reaction illustrates the use of pyridine as a condensing agent between a phenol and an acyl chloride. A similar reagent can be used for combining alcohols and acyl chlorides (see footnote, p. 129).

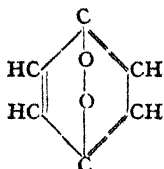
#### PREPARATION 108.

**Quinone and Quinol.**—Quinone, which was originally obtained by the oxidation of quinic acid (the acid associated with quinine in cinchona bark), is now prepared from aniline. The aniline, in process of oxidation to quinone, appears to pass through the following intermediate stages,

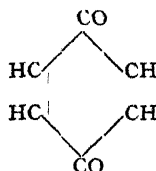


The aniline is first oxidised to phenylammonium oxide, which changes into phenylhydroxylamine. The latter also undergoes intramolecular change, being converted into *p*-aminophenol, which is finally oxidised to quinone (Bamberger). It may also be obtained by the oxidation of para-derivatives of aniline, such as *p*-phenylenediamine, sulphanilic acid, *p*-aminophenol, &c. Other amino-compounds and phenols yield corresponding quinones, and it can even be prepared from an amino-compound or phenol, if an alkyl group occupies the para-position, as in the case of mesidine, which loses a methyl group and yields *m*-xyloquinone. Quinone is some-

times regarded as a peroxide (Graebe), sometimes as a para-diketone (Fittig).

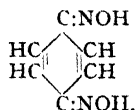
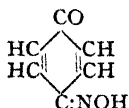


Peroxide formula.



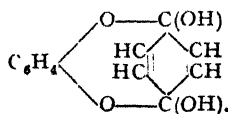
Diketone formula.

The facts in favour of the first are that quinone, like a peroxide, has a strong oxidising action, that on reduction it yields, not a glycol, but a dihydroxybenzene; moreover, with  $\text{PCl}_5$  instead of a tetra-chloro-derivative, a dichlorobenzene is formed. In favour of the ketone structure is the formation of a mono- and di-oxime (Goldschmidt),



Phenylhydrazones are not formed, as phenylhydrazine acts as a reducing agent and produces quinol.

The constitution of quinhydrone, the intermediate product formed by the reduction of quinone or oxidation of quinol, is represented by the formula,



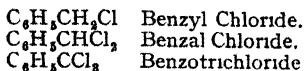
For the formation of dimethylquinone, see p. 388.

#### PREPARATION 109.

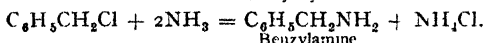
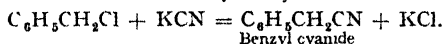
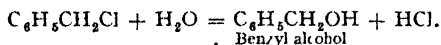
**Benzyl Chloride.**—The action of chlorine on *boiling* toluene is quite distinct from the action which occurs in the cold or in presence of a "halogen carrier" (see pp. 390, 406). In the present instance substitution takes place in the side-chain. It is a curious fact,

however, that chlorine produced by electrolysis in presence of boiling toluene mainly enters the nucleus.

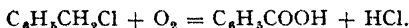
By prolonged action all three hydrogen atoms of the side-chain may be replaced, and the following compounds obtained :—



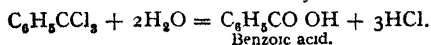
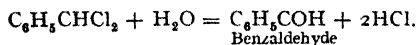
Hydrocarbons containing the halogen in the side-chain may be generally, though not invariably distinguished, by their irritating action on the eyes and mucous membrane of the nose, from those in which the halogen is present in the nucleus. Moreover, the halogen in the side-chain is much more readily substituted or removed than when it occurs in the nucleus. In this respect the above compounds resemble the members of the aliphatic series (alkyl and alkylene halides). Benzyl chloride is decomposed by water, ammonia, and potassium cyanide, forming benzyl alcohol, benzyl cyanide, and benzylamine.



It is also much more easily oxidised than toluene to benzoic acid,



Benzal chloride and benzotrichloride are also decomposed by water in presence of calcium carbonate, and at a high temperature, yielding, in the one case, benzaldehyde (see p. 232), and in the other, benzoic acid,



#### PREPARATIONS 110, 114.

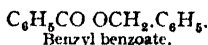
**Benzyl alcohol** may be also obtained by the action of caustic potash on benzaldehyde (see Prep. 115, p. 236). This reaction



is specially characteristic of cyclic-compounds containing an aldehyde-group in the nucleus, although some of the higher aliphatic aldehydes behave in a similar fashion (Cannizzaro),



Benzyl alcohol has the properties of an aliphatic alcohol, and not those of a phenol. On oxidation, it gives benzaldehyde and benzoic acid, and it forms benzyl esters with acids or acid chlorides,

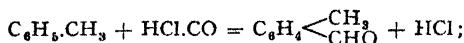


#### PREPARATIONS 111, 112.

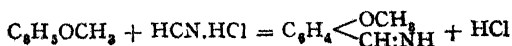
**Benzyl Cyanide, Phenyl Acetic Ester.**—The formation of benzyl cyanide from the chloride follows the usual reactions for alkyl halides, which benzyl chloride closely resembles (see Prep. 9, p. 77). The hydrolysis of the cyanide to the acid and ester illustrates the general behaviour of corresponding aliphatic compounds represented in Preps. 10, 11, pp. 77, 78.

#### PREPARATIONS 113, 114.

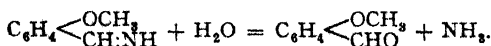
**Benzaldehyde.**—The aldehydes of the aromatic series may also be obtained by the oxidation of a methyl side-chain with chromium oxychloride. The solid brown product,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_3(\text{CrO}_2\text{Cl}_2)_2$ , formed by adding  $\text{CrO}_2\text{Cl}_2$  to toluene, dissolved in carbon bisulphide, is decomposed with water, and benzaldehyde separates out (Etard). Other methods for preparing aromatic aldehydes are (1) the Friedel-Crafts' reaction, in which a mixture of carbon monoxide and hydrogen chloride are passed into the hydrocarbon in presence of aluminium chloride and a little cuprous chloride, described in Prep. 114.



(2) also by passing a mixture of hydrogen cyanide and hydrogen chloride into a phenol ether in presence of  $\text{AlCl}_3$ ,



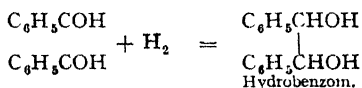
The product is then hydrolysed with hydrochloric acid (Gattermann),



(3) Grignard's reaction can also be used for preparing aromatic aldehydes (p. 446).

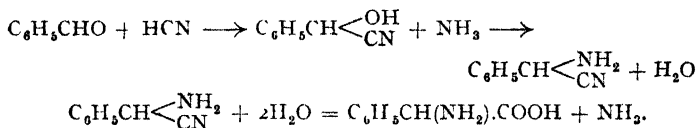
The numerous reactions which benzaldehyde undergoes are described in this preparation, and in some of the subsequent ones (see Preps. 115-119).

On reduction, benzaldehyde yields, in addition to benzyl alcohol, a pinacone known as *hydrobenzoin*,



#### PREPARATIONS 116, 117.

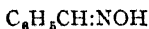
**Phenylamino-acetic Acid and Ester.**—The union of aldehyde, sodium cyanide and ammonium chloride probably occurs between ammonium cyanide, formed by double decomposition, and the aldehyde in which the cyanhydrin first formed reacts with the ammonia replacing the hydroxyl by the amino group.



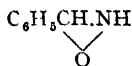
A similar reaction occurs with primary amines. Phenylamino-acetic acid contains an asymmetric carbon atom and exists in two stereoisomeric (*d*, *l*) forms (see p. 401).

#### PREPARATION 118.

**$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Benzaldoximes.**—The existence of two isomeric benzaldoximes was first observed by Beckmann in 1889, who explained their relation by a difference in structure.



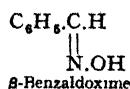
$\alpha$ -Benzaldoxime.



$\beta$ -Benzaldoxime.

In the following year Hantzsch and Werner published their theory, by which the greater number of isomeric oximes both of aldehydes and ketones have found a satisfactory explanation.

These compounds were not structurally different but stereoisomeric, the relation being similar to that which exists between fumaric, maleic or mesaconic and citraconic acids (p. 404), or again between the two diazotates of potassium (p. 418), and which may be represented as follows :



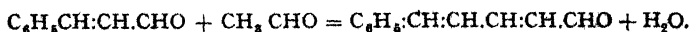
It will be easily understood from these formulæ why the  $\beta$ -compound should yield benzonitrile with acetic anhydride, whilst the  $\alpha$ -compound does not. The proximity of hydrogen and hydroxyl in the former case facilitates the formation and elimination of water. In this way the configuration of most of the aldoximes may be ascertained.

#### PREPARATION 119.

**Benzalacetone.**—The formation of this compound by the condensation of an aldehyde with another aldehyde or ketone in presence of dilute caustic soda solution is known as *Claisen's reaction*. Thus salicyl aldehyde condenses with acetone and acetophenone in a similar manner. Moreover, benzalacetone may undergo further condensation with a second molecule of benzaldehyde, forming dibenzalacetone :



With acetaldehyde in presence of caustic soda, benzaldehyde forms cinnamic aldehyde, which can undergo a second condensation with another molecule of acetaldehyde :

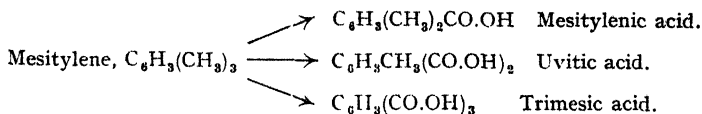


#### PREPARATION 120.

**Benzole Acid.**—The oxidation of the side-chains in aromatic hydrocarbons is a matter of considerable interest, as illustrating

the difference of stability of the side-chain and nucleus, and also the influence which the relative positions of the side-chains, where more than one is present, exert in presence of oxidising agents.

The oxidation of the side-chain of an aromatic hydrocarbon, when more than one is present, takes place in successive steps. Thus, mesitylene is converted into the following compounds on oxidation :



The reagents usually employed are (1) chromic acid or potassium dichromate and sulphuric acid, (2) dilute nitric acid and (3) potassium permanganate in alkaline or neutral solution. The action of these upon the side-chain, when more than one side-chain is present, depends upon their relative position. Thus, for example, potassium dichromate and sulphuric acid either does not act, or completely destroys the compound when the side-chains occupy the ortho-position (Fittig), whereas the para- and meta-compounds yield the corresponding carboxylic acids. This is true also of substituted hydrocarbons with one side-chain; thus with nitric acid *m*- and *p*-nitrotoluene give *m*- and *p*-nitrobenzoic acid, whilst the ortho-compound is either unattacked or destroyed. If, however, the substituent is a halogen and the oxidising agent nitric acid, the meta-compound is least, and the para-compound most acted on. Dilute nitric acid or alkaline permanganate are most serviceable for oxidising side-chains where only one side-chain is to be converted into carboxyl on account of their less energetic action.

The oxidation of a halogen-substituted side-chain by the usual oxidising agents is much more readily accomplished than that of a simple alkyl group. A similar case is that of naphthalene tetrachloride,  $C_{10}H_8Cl_4$ , which, though an additive compound, is much more readily converted into phthalic acid than naphthalene itself.

## PREPARATION 121.

***p*-Nitrobenzoic Acid.**—This preparation is a further example of the formation of an aromatic acid by the oxidation of the methyl side-chain. It should be pointed out that the oxidation in this case takes place much more readily than in that of toluene with unsubstituted nucleus.

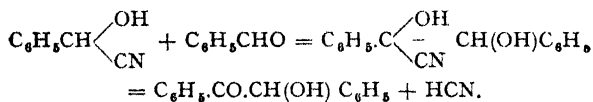
Nitration of benzoic acid yields mainly the meta-derivative.

## PREPARATION 122.

***m*-Nitro-, *m*-Amino-, *m*-Hydroxy-benzoic Acids.**—This series of compounds merely furnishes an exercise in the processes previously described and illustrates the application of the same reactions in the case of a substituted benzene derivative containing a nitro-group. It also illustrates the manner in which meta-compounds of benzoic acid may be indirectly prepared where a direct method is inapplicable.

## PREPARATION 124.

**Benzoin, Benzil.**—As a small quantity of potassium cyanide is capable of converting a large quantity of benzaldehyde into benzoin, the action of the cyanide has been explained as follows: The potassium cyanide first reacts with the aldehyde and forms a cyanhydrin, which then condenses with another molecule of aldehyde, hydrogen cyanide being finally eliminated (Lapworth),



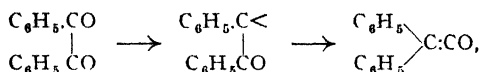
The same reaction occurs with other aromatic aldehydes (anisaldehyde, cuminol, furfurol, &c.).

Benzoin yields hydrobenzoin  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH(OH)CH(OH)C}_6\text{H}_5$  on reduction with sodium amalgam, and desoxybenzoin,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , when reduced with zinc and hydrochloric acid.

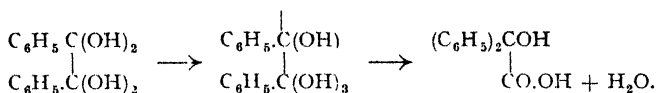
The latter, which contains the group  $\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , behaves like malonic ester, the hydrogen of the methylene group being replaceable by sodium, and hence by alkyl groups.

## PREPARATION 125.

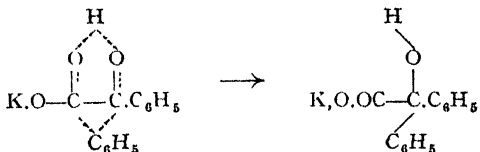
**Benzilic Acid.**—The mechanism of this change, which involves the transference of a phenyl group from one carbon atom to the adjoining carbon atom, has been variously interpreted. According to one observer, an atom of oxygen is removed from one ketone group, which renders the carbon atom unsaturated and so induces the change to diphenyl ketone,



which then combines with KOH and the oxygen atom which has been removed (Schroeter). According to another, the elements of water are added to both ketone groups, followed by the removal of one hydroxyl group to the neighbouring ketone carbon and the shifting of its phenyl group (Lachman),



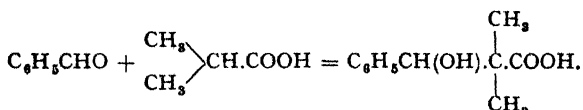
A third view is based on the partial valency theory, whereby the compound of benzil with potassium hydroxide,  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_2\cdot\text{KOH}$ , rearranges itself so as to form a stable carboxylic salt of potassium through the following intermediate stage (Robinson):



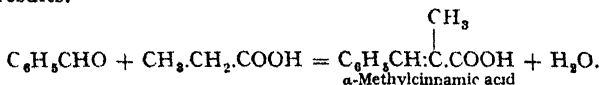
## PREPARATION 127.

**Cinnamic Acid.**—The reaction, which takes place when an aldehyde (aliphatic or aromatic) acts on the sodium salt of an aliphatic acid in presence of the anhydride, is known as “Perkin’s reaction,” and has a very wide application. According to the result of Fittig’s researches on the properties of the unsaturated acids

described below, the reaction occurs in two steps. The aldehyde forms first an additive compound with the acid, the aldehyde carbon attaching itself to the  $\alpha$ -carbon (*i.e.*, next the carboxyl) of the acid. A saturated hydroxy-acid is formed, which is stable, if the  $\alpha$ -carbon is attached to only one atom of hydrogen, as in the case of isobutyric acid,



If, as in acetic and propionic acids, the group  $\text{CH}_3$  is present in the  $\alpha$ -position, water is simultaneously split off, and an unsaturated acid results.

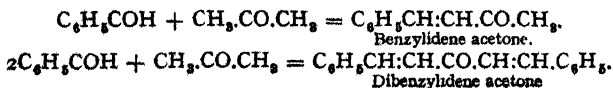


That  $\alpha$ -methylcinnamic acid is formed, and not phenylisocrotonic acid according to the equation,

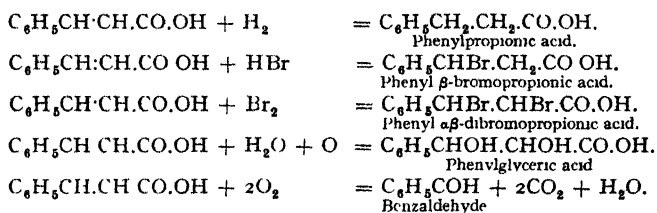


follows from Fittig's researches, and depends upon the marked difference exhibited by the two principal groups of unsaturated acids, viz., the  $\alpha\beta$ -acids, which have the double link between the first and second carbon from the carboxyl, and  $\beta\gamma$ -acids, in which the double link lies between the second and third carbons. Methylcinnamic acid belongs to the first group, whereas phenylcrotonic acid belongs to the second group.

It may be noted in passing that this reaction bears a close resemblance to that studied by Claisen, which occurs in presence of caustic soda solution between aldehydes or ketones on the one hand, and compounds containing the group  $\text{CH}_2\text{CO}$ . Benzaldehyde and acetone combine under these conditions to form benzylidene- and dibenzylidene-acetone,

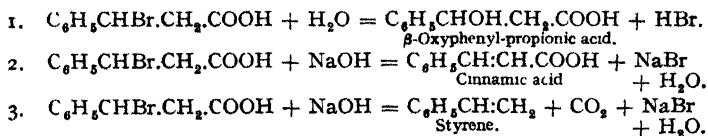


All the unsaturated acids have the following properties in common. They form additive compounds with nascent hydrogen, halogen acids, and the halogens. On oxidation with alkaline permanganate in the cold, they take up two hydroxyl groups to form a dihydroxy-derivative, and, on further oxidation, ultimately divide at the double link. Cinnamic acid may be taken by way of illustration. On reduction it forms phenylpropionic acid, with hydrobromic acid,  $\beta$ -bromophenylpropionic acid (the bromine attaching itself to the  $\beta$ -carbon, see p. 390), with bromine  $\alpha\beta$ -dibromophenylpropionic acid, on oxidation with permanganate, phenylglyceric acid and then benzaldehyde and benzoic acid,

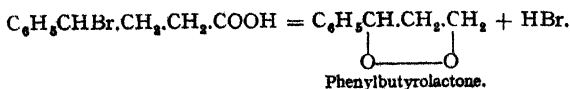


The chief difference between the two groups of  $\alpha\beta$ - and  $\beta\gamma$ -unsaturated acids lies in the behaviour of the additive compounds which they form with hydrobromic acid and bromine.

In the case of the  $\alpha\beta$ -acids, the hydrobromide of the acid, on boiling with water, yields the corresponding  $\beta$ -hydroxy-acid, and, on boiling with alkalis, a mixture of the original acid and the unsaturated hydrocarbon, formed by the elimination of carbon dioxide and hydrobromic acid,



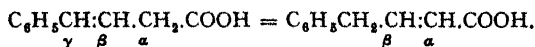
The hydrobromides of  $\beta\gamma$  unsaturated acids like  $\beta$ -phenylcrotonic acid behave quite differently. On boiling with water, lactones are formed, *i.e.*, inner anhydrides of oxy-acids,





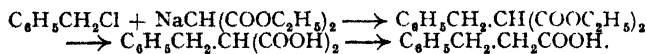
The readiest method for distinguishing a  $\beta\gamma$ -acid, especially of the aliphatic series, is to heat the acid with a mixture of equal volumes of conc. sulphuric acid and water to about  $140^\circ$ . The lactone is formed if a  $\beta\gamma$ -acid is present, whereas an  $\alpha\beta$ -acid remains unchanged. By diluting, neutralising with sodium carbonate, and extracting with ether, the lactone is separated, the  $\alpha\beta$ -acid remaining in solution.

An interesting relation exists between the two groups of acids. It has been found that, on heating  $\beta\gamma$ -acids with caustic soda solution, a shifting of the double link to the  $\alpha\beta$ -position takes place,



#### PREPARATION 128.

**Hydrocinnamic Acid.**—The preparation illustrates the use of sodium amalgam as a reducing agent. It should be noted that hydrocinnamic acid may be also obtained from malonic ester by acting upon the sodium compound with benzyl chloride, then hydrolysing and removing carbon dioxide,



#### PREPARATIONS 129, 130.

**Phenylpropionyl Chloride, Hydrindone.**—The formation of hydrindone from phenylpropionyl chloride is an example of the Friedel-Crafts reaction, of which other examples are given in Preps. 135, 140, pp. 257, 264; but in the present case condensation occurs within the molecule leading to the formation of a closed chain or ring.

#### PREPARATION 131.

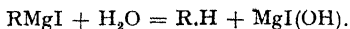
**Mandelic Acid.**—The reaction furnishes a simple and general method for obtaining hydroxy-acids from aldehydes or ketones by the aid of the cyanhydrin. The formation of the cyanhydrin may be effected in the manner described or by the action of hydrochloric acid on a mixture of the aldehyde or ketone with potassium cyanide, or, as in the case of the sugars, by the use of liquid hydrocyanic acid and a little ammonia. Mandelic acid was originally

derived from bitter almonds, and can be obtained by the action of baryta on amygdalin, the glucoside of bitter almonds, which breaks up into glucose and mandelic acid. Mandelic acid contains an asymmetric carbon atom, and is capable, therefore, of being resolved into optical enantiomorphs (p. 401). This has been effected by fractional crystallisation of the cinchonine salt, from a solution of which the dextrorotatory component first separates. Another method, known as the biochemical method, is to cultivate certain low organisms in a solution of a salt of the acid when one of the components is destroyed or assimilated. Thus ordinary green mould (*Penicillium*) assimilates and removes the laevo component, leaving a dextrorotatory solution. These two methods, together with the separation of the enantiomorphous crystalline forms described on p. 146, comprise the three classical methods devised by Pasteur for resolving inactive substances into their active components. Mandelic acid may also be resolved by partial hydrolysis of its esters by the ferment "lipase" (Dakin) and also by the partial esterification of the acid with an active alcohol such as menthol (Marckwald).

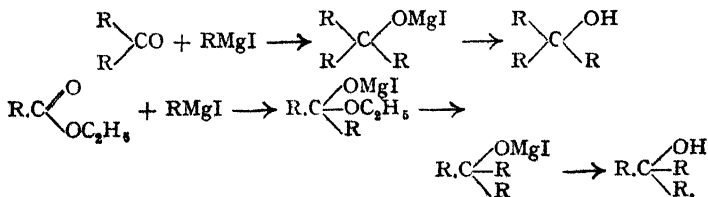
#### PREPARATION 132.

**Phenylmethylcarbinol.**—The method of Grignard, of which this preparation serves as an illustration, has received a very wide application. The following is a brief and incomplete list of these reactions, in which the organic radical (R) represents within certain wide limits both an alkyl and aryl group.

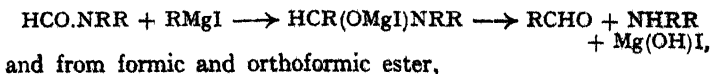
*Hydrocarbons.* The magnesium compound is decomposed by water,



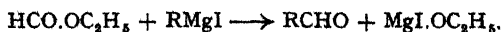
*Alcohols* may be obtained from aldehydes, ketones, esters, acid chlorides, and anhydrides,



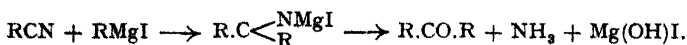
*Aldehydes* can be prepared from dimethylformamide,



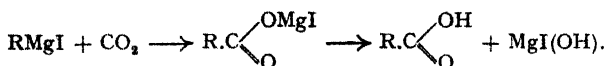
and from formic and orthoformic ester,



*Ketones* may be obtained from cyanogen, cyanides, or amides,



*Acids* are produced by passing carbon dioxide into the ether solution of the magnesium alkyl compound,



In addition to the above, Grignard's reagent has been utilised in preparing olefines, ethers, ketonic esters, hydroxy-acids, quinols, amides, hydroxylamines, &c., for details of which books of reference must be consulted.<sup>1</sup>

#### PREPARATION 133.

**Benzoyl Chloride.**—The formation of esters by the action of benzoyl chloride or other acid chloride on an alcohol or phenol in presence of caustic soda is known as the "Schotten-Baumann reaction." The reaction may also be employed in the preparation of derivatives of the aromatic amines containing an acid radical, like benzanilide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH.CO.C}_6\text{H}_5$ ,



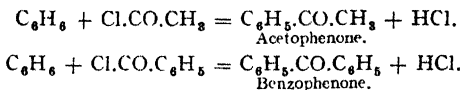
#### PREPARATION 134.

**Ethyl Benzoate.**—The method of Fischer and Speier for the preparation of esters, by boiling together the acid with the alcohol containing about 3 per cent. of either hydrochloric acid or conc. sulphuric acid, can be adopted in the majority of cases with good results, and has many advantages over the old method of passing hydrochloric acid gas into a mixture of the alcohol and acid until saturated. Read Notes on Prep. 25, p. 384.

<sup>1</sup> A. McKenzie, *Brit. Ass. Reports*, 1907, p. 273.

## PREPARATION 135.

**Acetophenone.**—The “Friedel-Crafts reaction,” of which this preparation is a type, consists in the use of anhydrous aluminium chloride for effecting combination between an aromatic hydrocarbon or its derivative on the one hand, and a halogen (Cl or Br) compound on the other. The reaction is always accompanied by the evolution of hydrochloric or hydrobromic acid, and the product is a compound with  $\text{AlCl}_3$ , which decomposes and yields the new substance on the addition of water. This reaction has been utilised, as in the present case, (1) for the preparation of ketones, in which an acid chloride (aliphatic or aromatic) is employed,



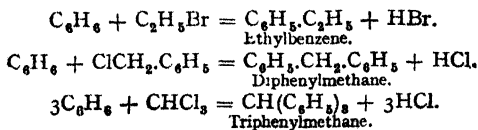
If a substituted aromatic hydrocarbon is used, the ketone group then enters the para-position, or, if this is occupied, the ortho-position. Substituted aromatic acid chlorides may also be used, and if the acid is dibasic and has two carboxyl chloride groups, two molecules of the aromatic hydrocarbon may be attached. If phosgene is used with two molecules of benzene, benzophenone is obtained,



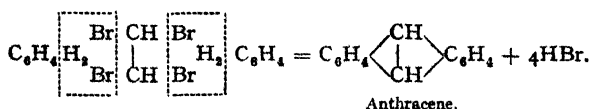
(2) This reaction may be modified by decreasing the proportion of the hydrocarbon, and an acid chloride is then formed,



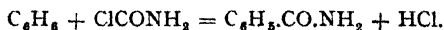
(3) With an aromatic hydrocarbon and a halogen derivative of an aliphatic hydrocarbon or aromatic hydrocarbon substituted in the side-chain, new hydrocarbons may be built up (see Prep. 139, p. 262),



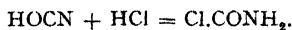
Anthracene has been synthesised from tetrabromomethane and benzene by this method,



(4) Amides may be prepared by the use of chloroformamide,



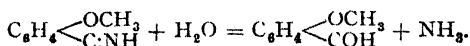
The chloroformamide is obtained by passing HCl gas over heated cyanuric acid (Gattermann),



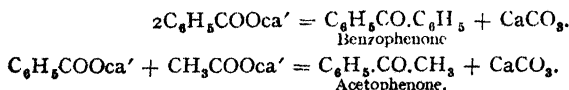
(5) Hydroxyaldehydes have been obtained indirectly by the use of the crystalline compound HCl.HCN (which hydrochloric acid forms with hydrocyanic acid) acting upon a phenol ether,



The aldimine is subsequently hydrolysed with dilute sulphuric acid (Gattermann),



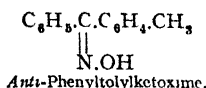
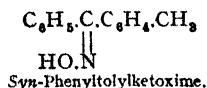
In addition to the Friedel-Crafts reaction, the aromatic ketones may be obtained by distilling the calcium salt of the aromatic acid or a mixture of the salts of an aromatic and aliphatic acid. The reaction is precisely analogous to the process used for the preparation of aliphatic ketones,



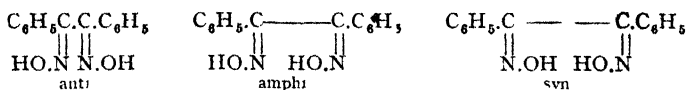
They possess the usual properties of ketones of the aliphatic series (see p. 80), which are illustrated by the various reactions described at the end of this preparation.

A special interest attaches to the oximes of those ketones which contain two different radicals linked to the CO group. Many of these substances exist in two isomeric forms, which are readily converted into one another. Phenyltolylketoxime exists in two

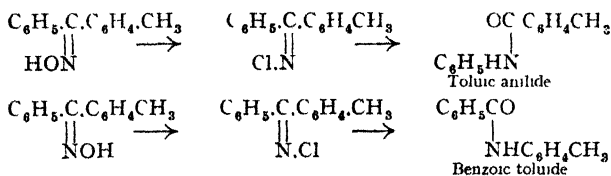
forms and benzildioxime in three forms, which cannot be explained by structural differences of constitution. They must therefore represent different space configurations of a type analogous to that of citraconic and mesaconic acid (Hantzsch, see p. 404). They are distinguished by the terms "syn" and "anti," corresponding to "cis" and "trans" among the unsaturated acids. "Anti" signifies away from the group, the name of which follows; "syn" signifies the position near that group (see pp. 405 and 438),



Benzil forms three dioximes which are distinguished by the names "syn," "anti," and "amphi."



The action of  $\text{PCl}_5$  on these substances, known as Beckmann's reaction, is of great importance in distinguishing the different forms of ketoximes. The two isomeric phenyltolylketoximes yield two different amides,



Toluic anilide, on hydrolysis, forms toluic acid and aniline, whereas benzoic toluide yields benzoic acid and toluidine. It follows therefore that, in the original compound, the first contains the hydroxyl nearer the phenyl group and the second nearer the tolyl group.

For further details on the stereoisomerism of nitrogen compounds, the text-book must be consulted.

## PREPARATION 136.

**$\alpha$ -Phenylethylamine.**—This preparation illustrates the general behaviour of oximes towards reducing agents, another example of which is given in the formation of bornylamine from camphor-oxime, Prep. 168, p. 297.

## PREPARATION 137.

**Phenyl methyl hydroxypropionic Ester.**—The formation of this compound is a typical example of the "Reformatsky" condensation. It is of a general character and occurs between ketones, halogen esters and zinc, and has been utilised in a number of important syntheses. Magnesium may in some cases replace metallic zinc in this reaction. Compare the Grignard reaction p. 242.

•

## PREPARATION 138.

**Diphenylmethane.**—This reaction is analogous to that of aluminium chloride on a mixture of benzene and benzyl chloride referred to in the notes on Prep. 135, p. 447. The reaction is also effected by the use of zinc dust or finely-divided copper (Zincke).

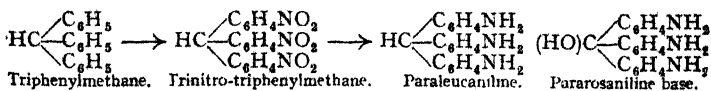
## PREPARATION 139.

**Triphenylmethane.**—This is another example of the "Friedel-Crafts" reaction, which has already been referred to in the notes on Prep. 135, p. 447.

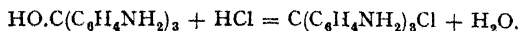
The synthesis of pararosaniline from triphenylmethane is one which has gone far to solve the problem of the constitution of the important class of triphenylmethane colouring matters.

Rosaniline or magenta was originally obtained by oxidising with arsenic acid a mixture of aniline with *o*- and *p*-toluidine. The product was then lixiviated and treated with common salt, which converted the arsenate into the hydrochloride of rosaniline. Pararosaniline was prepared in a similar way from a mixture of aniline and *p*-toluidine. The series of reactions by which tri-

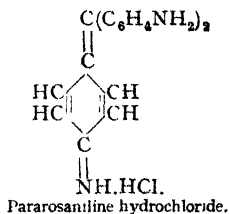
phenylmethane is converted into pararosaniline may be represented as follows :—



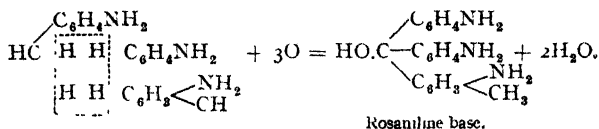
By the action of hydrochloric acid on the base, the hydrochloride of pararosaniline is formed, which is the soluble colouring matter,



The constitution of the hydrochloride is doubtful; but the so-called *quinonoid* structure, by which the substance is represented as a derivative of quinone, is generally accepted,



The formation of rosaniline from a mixture of aniline, *o*- and *p*-toluidine is represented by assuming that the methyl group of *p*-toluidine acts as the link which connects the nuclei of aniline and *o*-toluidine.



#### PREPARATION 140.

**Triphenylmethyl Chloride.**—The formation of this compound is a variant on the Friedel-Crafts reaction and resembles the previous preparation, carbon tetrachloride being substituted for chloroform. The removal of the chlorine atom and the formation of the trivalent carbon group triphenylmethyl is one of the curiosities among organic reactions. Triphenyl methyl is a highly unstable compound,



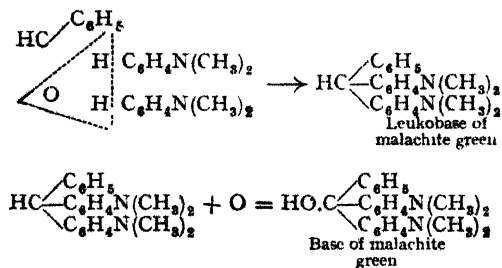
and only exists in solution in certain solvents to which it imparts a yellow colour. It combines directly with oxygen, the halogens, sodium and organic oxygen compounds such as ketones and esters in which the oxygen in its quadrivalent form acts as the link for two molecules of the hydrocarbon radical. Separated from its solution, it forms a colourless, crystalline compound, having the double molecular weight, that is, hexaphenyl ethane,  $(C_6H_5)_2C.C(C_6H_5)_2$ .

#### PREPARATION 141.

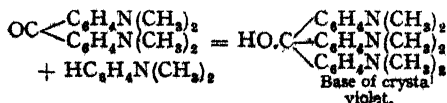
**Triphenylcarbinol.**—The reaction is an example of the Grignard reaction described in Preparation 132, p. 252.

#### PREPARATION 142.

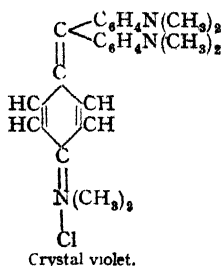
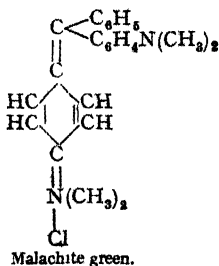
**Benzaldehyde Green.**—The formation of malachite green (benzaldehyde green) by the action of benzaldehyde upon dimethylaniline in presence of zinc chloride, and subsequent oxidation of the product, has already been referred to. (See notes on Prep. 72, p. 414)



The preparation of "crystal violet" from Michler's compound and dimethylaniline in presence of  $\text{POCl}_3$  may be explained in a similar fashion,

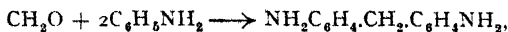


The constitution of the hydrochlorides of malachite green and crystal violet will appear as follows :—

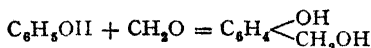


#### PREPARATIONS 143—145.

The three preparations described under this head lead to the formation of the important dyestuff, *crystal violet*. Formaldehyde is an active synthetic agent and can be used, not only for linking up aromatic nuclei, as in the present example and that of diamino-diphenyl methane from aniline :



also in the preparation of the colouring matter known as acridine yellow; but may also be employed for replacing hydrogen in the nucleus by carbinol groups,



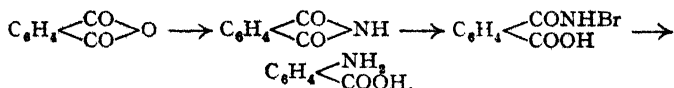
and in the methyl group of  $\alpha$ -picoline,



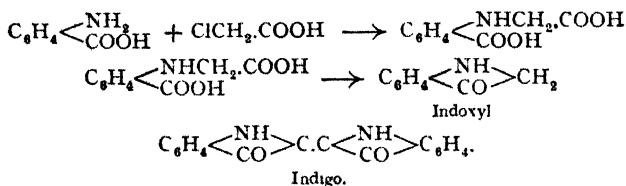
#### PREPARATIONS 146—150.

**Phthalic Acid.**—In the formation of phthalic acid by the oxidation of naphthalene with sulphuric acid, the mercuric sulphate acts as a catalyst. The latter reagent has been used successfully in other oxidising processes, although the manner of its action is not yet explained. The formation of phthalic acid from naphthalene represents the initial stage in the manufacture of artificial indigo from coal tar. The subsequent processes consist in converting the

acid into the anhydride by sublimation, the anhydride into phthalimide by the action of ammonia gas, and the phthalimide into anthranilic acid by the action of sodium hypobromite (Hofmann's reaction, see p. 93).

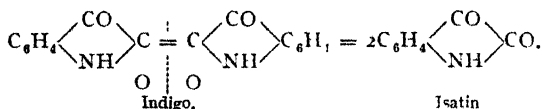


The anthranilic acid is then converted into indigo by combining it with chloracetic acid and fusing the product with caustic alkali, which gives indoxyl and finally indigo by oxidation,

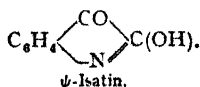


#### PREPARATION 151.

**Isatin.**—The formation of isatin from indigo may be represented as follows:—



This compound represents the lactam-form, and may pass under certain conditions into the lactim-form.



There exists, however, some uncertainty as to which formula represents the more stable form. Derivatives of both forms are known, and the compound offers an example of *tautomerism* (see Notes on Prep. 26, p. 389), or, as it has been also termed, *pseudomerism*.

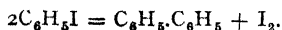
The constitution of isatin has been determined by its syntheses from *o*-nitrophenylglyoxylic acid,



which passes on reduction into the amino-compound, the latter forming the anhydride or isatin (Claisen).

#### PREPARATIONS 153, 154.

**Phenylantranilic Acid and Acridone.**—The first of the above preparations illustrates the use of finely divided copper as condensing catalyst by removing halogens from the aromatic nucleus (Ullmann). For example, iodobenzene is converted almost quantitatively at 230° into diphenyl,



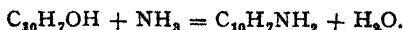
Bromotoluene in the same way gives ditolyl. Bromobenzene and chloroacetic ester when heated with finely divided copper to 180—200° are converted into phenylacetic ester, etc.

The second process is one of simple dehydration bringing about ring formation.

#### PREPARATIONS 155, 156.

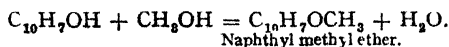
**Naphthalenesulphonate of Sodium.  $\beta$ -Naphthol.**—The formation of the sulphonic acid of naphthalene and the corresponding phenol by fusion with caustic soda is analogous to that of benzene sulphonic acid and phenol (see Prep. 90, p. 203, and 92, p. 205). It should be noted that naphthalene forms two series of mono-derivatives distinguished as  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  compounds. By the action of sulphuric acid on naphthalene, both  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  sulphonic acids are formed. At a lower temperature (100°) the product consists mainly of the  $\alpha$  compound; at a higher temperature (170°) of the  $\beta$  compound. The formation of naphthalene from the sulphonic acid by distilling the latter with conc. sulphuric or phosphoric acid in superheated steam is a process frequently resorted to where it is required to regenerate the hydrocarbon or a derivative from its sulphonic acid.  $\beta$ -Naphthol and its derivatives are used for the preparation of

azo-colours (see Reaction 6, p. 184), and for that of  $\beta$ -naphthylamine. The latter is obtained by the action of ammonia under pressure on  $\beta$ -naphthol,



This reaction is resorted to for the reason that naphthalene forms only the  $\alpha$ -nitro-compound with nitric acid. The method, similar to that used for preparing aniline from nitrobenzene, cannot, therefore, be employed for the production of  $\beta$ -naphthylamine.  $\alpha$ -Naphthol is mainly used for the manufacture of yellow and orange colours (Martius and naphthol yellow) by the action of nitric acid, and are similar in constitution to picric acid (see Prep. 97, p. 214).

The naphthols differ from the phenols of the benzene series in forming ethers after the manner of aliphatic alcohols, viz., by the action of sulphuric acid on a mixture of the naphthol and the alcohol, which the other phenols do not,

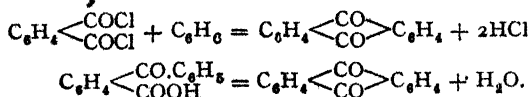


#### PREPARATION 157.

**Naphthol Yellow.**—Compare with picric acid in its formation and dyeing properties.

#### PREPARATION 158.

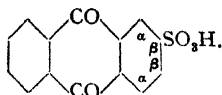
**Anthraquinone.**—The constitution of anthraquinone is derived from various syntheses, such as the action of zinc dust on a mixture of phthalyl chloride and benzene, or by heating benzoyl benzoic acid with  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ .



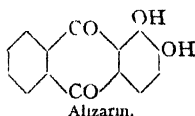
Unlike benzoquinone, it is not reduced by sulphur dioxide (see Prep. 108, p. 227). Heated with HI or zinc dust it is converted into anthracene.

## PREPARATION 160.

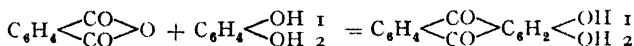
**Alizarin.**—The first syntheses of alizarin is due to Graebe and Liebermann (1868). The present method was discovered simultaneously by these chemists and by Perkin. By the action of fuming sulphuric acid on anthraquinone, the main product is  $\beta$ -anthraquinone monosulphonic acid,



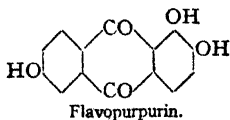
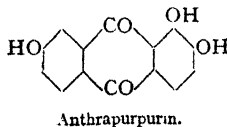
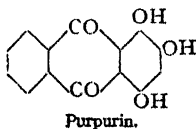
By fusion of the sodium salt with caustic soda and potassium chlorate, the hydroxyl groups enter the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  position. The constitution of alizarin is therefore



The constitution has been determined by its syntheses from phthalic anhydride and catechol in presence of concentrated sulphuric acid (Baeyer),

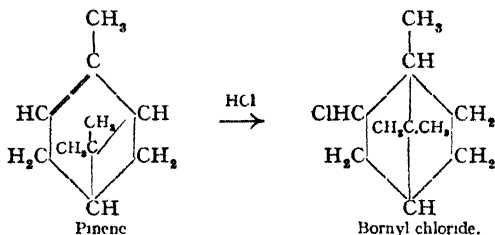


Other colouring matters have been obtained by the oxidation of alizarin (purpurin), and by fusion of the disulphonic acids of anthraquinone with caustic soda (anthrapurpurin and flavopurpurin). It is an interesting fact that, among the numerous di- and poly-hydroxyanthraquinones, only those which have the two hydroxyls in the  $\alpha\beta$  position are colouring matters (Liebermann and Kostanecki),

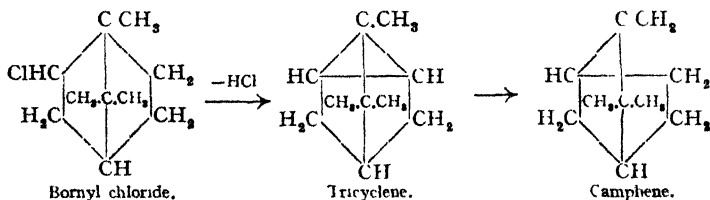


## PREPARATIONS 161—165.

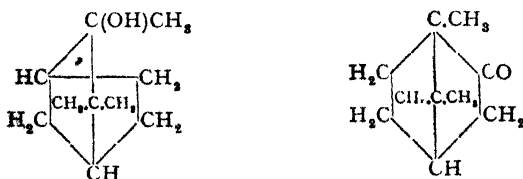
**Pinene, Camphor.**—The conversion of pinene, the chief constituent of turpentine oil into camphor is a process of great commercial importance and involves a series of somewhat intricate changes, very characteristic of so-called “bridged ring” structures. The constitution of pinene and of bornyl chloride is now well established as follows :—



The conversion of the latter into camphene involves a fundamental change in structure which may be represented as follows :—



The formation of isoborneol and camphor will then be represented thus :—



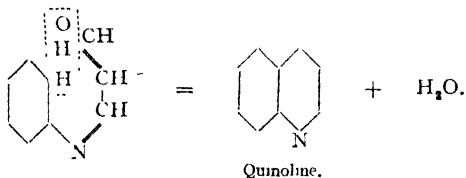
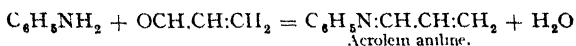
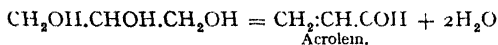
These changes exhibit the strong tendency towards the formation of 5-atom in preference to 3 or 4-atom rings.

## PREPARATIONS 167, 168.

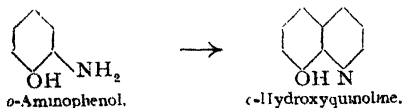
**Camphoroxime, Bornylamine.**—The formation of these two substances is another illustration of two typical reactions already exemplified under acetophenone oxime (p. 259), reactions which are of general application.

## PREPARATION 169.

**Quinoline.**—The formation of quinoline by "Skraup's reaction" may be explained as follows: The sulphuric acid converts the glycerol into acrolein, which then combines with the aniline to form acrolein-aniline. The latter on oxidation with nitrobenzene yields quinoline.



The reaction is a very general one, and most of the primary aromatic amines and their derivatives can be converted into quinoline derivatives, provided that one ortho-position to the amino-group is free. *o*-Aminophenol, for example, yields *o*-hydroxyquinoline in the same way,



## PREPARATIONS 171, 172.

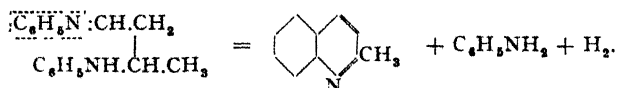
***p*-Nitro- and Amino-quinolines.**—The former is another example of Skraup's reaction in which the oxidising agent is arsenic acid in



place of nitrobenzene. The amino-derivative is obtained by reduction but is carried out in the absence of acid, the nitro-group being much more readily reduced than in the case of nitrobenzene or nitronaphthalene.

#### PREPARATION 173.

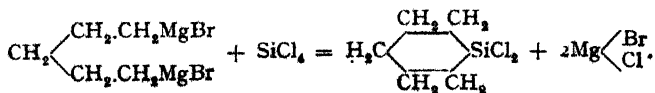
**Toluquinaldine.**—Quinaldine and its congeners was first prepared by Doebner and v. Miller by the action of acetaldehyde or paraldehyde on an aromatic amino-compound in presence of hydrochloric acid. The mechanism of the reaction is still somewhat obscure; but may be explained in the case of aniline (and other bases) by the formation of acrolein aniline,  $C_6H_5N:CH.CH_3$  (formed by the union of aniline and acetaldehyde), followed by the condensation of two molecules, thus :—



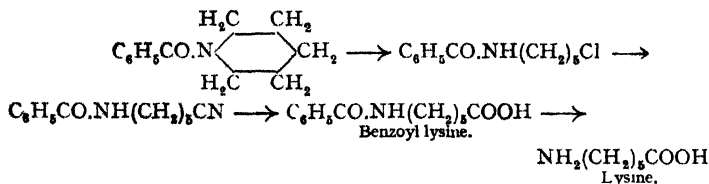
The same reaction takes place with ketones and with mixed aldehydes and ketones, phenyl quinaldine being obtained in a similar fashion by the use of aniline, acetophenone and acetaldehyde.

#### PREPARATIONS 174, 175.

**Benzoyl Piperidine, Pentamethylene Dibromide.**—The conversion of benzoyl piperidine into pentamethylene dichloride and bromide is a reaction which we owe to J. v. Braun and one which has led to many important and interesting syntheses. Thus, by combining the pentamethylene bromide with magnesium and forming a Grignard reagent at both ends of the chain, it has been possible to introduce non-metallic and metallic atoms into the benzene ring. By the action of their halogen derivatives cyclic compounds of silicon, phosphorus, arsenic, antimony, bismuth, lead and tin have been formed (Bygden, Grüttner). To take one example :—



Von Braun has succeeded in synthesising lysine by a similar reaction in which benzoyl piperidine may be converted into an open chain compound by the action of phosphorus pentachloride and the product converted successively into the cyanide and acid,

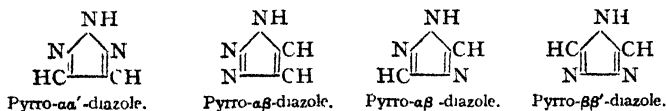


#### PREPARATIONS 176, 177.

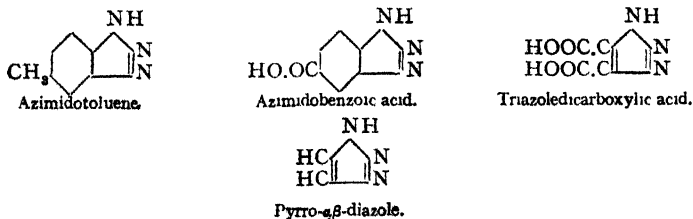
**Phenyl Acridine, Benzoflavine.**—These two preparations are introduced to illustrate the syntheses of simple acridine derivatives.

#### PREPARATION 178.

**Phenylmethyltriazole Carboxylic Acid.**—The mother substance of this compound is a triazole, viz., pyrro- $\alpha\beta$ -diazole, which is one of four isomeric compounds:—



Pyrro- $\alpha\beta$ -diazole was first obtained by the oxidation of azimido-toluene, which in turn was prepared by the action of nitrous acid on *o*-toluylenediamine.



It is a colourless oil, b. p.  $280^{\circ}$ , with the properties of a weak secondary base, dissolving in acids, and forming easily hydrolysable salts.

The reaction described in this preparation is of a general character, and furnishes a useful method for preparing members of this series of heterocyclic compounds. Diazobenzolimide condenses in a similar fashion with ketones (acetophenone) and dibasic esters (malonic ester) as well as with ketonic esters, as in the present case. These substances possess the usual properties of cyclic compounds; carboxyl may be removed as  $\text{CO}_2$ , and alkyl side-chains oxidised to carboxyl; they may be sulphonated and nitrated, and the nitro-group reduced to an amino-group; the phenyl group attached to the nitrogen may also be removed by oxidation. Thus, phenyl-methyltriazole carboxylic acid loses  $\text{CO}_2$  on heating, and on oxidation the methyl group becomes carboxyl and can also be removed in the same way. The resulting product is phenyl triazole. The properties of the individual triazoles are influenced, like other cyclic compounds, by the groups attached to the nucleus, and to some extent also by the basic character of the mother substance.

#### PREPARATION 179.

**Quinine Sulphate.**—Quinine belongs to the group of "vegetable bases" or alkaloids. These substances are widely distributed among different orders of plants, and are usually colourless, odourless, and crystalline solids. A few, however, are liquids (conine and nicotine), and possess an unpleasant smell. There is no general method by which the alkaloids can be isolated from the plants in which they are found. They usually exist in combination with acids, such as malic, lactic, and other common vegetable acids. Frequently the acid present is peculiar to the plant in which it occurs. Quinine and the other cinchona alkaloids are found in combination with quinic acid, morphine with meconic acid, aconitine with aconitic acid, &c. A common method for separating the alkaloid is to add an alkali. If the base is volatile in steam, like conine, it is distilled with water; if, as generally happens, the substance is non-volatile, it is extracted by means of a suitable volatile solvent, such as ether, chloroform,

alcohol, amyl alcohol, &c. The solvent is then distilled off, and the alkaloid, which remains, is either crystallised or converted into a crystalline salt.

The alkaloids are strong bases, which turn red litmus blue, and are very slightly soluble in water. They form soluble salts and double salts with platinic and auric chlorides. The principal general reagents for the alkaloids are :—

1. A solution of iodine in potassium iodide, which forms a reddish-brown precipitate of the periodides.

2. A solution of phosphomolybdic acid in nitric acid, which gives yellow precipitates of different shades.

3. A solution of potassium mercuric iodide, which forms white or yellowish-white precipitates.

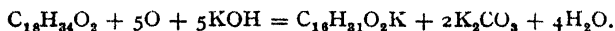
The constitution of quinine is known though its syntheses has not yet been accomplished. Its relationship to quinoline has long been known, since it gives this substance on distillation with caustic potash (Gerhardt).

## NOTES ON THE BIOCHEMICAL PREPARATIONS

### SECTION III

#### PREPARATION 180.

**Palmitic Acid.**—This acid, together with stearic and oleic acids, in the form of the glycerides, are the chief constituents of fats. Palmitin (glyceride of palmitic acid) is also found in certain vegetable oils such as palm and olive oil. The acid occurs also as the cetyl ester in spermaceti and as the myricyl ester in bees-wax. It may be obtained from oleic acid by fusion with potash.



#### PREPARATION 181.

**Cholesterol.**—The substance was discovered in gall-stones, but it is widely distributed in both the animal and vegetable organisms. It is associated in small quantities with the fats and oils, is present in egg-yolk, bile, brain, blood and in the liver, kidney and epidermis. It is also found in cod-liver oil. The constitution of cholesterol is still under investigation. It is a secondary alcohol, for it gives a ketone, *cholestenone*, on oxidation and is almost certainly a cyclic compound containing a double bond.

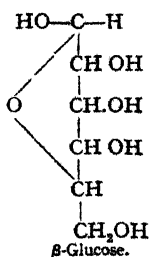
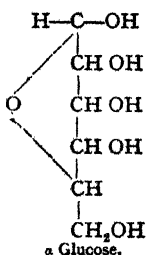
#### PREPARATION 182.

**d-Glucose.**—Although glucose yields neither a bisulphite compound nor gives Schiff's reaction under ordinary conditions, its properties are apparently those of an aldehyde. In addition to its reducing action on alkaline copper and silver salts, and its combination with phenylhydrazine, it forms an oxime with hydroxylamine and a cyanhydrin with hydrocyanic acid. On reduction, it gives the hexahydric alcohol *sorbitol*, and, on oxidation, the

corresponding monobasic acid, *gluconic acid*, and the dibasic acid, *saccharic acid*,



The presence of five hydroxyl groups in glucose is determined by the existence of a pentacetyl derivative. On the other hand, glucose exists in two isomeric forms, termed  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -glucose, having different rotations and forming a number of isomeric derivatives such as  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -methyl glucose (see p. 404). For this and other reasons it is assumed that the compound is actually an oxide, possessing two stereoisomeric forms :—



The discovery of the optical enantiomorph of grape-sugar (which is dextro-rotatory) has determined the present name of dextro-glucose to distinguish it from laevo-glucose, which is laevorotatory. For the syntheses of these two sugars and the other mono-saccharoses, a text-book must be consulted.

The other common sugars, which reduce alkaline copper sulphate, are fructose (laevulose), galactose, maltose and milk-sugar, the two latter being disaccharoses. They are most readily identified by the microscopic appearance and melting-point of their phenyl-osazones. Cane-sugar is readily distinguished from the majority of the common sugars by its indifference towards alkaline copper sulphate, until previously boiled with a few drops of dilute sulphuric acid. It is then inverted and gives the reactions for glucose and fructose.

The change of rotation of freshly prepared solutions of these two isomers is known as *mutarotation* and is a common observation among the sugars and their derivatives.

Other monosaccharoses exist in two isomeric forms with the following specific rotations.

Monosaccharose.	$\alpha$ -Series $[\alpha]_D$ .	$\beta$ -Series $[\alpha]_D$ .
<i>d</i> -Glucose . . . .	+110°	+20°
<i>d</i> -Mannose . . . .	+76	-14
<i>d</i> -Galactose . . . .	+140	+53
<i>d</i> -Fructose . . . .	+17	-140

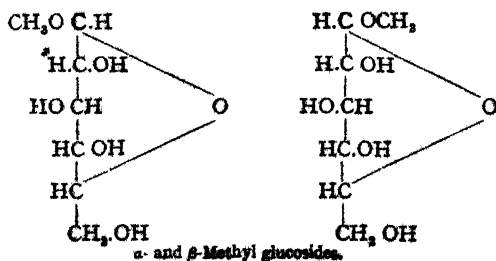
When, by the wandering of a hydrogen atom from the top carbinol group to the oxide oxygen, the compound assumes the structure and functions of an aldehyde, the end asymmetric group disappears.

#### PREPARATION 183.

**Saccharic Acid from Glucose.**—In the oxidation of glucose with nitric acid the two end carbon atoms are attacked and converted into carboxyl groups. A similar effect is produced in the case of the other monosaccharoses, yielding, however, different saccharic acids, determined by a difference in the configuration (space arrangement) of the groups round the four asymmetric carbon atoms.

#### PREPARATION 184.

**$\alpha$ -Methyl Glucoside.**—The formation of the methyl glucoside must be accompanied by the presence of an asymmetric carbon atom (indicated in the formula in thick type) in the end carbinol group and consequently two isomers should be formed. This is precisely what occurs, and with the majority of aldoses two stereoisomers, distinguished as  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , have been isolated. The structure of the  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -methyl glucosides may be represented in the following manner :—



## PREPARATION 186.

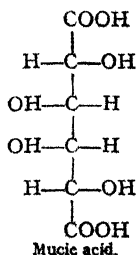
**Lactic Acid.**—In this preparation the organism or lactic ferment is present in the sour milk and St. Ivel or other strongly flavoured cheese, as well as in the nitrogenous matter serving as nutriment for the organism. By adding zinc carbonate, the concentration of free acid, which would eventually destroy the organism, is prevented. Lactic acid contains an asymmetric carbon atom and should therefore exist in two stereoisomeric forms, although the acid from sour milk is usually quite inactive. The acid has, however, been resolved into its optically active constituents, the dextro-rotatory member being identical with sarcolactic acid from the juice of muscle.

## PREPARATION 187.

**Casein and Lactose.**—Casein is a protein possessing acidic properties and is soluble in alkalis, the alkaline salts being subject to electrolytic dissociation in solution. The average percentage amounts of amino-acid constituents which it yields on hydrolysis are as follows :—

Alanine.	Valine.	Leucine and Isoleucine.	Aspartic acid.	Glutamic acid.	Serine.	Lysine.	Arginine.
0.9	1.0	10.5	1.2	11.0	0.23	6.0	4.8
Proline.	Hydroxy- proline.		Histidine.	Tryptophane.		Phenyl alanine.	Tyrosine.
3.1	0.3		2.6	1.5		3.2	4.5

Lactose is a disaccharose and yields on hydrolysis with dilute mineral acids a mixture of equal molecules of glucose and galactose. The latter on oxidation gives a dibasic acid known as mucic acid, which differs from saccharic acid (see p. 323) in the configuration of the four asymmetric carbon atoms, which may be represented as follows :—

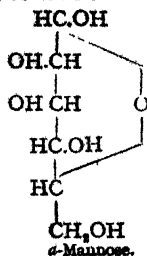


Mucic acid like mesotartaric acid is inactive by internal compensation.



## PREPARATION 188.

**Mannose.**—It will be observed that the formula for mannose appears to be identical with that of glucose. The difference is due to the space arrangement of the four asymmetric carbon atoms, which may be represented as follows:—



It may also be obtained by the oxidation of mannitol from the manna ash. The saccharic acid corresponding to this sugar is known as manno-saccharic acid.

## PREPARATIONS 190, 191.

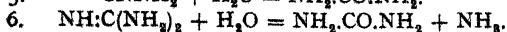
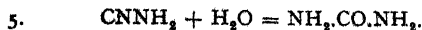
**Guanidine and Methylguanidine.**—Although guanidine has occasionally been isolated from vegetable sources, its interest is chiefly determined by its presence as a constituent of creatine, certain xanthine bases (guanine) and protein cleavage products (arginine). It was originally prepared by the oxidation of guanine, but is most conveniently obtained as described. Methylguanidine is physiologically of greater interest, as it forms a normal constituent of muscle. It may be obtained by the oxidation of creatine or synthetically as described.

## PREPARATION 192.

**Urea.**—In addition to the method described in the preparation, urea may be obtained by the oxidation of anhydrous potassium ferrocyanide with potassium dichromate (Williams), or manganese dioxide at a red heat, or by the action of permanganate on a cold solution of potassium cyanide (Volhard). It has been synthesised by the action of ammonia on (1) phosgene, (2) urethane, (3) chloroformic ester, and (4) ethyl carbonate.

1.  $\text{COCl}_2 + 4\text{NH}_3 = \text{NH}_2\text{CO.NH}_2 + 2\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$
2.  $\text{NH}_2\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{NH}_3 = \text{NH}_2\text{CO.NH}_2 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$
3.  $\text{ClCOOC}_2\text{H}_5 + 3\text{NH}_3 = \text{NH}_2\text{CO.NH}_2 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + \text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$
4.  $\text{CO(OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 + 2\text{NH}_3 = \text{NH}_2\text{CO.NH}_2 + 2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$

also (5) by the action of dilute acid on cyanamide, and (6) by heating guanidine with dilute sulphuric acid or baryta.



Although ammonium cyanate is so readily transformed into urea, the former can be obtained by passing ammonia into an ether solution of cyanic acid maintained at a low temperature (Donnan).

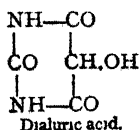
The syntheses of urea by Wöhler in 1828 is usually regarded as a turning-point in the history of organic chemistry, when organic compounds ceased to be merely products of a vital force, associated with living animals and plants. They now assumed for the first time an independent *rôle* as substances capable of syntheses by ordinary chemical means. In point of fact this is not strictly true, for Scheele had prepared oxalic acid, only previously known in wood sorrel and other plants, from cane-sugar, and Döbereiner had obtained the formic acid of ants by the oxidation of tartaric acid. The formation of urea offers an interesting example of intramolecular change, of which many cases are now known.

#### PREPARATION 193.

**Thiocarbamide.**—This is an example of a reversible reaction, in which either ammonium-thiocyanate or thiourea when heated yields the same equilibrium mixture. It may be shown by melting a little thiourea for a minute, when the presence of thiocyanate is indicated by the addition of  $\text{FeCl}_3$ .

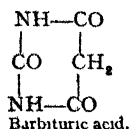
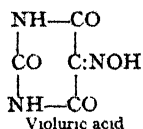
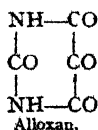
#### PREPARATION 194.

**Alloxantin.**—The structure of alloxantin is still obscure. It appears to be a condensation product of alloxan (see p. 470) and dialuric acid.

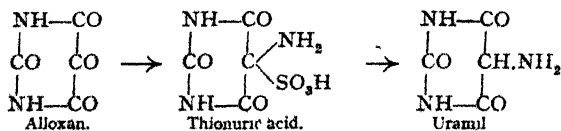


## PREPARATION 195.

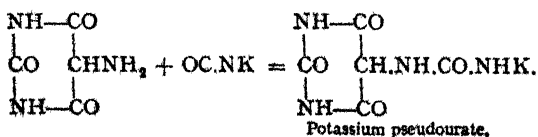
**Alloxan.**—The decomposition of uric acid into alloxan and urea renders the constitution of alloxan of value in elucidating the structure of uric acid. The constitution is derived from the following facts: Alloxan is decomposed with caustic soda or potash into mesoxalic acid and urea, and with hydroxylamine it combines to form violuric acid, which points to the presence of a ketone group (Baeyer). Barbituric acid and nitrous acid also give violuric acid, and seeing that barbituric acid has been synthesised from malonic acid and urea by the action of phosphorus oxychloride (Grignaux), it is unquestionably malonyl urea. The relationship of these substances must therefore be represented as follows:



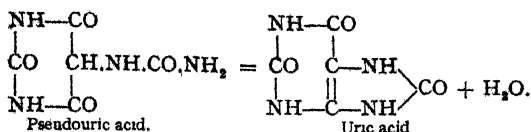
A renewed interest attaches to alloxan since E. Fischer's discovery of the new syntheses of uric acid. The steps in the syntheses are briefly the following. Alloxan and ammonium sulphite form thionuric acid, which is decomposed by hydrochloric or sulphuric acid into uramil.



Uramil and potassium cyanate unite to form potassium pseudourate,



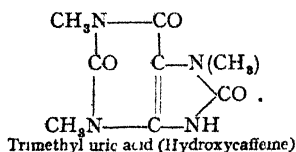
When free pseudouric acid is heated with 20 per cent. hydrochloric acid it yields uric acid,



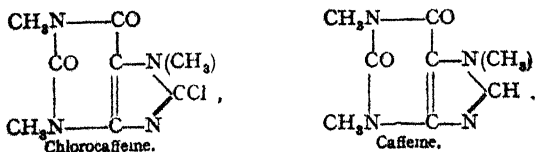
Other synthetic methods are also known, for which a book of reference must be consulted.

#### PREPARATION 197.

**Caffeine.**—The close relationship existing between uric acid and caffeine has long suggested the possibility of converting uric acid, a comparatively plentiful material, into caffeine, an important and costly drug, occurring only in small quantities in tea and coffee. The problem has been solved by E. Fischer, who has succeeded in synthesising caffeine in a variety of ways. Fischer found that by using the same series of processes as described above in the syntheses of uric acid, but substituting dimethylalloxan for alloxan, and methylamine sulphite for ammonium sulphite, trimethyl uric acid is formed, and is identical with hydroxycaffeine,



Hydroxycaffeine is converted into caffeine by acting upon it with a mixture of phosphorus pentachloride and oxychloride. This forms chlorocaffeine, which is then reduced with hydriodic acid to caffeine,



The same result may be obtained in a simpler way by methylating uric acid, and converting it into trimethyluric acid and then into caffeine; or by preparing the mono- and di-methyl derivatives of uric acid, reducing these to the corresponding mono- and dimethylxanthines and introducing additional methyl groups into the product.

#### PREPARATION 199.

**Tyrosine, Leucine.**—It has long been known that mineral acids and alkalis possess the property of breaking up albuminoid substances and resolving them into the simpler amino-acids. The introduction by Fischer of a method of separating the amino-acids by converting them into volatile esters followed by fractional distillation *in vacuo* has led to the recognition of the wide distribution of such acids as alanine, serine, and phenylalanine, and to the discovery of two cyclic acids, pyrrolidinecarboxylic acid and hydroxypyrrolidine carboxylic acid. The following is a list of amino-acids from albuminoid substances which have been separated by fractional distillation of their esters under reduced pressure:

Ethyl ester	B p.	Pressure in mm.
Glycine . . . . .	51.5–52.5°	10
Alanine . . . . .	48.5	10
Aminoisovaleric acid . . . . .	63.5	8
Leucine . . . . .	83.5	12
Aspartic acid . . . . .	126.5	11
Glutamic acid . . . . .	139–140°	10
Phenylalanine . . . . .	143°	10

#### PREPARATION 201.

**Glycine from Potassium Phthalimide.**—The method used by Gabriel for introducing an amino group into fatty acids has had a wide application. Fischer's syntheses of alanine and ornithine have been effected in a similar fashion.

## HINTS ON THE IDENTIFICATION OF ORGANIC SUBSTANCES

Provide yourself with a good book of reference, or chemist's pocket book which contains tables of physical constants.<sup>1</sup>

**Homogeneity.**—Determine if the substance is homogeneous.

**A Liquid.**—If it is a liquid, distil a few c.c. from a miniature distilling flask with a long side-tube, but no condenser, or with the apparatus shown in Fig. 100, in which the condensing surface is supplied by an inner tube through which water percolates.<sup>2</sup>

Use a thermometer and collect the distillate in a test-tube. Note the boiling-point, and observe if it fluctuates or remains constant and if any solid residue remains. A low boiling-point generally denotes a low molecular weight. A portion distilling in the neighbourhood of 100° may indicate the presence of water.

It is useful to shake a known volume (5 c.c.) of the liquid with an equal volume of water and to note if the substance dissolves, or if any marked change in the volume of the liquid occurs. A convenient apparatus for this purpose is shown in Fig. 101, which is

<sup>1</sup> Any of the following reference books may be consulted.

Weston's *Scheme for the Detection of Carbon Compounds*, Longmans, London, 1911.

Clarke's *Handbook of Organic Analysis*, E. Arnold, London, 1911.

Shepherd's *Qualitative Determination of Organic Compounds*, University Tutorial Press, Ltd., London.

Kamm's *Qualitative Organic Analysis*, Wiley, New York, 1923.

Rosenthaler's *Der Nachweis organischer Verbindungen, ausgewählte Reaktionen und Verfahren*, Enke, Stuttgart.

Kempf's *Tabellen der wichtigsten organischen Verbindungen geordnet nach Schmelzpunkten*, Vieweg, Brunswick, 1913.

H. Meyer's *Lehrbuch der organisch-chemischen Methodik*, 4th ed., Springer, Berlin, 1922.

Mulliken's *Identification of Pure Organic Compounds*, Vols. I—IV.

<sup>2</sup> This apparatus can also be used as reflux condenser or for collecting evolved gas if the side piece is furnished with a delivery tube dipping under water or mercury. \*

merely a small and narrow, graduated cylinder holding 10 c.c. The solubility of a portion of the liquid is an indication of the presence of a mixture. Furthermore, the specific gravity of the insoluble portion (its floating or sinking in the water) will be roughly indicated and should be noted. Wherever possible a liquid should be converted into a solid derivative, the latter being identified by its melting point as described below.

**A Solid.**—If the substance is a solid, examine a few particles on a slide under the microscope, or, better still, recrystallise a little if possible and notice if the crystals appear similar in shape. If it is a mixture, try to separate



FIG. 101.

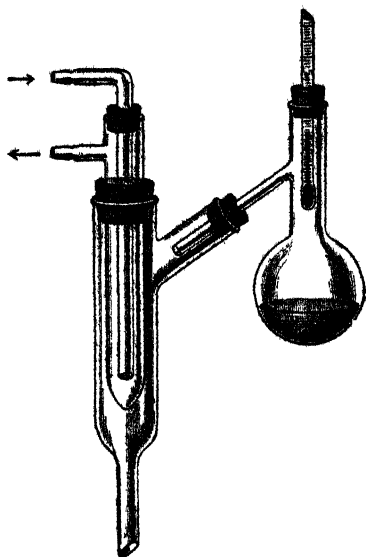


FIG. 100.

the constituents by making a few trials with different solvents, water, alcohol, ether, benzene, petroleum spirit, ethyl acetate, acetone, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, pyridine, acetic acid, nitrobenzene, &c. If it appears homogeneous, determine the melting-point, the sharpness of which will be a further confirmation. Having satisfied yourself as to the nature of the compound, it is always advisable to take the melting-point of the substance fused with a little of a known specimen, the melting-point of which should be unchanged. If it turns out to be a mixture, it must be further treated in the manner described under "mixtures" (p. 498).

**The Action of Heat.**—We will assume in the first place that the substance is homogeneous and consists of a single individual. Heat a portion on platinum foil or nickel spatula and notice if it volatilises, chars, or burns with-

a clear, luminous, non-luminous (aliphatic), or smoky (aromatic) flame. Determine the nature of the residue, if any, when the carbon has burnt away.

*Metal or metallic oxide or carbonate* may indicate the presence of an organic acid, phenate, or double salt of a base. Test if the residue is alkaline by moistening it and applying litmus paper (alkali or alkaline earth metals).

*Sulphate, sulphite, or sulphide* may indicate a sulphate, sulphonate, mercaptan, or bisulphite compound of an aldehyde or ketone.

*Cyanide* may indicate a cyanide or ferrocyanide, &c.

Heat a little of the substance in a small, hard-glass tube and observe whether the substance melts, chars, explodes, sublimes, or volatilises; whether an inflammable gas, water, etc., is evolved; also notice the smell.

Carbohydrates, polyhydric alcohols, higher organic acids (e.g., stearic), dibasic and hydroxy-acids (e.g., tartaric), certain amides (e.g., oxamide), alkaloids, and azo and other organic colours char and give off water or (if nitrogen is present) ammonia or basic constituents. But a great number of common organic compounds are volatile without decomposition.

**The Elements.**—Test for nitrogen,<sup>1</sup> sulphur, and halogens. If none of these are found, carbon and hydrogen are present and, if the substance has given off water or is soluble in water, it may be assumed that oxygen is present as well. The action of sodium on the substance, if liquid, or on its solution in benzene or ligroin, if solid, should be tried in the apparatus, Fig. 100, and the gas evolved tested for hydrogen, which if present may indicate hydroxyl, ketone, or ester groups.

The presence of nitrogen may indicate an *ammonium salt, organic base (amine or alkaloid), amino-acid, amide, cyanide, isocyanide, oxime, nitroso- or nitro-compound, azo-compound, &c.*

The presence of sulphur may indicate a *sulphate of an organic base, alkyl sulphate, sulphite, sulphide, mercaptan, sulphonie acid,*

<sup>1</sup> It is sometimes difficult to detect nitrogen by the sodium test. The result should not be regarded as conclusive, especially if the substance is volatile, unless it has been dropped in small quantities at a time into the melted metal, which should be heated in a hard glass tube clamped in a retort-stand. Special care must be used with nitro-compounds, which may explode and shatter the tube.



*sulphinic acid, sulphone, bisulphite compound of aldehyde or ketone.*

The presence of a halogen may indicate a *haloid salt of a base, alkyl, alkylene, or aryl halide, acid halide, haloid derivative of an aldehyde or acid.* Some substances, like *mustard oils, amino-sulphonic acids and thioamides*, contain both nitrogen and sulphur.

The tests for nitrogen, sulphur and halogen may be conducted in one operation by taking separate portions of the solution after treatment with metallic sodium and adding the appropriate reagent. If nitrogen and halogen are present together it will be necessary to boil the solution with a little nitric acid until the hydrocyanic acid is expelled before testing with silver nitrate.

**Solubility.**—Try if the substance dissolves in hot or cold water. Take about 0.1 gram of substance (if solid, finely powdered) and add 2–3 c.c. of water. If it does not dissolve, warm gently and finally boil. If it dissolves in water, test the solution with litmus and observe the reaction (acid or base). Take a fresh portion of the substance and note if it dissolves in ether. If it does *not* dissolve in water, try successively the effect of dilute hydrochloric acid (indicating a base), dilute potassium hydroxide solution (indicating an acid or phenol), and finally conc. sulphuric acid and, in the last case, notice if charring occurs or gas is evolved.

**Solubility in Water.**—Apart from the salts of organic bases and acids, many of which are very soluble in water, the solubility of simple organic substances is generally determined by the presence of the OH group (including CO.OH and SO<sub>2</sub>.OH groups) and to some extent by the NH<sub>2</sub> group. The greater the proportion of OH groups to carbon, the greater, as a rule, is the solubility in water. The lower alcohols, methyl, ethyl and propyl alcohols, are miscible with water; normal butyl and isobutyl alcohols (fermentation) dissolve in about 10 parts of water at the ordinary temperature; amyl alcohol (fermentation) in about 40 parts of water. The first two may be separated from solution by the addition of solid potassium carbonate. The addition of common salt is sufficient to separate the last three (propyl, butyl, and amyl). The polyhydric alcohols, glycol, glycerol, and mannitol, and also substances like the sugars, are extremely soluble, for the proportion of OH groups to carbon is high. Ordinary phenol requires for solution

15 parts of water, whereas the di- and tri-hydric phenols readily dissolve. The same applies to acids. The lower monobasic aliphatic acids (formic, acetic, propionic, and normal butyric) are easily soluble in water, whereas *isobutyric* requires 3 parts and valeric about 30 parts of water. The last three separate from water on the addition of salt. The dibasic and hydroxy-acids, where the proportion of carbon is small (succinic, tartaric, and citric), are naturally more soluble than the monobasic acids having the same number of carbon atoms.

The majority of aromatic acids are not very soluble in water at the ordinary temperature, for the proportion of carbon to carboxyl is high; the hydroxy- and polybasic and also amino-acids are more soluble than the unsubstituted monobasic acids (or, if substituted, where the substituents are halogens or nitro-groups, which diminish, as a rule, the solubility). One thousand parts of water dissolve at the ordinary temperature about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  parts of benzoic,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  parts of salicylic, 8 parts of phthalic, and 159 parts of mandelic acid. Acids such as gallic and tannic acids are readily soluble in water.

The sulphonic acids and also many of their salts are very soluble.

The lower aliphatic amines and amides are soluble in water, but not the higher members, nor the simple aromatic amines; but some diamines, amino-phenols and amino-acids are moderately soluble. Many of these soluble compounds may be extracted with ether after salting-out (adding common salt to saturation). If the substance is soluble in water, it may be one of the above-named compounds, or a lower aldehyde or ketone, or a bisulphite compound of these substances, or the salt of a base or acid.

The following is a list of the more soluble organic compounds, their boiling-points, melting-points and solubilities, which are roughly indicated by the letters *s.* (soluble in cold water) *h.s.* (soluble in hot water).

Of these the following are also soluble in ether: alcohols, aldehydes, ketones and acids of low molecular weight, some anhydrides, esters, phenols and amines, whereas polybasic acids, hydroxy-acids, polyhydric alcohols and sugars, sulphonic acids and salts of organic acids are usually insoluble in ether. The substances soluble in ether are noted in the second column, *s.* indicating easily soluble and a blank, soluble with difficulty.

## SOLUBLE LIQUIDS AND SOLIDS.

	Soluble in water.	Soluble in ether.	Melting- point.	Boiling- point.
<i>Alcohols—</i>				
Methyl (p. 74)	s.	s.	—	66
Ethyl (p. 54)	"	"	—	78
n-Propyl	"	"	—	97
i-	"	"	—	85
n-Butyl (p. 76)	"	"	—	117
s-Amyl (p. 79)	"	"	—	132
Allyl (p. 132)	"	"	—	97
Benzyl (p. 229)	"	"	—	207
Glycol	"	"	—	197
Glycerol (p. 129)	"	"	—	290
" monacetin	"	"	—	200
" diacetin	"	"	—	260
" triacetin	"	"	—	258
Mannitol	"	"	166	decomp.
Diacetone alcohol	"	"	—	164
<i>Aldehydes—</i>				
Formaldehyde	s.	s.	—	—21
Acetaldehyde (p. 71)	"	"	—	21
ammonia	"	"	decomp	—
Chloral	"	"	—	96
Chloral hydrate (p. 120)	"	"	57	97
Butyl chloral hydrate	"	"	78	decomp
Acrolein	"	"	—	52
<i>Ketones—</i>				
Acetone (p. 80)	s.	s.	—	56
Methyl ethyl ketone	"	"	—	81
Acetylacetone (p. 104)	"	"	—	137
Acetoxime (p. 82)	"	"	59	—
Methyl ethyl ketoxime	"	"	152	—
Bisulphite compounds of aldehydes and ketones	"	"	decomp	—
<i>Acids—</i>				
Formic (p. 130)	s.	s.	—	100
Acetic (p. 86)	"	"	—	119
Propionic	"	"	—	140
n-Butyric (p. 119)	"	"	—	163
i-	"	"	—	155
Chloroacetic (p. 106)	"	"	62	186
Dichloroacetic (p. 121)	"	"	—	190
Trichloroacetic (p. 122)	"	"	52	195
Bromoacetic (p. 110)	"	"	50	208
Cyanoacetic (p. 108)	"	"	67	—
Aminoacetic (Glycine) (p. 112)	"	"	236	—
Aminocaproic (Leucine) (p. 339)	h s.	"	66	—
Acrylic	s.	"	10	140
Glycollic (p. 127)	"	"	80	decomp.
Lactic (p. 325)	"	"	—	decomp.
Glyoxalic (p. 127)	"	"	—	165
Pyruvic (p. 147)	"	"	—	—
Oxalic (p. 123) (hydrated)	"	"	101	—
Malonic (p. 116)	"	"	132	decomp.
Ethyl malonic (p. 117)	"	"	112	—
Saccharic acid (p. 323)	"	"	160	—
Succinic (p. 137)	"	"	185	{ forms anhyd. }
Malic (p. 137)	"	"	100	decomp.
Tartaric (p. 138)	"	"	169	"
Citric (p. 148)	"	"	154	"
Citraconic (p. 148)	"	"	80	anhyd.

SOLUBLE LIQUIDS AND SOLIDS (*continued*).

	Soluble in water.	Soluble in ether.	Melting- point.	Boiling- point.
<i>Acids (continued)</i> —				
Benzoic (p. 241) . . . . .	h. s.	s.	122	—
o-Chlorobenzoic . . . . .	"	"	137	—
o-Bromobenzoic . . . . .	"	"	150	—
o-Hydroxybenzoic (Salicylic) (p. 223)	h. s.	"	155	anhyd.
m- " . . . . .	"	"	200	—
p- " . . . . .	"	"	210	—
o-Aminobenzoic (Anthranilic) (p. 272).	"	"	144	—
m- " . . . . .	"	"	174	—
p- " . . . . .	"	"	187	—
o-Toluic . . . . .	"	"	102	—
m- " . . . . .	"	"	110	—
p- " (p. 193) . . . . .	"	"	179	—
Gallic . . . . .	s.	"	222	—
Tannic . . . . .	"	"	decomp.	—
Mandelic (p. 251) . . . . .	"	"	118	—
Benzilic (p. 247) . . . . .	h. s.	"	150	—
Cinnamic (p. 248) . . . . .	"	"	133	—
Hydrocinnamic (p. 249) . . . . .	"	"	47	—
Phthalic (p. 270) . . . . .	"	"	213	anhyd.
Benzene sulphonic (p. 203) . . . . .	s.	"	51	—
$\alpha$ -Naphthalene sulphonic . . . . .	"	"	90	—
$\beta$ - " (p. 279) . . . . .	"	"	160	—
$\beta$ -Naphthol 6. sulphonic . . . . .	"	"	125	—
" 6:8-disulphonic G . . . . .	"	"	—	—
" 3:6- " R . . . . .	"	"	—	—
Sulphanilic (p. 199) . . . . .	h. s.	"	decomp.	—
Alkyl acid sulphates (p. 55) . . . . .	s	"	—	—
Sulphonol . . . . .	h. s.	"	126	—
<i>Phenols</i> —				
Phenol (p. 205) . . . . .	h. s.	s.	43	181
Catechol . . . . .	s.	"	104	245
Resorcinol . . . . .	"	"	110	276
Quinol (p. 227) . . . . .	"	"	169	subl.
Orcinol (cryst.) . . . . .	"	"	56	—
" (anhyd.) . . . . .	"	"	107	289
Pyrogallol . . . . .	"	"	132	293
Phloroglucinol . . . . .	"	"	217	subl.
p-Aminophenol (p. 165) . . . . .	h. s.	"	184	—
$\alpha$ -Naphthol . . . . .	"	"	95	—
$\beta$ - " (p. 280) . . . . .	"	"	122	—
Quinone (p. 226) . . . . .	"	"	116	subl.
<i>Carbohydrates</i> —				
Glucose (p. 319) . . . . .	s	"	146	decomp.
Galactose . . . . .	"	"	170	"
Lævulose . . . . .	"	"	95	"
Mannose (p. 327) . . . . .	"	"	132	"
Cane-sugar . . . . .	"	"	160	"
Lactose . . . . .	"	"	205	"
Maltose . . . . .	"	"	—	"
Dextrin . . . . .	"	"	—	"
Starch . . . . .	h. s.	"	—	"
Inulin . . . . .	"	"	178	"
<i>Glucosides</i> —				
Methyl glucoside (p. 323) . . . . .	s.	"	165	—
Amygdalin . . . . .	"	"	214	—
Arbutin . . . . .	h. s.	"	165	—
Halicin . . . . .	"	"	175	—
Salicin . . . . .	"	"	201	—

SOLUBLE LIQUIDS AND SOLIDS (*continued*).

	Soluble in water.	Soluble in ether.	Melting- point.	Boiling- point.
<i>Bases—</i>				
Methylamine (p. 93) . . . . .	s.	s.	—	gas
Dimethylamine (p. 95) . . . . .	"	"	—	"
Trimethylamine . . . . .	"	"	—	"
Ethylamine . . . . .	"	"	—	59
Diethylamine . . . . .	"	"	—	57
Urethane . . . . .	"	"	52	180
Benzylamine . . . . .	"	"	—	183
<i>o</i> -Phenylenediamine (p. 172) . . . . .	h.s.	"	102	—
<i>m</i> - " (p. 175) . . . . .	"	"	63	—
<i>p</i> - " . . . . .	"	"	147	267
<i>p</i> -Aminophenol (p. 165) . . . . .	"	"	184	—
Pyridine . . . . .	"	"	—	116
Caffeine (p. 337) . . . . .	s.	"	234	—
Glucosamine (p. 324) . . . . .	"	"	110	—
Creatine (p. 338) . . . . .	"	"	—	—
Guanidine (p. 329) . . . . .	"	"	—	—
<i>Amides and Cyanides—</i>				
Formamide . . . . .	s.	s.	—	192
Acetamide (p. 89) . . . . .	"	"	82	222
Urea (p. 330) . . . . .	"	"	132	decomp
Methyl acetyl urea (p. 92) . . . . .	h.s.	"	180°	—
Dicyanodiamide (p. 328) . . . . .	"	"	205	—
Thiourea (p. 332) . . . . .	"	"	172	—
Succinimide . . . . .	s.	"	126	—
Benzamide (p. 255) . . . . .	h.s.	"	128	—
Formanilide . . . . .	"	"	46	—
Acetanilide (p. 169) . . . . .	"	"	112	—
Acetonitrile (p. 91) . . . . .	s.	s.	—	82
Acetoxime (p. 82) . . . . .	"	"	60	—
<i>Amino-acids—</i>				
Glycine (p. 112) . . . . .	s.	"	232	—
Alanine . . . . .	"	"	195	—
Asparagine . . . . .	"	"	226	—
Tyrosine (p. 339) . . . . .	h.s.	"	decomp	—
Glutamic acid (p. 350) . . . . .	s.	"	213	—
<i>Salts of bases and acids.</i>				
<i>Acid anhydrides and chlorides dissolve gradually on warming and yield the acid</i>				

The above preliminary investigation will determine the further course of investigation, but the following rough plan may serve as a guide.

## § I. SINGLE SUBSTANCE SOLUBLE IN WATER

1. *Contains only Carbon, Hydrogen and Oxygen.*—The number of such substances, as seen from the above table, is comparatively small. It may be an alcohol, aldehyde or ketone of low molecular weight, acid, phenol, carbohydrate or glucoside.

*Acids.*—Make a solution (if not already dissolved) and test with litmus. If the liquid is acid, a free *acid* is probably present. If the liquid is neutral and a metal has been found, a metallic salt is probably present. If the liquid is alkaline, it may be the alkaline salt of a phenol or an alkaline cyanide, both of which are hydrolysed in solution. The separation and identification of the acid is not a very simple matter. If the acid is an aromatic or an aliphatic acid of high molecular weight, in short, any acid which either does not appear in the table or is marked as only soluble in hot water, a few drops of conc. hydrochloric acid will usually precipitate it, and it may then be filtered, or removed with ether, and its melting-point determined. If no precipitate is formed, but the solution turns brown on the addition of an alkali, tannic or gallic acid may be present. If the acid is volatile and has a distinctive smell (formic, acetic, butyric, &c.), the solution should be acidified with sulphuric acid and distilled. The distillate will contain the free acid, which will probably have a distinctive smell. Individual tests may then be directly applied, but it is preferable to neutralise the distillate with caustic soda and evaporate to dryness on the water-bath, so as to obtain the sodium salt before testing. The free acid may be soluble and non-volatile, like oxalic, tartaric, succinic, citric, &c., and then special tests must be applied (see tests for these acids). Formic acid may be distinguished from the other members of the fatty series by its reducing action on permanganate, etc. (p. 132). (Unsaturated acids also reduce permanganate in the cold but they also decolourise bromine.) It is often convenient to convert a liquid acid into the *p*-nitrobenzyl ester, which is generally solid. This is done by boiling a solution of *p*-nitrobenzyl bromide dilute alcohol (1 vol. water: 2 vols. alcohol) with an equal weight of the dry sodium or potassium salt of the acid for half an hour. The solution is filtered hot if necessary, cooled, the crystalline product recrystallised from dilute alcohol and the melting-point determined. Another method is to convert the acid into the solid anilide or *p*-toluidide, (1) by boiling gently a small quantity of the dry, powdered sodium salt with twice its weight of the base and an equal weight of conc. HCl for about half an hour. On pouring into water the amide separates and can be crystallised from dilute alcohol; (2) by converting the

acid into the chloride by adding 5 parts of petroleum ether and 5 parts of thionyl chloride and boiling with reflux for an hour. An excess of base dissolved in ether is then added, which precipitates the hydrochloride of the base. Water is added and the ether separated and evaporated, when the amide remains.

*Phenols*.—If it is a free phenol, ether will extract it from its aqueous solution. If it is present in alkaline solution, the solution should first be saturated with carbon dioxide. (N.B.—The alkaline solutions of catechol, quinol pyrogallol and aminophenols darken rapidly in the air.) The following tests should then be applied.

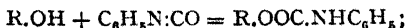
*Ferric chloride reaction*.—Dissolve a drop of the free phenol in water and add a drop of *neutral* ferric chloride. A green (catechol), blue (orcinol, pyrogallol) or purple (phenol, resorcinol) coloration is produced, which is often destroyed by acid or alkali. Thymol gives no colour reaction. Quinol is oxidised to quinone, and turns brown (p. 227). The naphthols give precipitates of dinaphthol (p. 281).

It should be pointed out that certain phenolcarboxylic acids give colour reactions with ferric chloride (salicylic acid, p. 225); but others again do not (cresotinic and *p*-hydroxybenzoic acid). These substances are, however, soluble in sodium bicarbonate.

*Schotten-Baumann reaction* (p. 255).—This may be applied to the pure phenol in order to obtain the benzoyl or *p*-nitrobenzoyl derivative, and the melting-point determined, or the acetyl derivative may be prepared by boiling for a minute with acetic anhydride and a trace of conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  with the same object.

The action of bromine water (p. 186), Liebermann's nitroso-reaction (p. 207) and the phenolphthalein reaction (p. 217), using conc. sulphuric acid or zinc chloride, may also be applied.

*Alcohols*.—It may be a liquid alcohol (methyl, ethyl, propyl, &c., glycerol, benzyl) or a solution of it in water. In the former case its boiling-point will have already been determined. It may be further identified (1) by converting it into the benzoic, *p*-nitrobenzoic, 3 : 5-dinitrobenzoic or phenylacetic ester by the Schotten-Baumann reaction (p. 255) and determining the boiling-point or melting-point; (2) the alcohol may also be converted into the solid urethane by warming it with phenyl isocyanate (p. 55),



(3) by oxidation with excess of dichromate mixture (10 grams of  $\text{Na}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$  in 100 c.c. dilute sulphuric acid, 1 : 3 by volume. The alcohols are boiled for some time with reflux condenser, and the product distilled, the distillate neutralised with alkali and evaporated on the water-bath and the sodium salts tested. If the alcohol is in aqueous solution, it should first be fractionated and potassium carbonate added to the distillate, when the alcohol will separate. Glycerol in aqueous solution may be separated by evaporation on the water-bath, and will be identified by its viscid character and reactions (p. 129).

*Aldehydes and Ketones* are detected in the first instance by: (1) Shaking with a cold saturated solution of sodium bisulphite (see Reaction 2, p. 73). (2) Adding to the aqueous solution *p*-bromo- or *p*-nitro-phenylhydrazine acetate solution (see Reaction 2, p. 80) or semicarbazide hydrochloride (see Reaction 2, p. 258). Aldehydes react more readily than ketones.

The aldehyde may be distinguished from the ketone by its reducing action on alkaline copper sulphate, ammonia-silver nitrate and by Schiff's test (see Reactions, p. 73).

*Carbohydrates* will char on heating, and give off water and emit a smell of burnt sugar. The substance is tested with alkaline copper sulphate, ammonia-silver nitrate, phenylhydrazine acetate or Molisch's test (see p. 320). Cane-sugar will not respond to these reactions until it has been boiled for a few minutes with a few drops of dilute sulphuric acid and inverted (see Prep. and Notes). Special tests may then be applied to identify the particular sugar. A few glucosides are soluble in water, and give the sugar reactions after boiling with dilute acid.

**2. Contains Nitrogen.**—First test the original solid or liquid by heating in a hard-glass tube with soda-lime (p. 2), and notice if the smell is that of ammonia (ammonia salt, amide or cyanide), an amine (amine or amino-acid) or a pyridine base (alkaloid).

Dissolve the substance in water, add caustic soda solution and warm.

*Ammonium or amine salts*, if present, emit the smell of ammonia or amine; if the salt of an insoluble organic base is present (*amine, alkaloid*), it may be precipitated as a liquid or solid. Salts of aliphatic bases and bases such as benzylamine and piperidine are neutral; salts of aromatic bases (amino-group in the nucleus) are



acid. A soluble organic base (lower amine, benzylamine, pyridine) will be detected by its smell. Most aromatic amino-compounds and alkaloids are insoluble in water. Some aromatic diamines and aminophenols are moderately soluble. The nature of the amine, whether primary, secondary, or tertiary, should then be investigated as described under II. 2.

*Amino-acids* of both the aliphatic and aromatic series will also come under this head. Substances like glycine, alanine, &c., are very soluble in water, giving neutral solutions, and may be identified by means of the copper salt (see p. 113). Amino-acids of the aliphatic series also evolve nitrogen when treated with sodium nitrite and hydrochloric acid, and give off amines when heated with soda-lime. Amino-acids of the aromatic series may be diazotised and coupled with phenols, like aromatic amines (see p. 184).

*Amides and Cyanides*.—Many amides and a few cyanides are soluble in water. They are decomposed by hot concentrated aqueous or alcoholic caustic soda solutions, by concentrated hydrochloric acid or sulphuric acid (equal vols. of acid and water) on long reflux boiling. In the first case, ammonia or amine is evolved and the acid remains as sodium salt in solution from which, after removing ammonia and amine, the free acid may be liberated as above and examined; in the latter two cases the free acid is liberated and may be distilled or extracted with ether and at the same time salts of ammonia or amine are formed, which yield ammonia or amine on heating with excess of caustic soda. Amides of aromatic bases (anilides, &c.) behave similarly, but aniline or other aromatic base in place of ammonia is liberated and must be looked for. In that case, on hydrolysis with alkali the free base will be liberated and may be extracted with ether, the ether evaporated and the base converted into the benzoyl, *p*-nitrobenzoyl or *p*-toluene sulphonyl derivative and the melting-point determined (see pp. 205, 254). If hydrolysed with acid the free organic acid must be removed before the base is precipitated with alkali, when it may be heated as above.

The addition of phenyl isocyanate produces the urea derivative (see p. 167).

Some amides are difficult to hydrolyse with any of these reagents. In such cases they must be heated with the acid in a sealed tube at

150° or converted into the ester by gently heating with a mixture of one volume of conc. sulphuric acid and two volumes of ethyl alcohol, when the ester of the acid and ammonium sulphate will be formed. The ester can then be separated by adding a little water and extracting with ether, and can be hydrolysed and the organic acid identified (see p. 97), whilst the aqueous solution, after driving off dissolved ether, will give the smell of ammonia or amine on warming with excess of alkali.

Amides are also decomposed by nitrous acid and evolve nitrogen (p. 332), and a similar evolution of nitrogen occurs with sodium hypochlorite (p. 332).

3. **Contains Halogen.**—It may be a *halogen acid* (e.g., chloracetic acid) or its salt, or the *hydrochloride of a base* or *amino-acid*, or a *substituted aldehyde* (chloral, butyl chloral). If it is a free halogen acid, the solution will have an acid reaction, and will remain clear on adding caustic soda. If it is the hydrochloride of a base, it will give a precipitate with  $\text{AgNO}_3$ , and the addition of caustic soda will cause the base to separate (if insoluble) as solid or liquid, or, if the base is volatile, will produce a strong ammoniacal smell. The further examination of the base is the same as that described on p. 483. Acid chlorides are usually insoluble in water, but rapidly decompose, and may pass into solution as the free acid, giving at the same time free hydrochloric acid.

4. **Contains Sulphur.**—It may be the *sulphate of a base*, in which case the solution will give a precipitate with barium chloride, and the process of examination is that described on p. 483. Heat with dilute hydrochloric acid. The *bisulphite compound* of an aldehyde or ketone will be decomposed and sulphur dioxide evolved. An *alkyl acid sulphate* will also be decomposed, and free sulphuric acid will be found in solution (see Reaction 2, p. 58). Distil with dilute sulphuric acid, and test the distillate for volatile aldehyde or ketone. *p*-Bromo- and *p*-nitro-phenylhydrazine are useful reagents (see § I, 1). An acid ester of sulphuric or sulphurous acid will also be decomposed by dilute sulphuric acid, and the distillate may be tested for an alcohol. If it is an *aromatic sulphonic acid*, it may be distilled in steam with the addition of conc. sulphuric acid, when the hydrocarbon will distil (p. 280), or fused with caustic potash, when the phenol will be obtained (p. 205). *Thiourea* will also

appear under this head, and should be looked for. Heat a little of the substance to the melting-point for a minute, and test for thiocyanate with HCl and  $\text{FeCl}_3$ .

§ II. SINGLE SUBSTANCES, INSOLUBLE OR SLIGHTLY SOLUBLE IN HOT OR COLD WATER.—This category includes the majority of organic compounds.

1. Contains only Carbon and Hydrogen, or Carbon, Hydrogen, and Oxygen.

**Liquids.**—It may be a *hydrocarbon* (paraffin, cycloparaffin, olefine, aromatic) *higher alcohol* (e.g., amyl alcohol), *aldehyde* (e.g., benzaldehyde), *ketone* (e.g., acetophenone), *acid* (e.g., valeric acid), *ether*, *ester*, *phenol* (e.g., carvacrol), *phenol ether* (e.g., anisole).

**Hydrocarbons.**—The action of sodium when testing for the elements will already have indicated the hydrocarbon by its inertness. The immediate decolourisation of bromine water or, better, a solution of bromine in carbon tetrachloride, will identify it as an unsaturated hydrocarbon. Further, a dilute solution of permanganate made alkaline with sodium carbonate will be decolourised on shaking. A paraffin may be distinguished from an aromatic hydrocarbon by treating the liquid with a mixture of concentrated sulphuric and nitric acids (p. 157). The product is then poured into water. If it sinks as a yellow liquid or solid it is probably a nitro-compound and the original hydrocarbon is aromatic. If it floats unchanged on the surface of the water, it is probably a paraffin or cycloparaffin. An aromatic hydrocarbon also dissolves in fuming sulphuric acid on warming and shaking and does not separate on pouring the solution into water. A paraffin or cycloparaffin is unacted on and separates on the surface. Dimethylsulphate dissolves the aromatic hydrocarbons but not the paraffins. Some of the aromatic hydrocarbons combine with picric acid, forming coloured compounds when warm saturated solutions in glacial acetic acid are mixed. Naphthalene picrate is yellow (p. 270), the phenanthrene compound orange and that of anthracene red, &c. There is also a marked difference in the smell of the three classes of hydrocarbons.

**Higher Alcohols and Phenol.**—The substance will react with metallic sodium yielding hydrogen, with phosphorus pentachloride

giving HCl. It can be identified by its boiling point and by the b.p. or m.p. of the benzoic or *p*-nitrobenzoic or 3 : 5-dinitrobenzoic ester, or it may be converted with phenyl isocyanate into the urethane (see p. 55). In the case of a phenol it may possess a phenolic smell and also give a distinctive colour reaction with  $\text{FeCl}_3$  (p. 206).

*Aldehydes and Ketones.*—The usual tests are applied (pp. 73, 80).

*Acids.*—The number of liquid, insoluble acids is very limited and is confined to the aliphatic series. They possess distinctive b.p.'s and smells and dissolve readily in a solution of sodium carbonate.

*Ethers and Phenol Ethers* have usually a pleasant odour, and if the methyl or ethyl ether is present, are decomposed on heating with strong hydriodic acid. The evolved gas passed into alcoholic silver nitrate will give a precipitate as in Zeisel's method (p. 281), or into dimethylaniline will give the solid quaternary iodide (p. 177).

*Esters* possess a fruity smell and usually distil without decomposition. Boil with reflux for 5 minutes on the water-bath a few c.c. of the liquid with 3 to 4 volumes of a 10 per cent. solution of caustic potash in methyl alcohol and pour into water.<sup>1</sup> Notice if the liquid dissolves and has lost the odour of the ester. An ester will be completely hydrolysed, and if the alcohol is soluble in water a clear solution will be obtained. If the alcohol is volatile and the solution neutralised with sulphuric acid and evaporated on the water-bath, the alkali salt of the organic acid mixed with potassium sulphate will be left and the acid may be investigated as described under § I. If it is required to ascertain the nature of the alcohol in the ester, hydrolysis must be effected with a 20 per cent. *aqueous* solution of caustic potash ( $1\text{KOH} : 4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ). Then distil the liquid, using a thermometer. The alcohol, if volatile, will pass into the receiver, whilst the acid remains as the potassium salt in the vessel. The boiling-point will give some indication of the former. The distillate should be fractionated and dehydrated with solid potassium carbonate. Its boiling-point and that of the benzoic or *p*-nitrobenzoic ester is then determined (pp. 243, 255). If the alcohol is non-volatile it may be extracted from the alkaline liquid by ether.

<sup>1</sup> The quickest way of preparing this solution is to dissolve the alkali in an equal weight of water and then dilute with the alcohol to the approximate strength.

*Glycerides*.—If the substance is a liquid fat or oil (*i.e.* non-volatile, which decomposes on heating, turning brown and evolving the smell of acrolein), then the hydrolysis is effected with methyl-alcoholic potash as described. After hydrolysis, the alcohol is driven off on the water-bath, the residue dissolved in water, and the organic acid set free with hydrochloric acid. The acid, if solid, is filtered, if liquid extracted with ether, or if soluble and volatile (butyric acid), distilled and the remaining liquid neutralised and evaporated to dryness. The glycerol is then extracted with alcohol and the alcoholic solution evaporated on the water-bath. The tests for glycerol may then be applied (p. 129). The following is a table of common insoluble liquids with their boiling-points and specific gravities. Where the temperature is not indicated the specific gravity has been determined at 0°.

## ORGANIC LIQUIDS, INSOLUBLE IN WATER.

(Containing C and H or C, H, and O.)

	Boiling-point.	Sp. gr.	t.
<i>Hydrocarbons—</i>			
<i>n</i> -Pentane	39	0.626	17
<i>i</i> -" "	30	0.633	14
<i>n</i> -Hexane	72	0.660	20
<i>n</i> -Heptane	97	0.712	16
<i>n</i> -Octane	124	0.708	12
Petroleum (lamp oil)	150—300	{ 0.803 0.822	Amer. Russ.
<i>i</i> -Amylene	35	0.680	—
Benzene (p. 151)	80	0.880	20
Toluene (p. 184)	110	0.865	20
Ethyl benzene (p. 156)	136	0.867	20
<i>o</i> -Xylene	142	0.865	20
<i>m</i> -" "	139	0.863	20
<i>p</i> -" "	138	0.864	20
Cumene (Isopropyl benzene)	152	0.880	—
Pseudocumene	166	0.861	—
Mesitylene	164	0.855	20
Cymene	175	0.853	20
Turpentine oil (Pinene)	155—160	{ 0.865 0.870 0.858	—
Lemon oil (Limonene)	176	{ 0.861	—
<i>Alcohols—</i>			
<i>i</i> -Amyl (p. 79)	131	0.812	20
Octyl	190	0.830	16
Linalol	198	0.868	15
Benzyl (p. 229)	206	1.043	20
<i>Aldehydes—</i>			
Paraldehyde (p. 74)	124	0.990	20
Citral	229	0.897	—
Benzaldehyde (p. 231)	179	1.045	20
Cuminaldehyde	237	0.983	—

ORGANIC LIQUIDS, INSOLUBLE IN WATER (*continued*).

	Boiling point.	Sp. gr.	<i>t.</i>
<i>Aldehydes (continued)</i> —			
Anisaldehyde . . . . .	248	1.122	20
Cinnamic aldehyde . . . . .	220	1.049	20
Salicylaldehyde (p. 219) . . . . .	196	1.122	20
<i>Ketones</i> —			
Methyl nonyl ketone . . . . .	225	0.829	17
Acetophenone (p. 257) (m. p. 20°) . . . . .	200	1.023	—
Mesityl oxide (p. 84) . . . . .	130	0.848	23
Carvone . . . . .	224	0.953	15
<i>Acids</i> —			
<i>n</i> -Valeric (p. 77) . . . . .	181	0.947	—
Caproic . . . . .	205	0.945	—
<i>Anhydrides</i> —			
Acetic (p. 86) . . . . .	138	1.08	15
<i>Phenols</i> —			
Phenol (p. 205) (m.p. 43°) . . . . .	182	1.070	20
<i>o</i> -Cresol (m.p. 31°) . . . . .	191	1.037	20
<i>m</i> - " . . . . .	202	1.033	20
<i>p</i> - " (p. 186) . . . . .	202	1.033	20
Guaiacol (m. p. 30°) . . . . .	205	1.12	—
Carvacrol . . . . .	236	0.885	15
Eugenol . . . . .	248	1.09	18
Isoeugenol . . . . .	267	1.08	16
<i>Ethers and Phenol Ethers</i> —			
Ethyl ether (p. 65) . . . . .	35	0.713	15
Amyl . . . . .	176	0.800	—
Methylal . . . . .	42	0.850	20
Acetal . . . . .	104	0.831	20
Anisole . . . . .	154	0.988	20
Phenetole . . . . .	172	0.973	15
Anethole . . . . .	232	1.022	20
Safrole . . . . .	232	1.114	—
<i>Esters</i> —			
Methyl formate . . . . .	32	0.900	—
" acetate . . . . .	57	0.904	20
" propionate . . . . .	79	0.937	—
" butyrate . . . . .	102	0.896	20
" <i>n</i> -valerate . . . . .	117	0.879	20
" succinate . . . . .	198	1.116	15
" tartrate . . . . .	280	1.340	—
" benzoate . . . . .	199	1.086	20
" salicylate . . . . .	224	1.182	—
Ethyl formate . . . . .	54	0.906	20
" acetate (p. 96) . . . . .	77	0.900	20
" acetoacetate (p. 98) . . . . .	181	—	—
" propionate . . . . .	99	1.029	20
" butyrate . . . . .	120	0.896	—
" <i>n</i> -valerate (p. 78) . . . . .	145	0.889	20
" oxalate (p. 125) . . . . .	186	0.866	20
" malonate (p. 116) . . . . .	198	1.080	20
" succinate . . . . .	216	1.076	—
" tartrate (p. 139) . . . . .	decomp.	1.072	—
" benzoate (p. 255) . . . . .	213	1.047	20
" salicylate . . . . .	227	1.184	—
<i>n</i> -Propyl formate . . . . .	81	0.918	—
" " " . . . . .	71	0.882	—
" " acetate . . . . .	101	0.885	20
" " propionate . . . . .	122	0.901	—

ORGANIC LIQUIDS, INSOLUBLE IN WATER (*continued*).

	Boiling-point.	Sp. gr.	<i>t.</i>
<i>Esters (continued)</i> —			
n-Propyl butyrate . . . . .	143	0.893	—
"    benzoate . . . . .	229	1.031	—
n-Butyl formate . . . . .	107	0.910	—
i-    "    " . . . . .	98	0.900	—
n-    "    acetate . . . . .	125	0.866	—
i-    "    propionate . . . . .	136	0.887	—
"    butyrate . . . . .	157	0.887	—
"    i-valerate . . . . .	169	0.873	—
i-Amyl formate . . . . .	123	0.880	20
"    acetate . . . . .	139	0.856	20
"    propionate . . . . .	160	0.887	—
"    butyrate . . . . .	178	0.882	—
"    i-valerate . . . . .	190	0.870	—
"    benzoate . . . . .	261	1.004	—
"    salicylate . . . . .	270	—	—
Glyceryl triacetate . . . . .	258	1.155	—
"    triolate . . . . .	decomp.	0.91	—
Phenyl acetate . . . . .	195	1.093	—
Benzyl acetate . . . . .	206	1.057	16
"    benzoate (m.p. 20°) . . . . .	323	1.114	—

**Solids.**—It may be a *hydrocarbon* (e.g., paraffin wax, naphthalene), *higher alcohol* (e.g., cetyl alcohol); *aldehyde* (e.g., *p*-hydroxybenzaldehyde), *ketone* and *quinone* (e.g., benzophenone, camphor), *acid* (higher fatty, e.g., palmitic acid or aromatic acid), *ester* (of glycerol, phenols or aromatic alcohols), *phenol* (e.g., thymol).

The process of investigation is similar to that described in the preceding section.

**Acids.**—A free acid may be at once identified by its solubility in a solution of sodium carbonate and by being reprecipitated by concentrated hydrochloric acid. If a metal has been discovered in the preliminary examination, a careful examination must be made for an organic acid. As the substance is insoluble in water the metal will probably not be an alkali metal. Boil the substance with sodium carbonate solution. The sodium salt of the acid passes into solution and the metallic carbonate is precipitated. Filter; boil the filtrate with a slight excess of nitric acid, add excess of ammonia and boil until neutral, tests may then be applied in order to identify one of the common acids and the m.p. determined; the acid may also be identified by conversion into the *p*-nitrobenzyl ester as described on p. 242 (see also p. 503). Beyond this it is impossible to carry the investigation in a limited time.

## INSOLUBLE SOLIDS.

(Containing C and H, or C, H, and O.)

	Melting-point.		Melting-point.
<b>Hydrocarbons—</b>		<b>Acids (continued)—</b>	
Paraffin wax . . . . .	45—60	<i>o</i> Hydroxybenzoic (p 223) .	155
Naphthalene (p. 270) . . . .	80	<i>m</i> - " (p 244) .	200
Anthracene (p. 287) . . . .	213	<i>p</i> - " (p 244) .	210
Phenanthrene . . . . .	99	Acetyl " salicylic (aspirin)	
Stilbene . . . . .	125	(p 225) . . . . .	138
Camphene (p. 292) . . . .	51—52	Anisic . . . . .	184
		<i>o</i> -Toluic . . . . .	102
<b>Alcohols—</b>		<i>m</i> - " . . . . .	110
Cetyl alcohol . . . . .	50	<i>p</i> - " (p 193) . . . . .	179
Menthol . . . . .	42	Phenyl acetic . . . . .	76
Triphenylcarbinol (p 265) . .	159	<i>o</i> Phthalic (p 270) . . . .	200
Isoborneol (p. 293) . . . .	212	<i>m</i> - " (isophthalic) . . . .	subl.
Cholesterol (p. 318) . . . .	148	<i>p</i> - " (terephthalic) . . . .	"
		(p 193) . . . . .	"
<b>Aldehydes—</b>		<b>Anhydrides—</b>	
Vanillin . . . . .	81	Benzoic . . . . .	42
Piperonal . . . . .	37	Phthalic (p 270) . . . . .	128
<b>Ketones—</b>		<b>Phenols—</b>	
Benzophenone . . . . .	48	<i>o</i> Cresol . . . . .	31
Benzil (p 246) . . . . .	95	<i>p</i> - " (p 186) . . . . .	36
Benzoin (p 246) . . . . .	137	Thymol . . . . .	50
Benzalacetone (p 240) . . . .	39	<i>a</i> Naphthol . . . . .	95
Camphor (p. 294) . . . . .	175	<i>β</i> " (p 280) . . . . .	122
<b>Quinones—</b>		<b>Esters—</b>	
Benzoquinone (p. 226) . . . .	116	Methyl oxalate (p 124) . . .	54
<i>α</i> -Naphthaquinone . . . . .	125	Cetyl palmitate (Spermaceti)	53
<i>β</i> - " . . . . .	115—120	Myricyl palmitate (Bees wax)	62—65
Anthraquinone (p. 287) . . . .	280	Glyceryl tripalmitate (Palmitin) (p 313) . . . . .	62
Phenanthraquinone . . . . .	205	Glyceryl tristearate (Stearin)	71
<b>Acids—</b>		Phenyl benzoate . . . . .	69
Palmitic (p. 313) . . . . .	62	" salicylate . . . . .	43
Stearic . . . . .	69	Benzyl benzoate . . . . .	21
Benzoic (p 241) . . . . .	122	" salicylate . . . . .	—

## 2. Contains Nitrogen.

**Organic base.**—If it is a *base* or *amine*, amino-phenol or amino-acid, it will probably dissolve in dilute hydrochloric acid and yield a chloroplatinate with platinic chloride. Some aromatic bases like diphenylamine are not very soluble in dilute acids. If the amine is a liquid it should be converted into a solid amide as follows: add drop by drop to the amine, benzoyl chloride and shake well; pour into water, add a little sodium carbonate solution to decompose the excess of benzoyl chloride and when the smell of the latter has disappeared, filter, recrystallise from water or dilute alcohol and



determine the melting-point (p. 83). Tertiary amines do not combine (see below). Amino-phenols and acids may be extracted with ether from an acid solution to which ammonia has been added till faintly acid and then sodium acetate. Many aromatic amino-compounds and amino-phenols give quinones on oxidation with potassium dichromate and sulphuric acid, having a characteristic smell (p. 226). Most of the common *alkaloids* when dissolved in hydrochloric acid (avoid excess), give a brown amorphous precipitate with iodine solution and respond to other general reactions for the alkaloids (see p. 463). To identify the individual alkaloid, special tests must be applied.

*Primary, secondary, and tertiary amines* may be distinguished as follows: To a solution of the base in dilute hydrochloric acid add a few drops of sodium nitrite solution. In the case of primary aliphatic amines, a rapid evolution of nitrogen will at once occur.

A primary aromatic amine at first gives a clear solution of the diazonium salt, which evolves nitrogen and turns darker on warming. The effervescence, due to the liberation of nitrous fumes, is easily distinguished from that of nitrogen, which goes on uninterruptedly, even when the liquid is removed from the flame. After the solution of the diazonium salt has been decomposed by warming, the phenol which has been produced may be extracted with ether, the ether evaporated, and the phenol identified by special tests. A solution of the diazonium salt, when poured into a solution of  $\beta$ -naphthol in caustic soda, will usually give a red azo-colour. The original amine, if liquid, may sometimes be identified by warming with a little acetyl chloride and converting it into the solid acetyl derivative, which is recrystallised and the melting-point determined (see Reaction 3, p. 88).

In the case of a secondary base, the above treatment with hydrochloric acid and sodium nitrite will give an insoluble nitrosamine (liquid or solid), which is frequently yellow. It may be separated by ether and, after removing the ether, tested by Liebermann's nitroso-reaction (see Reaction 4, p. 206). Nitrous acid has no action on tertiary aliphatic amines, but forms nitroso-bases with tertiary aromatic amines (see p. 177), which dissolve in water in presence of hydrochloric acid, with which they form soluble hydrochlorides. Weak bases like the nitranilines, which are coloured,

form colourless hydrochlorides with conc. HCl (p. 173). Tertiary amines also combine with methyl iodide on warming (see Reaction, p. 177), but not with acetyl chloride. Primary amines give the carbamine reaction (p. 166), and unite with carbon bisulphide (p. 180).

A further method of distinguishing between the three classes of amines is by converting them into the benzene- or *p*-toluene-sulphonamide by the action of the corresponding chloride (p. 205). The primary amides combine with and dissolve in a solution of caustic soda; the secondary amines combine, but do not dissolve in the alkali; the tertiary amines do not enter into union with the acid chloride. Consequently if the product of the reaction is shaken with ether, the primary amine remains as sulphonamide in solution, the secondary amine passes into the ether as sulphonamide, whilst the tertiary amine may be removed from the ether layer by shaking with dilute HCl.

*Oximes*.—It should be remembered that oximes act as bases as well as acids, and dissolve in both caustic alkalis and acids. On reduction in acid solution (with tin or zinc) they yield amines (p. 259). On boiling with strong hydrochloric acid they are hydrolysed and are converted into the original aldehyde or ketone and hydroxylamine. Similar reactions occur with hydrazones and semi-carbazones.

*Cyanides and Amides* are hydrolysed by caustic potash (aqueous or, better, alcoholic), conc. hydrochloric or sulphuric acid as mentioned previously under § 1, 2. It should be mentioned that some amides are attacked only with difficulty, and must then be treated as described on p. 484.

*Nitro-compounds* are frequently yellow or orange in colour. Heated with stannous chloride in conc. HCl or zinc dust and glacial acetic acid they dissolve and remain in solution on the addition of water. The base which is thus formed may be separated by adding an excess of caustic soda until the metallic oxide dissolves and then shaking out with ether. When the ether is removed, the base remains. If liquid, the base should be converted into the acetyl, benzoyl, *p*-nitrobenzoyl, &c., derivative by warming with the acyl chloride for a few minutes and pouring into water. The free base or solid acyl derivative, as the case may be, should be recrystallised

and the melting-point determined. It can also be diazotised and coupled with  $\beta$ -naphthol (p. 184).

*Alkyl Nitrates* are hydrolysed like other esters, and yield alcohol and nitric acid (p. 377). They often detonate when dropped on to hot metallic sodium.

*Nitro-phenols and Nitro-acids* dissolve in caustic alkalis as a rule with a deep yellow or orange colour. On reduction with stannous chloride or zinc dust, as described above, they yield the colourless amino-derivatives. In the case of the amino-phenol, the solution is made alkaline with caustic soda, saturated with  $\text{CO}_2$ , salt added and extracted with ether. In the case of the amino-acid, the method used is that described under Prep. 122 (p. 244).

*Azo- and Azoxy-compounds.* Both classes of compounds are usually highly coloured and are rapidly decolourised by warming with a solution of stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid or sodium hydrosulphite,  $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$ , forming amino-compounds (see Reactions, pp. 201, 203).

#### INSOLUBLE SUBSTANCES <sup>1</sup>

(Containing C, H, and N, or C, H, O, and N.)

	Melting point	Boiling point		Melting-point	Boiling-point
<i>Bases (primary)—</i>			<i>Bases (primary), (cont.)</i>		
Aniline (p. )	—	182	<i>o</i> -Tolidine	128	—
<i>o</i> -Nitraniline (p. 171)	71	—	<i>o</i> -Phenylenediamine	102	—
<i>m</i> - " (p. 175)	114	—	<i>m</i> - " (p. 175)	63	—
<i>p</i> - " (p. 173)	147	—	<i>p</i> -Phenylenediamine	147	267
<i>o</i> -Chloraniline	—	207	<i>p</i> -Dimethylphenylene diamine (p. 201)	41	—
<i>m</i> - " . . .	—	230	Phenyldiazine (p. 196)	23	241
<i>p</i> - " . . .	70	230			
<i>o</i> -Bromaniline	31	251	<i>Bases (secondary)—</i>		
<i>m</i> - " . . .	18	251	Methylaniline	—	191
<i>p</i> - " (p. 171)	63	—	Ethylaniline	—	206
<i>o</i> -Tolidine	—	197	Benzylaniline	34	298
<i>m</i> - " . . .	—	199	Diphenylamine (p. 179)	54	310
<i>p</i> - " . . .	45	198	Methyldiphenylamine	—	292
1-3-4-Xyldine	—	215	Phenyl $\beta$ naphthyl-amine	108	—
1-2-4-5-Cumidine	68	234	Piperidine	—	105
<i>p</i> -Hydroxyaniline ( <i>p</i> -aminophenol) (p. 165)	184	—	Conine	—	166
<i>o</i> -Anisidine	—	220			
<i>p</i> - " . . .	57	243	<i>Bases (tertiary)—</i>		
<i>o</i> -Phenetidine	—	228	Dimethylaniline	—	192
<i>p</i> - " (p. 213)	—	254	(p. 176)	—	213
$\alpha$ -Naphthylamine	50	300	Diethylaniline	—	—
$\beta$ - " . . .	112	300			
Benzidine (p. 163)	127	—			

<sup>1</sup> A more complete list of b.p.'s and m.p.'s is given in the tables on pp. 500—506.

INSOLUBLE SUBSTANCES (*continued*).

	Melting-point	Boiling-point		Melting-point.	Boiling-point.
<i>Bases (tertiary), (cont)</i>			<i>Amino acids (continued)</i>		
Dimethyl <i>o</i> -toluidine	—	183	Phenylalanine (p 345)	263	—
<i>p</i> - " "	—	208			
<i>a</i> Picoline . . . .	—	129	<i>Nitro-compounds—</i>	—	
Quinoline (p. 298) . .	—	239	Nitromethane (p. 109)	—	102
Antipyrine . . . .	113	—	Nitrobenzene (p. 157)	—	210
The alkaloids . . . .	—	—	<i>m</i> -Dinitrobenzene (p.		
			174) . . . .	90	—
<i>Aminophenols—</i>			Trimitrobenzene . .	122	—
<i>p</i> Aminophenol (p. 165)	184	—	<i>o</i> -Nitrotoluene . .	—	223
<i>o</i> Methylaminophenol			<i>m</i> - " " . . . .	—	230
(Metol) . . . .	87	—	<i>p</i> " " . . . .	54	236
<i>p</i> Methylaminophenol			1,2,4-Dinitrotoluene .	71	—
(Ortol) . . . .	85	—	<i>a</i> Nitronaphthalene .	61	—
2:4 Diaminophenol			<i>o</i> Nitracetanilide (p 171)	92	—
(Amidol) . . . .	decomp.	—	<i>p</i> - " " (p 173)	207	—
<i>Cyanhydrins and</i>			<i>Nitrophenols, Aldehydes</i>		
<i>Oximes—</i>			and <i>Acids—</i>		
Benzaldehyde cyan-			<i>o</i> Nitrophenol (p. 211)	45	—
hydrin (p. 251) .	10	decomp	<i>m</i> - " " . . . .	96	—
Acetoxime (p. 82)	60	—	<i>p</i> " " (p. 211)	114	—
<i>a</i> -Benzaldoxime (p			Dimitrophenol (p. 216)	114	—
239) . . . .	35	—	Trimitrophenol (p. 214)	122	—
<i>β</i> Benzaldoxime (p			<i>p</i> Nitroanisole (p. 212)	51	—
239) . . . .	130	—	<i>m</i> Nitrobenzaldehyde	58	—
Acetophenoneoxime			<i>o</i> Nitrobenzoic acid .	148	—
(p. 258) . . . .	60	—	<i>m</i> - " " . . . .	—	—
<i>Cyanides and Amides—</i>			(p. 244) . . . .	141	—
Succinamide . . . .	—	decomp	<i>p</i> -Nitrobenzoic acid		
Phenyl cyanide . .	—	191	(p. 242) . . . .	238	—
<i>p</i> -Tolyl cyanide (p.			1,2,4-Dinitrobenzoic		
191) . . . .	38	218	acid . . . .	179	—
Benzyl cyanide (p. 230)	—	232	1,3;5 Dimitrobenzoic		
Oxamide (p. 124)	decomp	—	acid . . . .	205	—
Benzamide (p. 255) .	128	—	<i>Nitroso-compounds—</i>		
Hydrobenzamide (p			<i>p</i> Nitrosodimethyl		
233) . . . .	110	—	aniline (p. 177) .	85	—
Salicylamide . . . .	142	—	<i>p</i> Nitrosodiethyl		
Formanilide . . . .	46	—	aniline . . . .	84	—
Acetanilide (p. 169)	112	—	<i>a</i> Nitroso- <i>β</i> naphthol	106	—
Methylacetanilide .	102	—			
Propionanilide . . .	92	—	<i>Alkyl Nitrites and</i>		
Benzanilide . . . .	103	—	<i>Nitrates—</i>		
Oxanilide . . . .	245	—	Ethyl nitrite . . . .	—	16
<i>o</i> -Acetotoluide . . .	110	—	" " nitrate . . . .	—	86
<i>p</i> - " " . . . .	153	—	Amyl nitrite (p. 79)	—	99
Phthalimide (p. 271) .	233	—	" " nitrate . . . .	—	147
Diphenylurea . . . .	235	—			
Triphenyl guanidine			<i>Azo- and Azoxy-com-</i>		
(p. 181) . . . .	143	—	<i>pounds—</i>		
<i>a</i> -Acetnaphthalide .	154	—	Azoxybenzene (p. 159)	36	—
<i>β</i> - " " . . . .	132	—	Azobenzene (p. 160)	68	—
<i>Amino-acids—</i>			Hydrazobenzene (p.		
Hippuric acid (p. 344)	187	—	162) . . . .	125	—
Uric acid . . . .	decomp.	—	Diazaminobenzene		
Anthranilic acid (p.			(p. 194) . . . .	98	—
272) . . . .	144	—	Aminoazobenzene		
			(p. 195) . . . .	127	—

3. **Contains Halogen.**—Halogen compounds may be *alkyl, alkylene, aryl* or *acid halides* or *halogen acids* (e.g., ethyl bromide, ethylene bromide, bromobenzene, benzoyl chloride, or chlorobenzoic acid).

*Alkyl, Alkylene and Aryl Halides* are usually liquids or solids specifically heavier than water and with a sweet penetrating odour, or if aromatic compounds substituted in the side-chain, they have a sharp penetrating smell and attack the eyes. They are for the most part colourless, but the bromine and iodine compounds usually acquire a brown colour on standing. Iodoform is naturally yellow. In the case of alkyl and alkylene halides and aromatic compounds substituted in the side-chain, alcoholic silver nitrate will, on warming, yield silver halide. Strong methyl-alcoholic potash will, with the same compounds, produce olefines and acetylenes (p. 371). The experiment should be tried with the apparatus Fig. 100, and the gas collected and tested. The residue will contain the sodium halide. Aromatic compounds substituted in the nucleus are not, as a rule, acted on by these reagents unless nitro-groups are also present; many of these react with magnesium in presence of dry ether (p. 252). Aromatic compounds substituted in the side-chain are oxidised by permanganate on boiling and give benzoic acid or its derivative.

#### INSOLUBLE SUBSTANCES.

(Containing C, H and halogens or C, H, O and halogens)

	Melting-point	Boiling-point		Melting-point	Boiling-point
<i>Alkyl, Alkylene, and Aryl Halides—</i>			<i>Alkyl, Alkylene, and Aryl Halides (continued)—</i>		
Methyl iodide (p. 75)	—	43	Allyl bromide . .	—	71
Ethyl bromide (p. 59)	—	38	“ iodide . .	—	101
Ethyl iodide (p. 64)	—	72	Methylene chloride .	—	41
<i>n</i> -Propyl chloride .	—	44	“ bromide . .	—	98
“ bromide . .	—	71	Ethylene chloride .	—	84
“ iodide . .	—	102	Ethylidene . .	—	58
“ chloride . .	—	36	Ethylene bromide (p. 59)	—	131
“ bromide . .	—	60	Ethylidene bromide .	—	109
“ iodide . .	—	89	Chloroform (p. 80)	—	61
<i>n</i> -Butyl chloride .	—	77	Bromoform . .	—	151
“ bromide (p. 76)	—	100	Iodoform . .	119	—
“ iodide . .	—	130	Carbon tetrachloride .	—	76
“ chloride . .	—	68	Glycerol dichloro-		
“ bromide . .	—	92	hydrin (p. 135)	—	176–182
“ iodide . .	—	120	Benzyl chloride (p. 228)	—	179
<i>n</i> -Amyl chloride . .	—	100	Benzal “ . .	—	212
“ bromide . .	—	120			
“ iodide . .	—	148			

INSOLUBLE SUBSTANCES (*continued*).

	Melting-point.	Boiling-point.		Melting-point.	Boiling-point.
<i>Alkyl, Alkylene, and Aryl Halides</i> (continued)—			<i>Phenols</i> —		
Benzotrichloride . .	—	213	Trichlorophenol . .	68	—
Chlorobenzene (p. 154)	—	132	Tribromophenol . .	95	—
Bromobenzene (p. 155)	—	155			
Iodobenzene . . .	—	188	<i>Acid Chlorides</i> —		
<i>o</i> -Dichlorobenzene . .	—	179	Acetyl chloride (p. 87)	—	55
<i>p</i> - " " . . .	53	173	Benzoyl " (p. 254)	—	198
Triphenylmethyl chloride (p. 264) . .	110	—			
<i>o</i> -Dibromobenzene . .	—	225	<i>Acids</i> —		
<i>p</i> - " " . . .	89	218	<i>o</i> -Chlorobenzoic . .	137	—
Dinitrochlorobenzene (p. 215) . . .	53	—	<i>m</i> - " " . . .	158	—
<i>o</i> -Chlorotoluene . .	—	157	<i>p</i> - " " (p. 188)	236	—
<i>m</i> - " " . . .	—	160	<i>o</i> -Bromobenzoic . .	147	—
<i>p</i> - " " (p. 187)	—	160	<i>m</i> - " " (p. 245)	155	—
<i>o</i> -Bromotoluene . .	—	182	<i>p</i> - " " . . .	251	—
<i>m</i> - " " . . .	—	184			
<i>p</i> - " " (p. 189)	28	185	<i>Esters</i> —		
$\alpha$ -Chloronaphthalene .	—	263	Methyl chloroformate	—	71
$\beta$ " " . . .	56	265	" chloracetate . .	—	130
$\alpha$ Bromonaphthalene .	—	279	" bromacetate . .	—	144
$\beta$ " " . . .	59	282	Ethyl chloroformate .	—	94
Pinene hydrochloride (p. 291) . . .	120	—	" chloracetate (p. 107) . . .	—	143
			Ethyl bromacetate . .	—	159

*Acid Chlorides and Bromides* are also specifically heavier than water, but reveal their presence by fuming in moist air. They are decomposed by water more or less rapidly, and give the corresponding acid and halogen acid, which may be tested for. They are also acted on rapidly by strong ammonia or other base (aniline), and give the amide, the melting-point of which may be ascertained (p. 503).

*Halogen Acids and Esters*.—Most of the insoluble halogen acids belong to the aromatic series, and have a definite melting-point. For further confirmation, they may be converted into the acid chloride and amide. Insoluble esters containing halogens may belong to both series, and the acid and alcohol must then be separated and separately investigated.

4. The following among the more common organic substances contain sulphur or sulphur and nitrogen in addition to carbon, hydrogen and oxygen. Alkyl and aryl thiocyanates can be identified by conversion into thioureas (p. 332). Aromatic sulphonamides

of primary amines are soluble in caustic alkalis (p. 428). They also yield crystalline compounds on gently warming with sodium hypochlorite solution, when the amide first dissolves and on cooling crystallises (p. 205).

### INSOLUBLE SUBSTANCES.

(Containing C, H, and S, or C, H, O, S, and N.)

	Melting point	Boiling point		Melting point.	Boiling point
<i>Sulphides</i> —			<i>Thiocyanates</i> —		
Allyl sulphide . . .	—	140	Allyl thiocyanate . . .	—	151
Benzyl " . . .	49	—	Phenyl " . . .	—	222
Cystine (p. 351) . .	—	—	(p. 181) " . . .	—	—
<i>Sulphonic Acids</i> —			<i>Thioamides</i> —		
Sulphobenzoic acid .	decomp	—	Thiocarbamide (p. 332)	175°	—
Sulphanilic acid (p. 199) . . . . .	"	—	Thiocarbamilide (p. 180).	151	—
Naphthionic acid .	"	—	<i>Sulphonic chlorides</i> —		
$\beta$ -Naphthylamine sulphonic acid .	"	—	Benzene sulphonic chloride (p. 204) .	—	251 decomp.
$\beta$ -Naphthylamine disulphonic acid .	"	—	<i>Sulphonamides</i> —		
R acid . . . . .	"	—	Benzenesulphonamide (p. 205) .	156	—
G " . . . . .	"	—	Benzenesulphonanilide (p. 205) .	110	—
<i>Sulphates</i> —					
Methyl sulphate (p. 362) . . . . .	—	187			
Ethyl sulphate . . .	—	208			

**Mixtures.**—A preliminary investigation carried out as described on p. 473 will determine roughly if the substance is a mixture. Before proceeding to identify the substances present, it is essential that they should first be separated. This may be a long and difficult operation, but the following methods may lead to the desired result.

If the substance cannot be satisfactorily separated by fractional distillation (if a liquid) or by crystallisation (if a solid), shake with caustic soda solution. This will dissolve the acid or phenol, and the insoluble constituent may be removed mechanically or, if volatile, by distillation in steam, by extraction with ether or, if solid, by filtration.

*Acid and Phenol*, if present together, may be separated by

adding sodium bicarbonate in excess and extracting with ether, or by dissolving in caustic soda solution, saturating with carbon dioxide and then extracting with ether. The ether extracts the phenol, which is insoluble in sodium carbonate, leaving the acid.

*Ester, Ether and Hydrocarbon* may be separated by hydrolysis, which decomposes the ester, but not the ether or hydrocarbon. Ether and hydrocarbon may be separated by adding conc. HCl, in which the former is soluble.

*Paraffin and Aromatic Hydrocarbon* may be separated by the action of fuming sulphuric acid, which forms the sulphonic acid with the aromatic hydrocarbon. The product is poured into water. The sulphonic acid dissolves readily in water, whereas the paraffin is insoluble. Methyl sulphate may also be used for dissolving the aromatic hydrocarbon.

*Amine or Base* may be separated from the majority of insoluble organic substances by shaking it with dilute hydrochloric acid, with which it forms the soluble hydrochloride.

*Aldehyde or Ketone* may be separated from the other constituents by shaking the liquid, which should be free from water, with a saturated solution of sodium bisulphite, and decanting or filtering the liquid residue. If the liquid is soluble in water, like ethyl alcohol, it may precipitate the bisulphite of sodium. This is prevented by adding a little ether before introducing the bisulphite into the liquid.

In separating two liquids in a test-tube, for example, an ethereal from an aqueous solution, either the ether may be decanted or it may be desirable to withdraw the lower aqueous layer. This is done either by using a small separating funnel or by sucking the liquid into a small pipette furnished with a mouth-piece of rubber tubing, which may be nipped when the requisite quantity is removed. The pipette is then withdrawn, keeping the rubber tube tightly closed, and the liquid transferred to another test-tube. It is often advisable to adopt this method previous to decanting the top layer, which is much more effectively separated from a small than from a large quantity of the aqueous layer.



# MELTING-POINTS AND BOILING-POINTS OF GROUPS OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS AND THEIR DERIVATIVES.

Alcohols.	M.p. B.p.	Ethers.		Esters.			3 : 5-Di-nitro-benzo-ate. M. p.	Phenyl Ureth-ane. M. p.
		Methyl B. p.	Ethyl. B. p.	Acetate. M.p. B.p.	Benzo-ate. M.p. B p	p-Nitro-benzo-ate. M. p.		
Methyl . . .	67	gas	gas	57	195	96	107	47
Ethyl . . .	78	gas	35	77	211	57	92	51-52
Propyl . . .	97	39	63	101	230	32	73	57-59
n-Butyl . . .	116						64	60-61
Isoamyl . . .	131	92	112	140	261			52
Octyl . . .			1	22	30			
Allyl . . .								
Glycol . . .	198	82	124	187	70			
Glycerol . . .	29	102	185	258	76			160-180
Mannitol . . .	160			119	149			260
Benzyl . . .	205	167	185	216	20 345	84	106	78
Linalol . . .	198							65
Borneol . . .	203 212			29 221	25			138
Menthol . . .	42 212			227	54			
Cyclohexanol .								

Phenol.	M. p. B. p.	Ethers.			Esters.		Urethane.		FeCl <sub>3</sub> . <sup>1</sup>
		Methyl. M. p. B. p.	Ethyl. M. p. B. p.	p-Nitro- benzyl. M. p.	Acetate. M. p. B. p.	Benzoate. M. p. B. p.	Phenyl. M. p.	Diphenyl. M. p.	
Phenol . . . . .	43 183	152	172	91	195	69	1-4	104	violet
o-Cresol . . . . .	31 188	171	181	89		307		72	blue
m- " . . . . .	201	177	192	51		54 314		100	"
p- " . . . . .	36 198	175	190	88	213	71 316		93	"
Catechol . . . . .	104	dimethyl 15 205			63	84			green
Resorcinol . . . . .	118 276	214	12 235		123	117		139	violet
Quinol . . . . .	169	56 205	71			199			blue then brown (quinone)
Orcinol . . . . .	107 289	244	16 252		25	88			emerald green
Guaiacol . . . . .		32 205	44	63	240	84			
Eugenol . . . . .	247			53	30	69			
Carvacrol . . . . .	236	217	235		246	260			
Thymol . . . . .	232	217	227	85	245	32			
Phloroglucinol . . . . .	218	52			105	173			
Pyrogallol . . . . .	132	47 235	39		160	90		211	violet
α-Naphthol . . . . .	94 278	258	277	140	49	56			brown, red-violet on adding soda
β-Naphthol . . . . .	122 286	72 274	37 274	106	70	107			flocculent violet ppt. of dinaphthol <sup>2</sup>
o-Nitrophenol . . . . .	44 214	9	276	130	41	58		140	pale green and then ppt. of dinaphthole
m- " . . . . .	96	35	31 264		95	95		113	
p- " . . . . .	114	54 200	60 281	187	81	142			
Picric acid . . . . .	122	65	78		75				

<sup>1</sup> Many pyridine derivatives give colour reactions with FeCl<sub>3</sub>.  
<sup>2</sup> Soluble in ether with a blue colour.

Aldehydes.	M. p.	B. p.	Phenyl hydrazone. M. p.	Nitro- phenyl hydrazone M. p.	Bromo- phenyl hydrazone. M. p.	Semi- carbazone. M. p.
Formaldehyde . . .		gas				
Paraformaldehyde . .		amorph.				
Metaformaldehyde . .	171					
Acetaldehyde . . .		21	99	98	83	162
Paraldehyde . . .		124				
Metalddehyde . . .		112 sublimes				
Chloral . . .		96				
Chloral hydrate . . .	57					
Butyl chloral hydrate	78					
Acrolein . . .		52				
Benzaldehyde . . .		170	155	292	127	214
<i>o</i> -Nitrobenzaldehyde .	46		153			
<i>m</i> - " . . .	58		120			246
<i>p</i> - " . . .	107		157	249	127	221
<i>p</i> -Cummaldehyde . .		232	128			
Cinnamaldehyde . . .		247	168	195		
Furfuraldehyde . . .		162	97	223	175	
Salicylaldehyde . . .		196	142			
Vanillin . . .	80		105	229	145	
Piperonal . . .	37	263	100			

Ketones and Quinones	M. p.	B. p.	Oxime M. p.	Phenyl hydr- azone. M. p.	Nitro- phenyl hydra- zone M. p.	Bromo- phenyl hydr- azone M. p.	Semi- carb- azone M. p.
Acetone . . .		56	60	42	148	93	187
Methyl ethyl ketone . .		81	152				
Acetophenone . . .	26	202	60	105			195
Benzophenone . . .		48	140	137			
Benzoin . . .	134			155	106		
Benzil . . .	90			134			
Benzoquinone . . .	116						
$\alpha$ -Naphthaquinone . .	125		207				
$\beta$ - " . . .	120		149				
Anthraquinone . . .	decomp						
Phenanthraquinone . .	285						
	205						

Aliphatic Monobasic Acids.	M p		F-thyl ester		Methyl ester		p-Nitro benzyl ester		Anhydride		Amide		Anilide		p-Toluide	
	M p	B p	B p	B p	B p	B p	M p	B p	B p	M p	M p	M p	M p	M p	M p	M p
Formic		101	55		32		31				200-212 (B p)		46			
Acetic		118	78		57		78	136		82	115		146			
Propionic		141	99		80		31	168		79	105		124			
n-Butyric		162	121		102		35	192		115	92		72			
isoButyric		154	110		92		76	182		128	102.5		104			
isoValeric		174	134		117		liquid	215		128	115					
Palmitic	62				28		42	64		104	90					
					(M p)			(M p)								
Stearic	69				38		—			103						
					(M p)											
Chloracetic	63	185	145		130		liquid	168		119	134					
Dichloracetic		190	158		143			214		98	117					
Trichloracetic	55	195	167		152		80	224		141	82					
Bromacetic	50	208	159		144		88	245		91	131					
Tribromacetic	139	dec	225							121						
Unsaturated																
Acrylic	10	140														
Crotonic	72	182	142		121					149	118					
Oleic	14						liquid			75						
Linoleic	51									94						

Aromatic Monobasic Acids	M p		F-thyl ester		Methyl ester		p-Nitro benzyl ester		Chloride		Anhydride		Amide		Anilide	
	M p	B p	M p	B p	M p	B p	M p	B p	M p	B p	M p	B p	M p	B p	M p	B p
Benzic	11		211		195		89		198		42		118		163	
o-Toluidic	105		220				90		211		39		133		125	
m- "	110						86									
p- "	173		228		217		104		214				158		145	
Phenyl acetic	70		26		220		65				72		155		117	
Hydrocinnamic	48		49		39		36						82		92	
o-Chlorobenzoic	138		243		230		106		235				130		114	
m- "	153		245		211		114		225				133			
p- "	234				42		129		220				170		194	
o-Bromobenzoic	150		254		246		105		241				151		192	
m- "	155		253		222		105		239				151		137	
p- "	251		762		74		139		42	245	213		186		197	
o-Nitrobenzoic	148	30						25			135		143		154	
m- "	141	47	298		70	279	141	35					143		204	
p- "	20	57			96		168	75			190		198			
Unsaturated																
Cinnamic	133	12	271		36	260	116	36			135				151	

Dibasic Acids.	M. p.	Ethyl ester.		Dimethyl ester.		p-Nitrobenzyl ester.	Anhydride.	Amide.	Imide.	Anilide.
		M.p.	B.p.	M.p.	B. p.					
<i>Aliphatic.</i>										
Carbonic . . .			126		91			132		235
Oxalic . . .	98		186	54	163	204		(dec.)		245
Malonic . . .	132		198		182	85		170		224
Succinic . . .	185		217	18	195	88	119	242	126	227
Glutaric . . .	97		236				56	176 (dec.)	60	224
<i>Unsaturated.</i>										
Citraconic . .										
Mesaconic . .										
<i>Aromatic.</i>										
Phthalic . . .			295		282	155	128	219 (dec.)	233	231 (dec.)
Isophthalic .			285	64	(dec.)	202		265		250
Terephthalic .		44		140		263				

Hydroxy-acids.	M. p.	B. p.	Ethyl ester.	Methyl ester.		<i>p</i> -Nitrobenzyl ester.	Chloride.	Amide.	Anilide.
				M. p.	B. p.				
					B. p.	M. p.	B. p.	M. p.	M. p.
<i>Aliphatic.</i>									
Glycolic . . . . .	80	(dec.)							
Lactic . . . . .									
Malic . . . . .	100		128 (10 mm.)		122 (10 mm.)	liquid 124			197
Tartaric . . . . .	168		280	48	280	163 102			263
Citric . . . . .									
Saccharic . . . . .									
Mucic . . . . .						310			
<i>Aromatic.</i>									
<i>o</i> -Hydroxybenzoic (salicylic) . . . . .	155								
<i>m</i> -Hydroxybenzoic . . . . .	200				22	96 106 198		139	
<i>p</i> -Hydroxybenzoic . . . . .	210								
Mandelic . . . . .	118								
Benzilic . . . . .	150					99			
Galic . . . . .	222								
Tannic . . . . .	(dec.)								

Carbohydrates.	M. p.	Osazone. M. p.	Reduce Fehling's Solution.	$[\alpha]_D$
Arabinose . . . . .	100	165	+	+104
Xylose . . . . .	144	163	+	+18
Rhamnose . . . . .	93	180	+	+9
d-Glucose . . . . .	144	210	+	+52.5
d-Galactose . . . . .	163	184	+	+80
d-Mannose . . . . .	136	210	+	+13
d-Fructose . . . . .	95	210	+	-95
Sucrose (Cane-sugar) . . . . .	160		-	+66.5
Maltose + H <sub>2</sub> O (Malt-sugar) . . . . .		190	+	+139
Lactose + H <sub>2</sub> O (Milk-sugar) . . . . .	203	200	+	+52.5

Amines.	Base.	Hydro- chloride.	Acetyl.		Benzoyl.		p-Ni tro- benz- oyl.	Benz- ene- sulph- onyl.	Phenyl urea.
			M. p.	B. p	M p	B. p.			
	M p. B p	M. p.	M. p.	B. p	M p	B. p. <td>M p</td> <td>M. p.</td> <td>M. p.</td>	M p	M. p.	M. p.
<i>Aliphatic.</i>									
Methylamine . . . . .	gas	226	28	206	80	291			
Dimethylamine . . . . .	gas	171		166	41	255		47	
Trimethylamine . . . . .	gas	271							
Ethylamine . . . . .	19	76-80		205	71	298		58	
Diethylamine . . . . .		215	185		280			42	
Triethylamine . . . . .									
<i>Aromatic.</i>									
Aniline . . . . .	183	198			204			110	235
o-Toluidine . . . . .	190	214	110		142				
m- " . . . . .	203	228	65		125				
p- " . . . . .	43	200	148		158				
1:3,4-Xyldine . . . . .	212	235	110		192				
ψ Cumidine . . . . .	68		161						
o-Nitraniline . . . . .			92					104	
m- " . . . . .			154					131	
p- " . . . . .									
o-Bromaniline . . . . .	31 250		207					139	
m- " . . . . .	18 251								
p- " . . . . .	66								

Ammes (cont.)	Base.	Hydro- chlor- ide.	Acetyl.	Benz- oyl.	<i>p</i> -Ni- tro- benz- oyl.	Benz- ene sulph- onyl.	Phenyl- urea.
	M. p. B. p	M p.	M. p.	M p.	M. p.	M. p	M. p.
Methylaniline . . .	192	121	102	63		79	104
Dimethylaniline . . .	193	85-95					
Ethylaniline . . .	204	176	54	60			
Diethylaniline . . .	213						
Benzylamine . . .	184	148	60	105		88	
<i>o</i> -Anisidine . . .	215		78	60			
<i>p</i> - " . . .	57		127	153			
<i>o</i> -Phenetidine . . .	229		79				
<i>p</i> - " . . .	254	234		133			
<i>o</i> -Phenylenediamine . . .	102 256		185	301			
<i>m</i> - " . . .	63 282		191	240			
<i>p</i> - " . . .	140 267		295	above 300			
			199 (mono)	203			
Benzidine . . . .	127		317 (di)	(mono) subl 198 (mono)			
Phenacetin . . . .	135						
<i>o</i> -Tolidine . . . .	129		306	265 (di)			
Diphenylamine . . .	54 310		101	177		124	
Phenylhydrazine . . .	17 243		128	168			
$\alpha$ -Naphthylamine . . .	50 300						
$\beta$ - " . . .	111 294		132	162			
Pyridine . . . .	115						
Quinoline . . . .	239	43					
Piperidine . . . .	105	237	226	48		93	

I. TABLE OF THE ATOMIC WEIGHTS OF THE ELEMENTS

O = 16

Element	Symbol	Atomic Weight	Element	Symbol	Atomic Weight
Aluminum	Al	27.1	Neon	Ne	20.2
Antimony	Sb	120.2	Nickel	Ni	58.68
Argon	Ar	39.9	Niobium	Nb	94
Arsenic	As	74.96	Nitrogen	N	14.008
Barium	Ba	137.37	Osmium	Os	190.9
Beryllium	Be	9.1	Oxygen	O	16
Bismuth	Bi	208	Palladium	Pd	106.7
Boron	B	10.9	Phosphorus	P	31.04
Bromine	Br	79.9	Platinum	Pt	195.2
Cadmium	Cd	112.4	Potassium	K	39.10
Cæsium	Cs	132.81	Radium	Ra	226
Calcium	Ca	40.07	Rhodium	Rh	102.9
Carbon	C	12.005	Rubidium	Rb	85.45
Cerium	Ce	140.25	Ruthenium	Ru	101.7
Chlorine	Cl	35.46	Scandium	Sc	45.1
Chromium	Cr	52.0	Selenium	Se	79.2
Cobalt	Co	58.97	Silicon	Si	28.3
Copper	Cu	63.57	Silver	Ag	107.88
Fluorine	F	19	Sodium	Na	23.0
Gallium	Ga	70.1	Strontium	Sr	87.63
Germanium	Ge	72.5	Sulphur	S	32.06
Gold	Au	197.2	Tantalum	Ta	181.5
Helium	He	4.0	Tellurium	Te	127.5
Hydrogen	H	1.008	Thallium	Tl	204.0
Indium	In	114.8	Thorium	Th	232.15
Iodine	I	126.92	Tin	Sn	118.6
Iridium	Ir	193.1	Titanium	Ti	48.1
Iron	Fe	55.84	Tungsten	W	184
Krypton	Kr	82.9	Uranium	U	238.2
Lanthanum	La	138.0	Vanadium	V	51.0
Lead	Pb	207.2	Xenon	Xe	130.2
Lithium	Li	6.94	Ytterbium	Yb	173.5
Magnesium	Mg	24.32	Yttrium	Yt	88.33
Manganese	Mn	54.93	Zinc	Zn	65.37
Mercury	Hg	200.6	Zirconium	Zr	90.6
Molybdenum	Mo	96			



## VAPOUR TENSION OF WATER FROM 5° TO 20°.

<i>t</i>	Tension.	<i>t</i>	Tension.	<i>t</i>	Tension.	<i>t</i>	Tension.
5°	6°507	9°	8°548	13°	11°137	17°	14°395
'1	'552	'2	'606	'1	'210	'1	'486
'2	'597	'2	'664	'2	'283	'2	'578
'3	'643	'3	'722	'3	'356	'3	'670
'4	'689	'4	'781	'4	'430	'4	'763
'5	'736	'5	'840	'5	'505	'5	'856
'6	'782	'6	'899	'6	'580	'6	'950
'7	'829	'7	'959	'7	'655	'7	15°044
'8	'876	'8	9°019	'8	'731	'8	'139
'9	'924	'9	'079	'9	'807	'9	'234
6°	'971	10°	'140	14°	884	18°	'330
'1	7°020	'1	'201	'1	'960	'1	'427
'2	'068	'2	'262	'2	12°038	'2	'524
'3	'117	'3	'324	'3	'116	'3	'621
'4	'166	'4	'386	'4	'194	'4	'719
'5	'215	'5	'449	'5	'273	'5	'818
'6	'265	'6	'512	'6	'352	'6	'917
'7	'314	'7	'575	'7	'432	16°	017
'8	'365	'8	'639	'8	'512	'8	'117
'9	'415	'9	'703	'9	'593	'9	'218
7°	'466	11°	'767	15°	'674	19°	'319
'1	'517	'1	'832	'1	'755	'1	'421
'2	'568	'2	'897	'2	'837	'2	'523
'3	'620	'3	'962	'3	'920	'3	'626
'4	'672	'4	10°028	'4	13°003	'4	'730
'5	'725	'5	'095	'5	'086	'5	'834
'6	'777	'6	'161	'6	'170	'6	'939
'7	'830	'7	'228	'7	'254	17°	044
'8	'883	'8	'296	'8	'339	'8	'150
'9	'937	'9	'364	'9	'424	'9	'256
8°	'991	12°	'432	16°	'510	20°	'363
'1	8°045	'1	'501	'1	'596	'1	'471
'2	'100	'2	'570	'2	'683	'2	'579
'3	'155	'3	'639	'3	'770	'3	'688
'4	'210	'4	'709	'4	'858	'4	'797
'5	'266	'5	'780	'5	'946	'5	'907
'6	'321	'6	'850	'6	14°035	'6	18°018
'7	'378	'7	'921	'7	'124	'7	'129
'8	'434	'8	'993	'8	'214	'8	'241
'9	'491	'9	11°065	'9	'304	'9	353

## VAPOUR TENSION OF CAUSTIC POTASH SOLUTIONS FROM 10°—20°.

	30KOH. 100H <sub>2</sub> O.	40KOH. 100H <sub>2</sub> O.	49KOH. 100H <sub>2</sub> O.
10°0	7'31	6'50	5'62
10°5	7'56	6'72	5'81
11°0	7'82	6'95	6'01
11°7	8'19	7'28	6'29
12°1	8'41	7'47	6'46
12°5	8'63	7'67	6'63
13°0	8'92	7'93	6'86
13°5	9'22	8'19	7'09
13°95	9'49	8'44	7'30
14°5	9'83	8'74	7'56
15°15	10'25	9'11	7'88
15°30	10'35	9'20	7'96
16°0	10'82	9'62	8'33
16°35	11'07	9'85	8'53
17°0	11'54	10'26	8'88
17°5	11'91	10'59	9'17
18°0	12'29	10'93	9'47
18°5	12'69	11'29	9'78
19°0	13'09	11'65	10'09
19°4	13'41	11'93	10'33
20°0	13'93	12'40	10'75
20°25	14'15	12'59	10'91

II.—TABLE OF SPECIFIC GRAVITY AND PERCENTAGE OF SULPHURIC ACID  
IN AQUEOUS SOLUTION. (Kolbe.)

*Sp. gr. at 15° compared with water at 0° = 1.*

Degrees Beaumé.	Sp. gr. $d = 15/0$ .	100 parts by weight contain $H_2SO_4$ .	Degrees Beaumé.	Sp. gr. $d = 15/0$ .	100 parts by weight contain $H_2SO_4$ .
1	1'007	1'9	34	1'308	40'2
2	1'014	2'8	35	1'320	41'6
3	1'022	3'8	36	1'332	43
4	1'029	4'8	37	1'345	44'4
5	1'037	5'8	38	1'357	45'6
6	1'045	6'8	39	1'370	46'9
7	1'052	7'8	40	1'383	48'3
8	1'060	8'8	41	1'397	49'8
9	1'067	9'8	42	1'410	51'2
10	1'075	10'8	43	1'424	52'6
11	1'083	11'9	44	1'438	54'0
12	1'091	13	45	1'453	55'4
13	1'100	14'1	46	1'468	56'9
14	1'108	15'2	47	1'483	58'3
15	1'116	16'2	48	1'498	59'6
16	1'125	17'3	49	1'514	61
17	1'134	18'5	50	1'530	62'5
18	1'142	19'6	51	1'540	64
19	1'152	20'8	52	1'563	65'5
20	1'162	22'1	53	1'580	67
21	1'171	23'3	54	1'597	68'6
22	1'180	24'5	55	1'615	70
23	1'190	25'8	56	1'634	71'6
24	1'200	27'1	57	1'652	73'2
25	1'210	28'4	58	1'671	74'7
26	1'220	29'6	59	1'691	76'4
27	1'231	30'9	60	1'711	78'1
28	1'241	32'2	61	1'732	79'9
29	1'252	33'4	62	1'753	81'7
30	1'263	34'7	63	1'774	84'1
31	1'274	36	64	1'796	86'5
32	1'285	37'4	65	1'81	89'7
33	1'297	38'6	66	1'842	100

II — TABLE OF SPECIFIC GRAVITY AND PERCENTAGE OF  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  IN  
CONCENTRATED SULPHURIC ACID (Lunge and Naef)

*Sp gr at 15° compared with water at 4° = 1*

Per cent $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$	Sp gr $d = 15/4$	Per cent $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$	Sp gr $d = 15/4$
90	1.3185	96	1.8406
91	1.8241	97	1.8410
92	1.8294	98	1.8412
93	1.8339	99	1.8403
94	1.8372	100	1.8384
95	1.8390		

IV — TABLE OF SPECIFIC GRAVITY AND PERCENTAGE OF NITRIC ACID  
IN AQUEOUS SOLUTION (Kolbe)

*Sp gr at 15° compared with water at 0° = 1*

Sp gr at 15	Percentage $\text{HNO}_3$	Sp gr at 15	Percentage $\text{HNO}_3$	Sp gr at 15	Percentage $\text{HNO}_3$	Sp gr at 15	Percentage $\text{HNO}_3$
1.530	100	1.451	77.6	1.363	58	1.237	37.95
1.520	99.5	1.445	76	1.358	57	1.225	36
1.513	97.9	1.44	75	1.353	56.1	1.218	35
1.510	96	1.438	74	1.346	55	1.211	33.8
1.514	95.2	1.435	73	1.341	54	1.198	32
1.509	94	1.432	72.4	1.339	53.8	1.182	31
1.506	93	1.427	71.2	1.335	53	1.175	30
1.503	92	1.423	69.9	1.331	52.3	1.179	29
1.499	91	1.419	69.2	1.323	51	1.172	28
1.495	90	1.414	68	1.317	49.9	1.166	27
1.494	89.5	1.410	67	1.312	49	1.157	25.7
1.488	88	1.405	66	1.304	48	1.148	23
1.486	87.4	1.400	65	1.298	47.1	1.140	20
1.482	86.1	1.395	64	1.295	46.6	1.135	17.4
1.478	85	1.393	63.6	1.284	45	1.128	15
1.474	84	1.386	62	1.274	43.5	1.117	13
1.470	83	1.381	61.2	1.264	42	1.107	11.4
1.467	82	1.374	60	1.257	41	1.095	7.2
1.463	80.9	1.372	59.6	1.251	40	1.082	4
1.460	80	1.368	58.8	1.244	39	1.070	2
1.456	79						

V.—TABLE OF SPECIFIC GRAVITY AND PERCENTAGE OF HYDROCHLORIC ACID IN AQUEOUS SOLUTION.

Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage HCl.	Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage HCl.	Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage HCl.	Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage HCl.
1'007	1.5	1'055	11.0	1'116	23.1	1'175	34.7
1'010	2.2	1'060	12	1'125	24.8	1'180	35.7
1'014	2.9	1'067	13.4	1'134	26.6	1'185	36.8
1'019	3.8	1'075	15	1'143	28.4	1'190	37.9
1'022	4.5	1'083	16.5	1'150	29.7	1'194	38.6
1'029	5.5	1'091	18.1	1'152	30.2	1'199	39.8
1'031	6.2	1'094	18.6	1'159	31.5	1'202	40.5
1'036	7.3	1'100	19.9	1'161	32	1'205	41.2
1'044	8.9	1'105	20.9	1'166	33	1'210	42.4
1'052	10.4	1'108	21.5	1'171	33.9	1'212	43

VI.—TABLE OF SPECIFIC GRAVITY AND PERCENTAGE OF CAUSTIC POTASH IN AQUEOUS SOLUTION.

Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage of KOH.	Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage of KOH.	Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage of KOH.	Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage of KOH.
1'009	1	1'166	19	1'374	37	1'590	54
1'017	2	1'177	20	1'387	38	1'604	55
1'025	3	1'188	21	1'400	39	1'618	56
1'033	4	1'198	22	1'412	40	1'630	57
1'041	5	1'209	23	1'425	41	1'642	58
1'049	6	1'220	24	1'438	42	1'655	59
1'058	7	1'230	25	1'450	43	1'667	60
1'065	8	1'241	26	1'462	44	1'681	61
1'074	9	1'252	27	1'475	45	1'695	62
1'083	10	1'264	28	1'488	46	1'705	63
1'092	11	1'276	29	1'499	47	1'718	64
1'101	12	1'288	30	1'511	48	1'729	65
1'110	13	1'300	31	1'525	49	1'740	66
1'119	14	1'311	32	1'539	50	1'754	67
1'128	15	1'324	33	1'552	51	1'768	68
1'137	16	1'336	34	1'564	52	1'780	69
1'146	17	1'349	35	1'578	53	1'790	70
1'155	18	1'361	36				

VII. —TABLE OF SPECIFIC GRAVITY AND PERCENTAGE OF CAUSTIC SODA IN  
AQUEOUS SOLUTION.

Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage of NaOH.	Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage of NaOH.	Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage of NaOH.	Sp. gr. at 15°.	Percentage of NaOH.
1.012	1	1.213	19	1.405	37	1.580	54
1.023	2	1.225	20	1.415	38	1.591	55
1.035	3	1.236	21	1.426	39	1.601	56
1.048	4	1.247	22	1.437	40	1.611	57
1.058	5	1.258	23	1.447	41	1.622	58
1.070	6	1.269	24	1.457	42	1.633	59
1.081	7	1.279	25	1.468	43	1.643	60
1.092	8	1.290	26	1.478	44	1.654	61
1.103	9	1.300	27	1.488	45	1.666	62
1.115	10	1.310	28	1.499	46	1.674	63
1.126	11	1.321	29	1.509	47	1.684	64
1.137	12	1.332	30	1.519	48	1.695	65
1.148	13	1.343	31	1.529	49	1.705	66
1.159	14	1.353	32	1.540	50	1.715	67
1.170	15	1.363	33	1.550	51	1.726	68
1.181	16	1.374	34	1.560	52	1.737	69
1.192	17	1.384	35	1.570	53	1.748	70
1.202	18	1.395	36				

VIII.—TABLE OF SPECIFIC GRAVITY AND PERCENTAGE OF AMMONIA IN  
AQUEOUS SOLUTION.

*Sp. gr. at 14° compared with water at 14° = 1.*

Sp. gr.	Percentage of NH <sub>3</sub> .	Sp. gr.	Percentage of NH <sub>3</sub> .	Sp. gr.	Percentage of NH <sub>3</sub> .	Sp. gr.	Percentage of NH <sub>3</sub> .
.884	36	.905	27	.931	18	.963	9
.886	35	.907	26	.934	17	.967	8
.898	34	.910	25	.938	16	.970	7
.890	33	.913	24	.941	15	.974	6
.892	32	.916	23	.944	14	.979	5
.895	31	.919	22	.948	13	.983	4
.897	30	.922	21	.952	12	.987	3
.900	29	.925	20	.955	11	.991	2
.902	28	.928	19	.959	10	.995	1



# INDEX

*The page number in thick type, where more than one page reference is given, refers to the Preparation, the second number to the Appendix.*

- ABSOLUTE** alcohol, 53  
**Acetaldehyde**, **71, 73, 374**  
**Acetamide**, **89, 380**  
**Acetanilide**, **169, 412**  
**Acetylchloranilide**, **170, 412**  
**Acetic acid**, 86  
**Acetic anhydride**, **88, 379**  
**Acetic ether**, 96  
**Acetmonobromamide**, 92, 94  
**Acetoacetic ester**, **98, 385**  
**Acetone**, 80  
**Acetone dicarboxylic acid**, **150, 406**  
**Acetone dicarboxylic ester**, 150  
**Acetonitrile**, **91, 381**  
**Acetophenone**, **257, 447**  
**Acetophenoneoxime**, 258  
**Acetophenonesemicarbazone**, 258  
**Acetoxime**, 82  
**Acetylacetone**, **104, 389**  
**Acetylaminooxybenzene** **214**  
**Acetyl chloride**, **87, 378**  
**Acetyl method (Markin)** 284  
**Acetylphenylhydrazine** 212  
**Acetylsalicylic acid**, **225, 433**  
**Acridine**, 278  
**Acridine yellow**, 306  
**Acridone**, **278, 455**  
**Acrolein**, 129  
**Air bath**, of Gattermann, 25 of V Meyer, 28, of L Meyer 33, 209  
**Alcohol**, 53, absolute, 53, allyl 13, amyl, 79, benzyl, 229; butyl, 76, ethyl, 54; methyl, 74  
**Aldehyde-ammonia**, 72  
**Alizarin**, **289, 457**  
**Allantoin**, 335  
**Alloxan**, **335, 470**  
**Alloxantin**, **334, 469**  
**Allyl alcohol**, **132, 398**  
**Aluminium chloride**, 361  
**Aluminium-mercury couple**, 262  
**Aminoacetic acid**, **112, 392**  
**Aminoazobenzene**, **195, 421**  
**m Amino benzoic acid**, **244, 440**  
**Aminobenzyl cyanide**, 356  
**p Amino-ethoxybenzene**, 213  
**Aminoglutaric acid**, 350  
**a Amino-β naphthol**, 202  
**p Aminophenol**, **165, 433**  
**p-Aminoquinoline**, **301, 459**  
**Ammonia**, table of specific gravity, 513; preparation of, 72  
**Amyl alcohol**, 79  
**Amyl nitrite**, **79, 377**  
**Analysis, organic**, 3; qualitative, 3, quantitative, 5, of fats and oils, 314  
**Aniline**, **165, 167, 411**, estimation of, 168  
**A nline yellow**, 195  
**Anisole**, **207, 429**  
**Anschütz thermometer**, 64  
**Anthracene**, 287, picrate, 287  
**Anthranilic acid**, 272  
**Anthraquinone**, **287, 456**  
**Anthraquinone β monosulphonate of sodium**, 288  
**Appendix**, 369  
**Aspirin**, **225, 433**  
**Atomic weights**, table of, 507  
**Autoclave**, 289  
**Azobenzene**, **160, 409**  
**Azotometer**, 16  
**Azoxybenzene**, **159, 409**  
**Barfoed's reagent**, 327  
**Beckmann, freezing point apparatus** 35, boiling point apparatus, 39, 42, thermometer, 35  
**Beckmann's reaction**, 258  
**Benedict's solution**, 322  
**Benzalacetone**, **240, 438**  
**Benzalaniline**, 233  
**Benzaldehyde**, **231, 436**, from benzyl chloride, 231, from benzal chloride, 232  
**Benzaldehyde green**, **266, 452**  
**a Benzaldoxime**, **239, 437**  
**β Benzaldoxime**, **239, 437**  
**Benzalmalonic acid**, 248  
**Benzamide**, 255  
**Benzanilide**, 255  
**Benzene**, 151  
**Benzene chloramine**, 205  
**Benzene diazonium sulphate**, 182  
**Benzene ethyl sulphonate**, 205  
**Benzene phenyl sulphonate**, 205  
**Benzene sulphonamide**, 205  
**Benzene sulphonanilide**, 205  
**Benzene sulphonic acid**, **203, 426**  
**Benzene sulphonic chloride**, **204, 427**  
**Benzidine**, 163  
**Benzil**, **246, 440**  
**Benzilic acid**, **247, 441**  
**Benzoflavine**, **306, 461**  
**Benzohydantoin**, 273  
**Benzoic acid**, **241, 438**  
**Benzoic ester**, **256, 446**, hydrolysis of, 256  
**Benzoim**, **246, 440**  
**Benzophenone**, 262  
**Benzoylacetone**, 259  
**Benzoyl chloride**, **254, 446**  
**Benzoyl peroxide**, 255  
**Benzoyl piperidine**, **303, 460**  
**Benzyl alcohol**, **229, 233, 236, 435**  
**Benzyl chloride**, **228, 434**



- Benzyl cyanide, **230**, 436  
 Benzylidene aniline, 233  
 Benzylidene phenylhydrazone, 234  
 Benzyl malonic acid, 248  
 Benzyl phenylurethane, 230  
 Bisdiazacetate of sodium, 116  
 Bitter almond oil, **231**, 436  
 Biuret, 331  
*Blomstrand's* formula, 417  
 Boiling point determination of, 63; correction for, 63; apparatus of Beckmann, 39, 42, of Walker and Lumsden, 4-, of organic compounds, 500-505  
 Boiling-point method, 38, statical, 39, dynamical, 42  
 Bornylamine hydrochloride, **267**, 459  
 Bornyl chloride, 291  
*p*-Bromacetanilide, **171**, 412  
 Bromacetic acid, **110**, 390  
 Bromoethyl bromide, 110  
 Bromobenzene, **155**, 406  
*m*-Bromobenzoic acid, 245  
*p*-Bromotoluene, **169**, 419  
*Bülow's* reaction, 198  
 Butter fat, estimation of 317  
*n*-Butyl alcohol, 76  
*n*-Butyl bromide, **76**, 376  
*n*-Butyl cyanide **77**, 376  
*n*-Butyric acid, 119  
  
**CAFFEINE**, **387**, 471  
 Camphene, 292  
 Camphor, **294**, 458  
 Camphoroxime, **296**, 459  
 Camphor sulphonic acid, 295  
 Cane sugar, 319  
 Carbamide, 330  
 Carbanime reaction, 81  
 Carbolic acid 205  
 Carbon, qualitative analysis, 3; quantitative analysis, 5  
 Carbon dioxide generator 17  
 Carbon monoxide, preparation of, 235  
*Carius's* method, 24, 29  
 Casein, **326**, 467  
 Caustic potash solutions, specific gravity of, 512  
 Caustic soda solutions, specific gravity of, 513  
*Challinay's* reaction, 170  
*p*-Chloracetanilide, **170**, 412  
 Chloracetic acid, **106**, 390  
 Chloracetic ester, 107  
 Chloral, 120  
 Chloral hydrate, 120  
 Chlorhydrin, 135  
 Chlorine, detection of, 4; estimation of, 24; preparation of, 106  
 Chlorobenzene, **154**, 406  
*o*-Chlorobenzoic acid, 276  
*p*-Chlorobenzoic acid, 188  
 Chloroform, 80  
*p*-Chlorotoluene, **187**, 419  
 Cholesterol, **318**, 464  
 Cinchona bark, 308  
 Cinnamic acid, **248**, 441  
 Citraconic acid, **148**, 404  
 Citric acid, 148  
*Claissen's* flask, 101  
*Claissen's* reaction, 240, 259  
  
 Combustion, 3, carbon and hydrogen, 3; nitrogen compounds, 15, substances containing halogens and sulphur, 15; containing nitrogen, 13, volatile and hygroscopic substances, 13  
 Combustion furnace, 10  
 Correction for boiling point, 63  
 Coumarin, **221**, 432  
 Creatine, 338  
*p*-Cresol, **186**, 419  
 Cryoscopic method, 34  
 Crystallisation, 56, fractional, 146  
 Crystal violet, **268**, 452  
 Cuprous chloride, 187  
 Cyanacetic acid, 108  
 Cyanacetic ester, **108**, 391  
 Cyclohexanol, 209  
 Cystine, 351  
  
 DEHYDRATION, 60  
 Depressimeter, 38  
 Determination of boiling point, 63; freezing point, 34, melting point, 81, rotatory power, 139, specific gravity, 61  
 Dextrose, 319  
 Diacetanilide, **85**, 378  
 Diaminobenzene, 173  
 Diazoacetic ester, **114**, 391  
 Diazoaminobenzene, **184**, 420  
 Diazobenzene perbromide, 183  
 Diazobenzene sulphate **182**, 417  
 Diazobenzolamide, 307  
 Diethylacetoacetone, 41  
 Dichloroacetic acid, **121**, 396  
 Dichlorhydrin, 135  
 Dicyanodiamide, 328  
 Diethyl ether, 65  
 Diethyl malonate, **116**, 394  
 Dihydroxysuccinic acid 138  
 Dimethylamine hydrochloride, **95**, **179**, 384  
 Dimethylaniline, **176**, 414  
 Dimethylnitrosamine, **96**, 384  
 Dimethyl ketone, 80  
 Dimethyl *p*-phenylene diamine, 201  
 Dimethyl sulphate, preparation of, 362  
 Dinaphthol, 281  
*m*-Dinitrobenzene, **174**, 414  
 2, 4-Dinitrochlorobenzene, **215**, 430  
 2, 4-Dinitrophenol, 116  
 Diphenylamine, 179  
 Diphenylhydrazine, 162  
 Diphenylmethane, **261**, 450  
 Diphenylthiourea, 180  
 Distillation in steam, 130, fractional, 151, in vacuo, 100, in superheated steam 179  
 Drying apparatus, 6  
 Drying oils, 317  
  
 Ebullioscopic method, 38  
 Electrolytic reduction, of oxalic acid, 127, of nitrobenzene, 159, 161  
 Elements, 507  
 Eosin, 218  
 Epichlorhydrin, **185**, 399  
 Estimation of carbon and hydrogen, 5; halogens, 24, nitrogen, 15, 22, sulphur 29  
 Ether, **65**, 371; commercial, 66  
 Ethyl acetate, **96**, 384  
 Ethyl acetoacetate, **98**, 385

- Ethyl acetoacetic ester, 103  
 Ethyl acetonedicarboxylate, 150  
 Ethyl alcohol, 54  
 Ethyl benzene, 156, 407  
 Ethyl benzoate, 255, 446  
 Ethyl bromide, 59, 369  
 Ethyl chloracetate, 107  
 Ethyl cyanacetate, 108, 391  
 Ethyl diazoacetate, 114, 393  
 Ethylene bromide, 68, 69, 372  
 Ethyl ether, 65, 371  
 Ethyl iodide, 64  
 Ethyl malonate, 116, 394  
 Ethyl malonic acid, 117, 394  
 Ethyl oxalate, 125  
 Ethyl oxaloacetate, 126, 397  
 Ethyl phenylacetate, 231, 436  
 Ethyl phenylaminoacetate, 238, 437  
 Ethyl phenyl methyl hydroxypropionate, 261, 450  
 Ethyl potassium sulphate, 55, 369  
 Ethyl tartrate, 139, 401, rotation of, 143  
 Ethyl terephthalate, 193  
 Ethyl valerate, 78  
*Fikman's* depressimeter 38  
  
 FATS, analysis of, 314  
*Fehling's* solution, 320  
 Filter pump, 44  
 Filter, fluted, 57  
 Filtration through cloth 337, under reduced pressure, 44 with fluted filter, 57  
*Fischer's* ester method, 339  
*Fischer-Speier*, ester method, 255  
*Fittig's* reaction, 156  
 Fluorescein, 218  
 Fluted filter, 57  
 Formic acid, 130, 398  
 Fractional distillation, 151  
 Fractionating columns, 152  
 Freezing point method 34  
*Friedel-Crafts'* reaction, 257, 262, 264  
 Funnel, hot water 58 separating 60  
 Furnace, combustion, 10, tube, 25  
 Fusel oil, 79  
 Fusible metal bath, 97  
  
 Gabriel's reaction, 343, 472  
 Gall stones, 318  
 Gattermann's diazo-reaction, 183, furnace 25  
 Gelatine, hydrolysis of, 341  
 Glucosamine, 324  
 Glucose, 319, 464 estimation of 320  
 Glutamic acid, 350  
 Glutaric acid, 119  
 Gluten, 350  
 Glycerin, 129  
 Glycerol, 129, tribenzoate, 129  
 Glycerol monoformin, 132, monoxalin, 132  
 Glycine, 112, 392, 472, from phthalimide, 343  
 Glycine ester hydrochloride, 113, from gelatine, 341  
 Glycocoli, 112, 392  
 Glycolic acid, 127, 397  
 Glyoxalic acid, 122, 127, 397  
 Glyoxylic acid, 122, 127, 397  
 Grape-sugar, 319, 464; estimation of, 320  
 Grignard's reaction, 252, 265  
 Guanidine thiocyanate, 329, 458  
  
 HALOCENS, detection of, 4; estimation of, 24  
 Heating under pressure, 90  
 Helianthin, 200  
*Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky* method, 110  
 Hempel fractionating column, 152  
 Hexamethyltriaminobenzene, 269  
 Hippuric acid, 344, from glycine, 345  
 Hofmann's bottles, 31  
 Hofmann's reaction, 92, 93  
 Hot water funnel, 58  
 Hydantoin, 142  
 Hydrazobenzene, 162, 409  
*o*-Hydrindone, 250, 444  
 Hydriodic acid, preparation of, 363  
 Hydrobenzamide, 233  
 Hydrobromic acid, 156, preparation of, 362  
 Hydrochloric acid, preparation of, 362, specific gravity of solutions, 512  
 Hydrocinnamic acid, 249  
 Hydrocyanic acid, preparation of, 349, 444  
 Hydrogen, detection of 3, estimation of, 5  
 Hydrolysis of ethyl acetate, 97, of ethyl benzoate, 256  
 Hydroquinone, 227  
*o*-Hydroxybenzaldehyde, 219, 432  
*p*-Hydroxybenzaldehyde, 219, 432  
 Hydroxybenzene, 205, 428  
*m*-Hydroxybenzoic acid, 245, 440  
*o*-Hydroxybenzoic acid, 223, 432  
*p*-Hydroxybenzylcyanide, 357  
 Hydroxyl method (*Ischugaeff*), 285  
 Hypnone, 257  
 Hypoxanthine, 338  
  
 IDENTIFICATION of organic substances, 473  
 Indigo, 274, 454  
 Insoluble solids, 491 liquids, 488, other compounds 494 *et seq*  
 Invert sugar, estimation of, 320  
 Iodine value, 315  
 Iodoform reaction 54  
 Iodosotoluene, 191, 440  
*p*-Iodotoluene, 190  
 Isatin from indigo, 275, 454  
 Isoborneol, 293  
 Isobornyl acetate, 293  
 Isopropyl iodide, 184, 399  
 Ivory nut, 327  
  
 Kjeldahl's method 22  
  
 LACTIC acid, 325, 467  
 Lactosazone 327  
 Lactose, 326, 467  
 Langmuir pump, 100  
*Laurent's* polarimeter, 141  
 Leucine, 339, 472, from  $\alpha$ -amyl alcohol, 349  
 Liebermann's nitroso-reaction, 179, 207  
 Ling's indicator, 321  
  
 MALACHITE green, 266, 452  
 Malic acid, 137  
 Malonic ester, 116, 394  
 Mandelic acid, 251, 444  
 Mandelic nitrile, 252  
 Mannose, 327, 468  
 Melting point determination, 83

- Melting-points of organic compounds, 500  
*et seq.*
- Mercury-vapour pump, 100
- Mesaconic acid, 146, 404
- Mesityl oxide, 84, 377
- Mesotartaric acid, 146, 403
- Mesoxalylurea, 333
- Method of Carius, 29; Dumas, 15; Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky, 110; Kjeldahl, 22; V Meyer, 30; A G. Perkin, 284; Pina and Schiff, 29; Tschugaeff, 285
- o*-Methoxycinnamic ester, *cis*, 222; *trans*, 223, 432
- Methyl acetate, 96
- Methyl acetyl urea, 82, 383
- Methyl alcohol, 74, purification of, 324
- Methylamine hydrochloride, 93, 383
- Methylated spirit, purification of, 52
- Methyl cyanide, 91
- Methylenamino-acetonitrile, 113
- Methylene blue, 178, 201
- Methylene dimalonate, 119
- $\alpha$  Methyl glucoside, 223, 466
- Methyl guanidine hydrochloride, 330, 468
- Methyl iodide, 75, 376
- Methyl orange, 200, 424
- Methyl oxalate, 124
- Methyl phenate, 207
- Methyl phenyl carbinol, 252
- Methyl phenyl ketone, 257
- Methyl potassium sulphate, 58
- Methyl propyl ketone, 103
- V. Meyer's vapour density method 31; air-bath, 28
- Millon's reagent, 339
- Milk, estimation of butter fat, 517
- Milk-sugar, 326, 467
- Mixtures, analysis of, 498
- Molecular weight, determination of, 30, by vapour density, 30, by freezing point, 34, by boiling point, 31, from organic acids, 44, from organic bases, 47
- Molisch's reaction, 320
- Monobromacetic acid, 110, 390
- Monochloracetic acid, 106, 390
- Monochlorhydrin, 135
- Mucic acid, 327, 467
- Murexide, 333
- Mutarotation, 465
- NAPHTHALENE, 270; from naphthalene sulphonic acid, 279
- Naphthalene picrate, 270
- $\beta$ -Naphthalene sulphionate of sodium, 279, 455
- $\beta$ -Naphthol, 280, 455
- Naphthol orange, 202, 424
- Naphthol phenylurethane, 281
- m* Nitracetanilide 175
- o*-Nitracetanilide, 171
- p*-Nitracetanilide, 173
- m*-Nitraniline, 175
- o*-Nitraniline, 171
- p*-Nitraniline, 173
- Nitric acid (fuming), 24; specific gravity table, 511
- Nitrobenzene, 157, 408
- m*-Nitrobenzoic acid, 244, 440
- p*-Nitrobenzoic acid, 242, 440
- p*-Nitrobenzoic ester, 55
- p*-Nitrobenzoyl chloride, 243
- p*-Nitrobenzyl cyanide, 355
- p*-Nitroethoxybenzene, 212
- Nitromethane, 106, 392
- p*-Nitrophenylhydrazine, 198
- p*-Nitroquinoline, 300, 439
- Nitroso-reaction, 179, 207
- Oil, analysis of, 314
- Organic acids, molecular weight of, 44; melting- and boiling-points, 503
- Organic analysis, qualitative, 3; quantitative, 5
- Organic bases, molecular weight of, 44; melting- and boiling points, 505
- Organic compounds, identification of, 473
- Oxalic acid, 123, 397
- Oxalic esters, 124, 125
- Oxaloacetic ester, 126, 397
- Oxamide, 124
- Oxanthranolate of sodium, 288
- PALMITIC acid, 313, 464
- Palm oil, 313
- Paraldehyde, 74
- Pararosaniline, 263
- Pentamethylene dibromide, 304, 460
- Perkin's acetyl method, 284
- Perkin's pyknometer, 62
- Perkin's reaction, 248
- Phenacetin, 212, 214
- Phenetidine, 213
- Phenol, 205, 428
- Phenolphthalein, 216, 431
- Phenolsulphonic acid, 214
- Phenylacetic ester, 231, 436
- Phenylacridine, 303, 461
- Phenylacrylic acid, 248, 441
- Phenylalanine, 345; from benzaldehyde 347
- Phenylamino acetic acid, 237, 437
- Phenylamino acetic ester, 238, 437
- Phenylanthranilic acid, 277, 455
- Phenyl benzoate, 255
- Phenyl bromide, 156, 406
- Phenyl carbamide reaction, 81
- Phenyl carbamide, 181
- m*-Phenylenediamine, 175
- p*-Phenylenediamine, 195
- $\alpha$ -Phenylethylamine, 250, 450
- Phenylglycine *o*-carboxylic acid -74
- Phenylhydrazine, 196, 422
- Phenylhydroxylamine, 164, 411
- Phenyl methyl carbinol, 252, 445
- Phenyl methyl ether, 207
- Phenyl methyl  $\beta$ -hydroxypropionic ester, 201, 450
- Phenyl methyl ketone, 257
- Phenyl methyl pyrazolone, 198, 422
- Phenyl methyl triazolecarboxylic acid, 307, 461
- Phenyl mustard oil, 181, 416
- Phenyl propionic acid, 249
- Phenyl propionyl chloride, 250, 444
- Phenylthiocarbimide, 181
- Phenylthiourethane, 181
- Phenylurethane ethyl ester 55; methyl ester, 75
- Phorone, 84, 377
- Phosphorus, detection of, 5
- Phosphorus pentabromide, 36
- Phosphorus pentasulphide, 365

- Phosphorus tri-iodide, 365  
 Phthalic acid, 270, 453  
 Phthalic anhydride, 271  
 Phthalimide, 271  
 Picric acid, 214, 216, 430  
 Pinene hydrochloride, 281, 458  
*Piria* and *Schiff's* method, 29  
 Polarimeter, 141  
 Potash apparatus, 7  
 Potash solutions, specific gravity of, 512  
 Potassium ethyl sulphate, 55  
 Potassium methyl sulphate, 55  
 Preparations, general remarks, 51; reagents, 361 *et seq.*  
 Pressure tube furnace, 25  
 Pressure tubing, 25, 89  
 Purification of benzene, 151; of ether, 66, of methylated spirit, 52  
 Pyknometer, 61  
 Pyruvic acid, 147
- QUANTITATIVE estimation of carbon and hydrogen, 5, halogens, 24, nitrogen, 15, 22, sulphur, 29  
 Quinhydrone, 227  
 Quinine sulphate, 308, 461  
 Quinol, 227, 433  
 Quinoline, 228, 459  
 Quinone, 228, 433  
 Quinone oxime, 179
- RACEMIC acid, 145, 403, resolution of, 146  
 Reaction of Beckmann, 258 Bulow, 198, Claisen, 240, 259, Fittig, 156, Friedel Crafts, 257, 262, 264, Gabriel, 343, 472, Grignard, 252, 265, Hofmann, 92, 93, Liebermann, 179, 207, Perkin 248, Reformatsky, 261 Schiff, 73, Schott Baumann, 255, Ullmann, 277  
 Reagents, preparation of, 361  
 Reduction, electrolytic, 129  
 Reformatsky's reaction, 261  
*Reichert Meissl* value, 316  
 Ring burner, 131  
 Rotation, specific, 143, molecular, 143, of ethyl tartrate, 143, of tartaric acid, 144  
 Rotatory power determination of, 139
- SACCHARIC acid, 223, 466  
 Salicylaldehyde, 219, 432  
 Salicylic acid, 223, 432  
 Sandmeyer's reaction, 187  
 Saponification of ethyl acetate, 97; of ethyl benzoate, 256, of palm oil, 313  
 Saponification value, 315  
 Sarcosine acid, 338  
*Schiff's* azotometer, 16, reaction, 73  
*Schotten-Baumann* reaction, 255  
 Sealed tube furnace, 25  
 Sealed tubes, 25  
 Sodium amalgam, 240  
 Sodium benzene chloramide, 205  
 Sodium benzene sulphonate, 203, 426  
 Sodium bisulphite, 73, 232  
 Sodium hydroxide solutions, specific gravity of, 513  
 Sodium knife, 66; press, 66  
 Sodium naphthalene sulphonate, 270, 455
- Solubility tables, 478 *et seq.*  
 Specific gravity of solutions of ammonia, 513, caustic potash, 512; caustic soda, 513, hydrochloric acid, 512; nitric acid, 511, sulphuric acid, 520  
 Still-heads, 152  
 Stirrers, mechanical, 112, 162  
 Sublimation, 288  
 Succinic acid, 187, 400  
 Sulphanilic acid, 190, 423  
 Sulphur, detection of, 5, estimation of, 29  
 Sulphuric acid specific gravity of solutions, 510
- TABLE of atomic weights, 507 of solubilities, 478, of specific gravity of solutions of alkalis and acids, 510 *et seq.*  
 Tartaric acid, 138, ester, 139  
 Tautomerism, 389, 454  
 Terephthalic acid, 193, ester, 193  
 Tetrabromocresol, 186  
 Tetrahydroquinoline, 299  
 Tetramethyldiaminobenzhydrol, 268  
 Tetramethyldiaminodiphenyl methane, 267  
 Tetramethyldiaminotriphenylmethyl chloride, 266  
 Thermometer, Anschütz, 64, Beckmann, 35  
 Thiocarbamide, 332, 469  
 Thiocarbamilamide, 181  
 Thiocarbamide, 180, 416  
 Thiocarbamide, 416  
 Thionyl chloride, preparation of, 365  
 Thiourea, 332  
 Toluene from *p* toluidine, 184, 419  
*p* Toluic acid, 193  
*p* Toluquinoline, 202, 460  
*p*-Toluyaldehyde, 234  
*p*-Tolyl cyanide, 191  
 Tolyumox ether, 192  
 Tolyhodochloride, 191  
 Tribromophenol, 206  
 Trichloroacetic acid, 122, 396  
 Trimethylxanthine, 337  
 Trinitrophenol, 214, 216  
 Triphenylcarbinol, 285, 452  
 Triphenylguanidine, 181, 416  
 Triphenylmethane, 202, 450  
 Triphenylmethyl, 265  
 Triphenylmethyl chloride, 264, 451  
 Tryptophane, 353  
*Ullmann's* hydroxyl method, 285  
 Tube furnace, 25  
 Tyramine hydrochloride, 355  
 Tyrosine, 330, 472, hydantoin, 340
- Ullmann's* reaction, 207, 277  
 Uramidoacetic ester, 42  
 Uramidobenzole acid, 273  
 Urea, 330, 468  
 Uric acid, 332, estimation of, 333
- VACUUM desiccator, 46  
 Vacuum distillation, 100  
 Valeric acid, 77, 376  
 Valeronitrile, 79  
 Vapour density method, 30  
 Vapour tension of water, 508; of caustic potash solutions, 509

*Victor Meyer* apparatus, 30  
*Vigroux's* fractionating column, 132

Water-jet aspirator, 45

Water turbine, 112

*Wys's* solution, 315

XANTHOPROTEIC reaction, 339

*Young and Thomas* fractionating column, 152

*Zeisel's* method, 281

